# 2009 Audi Q7

## Owner's Manual



# Introduction

## Thank you for choosing an Audi Q7 - we value your trust in us.

Your new Audi Q7 incorporates the newest technology as well as numerous features designed for your comfort, convenience and safety. We recommend you read your Owner's Manual thoroughly so that you can quickly become acquainted with your Audi.

In addition to explaining how the different features work, we also give you many useful tips and information concerning your safety and that of your passengers, how to care for your vehicle and maintain your vehicle's value.

We hope you enjoy driving your Audi Q7 and we wish you safe and pleasant motoring.

**AUDI AG**

# Table of contents


**Vehicle literature** ..... 5

**About this Owner's Manual** ..... 6



**Controls and equipment** ..... 9

Instruments and controls ..... 11
- General illustration ..... 11

Instruments and warning/indicator lights ..... 13
- Instruments ..... 13
- Warning/indicator lights ..... 17

Driver information display ..... 25
- Introduction ..... 25
- On-Board Diagnostic system (OBD) 29
- Auto Check Control ..... 30
- Speed warning system ..... 38
- Trip computer ..... 40
- Tire pressure monitoring system .. 42

Opening and closing ..... 48
- Keys ..... 48
- Power locking system ..... 52
- Rear lid ..... 57
- Child safety lock ..... 61
- Convenience key ..... 61
- Anti-theft alarm system ..... 63
- Power windows ..... 64
- Panoramic sliding sunroof ..... 67

Clear vision ..... 73
- Lights ..... 73
- Interior lights ..... 78
- Vision ..... 80
- Wiper and washer system ..... 81
- Mirrors ..... 86
- Digital compass ..... 89

Seats and storage ..... 92
- General recommendations ..... 92
- Power seat ..... 93
- Adjusting front passenger's seat manually ..... 96
- Seat memory ..... 97
- Rear seats ..... 98
- Head restraints ..... 101
- Arm rest ..... 103
- Long center console ..... 103
- Luggage compartment ..... 104
- Roof rack ..... 112
- Cupholder ..... 114
- Ashtray ..... 116
- Cigarette lighter/socket ..... 117
- Storage ..... 119

Warm and cold ..... 123
- Climate control ..... 123
- Rear Air Conditioning ..... 131
- Basic settings ..... 134
- Heated Seats ..... 136

On the road ..... 140
- Steering ..... 140
- Ignition lock and ignition switch . 142
- Starting and stopping the engine 143
- Starting and stopping the engine with Convenience key ..... 144
- Parking brake ..... 147
- Starting on hills ..... 148
- Cruise control ..... 149

Adaptive Cruise Control ..... 152
- Speed and distance control system 152
- Driver information ..... 160
- System limitations ..... 165
- Audi braking guard ..... 168

Audi lane assist ..... 171
- Lane assist ..... 171

Audi side assist ..... 174
- Lane Change Assistant ..... 174
- Notes ..... 181

Automatic transmission ..... 184
- tiptronic® (6-speed automatic transmission) ..... 184

Advanced Parking System ..... 191
- Advanced Parking System with rear view camera ..... 191
- Special parking situations ..... 199
- Towing hitch ..... 201
- Settings in the MMI ..... 201
- Safety tips ..... 204

Adaptive Air Suspension ..... 206
- Air suspension and damping .... 206

HomeLink® ..... 214
- Universal remote control ..... 214








## Safety first ..... 219

Driving Safely ..... 220
- General notes ..... 220
- Proper occupant seating positions 222
- Pedal area ..... 226
- Stowing luggage ..... 227
- Reporting Safety Defects ..... 229

Safety belts ..... 231
- General notes ..... 231
- Why safety belts? ..... 232
- Safety belts ..... 235
- Safety belt pretensioners ..... 239

Airbag system ..... 241
- Important things to know ..... 241
- Front airbags ..... 245
- Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System ..... 252
- Side airbags ..... 257
- Side curtain airbags ..... 260

Child Safety ..... 263
- Important things to know ..... 263
- Child safety seats ..... 268
- Installing a child safety seat ..... 273
- Additional Information ..... 276
- Lower anchorages and tether for children (LATCH) ..... 278

## Vehicle operation ..... 287

Intelligent technology ..... 288
- Notice about data recorded by vehicle control modules ..... 288
- Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) ..... 288
- Braking ..... 291
- Servotronic® - advanced power steering system ..... 293
- Driving with your quattro® ..... 294
- Energy management ..... 295

Driving and environment ..... 297
- The first 1,000 miles (1,500 km) and afterwards ..... 297
- Catalytic converter ..... 298
- Avoid damaging the vehicle ..... 299
- Operate your vehicle economically and minimize pollution ..... 299

Driving off road ..... 302
- Driving in difficult road conditions and offroad ..... 302

Trailer towing ..... 305
- Driving with a trailer ..... 305
- Trailer towing tips ..... 308

## Vehicle care ..... 311

Cleaning and protection ..... 312
- General information ..... 312
- Care of exterior ..... 312
- Care of interior ..... 319

Fuel supply and filling your fuel tank ..... 325
- Gasoline ..... 325
- Fuel tank ..... 326

Checking and filling ..... 330
- Engine hood ..... 330
- Engine oil ..... 333
- Engine cooling system ..... 337
- Brake fluid ..... 341
- Battery ..... 342
- Windshield/headlight washer container ..... 346

Tires and wheels ..... 347
- Tires ..... 347



**Do-it-yourself service** ... 369

What do I do now? ... 370
Jack, tools and inflatable spare tire 370
Changing a wheel ... 373
Fuses and bulbs ... 381
Fuses ... 381
Bulbs ... 385
Emergency situations ... 387
General ... 387
Starting by pushing or towing ... 387
Starting with jumper cables ... 387
Use of jumper cables ... 388
Emergency towing with commercial tow truck ... 390
Lifting vehicle ... 392



**Technical data** ... 395

General information ... 396
Explanation of technical data ... 396
Vehicle identification ... 396
Displaying Vehicle Identification Number in the MMI ... 397
Weights ... 397
Dimensions ... 398
Data ... 399
280 hp, 6-cylinder engine, with all wheel drive ... 399
350 hp, 8-cylinder engine, with all wheel drive ... 400
Consumer Information ... 401
Warranty coverages ... 401
Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada ... 401
Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature ... 401
Maintenance ... 401
Additional accessories, modifications and parts replacement ... 403
Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems ... 404



**Alphabetical index** ... 407

# Vehicle literature

In addition to this Owner's Manual, your Audi comes with the

- MMI Operating Instructions
- Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

If you are missing one of these publications, or if you believe that the information is not complete, contact your authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

## MMI Operating Instructions

contain detailed description of the Audi Multi Media Interface (MMI) including the navigation system, the sound system and the hand-held phone.

## The Warranty & Maintenance booklet

explains how you can keep your Audi in top driving condition by having it serviced regularly and contains detailed information about the warranties covering your Audi. Always have the booklet with you when you take your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer for service. Your Audi Service Adviser will record each scheduled service and can answer any questions you may have regarding how to maintain your vehicle.

## In Canada,

the vehicle literature is also available in French. To obtain a copy, contact your dealer or write to:

Au Canada, on peut se procurer un exemplaire en français de ce document auprès du concessionnaire ou de:

Volkswagen Canada, Inc.
Client Assistance
Assistance a la Clientele
777 Bayly Street, West,
Ajax, Ontario L1S 7G7

## If you sell your Audi

all literature should be left in the vehicle to make the Warranty terms as well as all operating, safety and maintenance information available to the next owner.

## If you change your address or if you bought this Audi used

be sure to send in a "Notice of Address Change" / "Notice of Used Car Purchase" post card. This card can be found in the Warranty & Maintenance booklet or obtained from your authorized Audi dealer.

**It is in your own interest that we are able to contact you should the need arise.** ■

# About this Owner's Manual

This owner's manual contains important information, tips, suggestions, and warnings for the use of your vehicle.

Make sure that this owner's manual is always located in the vehicle. This is especially important if you allow other people to drive the vehicle, or if you sell it.

This owner's manual describes the **equipment range** specified for this model at the editorial deadline date. Some of the equipment described here will only be available at a later date, or only in specific markets.

Some sections in this owner's manual do not apply to all vehicles. In that case, the **range of applicability** is given at the beginning of the section, e. g. "Applies to vehicles: with Advanced Parking System". In addition, optional equipment is indicated by an asterisk "*".

The details in the **illustrations** may be different from those in your vehicle, and are intended to be viewed as a basic guide.

You will find a **table of contents** at the beginning of this book, which displays all topics described in this manual in order of appearance. You will find an alphabetical **index** at the end of this book.

All **directions**, such as "left", "right", "front", "back", are relative to the direction of travel.

* optional equipment

▶ This section continues on the next page.

■ Indicates the **end of a section**.

® Registered trademarks are identified with a ®. If this symbol is missing, it is no guarantee that the terms can be used freely.

⇒ ⚠ Cross-reference to a "WARNING!" within a section. For indication with a page number, the corresponding "WARNING!" can be found outside of the section.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Text with this symbol contains important information on safety and how to reduce the risk of personal injury or death.**

**Note**

Text with this symbol draws your attention to potential sources of damage to your vehicle.

**For the sake of the environment**

Text with this symbol contains information about the environment and how you can help protect it.

**Tips**

Text with this symbol contains special tips and other information about getting the most out of your vehicle and its features. ■





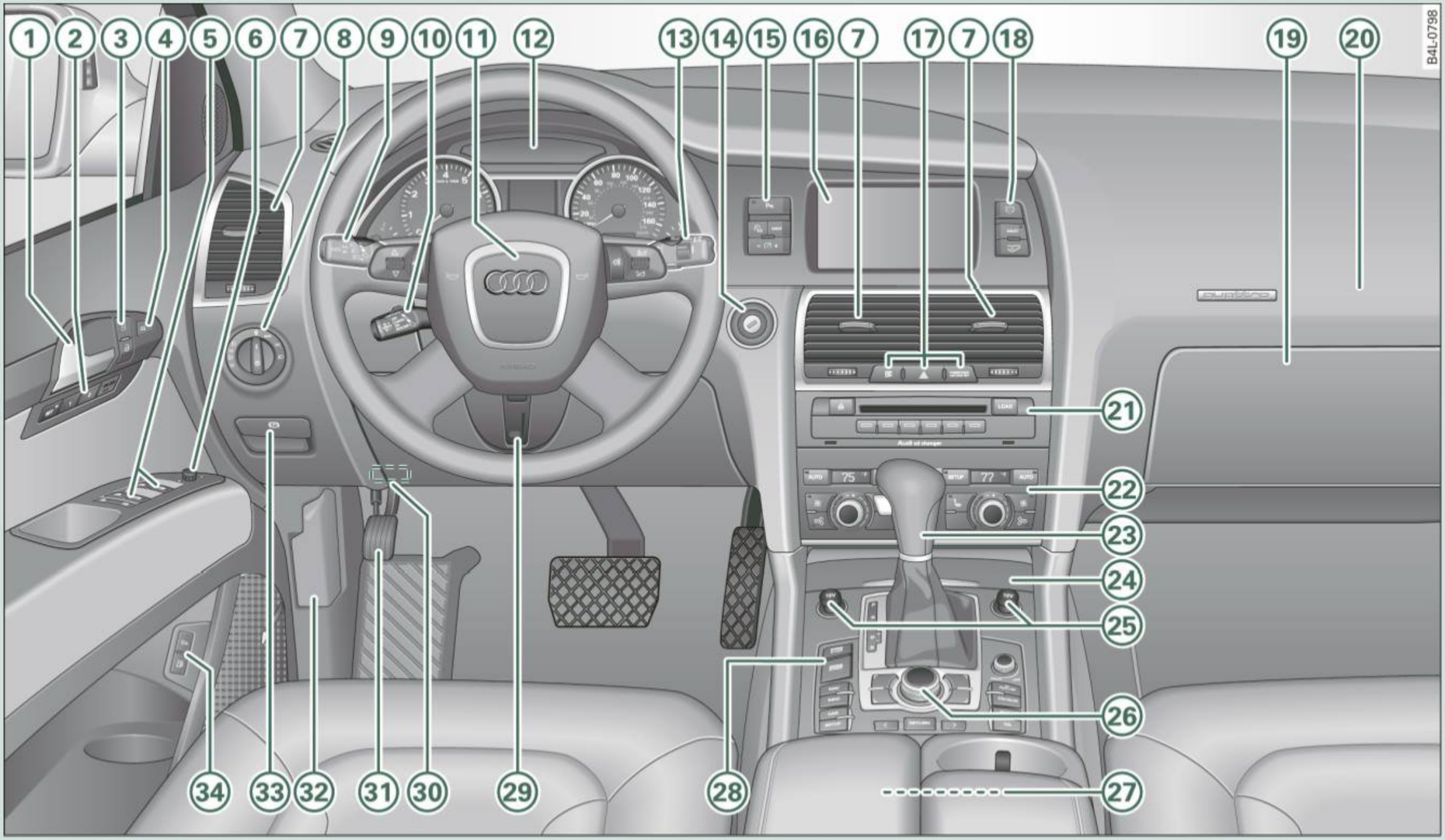



**Fig. 1 Some of the equipment or features shown in the general illustration may be standard equipment on your vehicle or may be optional equipment depending on your model. Always ask your authorized Audi dealer if you have a question about your vehicle.**

# Instruments and controls

## General illustration


(1) Door handle
(2) Memory buttons (driver's seat) ..... 97
(3) Power locking switch ..... 55
(4) Side assist button ..... 174
(5) Power window switches ..... 64
(6) Adjuster control for outside mirrors ..... 88
(7) Air outlets ..... 130
(8) Light switch ..... 73
(9) Control lever for:
- Turn signal and high beam ..... 77
- Lane assist ..... 171

(10) Control lever for:
- Cruise control ..... 149
- Adaptive Cruise Control ..... 152

(11) Multifunction steering wheel with:
- Horn
- Driver's airbag ..... 245
- Shift buttons ..... 189
- Button for steering wheel heating ..... 138

(12) Instrument cluster ..... 13
(13) Switches for:
- Windshield wiper/washer ..... 81
- Trip computer ..... 40

(14) Steering lock/ignition/starter switch ..... 142
(15) Buttons for:
- Advanced Parking System ..... 191
- Reset button for trip odometer ..... 15
- CHECK ..... 16
- Instrument lighting ..... 17

(16) MMI Display [1)]
(17) Buttons/Indicator light for:
- Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) ..... 288
- Emergency flashers ..... 76
- PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF

(18) Buttons for:
- Switching MMI display on/off
- Valet key function ..... 51
- Unlocking glove compartment ..... 119

(19) Glove compartment ..... 119
(20) Front passenger's airbag ..... 245
(21) CD player/CD changer
(22) Climate controls ..... 125
(23) Shift lever for automatic transmission ..... 184
(24) Ashtray and cigarette lighter ..... 116, 117
(25) 12-volt outlets ..... 118
(26) MMI Terminal
(27) Storage compartment
(28) START-/STOP button ..... 144
(29) Adjustable steering wheel, depending on equipment:
- mechanical ..... 140
- electrical ..... 140

(30) Data Link Connector for On Board Diagnostics (OBD II) 29
(31) Pedal for operating parking brake ..... 147
(32) Engine hood release ..... 330 ▶


1) Depending on how the vehicle is equipped the presentation in the MMI display may be multi-color or bi-color. As both presentations are almost identical, the multi-color versions are used in this operating manual.

(33) Handle for releasing parking brake ..... 147
(34) Switch for:
– unlocking the fuel filler door ..... 327
– unlocking the trunk lid ..... 57

## Tips

Operation of the Multi Media Interface (MMI) is described in a separate manual. ■

# Instruments and warning/indicator lights

## Instruments

### Instrument cluster and controls

*The instrument cluster is your central source of information.*

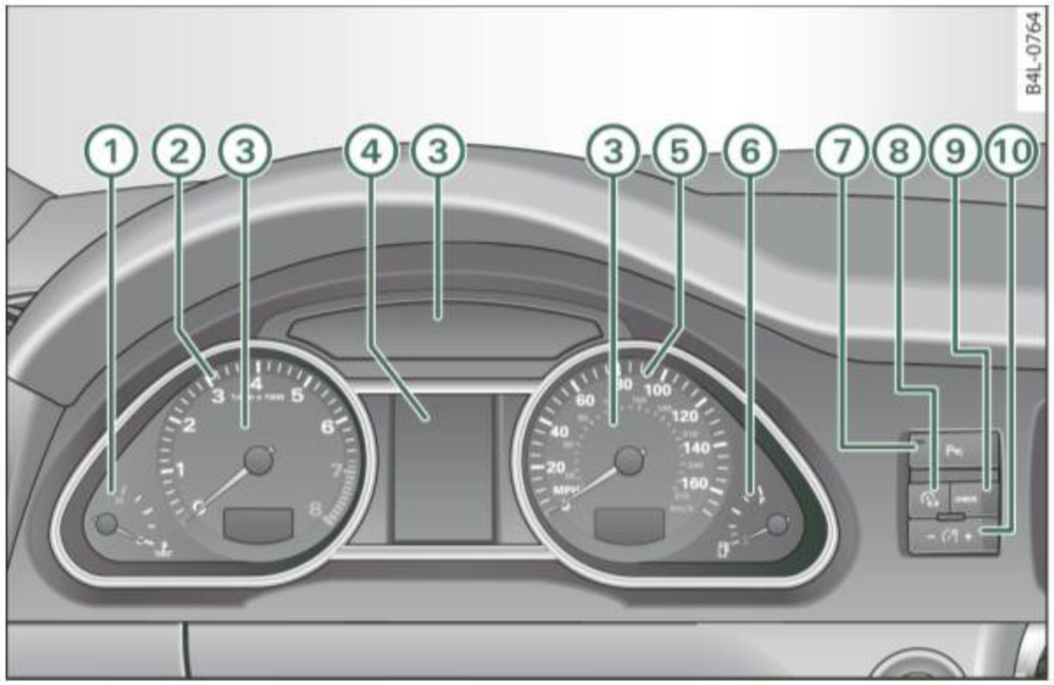



**Fig. 2 Overview of the instrument cluster**


(1) Coolant temperature gauge ..... 13
(2) Tachometer with time and date display ..... 14, 14
(3) Warning/indicator lights ..... 17
(4) Driver information system ..... 25
(5) Speedometer with odometer ..... 15
(6) Fuel gauge ..... 15
(7) Advanced Parking System ..... 191
(8) Reset button for trip odometer ..... 15
(9) CHECK button ..... 16
(10) Instrument cluster illumination ..... 17


**Tips**

The illumination for the instrument cluster lights up whenever you switch on the ignition with the **vehicle headlights off**. As the daylight fades, the instrument cluster illumination likewise dims automatically and will go out completely when the outside light is very low. This feature is meant to remind you to switch on the headlights when outside light conditions become poor. ■

### Engine coolant temperature gauge

The engine coolant gauge ⇒ fig. 2 (1) only works when the ignition is on. To prevent damage to your engine, please note the following important points:

#### Engine cold

As long as the needle remains at or close to the bottom of the gauge, the engine still has not reached its operating temperature. Avoid high engine speeds, heavy engine loads and heavy throttle applications.

#### Normal temperature

When the engine has reached its operating temperature, the needle will move into the middle of the gauge and remain there. If the engine is working hard at high outside temperatures, the needle may rise up. This is no need to worry as long as the warning light in the instrument cluster does not illuminate. ▶

### Warning light in the instrument cluster

When the warning light in the instrument cluster starts to flash, this can mean one of two things: either the coolant *temperature* is too high, or the coolant *level* is too low ⇒ *page 33*.

If the needle is well in the upper area of the gauge, the coolant temperature is too high. **Stop the vehicle, switch the engine off and allow the engine to cool.** If the warning light comes on again after driving a short distance, contact an authorized dealer.

**WARNING**

- **Always observe the warning in ⇒ *page 324,* "Engine compartment", before opening the hood and checking the engine coolant level.**
- **Never open the engine hood if you see or hear steam, or if you see engine coolant dripping from the engine compartment. You could burn yourself. Let the engine cool off first so that you cannot hear or see any steam or engine coolant.**

**Note**

- Mounting additional lights or accessories in front of the air inlets reduces the cooling effect of the radiator. At high outside temperatures or high engine load, the engine could overheat.
- The front spoiler has been designed to properly distribute the cooling air when the vehicle is moving. If the spoiler is damaged, this could reduce the cooling effect and the engine could then overheat. Ask your authorized Audi dealer for assistance. ■

## Tachometer (engine rev counter)

*The tachometer indicates the engine RPM (revolutions per minutes).*

The tachometer (2) ⇒ *page 13,* fig. 2 is the left of the two large clock-type displays.

The engine turns at a speed *1,000 times* the single digit in the display, e.g. if the needle is pointing at the "2" the engine is turning at 2,000 RPM.

If engine RPM drops below 1,500, you should downshift to the next lower gear. The red area at the end of the scale indicates maximum permissible engine RPM after the break-in period. Before reaching this area, move the selector lever to position "D (Drive)" or ease your foot off the accelerator pedal.

**Note**

The tachometer needle should not move into the red range. If it does, then only for a very short period of time. You could damage your engine by driving at high RPM.

**For the sake of the environment**

Upshifting early saves fuel and reduces engine noise. ■

## Digital clock with date display

*Date and time of day can be set in the MMI.*




**Fig. 3 Instrument cluster with digital clock**

The date, time of day, and time and date format can be set in the MMI. You can find out more in the MMI manual. ▶

### Tips

- The digital clock and the odometer are turned on for about 30 seconds when the driver's door is opened.
- When the ignition is turned off, the odometer reading and the digital clock with date display can be switched on for about 30 seconds by pressing the CHECK button ⇒ *page 16,* fig. 5. ■

## Speedometer with odometer

*The speedometer shows you the vehicle speed, and the odometer shows you how many miles (kilometers) you have driven.*




**Fig. 4 Instrument cluster Odometer and reset button**

The odometer and trip odometer are located inside the speedometer.

- USA models – Miles
- Canada models – Kilometers

You can switch the display from miles to kilometers and vice versa via the MMI.

### Lower odometer

The lower odometer shows the total number of miles (kilometers) driven.

### Upper odometer (trip odometer)

The upper odometer shows the total number of miles (kilometers) driven since you last reset the odometer to zero. You can use this odometer when you want to keep track of how many miles (kilometers) you have driven for a single trip or errand. The last digit indicates 1/10 of a mile (100 meters).

You can reset the trip odometer to zero by pressing the Reset button 0.0.

### Malfunction message

If there is a malfunction somewhere in the instrument cluster, **dEF** will appear in the trip odometer and will stay on. Contact your authorized Audi dealer to have the problem corrected.

### Immobilizer

When the ignition is switched on, the data on the ignition key are scanned automatically.

If an unauthorized key was used, **SAFE** is displayed continuously in the odometer display field. The vehicle cannot be operated ⇒ *page 51*.

### Tips

- The digital clock and the odometer are turned on for about 30 seconds when the driver's door is opened.
- When the ignition is turned off, the odometer reading and the digital clock with date display can be switched on for about 30 seconds by pressing the CHECK button ⇒ *page 16,* fig. 5. ■

## Fuel gauge

The fuel gauge only works when the ignition is on.

When the needle reaches the reserve mark, the ⇒ *page 36* symbol appears in the instrument cluster display as well as the message **Please refuel**. There are approximately between 2.6 and 3.2 ▶

gallons (10-12 liters) of fuel left. This message is meant to remind you to **refuel.**

The total tank capacity of your vehicle is listed in ⇒ *page 399*.

**Note**

Never run the tank completely dry. An irregular supply of fuel can cause engine misfiring and fuel could enter the exhaust system. The catalytic converter could then overheat and be damaged. ■

## CHECK button

*You can perform different functions with this button.*




**Fig. 5 CHECK button in the instrument cluster**

The CHECK button performs the following functions:

### Switching on the clock and odometer

With the ignition turned off, the odometer reading and the digital clock with date display can be switched on for about 30 seconds by pressing the CHECK button ⇒ fig. 5.

### Starting the Auto-Check sequence

The Auto-Check system ⇒ *page 30* constantly monitors certain individual functions and components of the vehicle when the ignition is turned on and when the vehicle is moving.

With the ignition turned on, you can start the "Auto-Check sequence" by pressing the CHECK button. You can perform an Auto-Check sequence when the vehicle is stationary and the ignition is turned on or when the vehicle is moving not faster than 3 mph (5 km/h).

The number of keys programmed to the vehicle is also displayed. The display **3\3** indicates that three keys have been programmed. This allows you to make sure you have received all of the keys when you purchase a used vehicle.

For example, if you only receive two keys, you should take those keys to your authorized Audi dealer to have the missing key deactivated so it cannot be used. You should also report the missing key to your insurance company.

### Calling up the driver information

A yellow or red symbol appears in the instrument cluster display, usually with a driver message. The driver message display disappears after about 5 seconds. The driver message can be displayed again by briefly pressing the CHECK button.

### Setting the speed warning

By pressing the CHECK button briefly, you can set threshold 1 of the speed warning while you are driving ⇒ *page 39*. By maintaining pressure on the CHECK button, you delete the warning threshold. ■

## Instrument cluster illumination

*The basic brightness of the illumination for the instruments, the center console and the display can be adjusted.*




**Fig. 6 Instrument cluster illumination**

– Press the "+" button to increase the brightness during the hours of darkness.

– Press the "-" button to decrease the brightness during the hours of darkness.

A light sensor in the instrument cluster controls the illumination for the instrument cluster, the center console and the displays. In a bright environment, using the buttons to change the brightness has no effect.

### Tips

The illumination for the instrument cluster lights up whenever you switch on the ignition with the vehicle headlights off. As the daylight fades, the instrument cluster illumination likewise dims automatically and will go out completely when the outside light is very low. This feature is meant to remind you to switch on the headlights when outside light conditions become poor. ■

# Warning/indicator lights

## Overview

*The warning/indicator lights indicate different functions or a possible malfunction.*




**Fig. 7 Instrument cluster with warning/indicator lights**

Your vehicle is equipped with several important warning and indicator lights to help you monitor the continued reliable operation of your vehicle ⇒ ⚠.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| EPC | Electronic power control | ⇒ *page 19* |
| | Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) | ⇒ *page 19* |
| AIR BAG | **USA models:** Airbag system | ⇒ *page 19* |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | **Canada models:**<br>Airbag system | ⇒ *page 19* |
| | Tire pressure monitoring system | ⇒ *page 20* |
| | Left turn signal | ⇒ *page 20* |
| | Trailer turn signal assembly* | ⇒ *page 20* |
| | Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) | ⇒ *page 20* |
| | Lane assist (system is ready)* | ⇒ *page 21* |
| | Lane assist (system is not ready)* | ⇒ *page 21* |
| | Safety belt | ⇒ *page 21* |
| | Adaptive Air Suspension* | ⇒ *page 21* |
| | High beam | ⇒ *page 22* |
| | Right turn signal | ⇒ *page 20* |
| CRUISE | **USA models:**<br>Cruise control activated | ⇒ *page 22* |
| | **Canada models:**<br>Cruise control activated | ⇒ *page 22* |
| ABS | **USA models:**<br>Anti-lock brake system (ABS) defective | ⇒ *page 22* |
| | **Canada models:**<br>Anti-lock brake system (ABS) defective | ⇒ *page 22* |
| PARK BRAKE | **USA models:**<br>Parking brake | ⇒ *page 23* |
| | **Canada models:**<br>Parking brake | ⇒ *page 23* |
| BRAKE | **USA models:**<br>Brake malfunction | ⇒ *page 23* |
| | **Canada models:**<br>Brake malfunction | ⇒ *page 23* |

Vehicles with the Adaptive Cruise Control* have the following additional check lamps:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | Open road | ⇒ *page 161* |
| | Driving in traffic | ⇒ *page 161* |
| | Request for driver to assume control | ⇒ *page 161* |

**WARNING**

- **Failure to heed warning lights and other important vehicle information may result in serious personal injury or vehicle damage.**
- **Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, stop the engine, and turn on the emergency flasher ⇒ *page 76*.**
- **The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Before you check anything in the engine compartment, stop the engine and let it cool down. Always exercise**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

**extreme caution when working under the hood ⇒ *page 324*, "Engine compartment".**

### Tips

Many functions are monitored by the Auto-Check system ⇒ *page 30*. Malfunctions or faults will be identified either with a red symbol (priority 1 – Danger!) or with a yellow symbol (priority 2 – Warning). ■

## Electronic power control EPC

*This warning/indicator light monitors the electronic power control.*

The EPC warning/indicator light (Electronic Power Control) illuminates when you turn on the ignition as a function check.

### Tips

If this warning/indicator light illuminates while you are driving, then there is a malfunction in the engine electronics. Have the malfunction corrected as soon as possible by your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop. ■

## Electronic stabilization program (ESP)

*This warning/indicator light monitors the electronic stabilization program.*

The warning/indicator light has the following functions:

- It blinks while you are driving when the ESP is working.
- It illuminates when you switch on the ignition for approximately 2 seconds as a function check.
- It illuminates when there is a malfunction in the ESP.
- It illuminates when ESP or ASR (Anti-Slip Regulation) is deactivated.
- It illuminates if there is a malfunction in the ABS, since the ESP is part of the ABS system.

If the battery terminals were disconnected and re-connected, the vehicle was jump started or the battery is very weak, the ESP sensor system goes through a learning process for the first few yards. The warning/indicator light illuminates. The warning/indicator light goes out as soon as the learning process is complete.

If the ESP warning/indicator light illuminates and stays on after you have started the engine, this may mean that the control system has temporarily switched off the ESP. If this is case, you can reactivate the ESP by turning the ignition off and then on again. The warning/indicator light should go out to show that the system is fully functional again.

For more information about the ESP ⇒ *page 288*. ■

## Airbag system AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models)

*This warning/indicator light monitors the airbag and the tensioner systems.*

The AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models) warning light illuminates for a few seconds each time you switch on the ignition.

If the AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models) warning light does not go out, or if it illuminates while you are driving, or if it starts to blink, then there is a malfunction somewhere in the system. If the light does not illuminate when you switch on the ignition, this also means there is a malfunction. ▶

**WARNING**

**If you have a malfunction in the airbag system, contact your authorized Audi dealer immediately. Otherwise the airbag or the belt tensioner may not work properly in an accident. ■**

## Tire pressure monitoring system - telltale indicator lamp (!)

*The warning/indicator light appears in the event of a significant loss of air pressure.*

The (!) warning/indicator light illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is turned on as function check and then goes out.

If the (!) symbol appears, pressure is too low in at least one tire.

When the system detects a malfunction, the warning/indicator light will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle starts up as long as the malfunction exists. Contact your authorized Audi dealer and have the malfunction corrected.

For more information ⇒ *page 44.* ■

## Turn signals ⇦ ⇨

*The indicator light blinks when you use either turn signal.*

Whenever you use the left ⇦ or the right ⇨ turn signal, the indicator light blinks. When you use the emergency flashers, both indicator lights flash.

If one of the turn signal light bulbs burn out, the turn signal will blink twice as fast as normal.

This does not apply, however, in towing mode. The indicator light does not flash if a turn signal is out on the trailer or the towing vehicle. Additional information on the turn signals ⇒ *page 77.* ■

Applies to vehicles: with towing hitch

## Trailer turn signal assembly ⇦⇨

*The indicator light also blinks if the turn signal is operated when towing a trailer.*

The indicator light ⇦⇨ blinks when the turn signal is used, if a trailer has been properly connected to the vehicle.

If one of the turn signal bulbs on the trailer is burned out or defective, the indicator light will not blink when you use the turn signals.

**Tips**

For vehicles with a factory installed towing hitch or a trailer hitch that was installed later according to factory specifications, the trailer turn signal assembly is actuated. ■

## Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) is part of the On-Board Diagnostic (OBD II) system. The symbol lights up when the ignition is turned on and will turn off after the engine has started and has settled at a constant idle speed. This indicates that the MIL is working properly.

The warning light illuminates when there is a malfunction in the engine electronic system. Contact your authorized Audi dealer and have the malfunction corrected.

**An improperly closed fuel filler cap may also cause the MIL light to illuminate** ⇒ *page 327.*

For more information ⇒ *page 29.* ■

Applies to vehicles: with lane assist

## Lane assist (system is ready)

The indicator light shows that the system is ready to use. A warning alerts the driver when the vehicle drives over detected lane boundary lines.

More information about lane assist ⇒ *page 171.* ■

Applies to vehicles: with lane assist

## Lane assist (system is not ready)

The indicator light shows that the system is turned on but unable to send a warning.

More information about lane assist ⇒ *page 171.* ■

## Safety belts

*This warning/indicator light reminds you to put on your safety belt.*

The warning/indicator light illuminates when the ignition is switched on to remind the driver and (on USA models only) any front passenger to put on the safety belt. Additionally, an acoustic warning (gong) will also sound.

For more Information ⇒ *page 231,* “Safety belt warning light”. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Air Suspension

## Adaptive Air Suspension

This warning/indicator light has the following functions:

- It illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is turned on as function check and then goes out.
- If the warning/indicator light illuminates or blinks continuously, there is a system fault in the Adaptive Air Suspension. A system fault can result in limited ride comfort and **low ground clearance**. Drive safely to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop, and have the fault corrected.
- If the warning/indicator light flashes, you should not drive the vehicle. The flashing warning/indicator light points to an extreme High level. A very *pronounced lifting* of the vehicle (extreme High level) can result, for example, when a heavy load is removed from the vehicle. As soon as the level has returned to normal, the warning/indicator light stops flashing, and you can drive away.
- If the warning/indicator light flashes in conjunction with the warning/indicator light, you should not drive off immediately in order to prevent damage to the underbody. The two warning/indicator lights flashing together points to an extreme Low level. A very *pronounced lowering* of the vehicle (extreme Low level) can result, for example, from a heavy load. As soon as the level has returned to normal, the warning/indicator lights stop flashing, and you can drive away.

**Note**

If the warning/indicator light flashes in conjunction with the warning/indicator light, you should not drive the vehicle because low-lying vehicle parts can bottom out as you drive over uneven ground and be damaged as a result. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Air Suspension

## Adaptive Air Suspension

This warning/indicator light has the following functions:

- It illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is turned on as function check and then goes out. ▶

- It comes on for approximately 15 seconds as a warning of **reduced ground clearance**, if the dynamic mode is activated and if the ignition is switched on ⇒ *page 207*, "Chassis controls".
- If the warning/indicator light flashes in conjunction with the warning/indicator light, you should not drive the vehicle immediately in order to prevent damage to the underbody. The two warning/indicator lights flashing together points to an extreme Low level. A very *pronounced lowering* of the vehicle (extreme Low level) can result, for example, from a heavy load. As soon as the level has returned to normal, the warning/indicator lights stop flashing, and you can drive away.

**Note**

If the warning/indicator light flashes in conjunction with the warning/indicator light, you should not drive the vehicle because low-lying vehicle parts can bottom out as you drive over uneven ground and be damaged as a result. ■

## High beam

The warning/indicator light illuminates when the high beams are on or when you use the headlight flasher. For more information about using the high beams, see ⇒ *page 77*. ■

## Cruise control
## CRUISE (USA models) / (Canada models)

The warning/indicator light illuminates when the cruise control is activated. ■

## Anti-lock brake system (ABS)
## ABS (USA models) / (Canada models)

*This warning/indicator light monitors the ABS and the electronic differential lock (EDL).*

The warning/indicator light will come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. The light will go out after an automatic check sequence is completed.

### There is a malfunction in the ABS when:

- The warning/indicator light does not illuminate when you switch on the ignition.
- The warning/indicator light does not go out after a few seconds.
- The warning/indicator light illuminates while driving.

**The brake system will still respond even without the assistance of the ABS system. See your authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible to restore full braking performance.** For more information regarding the ABS ⇒ *page 292*.

**The ABS warning light and the brake warning light come on together. The ABS will not work and you will notice a change in braking response and performance.**

### Malfunction in the brake system

If the brake warning light ⇒ *page 23* and the ABS warning illuminate *together* there may be a malfunction in the ABS, and there may also be a malfunction in the brake system itself ⇒ ⚠.

In the event of a **malfunction in the brake system** the warning/indicator light BRAKE (USA models)/ (Canada models) in the instrument cluster flashes. By pressing the CHECK button, you can bring up a driver message which explains the malfunction in more detail. Please note ⇒ *page 32*.

### Malfunction in the electronic differential lock (EDL)

The EDL works together with the ABS. The ABS warning light will come on if there is a malfunction in the EDL system ⇒ *page 290*. See your authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **If the ABS (USA models)/(Canada models) warning light does not go out, or if it comes on while driving, the ABS system is not working properly. The vehicle can then be stopped only with the standard brakes (without ABS). You will not have the protection ABS provides. Contact your authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.**
- ***USA models:* If the BRAKE warning light and the ABS warning light come on together, the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Have your vehicle repaired immediately by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake applications.**
- ***Canada models:* If the brake warning light and the ABS warning light come on together, the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Have your vehicle repaired immediately by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake applications. ■**

## Parking brake PARK BRAKE (USA models) /(P) (Canada models)

*The indicator light monitors the parking brake.*

When the parking brake is applied and the ignition is switched on, the indicator light comes on (P). The indicator light must go out when the parking brake is released. ■

## Brake system BRAKE (USA models) /(!) (Canada models)

*The warning/indicator light flashes if brake fluid level is low, if there is an ABS system malfunction or a parking brake malfunction.*

The light illuminates when the ignition is turned on. It goes out after the engine has been started. This indicates that the brake warning light is functioning properly.

**If the brake warning light does not light up when the engine is cranking, there may be a malfunction in the electrical system. In this case, contact your Audi dealer.**

If the brake system warning/indicator light flashes, there is a brake system malfunction. By pressing the CHECK button, you can bring up a driver message which explains the malfunction in more detail ⇒ *page 32*.

If the ABS fails, the ABS warning/indicator light ABS (USA models)/(ABS) (Canada models) flashes together with the brake system warning/indicator light ⇒ ⚠.

(USA models): If the warning light BRAKE and the warning light illuminate together, immediately contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have all brake pads inspected ⇒ *page 37*.

When the light comes on, an audible warning signal is also given.

**⚠ WARNING**

- ***USA models:* If the BRAKE warning light and the ABS warning light come on together, the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Have your vehicle repaired immediately by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake applications.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- ***Canada models:*** **If the brake warning light and the ABS warning light come on together, the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Have your vehicle repaired immediately by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake applications.**
- **If the brake warning/indicator light does not go out after a few seconds and the parking brake released, or lights up while you are driving, the fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir is too low. If you believe that it is safe to do so, proceed immediately at low speed to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or qualified repair facility and have the brake system inspected.**
- **Always keep in mind that after several brake applications, you will need greater pressure on the brake pedal to stop your vehicle. Do not rely on strained brakes to respond with maximum stopping power in critical situations. You must allow for increased braking distances. The extra distance used up by fading brakes could lead to an accident. ■**

# Driver information display

## Introduction

### General notes

*The driver information display inside the instrument cluster provides you, the driver, with much useful information.*




**Fig. 8 Instrument cluster: center display**

Information from the Driver Information System is shown in the display in the center of the instrument cluster.

When you turn on the ignition and while you are driving, some functions and vehicle components are scanned for their operating status. Malfunctions or required service procedures are signalled audibly and shown by red and yellow lighted symbols and reminders to the driver in the display.

The driver is also shown information about radio and CD operation and directions for the navigation system. You can find additional information on these subjects in the MMI manual.

The Driver Information System provides the following functions:


| | |
|---|---|
| Sound system display | ⇒ *page 26* |
| Outside air temperature | ⇒ *page 26* |
| Digital speedometer | ⇒ *page 27* |
| Door open indicator | ⇒ *page 27* |
| Defective light bulb | ⇒ *page 27* |
| Service interval display | ⇒ *page 28* |
| Auto Check system | ⇒ *page 30* |
| Driver information | ⇒ *page 30* |
| Speed limiter | ⇒ *page 29* |
| Trip computer | ⇒ *page 40* |
| Adaptive Air Suspension* | ⇒ *page 209* |
| Tire pressure monitoring | ⇒ *page 42* |
| Selector lever position | ⇒ *page 185* |


### Tips

In the event of a malfunction either a red or yellow icon appears in the display. Red symbols indicate **Danger** ⇒ *page 31*. Yellow symbols indicate a **Warning** ⇒ *page 35*. ■

## Sound system display




**Fig. 9 Display: sound system**

If priority 1 or priority 2 faults are not shown by the Auto Check Control, the name of the radio station you are tuned to or the frequency and the reception range are shown in the upper area of the display.

When the CD is in use, the title of the track being played is shown. The number of the CD (CD1 to CD6) currently being played is also shown. ■

## Outside temperature display




**Fig. 10 Display: outside temperature**

At temperatures below 41 °F (+5 °C) a snowflake symbol appears ahead of the temperature display. It is intended to remind the driver to pay special attention to **ice on the road**.

If the vehicle is stationary, or if you are driving at a very low speed, the temperature shown in the display might be slightly higher than the actual outside temperature. This is caused by the heat being radiated from the engine.

If you have selected the °C (degrees Celsius) unit for temperature in the MMI, the outside temperature display also appears automatically in °C.

**WARNING**

- **Never rely exclusively on the outside temperature display to determine if a road surface is icy or not. Keep in mind that road surfaces, especially bridges and overpasses, could be ice covered and slippery even at an outside temperature above 41 °F (+5 °C).**
- **Always remember, even if the "snowflake" symbol (ice warning) does not appear in the display, black ice could be on the road.**
- **Always reduce your speed and drive with special care in cold weather conditions when the chance of encountering icy road surfaces increases.** ■

## Digital speedometer




**Fig. 11 Display: Digital speedometer**

Current speed appears in the display. Speed is shown in 1 mph measures (USA models) or 1 km/h measures (Canada models).

You can switch the display from miles to kilometers and vice versa via the MMI. ■

## Open door or trunk lid warning

*The pictogram alerts you when doors or the rear lid have been left open.*

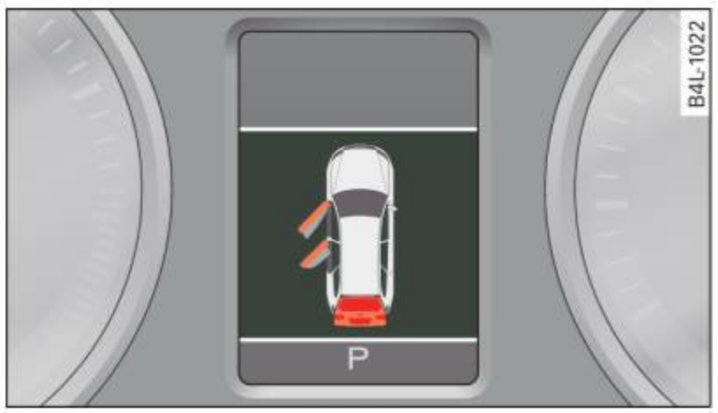



**Fig. 12 Display: open door or rear lid warning**

With the ignition switched on, the open door or rear lid warning illuminates when at least *one* door or the hood or the trunk lid is not closed. The symbol also shows you *which* door(s) or lid is not closed.

In the illustration ⇒ fig. 12 it is the driver's door, the left rear door and the rear lid. As soon as all the doors, the hood, the rear lid and the fuel filler cap are properly closed, the door and rear lid warning turns off and the Driver Information System functions selected are displayed again. ■

## Defective light bulb warning

*The defective light bulb warning tells you when a vehicle light bulb has become defective.*




**Fig. 13 Display: defective light bulb warning**

The defective light bulb warning monitors the function of the light bulbs. If this symbol illuminates, a brake light, a turn signal (front or rear), a headlight, the backup light, a fog light or a rear fog light has failed.

**WARNING**

- **Light bulbs are pressurized and could explode while they are being changed causing serious personal injury.**
- **Work with due care when handling the high-voltage section of gas discharge (xenon) lights. Failure to do so could result in death or serious injury.**

### Tips

Have the bulb replaced or the connection repaired by your authorized Audi Service department. ■

## Service interval display

*The service interval display reminds you when your next service is due.*




**Fig. 14 MMI display: Service interval display**




**Fig. 15 Display: Service interval display**

The date for service is calculated automatically.

### Service inquiry (distance remaining)

The distance remaining to the next service event can be displayed in the MMI ⇒ fig. 14. The distance remaining is updated each time the ignition is switched on, the first time after 310 miles (500 kilometers).

If the distance remaining is queried on new vehicles or after service has been performed, the due date within the first 310 miles (500 kilometers) is always shown in the display with the following message.

**SERVICE IN ----- MILES (KM) --- DAYS**

### Service reminder

30 days before the next service is due, a service reminder appears in the display when you turn on the ignition ⇒ fig. 15.

After about 5 seconds the display switches back to normal. The distance and time remaining are updated each time the ignition is turned on until the date due for service is reached.

### Service

When the due date for service is reached, the message **Service due !** appears in the display immediately after you turn on the ignition. Additionally, a warning tone sounds. After about 5 seconds the display switches back to normal.

### Note

If you disconnect the battery terminals, no calculations can be made for the service interval display during this time and no service reminder will appear. Remember that observing the proper service intervals is vitally important to extending the life of your vehicle, particularly the engine, and maintaining its value. Even if the mileage driven is low, the maximum period of one year from one service to the next must not be exceeded. ■

# On-Board Diagnostic system (OBD)

## Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) in the instrument cluster ⇒ *page 17,* fig. 7 is part of the On-Board Diagnostic (OBD II) system.

The warning/indicator light illuminates when the ignition is switched on and goes out after the engine starts and the idle has stabilized. This indicates that the MIL is working properly.

**If the light does not go out** after the engine is started, or illuminates while you are driving, a malfunction may exist in the engine system. If the light starts flashing, the catalytic converter could be damaged.

Continue driving **with reduced power** (avoiding sustained high speeds and/or rapid accelerations) and have the condition corrected. Contact your authorized Audi dealer.

If the light illuminates, the electronic speed limiter may also be malfunctioning. For more information ⇒ *page 29,* "Electronic speed limiter".

**An improperly closed fuel filler cap may also cause the MIL light to illuminate** ⇒ *page 327.* ■

## On-Board Diagnostics

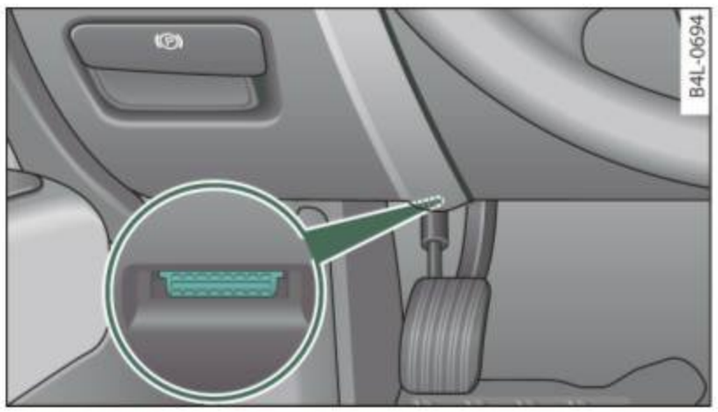



**Fig. 16 Location of Data Link Connector (DLC)**

On-Board Diagnostics monitors the components of your emission control system. Each monitored component in your engine system has been assigned a code. In case of a malfunction, the component will be identified and the fault stored as a code in the control module memory.

The MIL light may also illuminate if there is a leak in the on-board fuel vapor recovery system. If the light illuminates after a refuelling, stop the vehicle and make sure the fuel filler cap is properly closed ⇒ *page 327.*

In order to make an accurate diagnosis, the stored data can only be displayed using special diagnostic equipment (generic scan tool for OBD).

In order to connect the special diagnostic equipment, push the plug into the Data Link Connector (DLC). The DLC is located to the right of the hood release ⇒ fig. 16.

Your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop can interpret the code and perform the necessary repair. ■

## Electronic speed limiter

Your vehicle may be factory equipped with tires that are rated for a maximum speed of 130 mph (210 km/h). This is less than the maximum speed of your vehicle. To reduce the risk of sudden tire failure and loss of control if the vehicle is operated at excessive speeds, your vehicle also has an electronic speed limiter. The electronic speed limiter prevents your vehicle from going faster than the tire speed rating. For more information ⇒ *page 359.*

If the engine control unit receives faulty vehicle roadspeed signals, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) will illuminate. If this occurs, contact the nearest authorized Audi dealer for assistance. ▶

**WARNING**

**Always observe the posted speed limits and adjust your speed to suit prevailing road, traffic and weather conditions. Never drive your vehicle faster than the maximum speed rating of the tires installed. ■**

# Auto Check Control

## Introduction

The Auto-Check control monitors the function of certain vehicle features and components. It simply makes sure these features and components are working properly. The Auto-Check control works as long as the ignition is on, as well as whenever the vehicle is driven.

If a component is malfunctioning or if the need for an urgent repair has been detected, this will appear in the instrument cluster display. You will also hear an audible warning tone. The displays are color coded in either red or yellow depending on their level of priority.

A red symbol means **Danger**, a yellow symbol indicates **Warning**. In certain situations, information message for the driver appear in addition to the red and yellow symbols.

### Function test: automatic transmission

The Auto-Check Control will automatically perform a test each time you switch on the ignition. With the selector lever in **P** or **N**, the following message appears in the display:

**When stationary apply footbrake while selecting gear.**

When you a select a different gear (for example: **R**, **D**, etc.), the message will disappear and the Auto-Check function is displayed.

If there is a malfunction, then the malfunction message will appear about 15 seconds after the you start the vehicle. At the same time you will hear a warning tone. ■

## Driver information messages

*Driver information messages are shown in the instrument cluster display in addition to the red and yellow symbols.*




**Fig. 17 Instrument cluster: CHECK button**

For example, if the transmission selector lever is not in the P position when the engine is turned off, the following message appears:

**Shift to P, otherwise vehicle can roll away. Doors do not lock if lever is not in P.**

The ignition key can only be removed with the selector in this position. This and other messages are brought up if a function cannot be carried out.

### Driver messages and red symbols

If a red symbol appears in the display, a driver message can be shown by pressing the CHECK button.

For example, the symbol for a problem with engine oil pressure appears in the display. If you then press the CHECK button, the following driver message appears in the display:

**Switch off engine and check oil level**

The driver message in the display goes out after about 5 seconds. The driver message can be displayed again by briefly pressing the CHECK button.

### Driver messages and yellow symbols

If a yellow symbol appears in the display, a driver message is also displayed automatically.

For example, the symbol appears in the display, indicating low windshield washer fluid level. The following message also appears:

**Please top up washer fluid**

The driver message disappears after a few seconds. The driver message can be displayed again by briefly pressing the CHECK button. ■

## Red symbols

*A red symbol means DANGER.*




**Fig. 18 Display: engine coolant level warning (priority 1)**

– Pull off the road.
– Stop the vehicle.
– Turn off the engine.
– Check the malfunctioning system. Contact your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

Red symbols indicate a priority 1 malfunction - Danger!

With a priority 1 malfunction, a large symbol appears in the center area of the display ⇒ fig. 18. When the symbol appears, *three* warning tones sound in succession. The symbol continues to blink until the malfunction has been repaired.

If there are *more than one* priority 1 malfunctions, the symbols appear one after the other for about 2 seconds.

An additional driver message can also be displayed by briefly pressing the CHECK button.

The red symbols mean:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | Alternator malfunction | ⇒ *page 32* |
| BRAKE | **USA models:** Brake system malfunction | ⇒ *page 32* |
| | **Canada models:** Brake system malfunction | ⇒ *page 32* |
| | Engine coolant level too low/engine coolant temperature too high | ⇒ *page 33* |
| | Engine oil pressure too low | ⇒ *page 33* |
| | Faulty steering | ⇒ *page 34* |
| | Faulty ignition switch | ⇒ *page 34* |

### Tips

- If the warning/indicator light BRAKE (USA models)/ (Canada models) in the instrument cluster flashes, there is a brake system malfunction. By pressing the CHECK button, you can bring up a driver message which explains the malfunction in more detail. Please note ⇒ *page 32*.

- Speed warnings threshold 1 (USA models)/ (Canada models) and threshold 2 (USA models)/ (Canada models) are also shown as red symbols. The warning is always shown as a small symbol in the upper area of the display ⇒ *page 38*. ■

## Alternator malfunction

If the symbol in the instrument panel display flashes, then there is a malfunction in the alternator or the vehicle electronics. A warning to the driver will appear, too. The driver warning goes out after about 5 seconds, but it can be brought up at any time by pressing the CHECK button again.

Usually, you can still drive to the next dealership. Turn off all but the most necessary electrical consumers, since these drain the vehicle's battery.

**Note**

If the warning symbol (coolant system malfunction) also lights up on the instrument panel during the trip ⇒ *page 33*, then you have to stop immediately and turn off the engine. The coolant pump is not working anymore - danger of damage to the engine! ■

## Brake system malfunction

*A malfunction in the brake system must be repaired as soon as possible.*

If the **warning/indicator light BRAKE** (USA models)/ (Canada models) in the instrument cluster flashes, there is a brake system malfunction. By pressing the CHECK button, you can bring up a driver message which explains the malfunction in more detail.

### Stop vehicle and check brake fluid level

- Pull off the road.
- Stop the vehicle.
- Turn off the engine.
- Check the brake fluid level ⇒ *page 341*.
- Contact your nearest authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop if necessary.

### Warning! Fault in ABS brake system. Contact workshop

- Drive carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop and have the malfunction corrected ⇒ .

If the ABS system malfunctions, the ABS warning/indicator light illuminates together with the brake system malfunction warning/indicator light ⇒ .

**WARNING**

- **Always observe the warnings in ⇒ *page 324*, "Engine compartment", before opening the hood and checking the brake fluid.**
- **Driving with low brake fluid is a safety hazard. Stop the car and get professional assistance.**
- ***USA models:* If the BRAKE warning light and the ABS warning light come on together, the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Have your vehicle repaired immediately by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake applications.**
- ***Canada models:* If the brake warning light and the ABS warning light come on together, the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel lock-up can cause loss of**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

**vehicle control and an accident. Have your vehicle repaired immediately by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake applications. ■**

## Engine cooling system malfunction

*A malfunction in the engine cooling system must be repaired as soon as possible.*

When the symbol in the display blinks, then either the engine coolant *temperature* is too high, or the coolant *level* is too low. An additional driver message can also be displayed by pressing the CHECK button:

**Switch off engine and check coolant level**

- Pull off the road.
- Stop the vehicle.
- Turn off the engine.
- Check coolant level ⇒ *page 338*.
- Add coolant if necessary ⇒ *page 339*.
- Continue driving only after the engine coolant warning/indicator light goes out.
- Contact your authorized Audi dealer for assistance if necessary.

If the engine coolant level is correct, then the radiator fan may be the cause of the malfunction.

If the warning symbol (alternator malfunction) also lights up on the instrument panel ⇒ *page 32*, then the fan belt may be damaged.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **If your vehicle should break down for mechanical or other reasons, park at a safe distance from moving traffic, turn off the engine and turn on the hazard warning lights ⇒ *page 76*, "Emergency flasher ▲".**
- **Never open the hood if you see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment - you risk being scalded. Wait until you can no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping.**
- **The engine compartment of any vehicle is a dangerous area. Before you perform any work in the engine compartment, turn of the engine and allow it to cool. Follow the warning stickers ⇒ *page 324*, "Engine compartment".**

**Note**

Do not continue driving if the symbol illuminates. There is a malfunction in the engine cooling system – you could damage your engine. ■

## Engine oil pressure malfunction

*The red engine oil pressure warning symbol requires immediate service or repair. Driving with a low-oil-pressure indication is likely to inflict severe damage to the engine.*

If the symbol appears in the display and blinks, the oil pressure is too low. An additional driver message can also be displayed by pressing the CHECK button:

**Switch off engine and check oil level**

### Immediate actions

- Pull off the road.

– Stop the vehicle.
– Turn off the engine.
– **Check the engine oil level** *with the dipstick ⇒ page 335.*

### Dipstick readings checks too low

– Top off oil to the proper level ⇒ *page 336.*
– Make sure that the oil pressure warning symbol appears no longer in the display before you start driving again.

### Dipstick reading checks OK

– If the oil pressure warning symbol starts flashing again even though the engine oil level checks OK on the dipstick, **do not continue driving and do not let the engine run in idle.** Instead, contact your authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

### Tips

**• The engine oil pressure symbol is not an indicator for a low engine oil level. Do not rely on it. Instead, check the oil level in your engine at regular intervals, preferably each time you refuel, and always before going on a long trip.**

**• The yellow oil level warning indication requires oil refill or workshop service without delay. Do not wait until the red oil pressure warning starts to flash before you respond to the low oil level warning. By then, your engine may already have suffered serious damage. ■**

## Steering malfunction

*If there is a malfunction in the electronic steering column lock, the steering cannot be unlocked.*

If the symbol in the display blinks, there is a malfunction in the electronic steering column lock. An additional driver message can also be displayed by pressing the CHECK button:

**Do not drive vehicle: Steering defective**

– Contact your nearest authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
– Do **not** tow your vehicle.

**WARNING**

**Your vehicle must not be towed in the event of a malfunction in the electronic steering column lock because it cannot be steered due to the locked steering. If it is towed with the steering locked, there is the risk of an accident. ■**

## Ignition lock malfunction

*A malfunction in the ignition lock must be repaired immediately.*

If the symbol in the display blinks, there is a malfunction in the electronic ignition lock. An additional driver message can also be displayed by pressing the CHECK button:

**Ignition lock defective. Contact workshop!**

– Do **not** turn the engine off.
– Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer to have the malfunction corrected. ▶

If there is a malfunction in the electronic ignition lock, the ignition cannot be turned off. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer to have the cause of the malfunction corrected.

On vehicles with Convenience key*, the engine should not be switched off using the STOP button because the engine cannot be started again after the ignition is switched off. ■

## Yellow symbols

*A yellow symbol means WARNING.*




**Fig. 19 Display: low fuel level warning (priority 2)**

Yellow symbols indicate a priority 2 malfunction - Warning!

When a yellow warning symbol appears, *one* warning tone sounds. A driver message appears as well to explain the malfunction in more detail. The driver warning goes out after about 5 seconds, but it can be brought up again at any time by pressing the CHECK button.

Check the displayed function as soon as possible. If *more than one* priority 2 malfunction is detected, all symbols will appear one after the other for about 2 seconds.

Yellow symbols mean:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | Convenience key*<br>Key not in vehicle | ⇒ *page 146* |
| BRAKE LIGHT | **USA models:**<br>Defective brake light | ⇒ *page 27* |
| | **Canada models:**<br>Defective brake light | ⇒ *page 27* |
| | Defective light bulb | ⇒ *page 27* |
| | Light/rain sensor defective* | ⇒ *page 36* |
| | Windshield washer fluid level low | ⇒ *page 36* |
| | Low fuel level | ⇒ *page 36* |
| | Battery voltage | ⇒ *page 36* |
| | Worn brake pads | ⇒ *page 37* |
| | Dynamic headlight range control defective | ⇒ *page 37* |
| | Check engine oil level<br>⇒ *page 335* | ⇒ *page 37* |
| | Engine oil sensor malfunction | ⇒ *page 37* |
| | Engine speed limitation * | ⇒ *page 37* |
| | Adaptive Light defective* | ⇒ *page 37* |
| | Ignition lock malfunction | ⇒ *page 38* |
| | Windshield wiper defective | ⇒ *page 38* |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | Tire pressure monitoring system<br>Loss of air pressure | ⇒ *page 44* |
| TPMS | Tire pressure monitoring system<br>System not available | ⇒ *page 46* |
| | Battery in remote control key | ⇒ *page 50* |
| | Automatic transmission malfunction | ⇒ *page 189* |

■

Applies to vehicles: with Convenience key

## Key not in vehicle

**Key not in vehicle**

This reminder appears along with the symbol if the master key is removed from the vehicle with the engine running. It is intended to remind you (e.g. when changing drivers) not to continue the journey without the master key.

If the master key is no longer in the vehicle, you cannot switch off the ignition after stopping the engine and you also cannot start the engine again. What is more, you cannot lock the vehicle from the outside. ■

Applies to vehicles: with light and rain sensor

## Light/rain sensor defective

**Automatic headlights/automatic wipers defective**

If the symbol illuminates, the light sensor has failed. For safety reasons the low beams are turned on permanently with the switch in **AUTO**. However, you can continue to turn the lights on and off using the light switch. In the case of a defect in the rain sensor, the windshield wiper lever functions are still available. Have the light/rain sensor checked as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer. ■

## Windshield washer fluid level too low

**Please top up washer fluid**

If the symbol illuminates, add windshield washer fluid to the washer system and also to the headlight washer system ⇒ *page 346*. ■

## Fuel supply too low

**Please refuel**

When this symbol illuminates for the first time, the fuel reserve in your vehicle is still between 2.6 and 3.2 gallons (10-12 liters). Refuel as soon as possible ⇒ *page 326*.

If the symbol lights up, even when there is ample fuel in the tank, and the text **Tank system malfunction! Contact workshop** appears in the display, there is a fault in the system. Contact a qualified workshop to have the fault rectified. ■

## Battery voltage

If the battery's state of charge is not in the optimal range, the symbol is shown in the display and the driver message **Low battery charge: battery will be charged while driving** appears.

While this driver notification is displayed, you have to be prepared for limited starting capability.

### Driver message appears and goes out again

If this driver message appears after the ignition is turned on or while driving and it goes out again after a while, the battery has been adequately recharged.

### Driver message appears and does not go out again

If this driver notification appears after the ignition is turned on or while driving and does not go out again, the battery's state of charge is not in the optimal range. Starting capability is restricted. Have the battery checked by an authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible. ■

## Worn brake pads

**Brake pads!**

If the warning light illuminates, immediately contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have all brake pads inspected. On USA models the warning light comes on together with the warning light BRAKE. Both sets of brake pads on an axle must always be replaced at the same time.

**WARNING**

**Driving with bad brakes can cause a collision and serious personal injury.**

- **If the warning light and the warning light BRAKE[2] with the message Brake pads! comes on in the instrument cluster display, immediately contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have all brake pads checked or replaced if necessary. ■**

## Headlight range control defective

**Headlight range control defective !**

If the symbol illuminates, the dynamic headlight range control is no longer working properly. Have the system checked and repaired at your authorized Audi dealer. ■

[2] BRAKE: USA models only

## Engine oil level

**Please check oil level**

When the symbol illuminates, check the engine oil level as soon as possible ⇒ *page 335*. Top off the oil at your earliest opportunity ⇒ *page 336*. ■

## Engine oil sensor defective

**Oil level! Sensor defective**

If the symbol illuminates, contact your authorized Audi dealer and have the oil sensor inspected. Until you have this done, check the oil level each time you refuel just to be on the safe side ⇒ *page 335*. ■

Applies to vehicles: with engine speed limitation

## Engine speed limitation

**Engine speed maximum XXXX RPM**

The symbol illuminates when there is an engine control malfunction. The indicator light EPC in the instrument cluster also illuminates. The engine speed is limited to the speed displayed in the driver information system. Keep in mind that the engine speed will not exceed the value displayed in the driver information system, for example when downshifting.

Please go to an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop to have the malfunction repaired. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Light

## Adaptive Light defective

**Adaptive Light defective** ▶

When this symbol illuminates, it means that Adaptive Light is defective. Go to an authorized Audi dealer to have the headlights or the control unit for the Adaptive Light repaired. ■

## Ignition lock malfunction

If the symbol in the display comes on, there is a malfunction in the electronic ignition lock. An additional driver message can be displayed by pressing the CHECK button:

**Ignition lock defective**

– Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop at your earliest convenience to have the malfunction corrected. ■

## Windshield wipers faulty

**Windscreen wiper defective !**

When this symbol illuminates, it means that the electronics for the windshield wipers are defective. Please go to an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have the windshield wiper system repaired. ■

# Speed warning system

## Overview

*The speed warning system helps you to keep your driving speed below a set speed limit.*

The speed warning system warns the driver if he exceeds a previously stored maximum speed. A warning tone will sound as soon as the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed by about 3 mph (3 km/h). At the same time, a warning symbol appears in the display.

The speed warning system has **two warning thresholds** that function independently of each other and that have somewhat different purposes:

### Speed warning 1

You can use speed warning 1 to set the maximum speed while you are driving. This setting will remain in effect until you turn off the ignition, assuming that you have not changed or reset the setting.

The speed warning symbol (USA models)/ (Canada models) in the warning 1 display appears when you exceed the maximum speed. It goes out when the speed falls below the stored maximum speed.

The speed warning symbol will also go out if the speed *exceeds* the stored maximum speed by more than about 25 mph (40 km/h) for at least 10 seconds. The stored maximum speed is deleted.

Setting speed warning 1 ⇒ *page 39*.

### Speed warning 2

Storing warning 2 is recommended if you *always* want to be reminded of a certain speed, for example when you are traveling in a country that has a general maximum speed limit, or if you do not want to exceed a specified speed for winter tires.

The speed warning 2 symbol, (USA models)/ (Canada models) appears in the display when you exceed the stored speed limit. Unlike warning 1, it will not go out until the vehicle speed drops below the stored speed limit.

Setting speed warning 2 ⇒ *page 39*.

### Tips

Even though your vehicle is equipped with a speed warning system, you should still watch the speedometer to make sure you are not driving faster than the speed limit. ■

## Speed warning 1: setting a speed limit

*Warning threshold 1 is set by the CHECK button.*

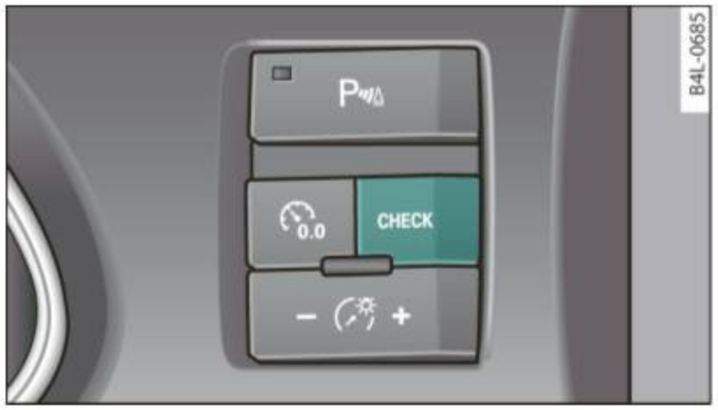



**Fig. 20 CHECK button in the instrument cluster**

### Storing the maximum speed

– Drive at the desired maximum speed.

– Briefly press the CHECK button ⇒ fig. 20.

### Resetting the maximum speed

– Drive the vehicle at a speed of at least 3 mph (5 km/h)

– Press the CHECK button for more than 2 seconds.

The speed warning symbol (USA models)/ (Canada models) will appear briefly in the display when you release the CHECK button to indicate that the maximum speed has been stored successfully.

The maximum speed remains stored until it is changed by pressing the CHECK button again briefly or until it is deleted by a lengthy push on the button. ■

## Speed warning 2: setting a speed limit

*Warning threshold 2 is set, changed and deleted in the MMI.*




**Fig. 21 MMI display: Set warning threshold 2**

### Switching speed warning on and off

– Press the CAR function button.

– Select **Instrument cluster**. The **Instrument cluster** menu appears ⇒ fig. 21.

– Select Speed warning **On** to switch on the warning threshold or **Off** to turn off the warning threshold.

### Setting and adjusting the warning threshold

– Press the CAR function button.

– Select **Instrument cluster**. The **Instrument cluster** menu appears.

– Select the second item in the **Speed warning** menu. The submenu **Speed threshold** appears ⇒ fig. 21.

– Set the warning threshold you want. ▶

Warning threshold 2 can be adjusted within a speed range of 18 to 125 mph (30 to 200 km/h). Settings can be adjusted in intervals of 6 mph (10 km/h) each. ■

# Trip computer

## Introduction

*The trip computer gives you information on current and average fuel mileage, average speed, fuel range and driving time.*




**Fig. 22 Trip computer display: Average fuel mileage**

The following driving information is continuously evaluated by the trip computer and can be displayed sequentially in the instrument cluster display.

### Fuel range

The estimated cruising range in miles (km) appears in the display. This tells you how far your vehicle will be able to travel on the current tank of fuel and with the same driving style. The display changes in increments of 6 miles (10 km).

The cruising range is calculated based on the fuel consumption for the last 18 miles (30 km). If you drive conservatively, the cruising range will increase.

### Average fuel mileage

The average fuel economy in MPG (l/100 km) since you last cleared the memory appears in this display. You can use this display to adjust your driving technique to achieve a desired mileage.

### Current fuel mileage

The instantaneous fuel consumption in miles per gallon (l/100 km) is shown in this display. You can use this display to adjust your driving technique to achieve a desired mileage.

Fuel consumption is recalculated at intervals of 33 yards (30 meters). When the vehicle is stationary, the most recent fuel consumption is displayed.

### Average speed

The average speed in mph (km/h) since the last time the display was reset appears in the display.

### Elapsed time

The length of time that you have been driving since you last reset the memory appears in this display.

### Tips

- Fuel consumptions (average and current), range and speed are displayed in metric units on Canadian models.
- All stored values will be lost if the vehicle battery is disconnected. ■

## Memories

*The trip computer is equipped with two fully automatic memories.*




**Fig. 23 Trip computer display: memory level 1**

You can switch between the trip computer 1 and 2 by pressing the Reset button (B) ⇒ fig. 24

You can tell which memory level is currently active by the number in the display ⇒ fig. 23. The data from the single-trip memory (memory level 1) is being displayed if a **1** appears in the display. If a **2** is shown, then the data from the total-trip memory is being displayed (memory level 2).

### Single-trip memory (Trip computer 1)

The single-trip memory stores the trip information from the time the ignition is turned on until it is turned off. If the trip is continued **within 2 hours** from the time the ignition was turned off, the new data will be included in the calculation of the current trip information. If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours** the memory is reset automatically.

### Total-trip memory (Trip computer 2)

Unlike the single-trip memory, the total-trip memory is not reset automatically. This permits you to evaluate your driving data for the entire period between manual resets. ■

## Operation

*The trip computer is controlled by two switches on the windshield wiper lever.*

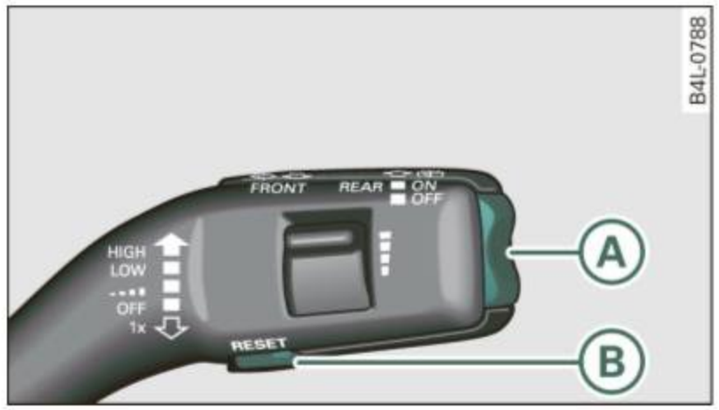



**Fig. 24 Windshield wiper lever: controls for the trip computer**

– Push the function selector switch up or down (A) ⇒ fig. 24. This will cause the five distinct trip computer functions to be displayed one after another.

The trip computer will not operate unless the ignition is on. When you turn on the ignition, the function that was in use when you last turned the ignition off will be displayed.

For example, in addition to the trip computer information, the direction of the navigation system is also displayed. To switch the display between the different information, tap the Reset button (B) briefly.

### Setting values to zero

To delete **one** current value from the trip computer, select the desired function and press the Reset button (B) for at least one second. The following values can be set to zero **individually** using the Reset button:

- elapsed time
- average fuel mileage
- average speed ▶

In addition, **all** the values in the single-trip or the total-trip memory can be deleted simultaneously.

**Tips**

All stored values will be lost if the vehicle battery is disconnected. ■

## MMI settings

*Basic settings for the trip computer can be made in the MMI.*

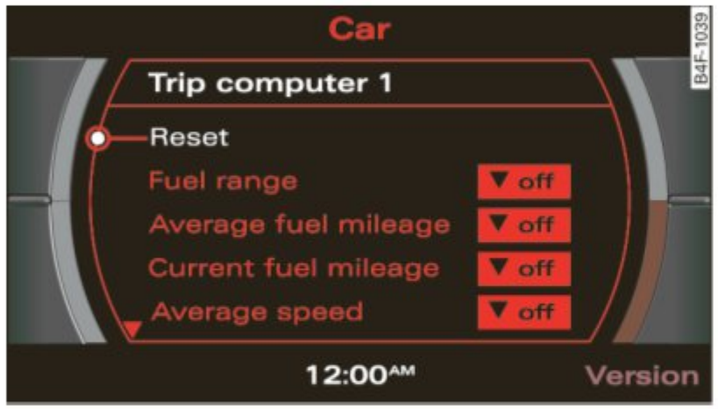



**Fig. 25 MMI display: Trip computer**

### Setting values to zero

– Press the CAR function button.

– Select **Instrument cluster**.

– Select **Trip computer 1** or **Trip computer 2**.

– Select **Reset** to delete all the values in the memory ⇒ fig. 25.

### Displaying and hiding driver information

– Press the CAR function button.

– Select **Instrument cluster**.

– Select **Trip computer 1** or **Trip computer 2**.

– Select, for example, **Fuel range On** to turn on the display or **Off** to turn the display off.

**All** values in the single-trip or the total-trip memory can be reset to zero simultaneously in the MMI. In addition you can determine what driving information from the trip computer should be shown in the instrument cluster display. If one of the pieces of driver information is turned *off*, that driver information will not be shown in the display. The information will continue to be calculated by the trip computer and can be turned back *on* at any time. ■

# Tire pressure monitoring system

## General notes (!)

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire ▶

pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly. ■

## Introduction

*The tire pressure monitoring system monitors air pressure in all four road wheels while the vehicle is moving.*

As soon as the tire pressure monitoring system senses a significant loss of air pressure in one or several tires, text messages and yellow symbols appear in the instrument cluster display to alert the driver. The (!) warning light in the instrument cluster comes on when the tire is significantly underinflated ⇒ *page 20*.

The warning light (!) also illuminates in the case of a system malfunction.

Be aware that tire pressure is also dependent on the temperature of the tire. For every 18 °F (10 °C) increase in tire temperature, tire pressure increases by about 1.5 psi (0.1 bar). The tire warms up while the vehicle is moving and tire pressure rises. So you should adjust tire pressure only when they are *cold*, when the temperature of the tires is roughly the same as the ambient air temperature.

In order to keep the tire pressure monitoring system properly calibrated, tire pressure on all four tires should be checked at regular intervals, adjusted if necessary and saved in the proper setting (recommended pressure) ⇒ *page 45*.

The tire pressure is shown on the tire pressure label. On USA vehicles, the tire pressure label is located on the driver's side B-pillar. On Canada vehicles, the tire pressure label is located either on the driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap. The tire pressure label lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the vehicle at its maximum capacity weight and the tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. For recommended tire pressures for normal load conditions, please see chapter ⇒ *page 351*.

**WARNING**

- **When the tire pressure monitoring system warning light is lit, one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. You should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's tire pressure label ⇒ *page 351*. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also is likely to impair the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.**
- **Do not adjust tire pressure when tire temperature is excessive. This could lead to serious tire damage and even cause the tire to burst, with the additional danger of an accident.**

**For the sake of the environment**

Driving with under-inflated tires reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life.

### Tips

- Each tire should be checked monthly when cold and set to the recommended inflation pressure as specified on the tire pressure table ⇒ *page 351*.
- The tire pressure monitoring system helps the driver to keep an eye on tire pressures. But the driver still has the responsibility for maintaining the correct tire pressure.
- Tire pressure must only be adjusted when the temperature of the tires is about the same as ambient air temperature.
- When tires are replaced, the sensors and valves should not be detached or exchanged. Only the valve core needs to be replaced and, if necessary, the valve and the wheel electronics replaced.
- If you should put different wheels and tires on your vehicle (e.g. winter wheels and tires), you must be certain that the wheels and tires are compatible with the tire pressure monitoring system. Otherwise the system will register a malfunction and a fault message will be displayed. For more information, contact your authorized Audi dealer.
- Adjust the tire pressure and store the pressure in the tire pressure monitoring system to the load you are carrying ⇒ *page 351*.
- For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇒ *page 404*. ■

## Significant loss of air pressure (!)

*The yellow symbol appears in the event of a significant loss of air pressure.*




**Fig. 26 Display: yellow symbol with message**

If the (!) warning light in the instrument cluster comes on and then the (!) symbol appears in the display ⇒ fig. 26, pressure in at least one tire is too low.

– Stop driving as soon as possible without endangering yourself and other drivers on the road.

– Inspect all tires.

– Change the tire if necessary ⇒ *page 373*.

The (!) warning light in the instrument cluster comes on when the tire is significantly underinflated.

In addition, the tire symbol (!) appears in the display together with a message ⇒ fig. 26.

After a few seconds, the message disappears again. If you would like to show the message again, press the CHECK button. ▶

**Tips**

- In the case of an intentional loss of air pressure, for example, when re-adjusting tire pressure, this has to be stored again afterwards ⇒ *page 45*.
- Tire pressure must only be adjusted when the temperature of the tires is about the same as ambient air temperature.
- The yellow symbol disappears, when the tire pressure is corrected and the new pressure is stored in the system ⇒ *page 45*.
- After changing a wheel you have to adjust the tire pressures on all wheels. In addition, you must then initialize the new tire pressures in the tire pressure monitoring system ⇒ *page 46*. ■

## Storing tire pressures

*Correct storage of specified pressure is the basic requirement for reliable tire pressure monitoring.*

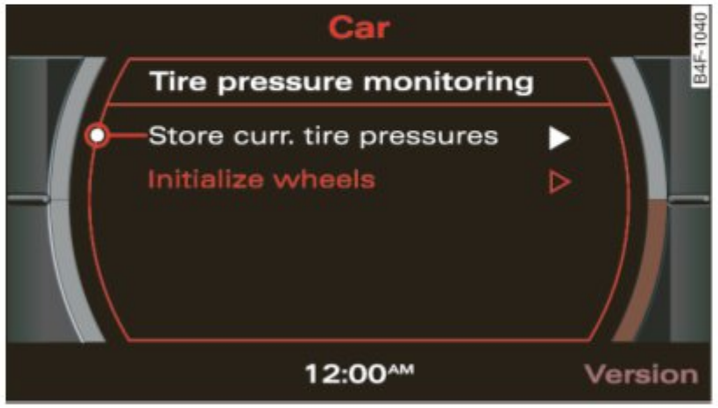



**Fig. 27 Car: Tire pressure monitoring system**

In order for the tire pressure monitoring system to operate appropriately, you have to re-save the specified pressures in the MMI whenever you adjust tire pressures, for example when the load condition of your vehicle changes. Proceed as follows:

### Correcting tire pressure

– Check the pressure in the tires.

– Adjust air pressure according to the tire pressure label or the pressures listed in this manual ⇒ *page 351*.

### Saving tire pressures

– Turn on the ignition.

– Press the CAR function button.

– Select **Systems** in the CAR menu.

– Select **Tire pressure monitoring**.

– Select **Store curr. tire pressures** ⇒ fig. 27.

All pressure warning indicators in the display will be canceled.

Following each intentional change in specified pressures, tire pressures must be resaved.

After the pressures are saved, the tire pressure monitoring system measures the current tire pressures and saves them as the new specified pressures.

**Tips**

- The tire pressure is shown on the tire pressure label. On USA vehicles, the tire pressure label is located on the driver's side B-pillar. On Canada vehicles, the tire pressure label is located either on the driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap. The tire pressure label lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the vehicle at its maximum capacity weight and the tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. For recommended tire pressures for normal load conditions, please see chapter ⇒ *page 351*.

• The tire pressure monitoring system helps the driver to keep an eye on tire pressures. But the driver still has the responsibility for maintaining the correct tire pressure. ■

## Wheel change

*If a wheel is changed, the wheels that were exchanged have to be re-programmed.*

– Turn on the ignition.

– Press the CAR function button.

– Select **Systems** in the CAR menu.

– Select **Tire pressure monitoring**.

– Select **Initialize wheels**.

Programming is necessary:

- after the tires have been rotated on the vehicle,
- if tires with new wheel sensors are used.

All pressure warning and system malfunction indicators in the display will be canceled.

If a wheel change has been made, it is necessary to complete the **Initialize wheels** function. After you have selected the function, the new wheels are programmed and the actual pressures are stored. This learning phase can take up to 20 minutes driving time.

During the learning process the tire pressure monitoring system is not available. ■

## Malfunctions TPMS

*A malfunction can have various causes.*

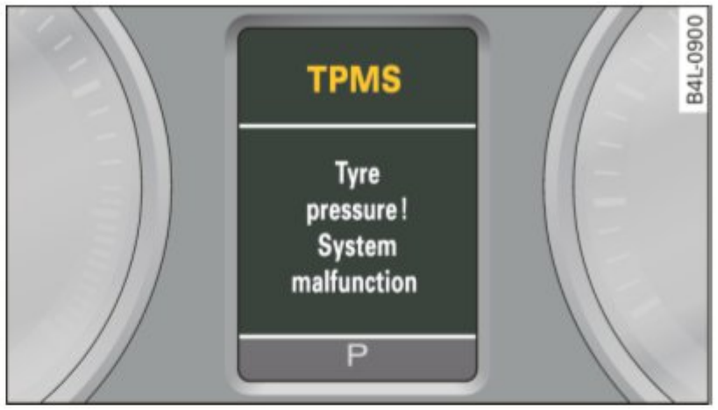



**Fig. 28 Display: System malfunction**

If the (!) warning light in the instrument cluster flashes for approximately one minute and then remains continuously illuminated and additionally the TPMS ⇒ fig. 28 symbol appears in the display, the tire pressure monitoring system is not available. This can have various causes.

- If the message appears at the end of the learning process, the system cannot recognize the wheels installed on the vehicle. This can be because one or more wheels without a wheel sensor were installed.
- A wheel sensor or other component may have failed.
- During initialization the system has detected more than 4 wheels on the vehicle, for example while driving next to another car with a tire pressure monitoring system.
- A wheel change was made but the **Initialize wheels** function ⇒ *page 46* was not activated.
- Audi replacement parts were not used.
- If snow chains are being used, system function can be compromised due to the shielding properties of the chains.
- The tire pressure monitoring system may not be available because of a radio malfunction.

- Transmitters with the same frequency, such as radio headphones in the vehicle or radio equipment, can cause a temporary disruption of the system through excessive electromagnetic fields.
- Eliminate the interference if possible/if you can and then re-start the **Initialize wheels** function. If the warning light comes on again, you should contact your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the problem corrected.
- Do not use commercially available tire sealants. Otherwise, the electrical components of the tire pressure monitoring system will no longer work properly and the sensor for the tire pressure monitoring system will have to be replaced by a qualified workshop. ■

# Opening and closing

## Keys

### Key set

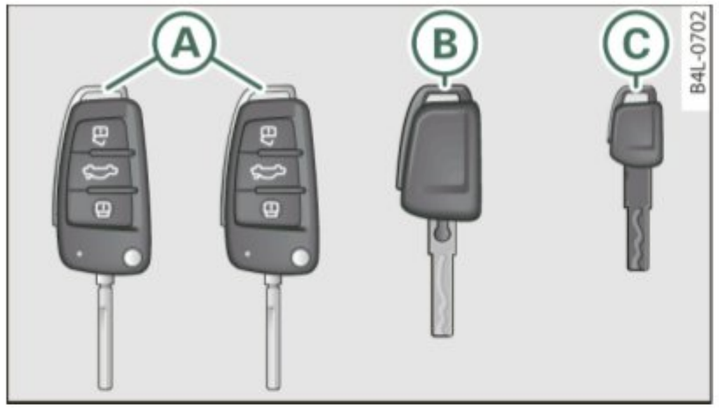



Fig. 29 Key set

**Ⓐ Master key with remote control**

You can centrally lock and unlock your vehicle and start the engine with the master key with remote control.

**Ⓑ Valet key**

The valet key only fits the lock in the driver's door and the ignition lock. If you have to leave the key with somebody else, you are well-advised to turn over the valet key only.

Be aware that the rear lid and glove compartment can be opened from inside the vehicle using the release buttons. It is therefore best to activate the valet key function to prevent unauthorized access to the glove compartment and the luggage compartment when someone else has charge of your vehicle ⇒ *page 51*.

**Ⓒ Emergency key**

The emergency key is only for temporary use if the vehicle key should be lost or misplaced ⇒ ⚠.

**Key replacement**

If you lose a key, contact your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the *lost* key disabled. Be sure to bring all your keys with you.

**Registered keys**

You can check to find out how many keys have been registered to your vehicle. Therefore, when buying a used vehicle, make sure to get all of the remote keys belong to it.

Calling up the registered keys ⇒ *page 16*.

**Data in the master key**

While you are driving, service and maintenance relevant data are being continuously stored on your master key. Your Audi service adviser can read out these data and tell you about work that is needed on your vehicle. This also applies to vehicles with Convenience key*.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not leave your vehicle unattended with the key in the ignition lock. Entry by unauthorized persons could endanger you or result in theft or damage the vehicle. Always lock all doors and take the key.**
- **Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, especially with access to vehicle keys. Unguarded access to the keys provides children the opportunity to start the engine and/or activate vehicle systems such as the power windows etc. Unsupervised operation of any vehicle system by children can result in serious injury.**

**Tips**

- If you open the driver's door with the key left in the ignition lock, a chime will sound. This is your reminder to remove the key and lock the door.

- For security reasons, replacement keys are only available from Audi dealers. ■

## Master key with remote control

*The remote control allows you to lock or unlock the vehicle electronically.*

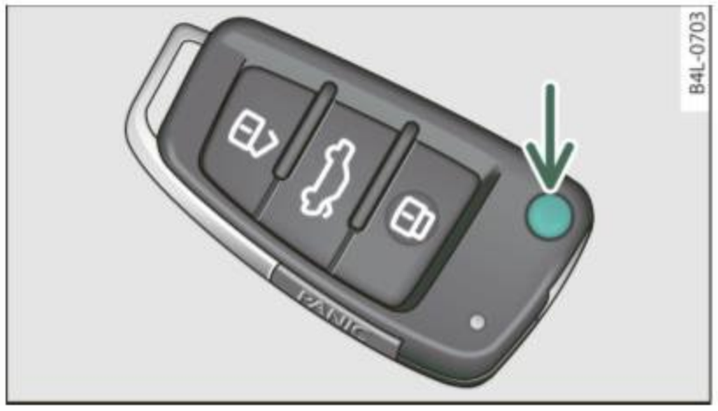



**Fig. 30 Fold-up master key with remote control**

– To fold the key out and back in place, press the release button ⇒ fig. 30.

The transmitter and battery are located in the head of the remote control. The receiver is located inside the vehicle. The maximum effective range depends on several things. Remember, if the battery is weak, the effective range decreases.

If you need to replace the remote control, or if you need to have it repaired, you must see your authorized Audi dealer. Only then can you use the key again.

### Personalizing the master key

When the ignition is turned off or when the vehicle is locked, various convenience settings are stored automatically and assigned to the key that was used. The settings that are assigned to the master key are recalled automatically when the vehicle is unlocked, when the door is opened or when the ignition is switched on.

Settings are saved for the following systems:

- Climate control
- Central locking
- Windows
- Background lighting*
- Seat memory*
- Steering wheel heating*
- Adaptive Cruise Control*
- Audi lane and side assist*
- Advanced Parking System*

The **Remote control key** function must be activated in the MMI ⇒ *page 98*, so that the settings for the driver's seat (including the settings for the steering column and exterior mirrors) are saved on the master key through the seat memory when the vehicle is locked, and are set automatically when the vehicle is unlocked.

### Tips

- If the ignition is switched on, the remote control system is deactivated.
- The remote control system can be affected by other systems operating in the same frequency range close to the vehicle, such as mobile telephones, television broadcasting stations, etc.
- For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇒ *page 404*. ■

## Check light in the master key

*The check light in the master key provides information about different conditions.*




**Fig. 31 Check light in the master key**

Check light functions in the master key:

### Vehicle within range of the key

If the vehicle is within range of the key, the check light comes on briefly once when a button is pressed.

### Vehicle outside the range of the key

If the vehicle is outside the range of the key, the check light comes on briefly once and then shows the status of the vehicle door locks:

- If the light is flashing quickly, the vehicle is not locked.
- If the light is flashing slowly, the vehicle is locked.

### State of master key battery

If the check light does not come on, the battery is dead and has to be replaced. In addition, when the battery is dead the symbol appears in the instrument cluster display as well as the message:

**Please change key battery**

Battery replacement ⇒ *page 50*.

### Tips

Please note that the current state of the vehicle door locks can only be recalled with the master key that was last used to lock the vehicle. It is possible that a different state is shown for the door locks on the other master key which is not the same as that of the vehicle. ■

## Master key battery replacement

*Each master key contains a battery housed under the cover.*

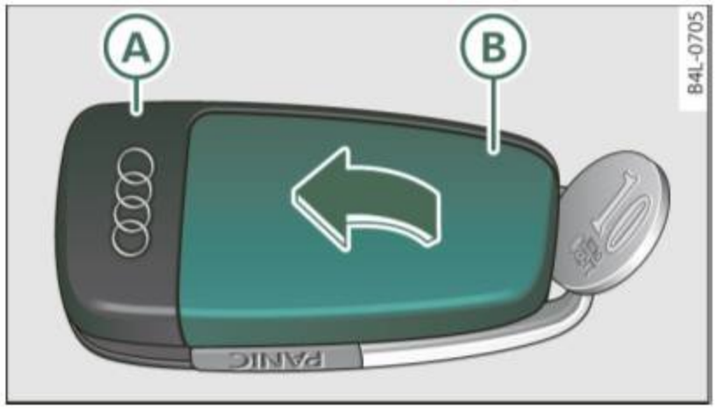



**Fig. 32 Master key: opening the cover**

We recommend having the battery changed by an authorized Audi dealer. However, if you wish to replace the dead battery yourself, proceed as follows:

– Pry apart the base ⇒ fig. 32 (A) and the cover (B) **carefully** with a coin.

– Remove the cover (arrow).

– Remove the dead battery from the cover.

– Install the new battery. Please make certain that the "+" sign on the battery faces down. Correct polarity is shown on the cover.

– Place the cover with the new battery on the key base and press both parts together.

**For the sake of the environment**

Dispose of dead batteries properly so as not to pollute the environment.

**Tips**

The replacement battery must be the same specification as the original. ■

## Electronic immobilizer

*The immobilizer helps to prevent unauthorized use of your vehicle.*

A computer chip inside your key automatically deactivates the electronic immobilizer when you insert the key in the ignition lock, or on vehicles with Convenience key*, when the key is inside the vehicle. When you remove the key from the ignition lock, or on vehicles with Convenience key, when you remove the key from the vehicle, the electronic immobilizer is automatically activated once again.

If an unauthorized key was used, **SAFE** is displayed continuously in the odometer display field.

**WARNING**

**Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. The key can disarm the electronic engine immobilizer and permit an unauthorized person to start the engine and enable operation of the vehicle systems such as power window or Panoramic sliding sunroof* leading to serious personal injury.**

**Tips**

- Your engine can only be started using the factory-equipped key.
- You may not be able to start your vehicle if an ignition key of a different vehicle make is also located on your set of keys.
- For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇒ *page 404*. ■

## Valet key function

*The valet key function prevents unauthorized persons from opening the glove compartment or rear lid.*




**Fig. 33 Center console: button for valet key function**

### Activating and deactivating the function

– Insert the *master key* into the ignition lock and switch on the ignition.

– Press the VALET button ⇒ fig. 33 to activate / deactivate the function as desired. The indicator light in the button illuminates when the function is active.

– Remove the master key from the ignition lock.

– Hand over only the *valet key* ⇒ *page 48*, fig. 29 to the person who will take charge of the vehicle. ▶

When the function is switched on, the buttons for opening the rear lid and glove compartment have no function. However, please note the following exceptions:

### Exceptions

If the ignition has been switched on using the *master key*, you can still open the glove compartment and the rear lid.

As long as the ignition is switched off, you can still open the rear lid using the rear lid button on the *master key*. The same holds true for using the rear lid release handle in conjunction with the Convenience key*.

For this reason, be sure to only hand over the *valet key* to the person who will take charge of your vehicle.

### Tips

Be sure to activate the function before handing over the valet key to someone else. The valet key only fits the lock in the driver's door and the ignition lock. ■

# Power locking system

## General description

*The power locking system locks or unlocks all doors and the rear lid simultaneously.*

The power locking system in your vehicle incorporates the following functions:

- Central locking function
- Selective unlock feature ⇒ *page 55*
- Remote control feature ⇒ *page 49*
- Convenience key* ⇒ *page 61*
- Anti-theft alarm system ⇒ *page 63*

All the doors and the rear lid are locked by the central locking system when you lock the vehicle. You can set whether generally only the driver's door or all doors and the rear lid should be unlocked when you open the vehicle in the MMI menu **Central locking** to suit your individual desires ⇒ *page 55*.

### Unlocking the vehicle

You can unlock the vehicle from outside either by using the remote control **or** by inserting and turning the key in the driver's door lock. When you **unlock** your vehicle:

- The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated briefly.
- The vehicle interior lights illuminate for approximately 30 seconds.
- All turn signal lights will flash twice when the car is unlocked.
- After unlocking the vehicle, you have 60 seconds to open a door or the rear lid. After 60 seconds, the vehicle automatically locks and the anti-theft alarm system activates again.

The rear lid can be locked or unlocked either by using the remote control **or** by inserting and turning the key in the driver's door lock. Unlocking the vehicle with the remote control will only *unlock* the rear lid, to *open* it, the lid handle needs to be pressed.

### Locking the vehicle

You can lock the vehicle from outside either by using the remote control **or** by inserting and turning the key in the drivers's door lock. When you **lock** the vehicle:

- All doors and the rear lid are locked.
- All turn signal lights will flash once when the car is locked.
- The anti-theft alarm system is activated. The horn of the anti-theft alarm system will sound and the anti-theft alarm system readiness light, located in the upper part of the driver's door panel, will start to blink.
- The vehicle interior lights turn off. ▶

### Unlocking and locking with Convenience key*

On vehicles which are equipped with the **Convenience key*** authorization system, the doors are unlocked *without a key* by means of a proximity sensor in the door handle. The doors are similarly locked *without a key* using the locking button. Each door has a proximity sensor and a locking button.

### Automatic locking

The automatic locking feature locks all the vehicle doors and the rear lid when you drive faster than 9 mph (15 km/h). This function can be turned on and off in the MMI **Central locking** Menu ⇒ *page 55*.

You can unlock the vehicle from the inside by:

- removing the key from the ignition switch (the vehicle will automatically unlock itself) or
- pressing the unlock part of the power lock switch or
- pulling the door handle (twice to open the rear doors).

**WARNING**

- **When you lock your vehicle from outside, nobody - especially children - should remain inside the vehicle. Remember, when you lock the vehicle from the outside the windows cannot be opened from the inside.**
- **When you leave the vehicle, always remove the ignition key and take it with you. This will prevent passengers (children, for example) from accidentally being locked in the vehicle should they accidentally press the power locking switch in the front doors.**
- **Do not leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised. In an emergency it would be impossible to open the doors from the outside without the key.**

**Tips**

- In the event of a crash with airbag deployment all locked doors will be automatically unlocked to give access to the vehicle occupants from the outside.
- If the power locking system should malfunction, you can lock each door individually using the vehicle key ⇒ *page 57*.
- If the power locking system should fail, you can still open the fuel tank flap in an emergency ⇒ *page 329*.
- You are well advised not to keep valuables inside an unattended vehicle, visible or not. Even a properly locked vehicle cannot provide the security of a safe. ■

## Unlocking and locking the vehicle with the remote control

*How the remote control works.*

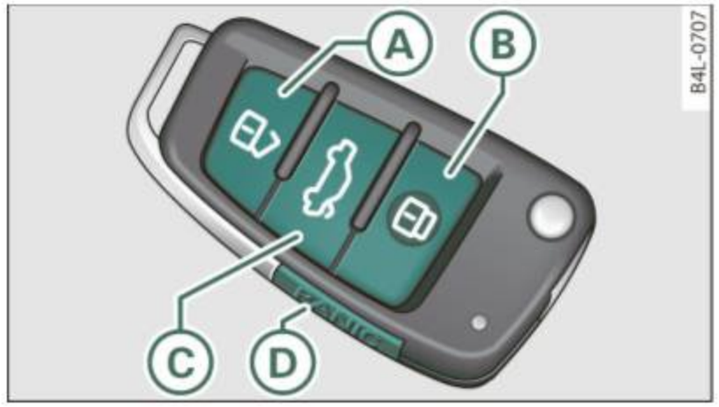



**Fig. 34 Remote control: function buttons**

Either the driver's door only or the entire vehicle will unlock when the unlock button (A) is pressed once, depending on the settings in the MMI **Central locking** menu ⇒ *page 55*.

### To unlock the vehicle

– Press button (A).

– Press button (A) *two times* within two seconds **to unlock all doors and the rear lid.**

### To lock the vehicle

– Press button (B) ⇒ ⚠ in "General description" on *page 52.*

– Watch that all turn signal lights flash once.

### To unlock rear lid only

– Press button (C) for approximately one second.

### PANIC Button

– Push the red button (D) to activate the panic function. The horn sounds and the turn signals flash.

– Push the button (D) again to deactivate the panic function.

On vehicles with Convenience key*, the selector lever must be in the P position, otherwise the vehicle cannot be locked.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ in "General description" on *page 52.***

### Tips

- In order to make sure the locking function is working, you should always keep your eye on the vehicle to make sure it is properly locked.
- Do not use the remote control if you are inside the car, otherwise you may unintentionally lock the vehicle, and then you would set off the anti-theft alarm when you try to start the engine or open a door. In case this happens anyhow, push the unlock button.
- Use the panic function only if you are in an emergency situation. ■

## Operating locks with the key

*To lock and unlock the vehicle from the outside, turn the key in the lock of the driver's door.*

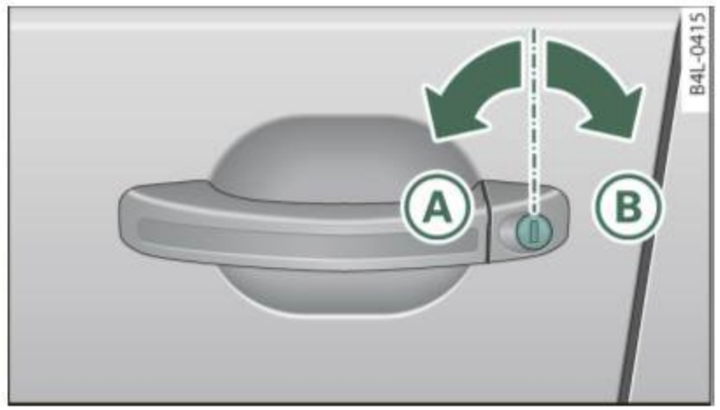



**Fig. 35 Key turns for opening and closing.**

### To unlock the vehicle

– Insert the key into the lock of the driver's door.

– Turn the key *one time* to position (A) to unlock the driver's door.

– Turn the key *two times* to position (A) ⇒ fig. 35 to unlock all doors and the rear lid.

### To lock the vehicle

– Close all windows and doors properly.

– Turn the key in the lock of the driver's door to the lock position (B) ⇒ ⚠ in "General description" on *page 52.* ▶

**WARNING**

**Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ in "General description" on *page 52*. ■**

## Settings in the MMI

*Selective unlock feature - the driver can determine in the MMI which doors are unlocked through the central locking system.*




**Fig. 36 MMI display: Central locking menu**

– Press the CAR function button.

– Select **Central locking**. The **Central locking** menu appears ⇒ fig. 36.

– Activate the doors **(on)** that should be unlocked together with the driver's side door.

In the **Central locking** menu you can determine which doors should be unlocked when you unlock the vehicle with the remote control. For example, if you switch the item passenger's door **off**, the passenger's door is no longer included in the central locking system, and will not be unlocked by pressing the unlock button on the master key remote control.

There is also a **side selective** unlocking option available that can be set to fit your needs. You can continue to unlock all the doors and the rear lid as before. Press the opening button on the master key twice.

Automatic Locking (Auto lock) can also be switched on and off.

**Tips**

When locking the vehicle, all doors and the trunk lid are locked automatically. ■

## Locking and unlocking the vehicle from inside

*The vehicle can be locked or unlocked from the inside using the power locking switches.*

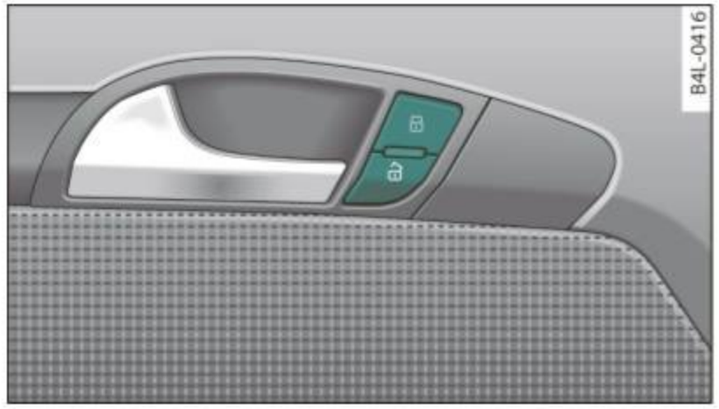



**Fig. 37 Front doors: power locking switch**

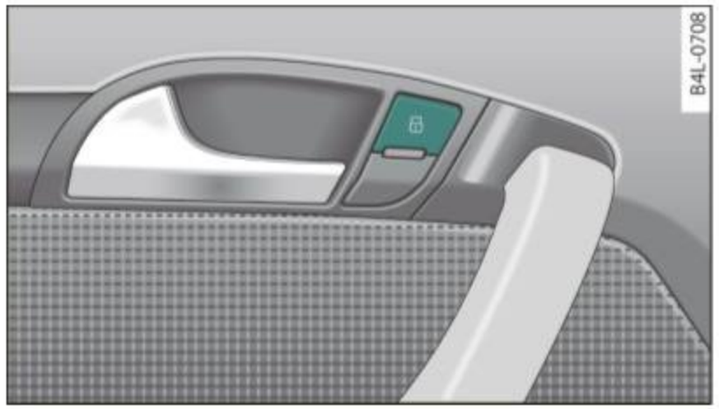



**Fig. 38 Rear doors: power locking switch**

### How to lock all doors and the rear lid simultaneously

– Press the upper part of the power locking switch ⇒ ⚠.

### How to unlock all doors and the rear lid simultaneously

– Press the lower part of the switch.

### How to unlock each door separately using the door handle (front doors)

– Pull the handle to open the door.

### How to unlock each door separately using the door handle (rear doors)

– Pull the door handle *once* to release the lock.

– Pull the handle *twice* to open the door.

You will find a power locking switch in each door. You can **lock** and **unlock** the vehicle using the switches in the driver's or passenger's door ⇒ *page 55,* fig. 37. You can only **lock** the vehicle using the switches in the rear doors ⇒ fig. 38. If you lock the vehicle using the **power locking switch**, please note the following:

- You cannot open the doors or the rear lid from the *outside* (increased security, for example when you are stopped at a red light).
- The diodes in the power locking switch illuminate when all the doors and the rear lid are closed and locked.
- All diodes turn dark as soon as one of the doors has been unlocked.
- You can unlock and open the doors from the inside by pulling on the door handle.
- If the driver's door is opened (after you have locked the vehicle from the inside using the power locking switch), the door will remain unlocked to prevent you from locking yourself out of your vehicle. After you close the door, you have to lock the driver's door again.
- If you have a crash and the airbag is activated, the doors automatically unlock.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **If you use the power locking switch with the doors closed, remember that all the vehicle doors will lock.**
- **Locking doors from the inside can help prevent inadvertent door opening during an accident and can also prevent unwanted entry from the outside. Locked doors can, however, delay assistance to vehicle occupants and hold up rescue efforts from the outside in an accident or other emergency.** ■

## Emergency locking

*If the central locking system fails (power supply), each door has to be locked separately.*

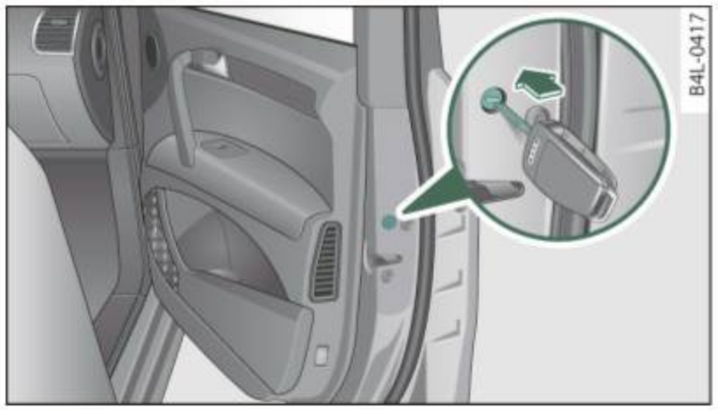



**Fig. 39 Emergency locking of the front passenger's door**

An emergency locking mechanism is integrated in the edge of the passenger's door and in the rear doors (only visible when the door is open).

- Open the door.
- Pull the protective cover out of the hole ⇒ fig. 39.
- Insert the key into the inner slot and turn it to the right (right-side doors) or the left (left-side door) as far as it can go.

After you close the door, you will no longer be able to open it from the outside.

The door can be opened from the inside by pulling once respectively twice (rear doors) on the door handle. If the child safety lock is engaged in one of the rear doors, the door has to be opened from the outside after pulling on the handle once from the inside. ■

# Rear lid

## Opening and closing rear lid

*You can open the rear lid from inside the vehicle using a switch in the driver's door.*




**Fig. 40 Driver's door: remote rear lid release**




**Fig. 41 Position of handle in the rear lid**

### Opening the rear lid

- Press the middle button on the remote control master key, or
- Press the unlock button in the driver's door ⇒ fig. 40, or
- Press the handle on the rear lid ⇒ fig. 41. ▶

– The rear lid unlocks automatically and opens slightly.

– Lift the rear lid.

### Closing the rear lid

– Pull the rear lid down and allow it to drop gently. The lid is then closed automatically ⇒ ⚠.

**⚠ WARNING**

**• After closing the rear lid, always pull up on it to make sure that it is properly closed. Otherwise it could open suddenly when the vehicle is moving.**

**• To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving. Never transport objects larger than those which fit completely into the luggage area, because then the rear lid cannot be fully closed.**

**• Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the car through the luggage compartment and pull the lid shut, becoming trapped and unable to get out. To reduce the risk of personal injury, never let children play in or around your vehicle. Always keep the rear lid as well as the vehicle doors closed when not in use.**

**• Always ensure that no one is within range of the rear lid when it is moving, in particular close to the hinges - fingers or hands can be pinched.**

**Tips**

• If the rear lid is open or not properly closed when the ignition is turned on, the door and rear lid warning ⇒ *page 27* appears in the instrument cluster display.

• Should you not be able to open the rear lid as described, make sure the valet key function is not activated ⇒ *page 51*. ■

Applies to vehicles: with automatic rear lid/trunk lid operation

## Automatic rear lid/trunk lid operation

*The trunk lid can be opened and closed automatically.*




**Fig. 42 Driver's door: Unlocking the rear lid**

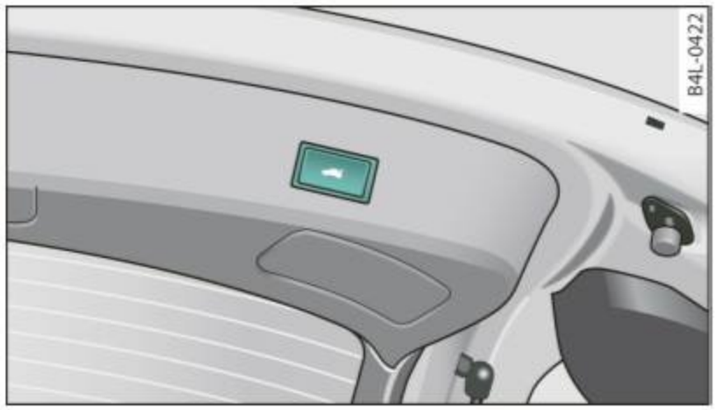



**Fig. 43 Locking switch in the rear lid**

### Opening rear lid

– Press the middle button on the remote key for at least one second, or

– Press the unlock button in the driver's door ⇒ fig. 42, or

– Press the handle on the rear lid ⇒ *page 57*, fig. 41. ▶

– The opening process **is stopped immediately** if the middle button on the remote key is pressed again for at least one second or the unlock button in the driver's door is pressed again or the handle in the rear lid is pressed again.

– *Middle button in the remote key and unlock button in the driver's door:* The opening process is continued by pressing one of the buttons again.

– *Handle in the rear lid:* the rear lid is closed again by pressing the handle again ⇒ ⚠.

## Closing rear lid/trunk lid

– Press the close button in the open rear lid ⇒ *page 58,* fig. 43. The trunk lid moves to the closed position by itself and soft close locks it automatically ⇒ ⚠.

– The closing process **is stopped immediately** if the close button in the rear lid is pressed again.

– By pushing the button again, the rear lid is opened again.

## Saving the opening angle of the rear lid

– Bring the rear lid manually or automatically to the desired opening position and leave it in this position.

– Press the button in the rear lid ⇒ *page 58,* fig. 43 for at least four seconds in order to save the desired opening position. The position can only be saved starting at a certain level.

**⚠ WARNING**

**• Never close the rear lid inattentively or without checking first. Although the closing force of the rear lid is limited, you can still seriously injure yourself or others.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

**• Always ensure that no one is within range of the rear lid when it is moving, in particular close to the hinges and the upper and lower edges - fingers or hands can be pinched.**

**• To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving. Never transport objects larger than those which fit completely into the luggage area, because then the rear lid cannot be fully closed.**

**• Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the car through the luggage compartment and pull the lid shut, becoming trapped and unable to get out. To reduce the risk of personal injury, never let children play in or around your vehicle. Always keep the rear lid as well as the vehicle doors closed when not in use.**

**• If there is a luggage rack or bicycle rack mounted on the rear lid, it may not be able to open completely or an opened rear lid may close by itself because of the added weight. So the open rear lid must be supported or the weight must be removed from the luggage rack first.**

**Tips**

• If the rear lid is open or not properly locked when the ignition is turned on, the door and rear lid warning ⇒ *page 27* appears in the instrument cluster display.

• The automatic rear lid opening/closing process can be stopped by holding the rear lid with your hand. The lid can then be further opened/closed by hand.

• If there is a mechanical problem with the automatic rear lid **opening process** or there is an obstruction, the process is stopped immediately.

• If there is a mechanical problem with **automatic closing** for the rear lid or there is an obstruction, it opens again slightly right away. Check to see why the rear lid could not be closed before attempting to close it again.

- If the rear lid on a locked vehicle is unlocked with the middle button on the remote key, the rear lid is automatically locked again immediately after closing. This is indicated by the turn signals blinking.
- The following applies to vehicles equipped with the Convenience key* feature: if the remote control key is left in the luggage compartment, luggage compartment will automatically unlock itself after you lock the vehicle. This prevents you from unintentionally locking your key in the luggage compartment.
- If the vehicle battery charge drops below a certain level, you can still open or close the rear lid manually, however, you will need to apply more force to close it.
- As soon as the electrical connection to the trailer socket is completed on vehicles with a factory installed towing hitch, or a trailer hitch that was installed later according to factory specifications, the automatic rear lid function can only be operated via the handle in the rear lid. ■

## Rear lid emergency unlocking

*If the rear lid cannot be opened, an emergency release is provided.*

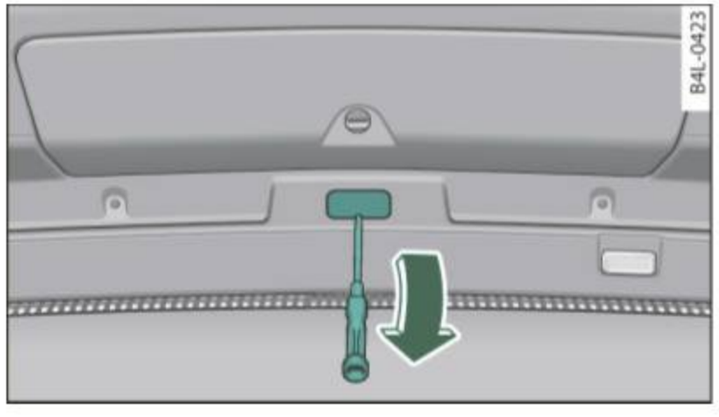



**Fig. 44 Section of the luggage compartment: Access to emergency release**

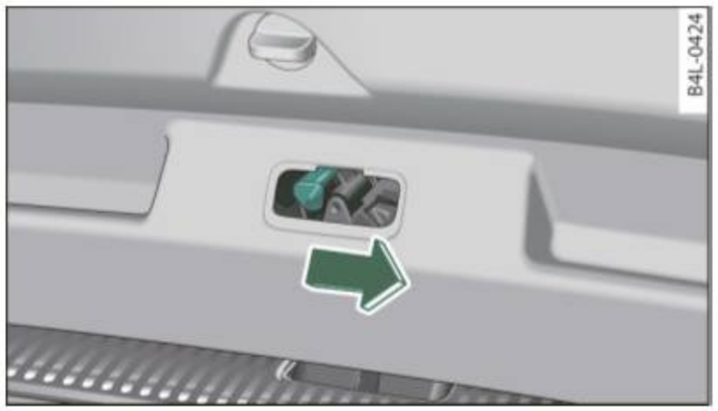



**Fig. 45 Section of the luggage compartment: Emergency release**

– Tilt the seatback forward.
– Move into the trunk.
– Take the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit. As an alternative, you can also use the vehicle key.
– Put the flat side of the screw driver into the recess and pry the cover up ⇒ fig. 44 -Arrow-.
– Press the lever in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 45 to unlock the rear lid. ■

# Child safety lock

## Power child safety lock for the rear doors

*The power child safety lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside.*

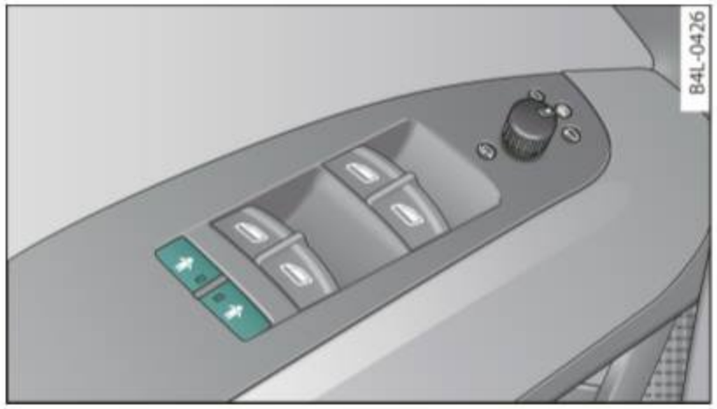



**Fig. 46 Section from driver's door: controls**

The rear doors are equipped with a power child safety lock. It is operated with the two safety buttons in the driver's door ⇒ fig. 46.

– Press the left and/or right safety button to disable the rear power window(s) and prevent the respective rear door from being opened from the inside. The LED in the button will light up when the child safety lock is turned **on**.

– Press the illuminated button again to turn the child safety features **off**.

When the child safety lock is activated, the interior door opening lever is inoperative; the door can only be opened from the outside. In addition, the window regulator for that door is also inoperative when the child safety lock is activated.

If the child safety lock has been activated on one or both sides, the buttons in the rear for the Panoramic sliding sunroof* are disabled.

If the child safety lock has been activated on the left **and** on the right side, the rear controls are locked on vehicles with rear air-conditioning*. Dashes "---" are shown in the displays for the rear climate controls, and the rear air-conditioning can only be operated from the climate controls in the cabin ⇒ *page 131*.

### Tips

- In order to activate the child safety lock on the left and the right side, you have to press the two safety buttons in succession.
- Make certain that the check light comes on in the corresponding safety switch when the child safety lock is activated. ■

# Convenience key

Applies to vehicles: with Convenience key

## Description

*Access and vehicle operation based on: Master key remains in driver's pocket.*

The Convenience key vehicle authorization system allows *keyless* unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle. You only have to carry the master key on your person.

It makes no difference whether the master key is in your jacket pocket or in your brief case. As soon as you approach your vehicle, the Convenience key recognizes the request for access, checks for authorization and enables the following functions:

- Unlocking the vehicle ⇒ *page 62*.
- Locking the vehicle ⇒ *page 63*.
- Switching on ignition and starting the engine by pressing the START button; the master key does not have to be in the ignition switch ⇒ *page 144*. ▶

**WARNING**

- **When you lock your vehicle from outside, nobody - especially children - should remain inside the vehicle. Remember, when you lock the vehicle from the outside the windows cannot be opened from the inside.**
- **When you leave the vehicle, always remove the ignition key and take it with you. This will prevent passengers (children, for example) from accidentally being locked in the vehicle should they accidentally press the power locking switch in the front doors.**
- **Do not leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised. In an emergency it would be impossible to open the doors from the outside without the key.**

**Tips**

- In order for Convenience key to function, you must always carry the master key with you.
- In order to be able to unlock or lock the vehicle, the authorized master key must be within a range of about 5 feet (1.5 meters) from the door or the rear lid.
- Of course, you can still unlock and lock your vehicle using the buttons on the master key. The selector lever must be in the P position.
- For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇒ *page 404*. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Convenience key

## Unlocking the vehicle

*The doors and the rear lid can be unlocked without operating the master key.*

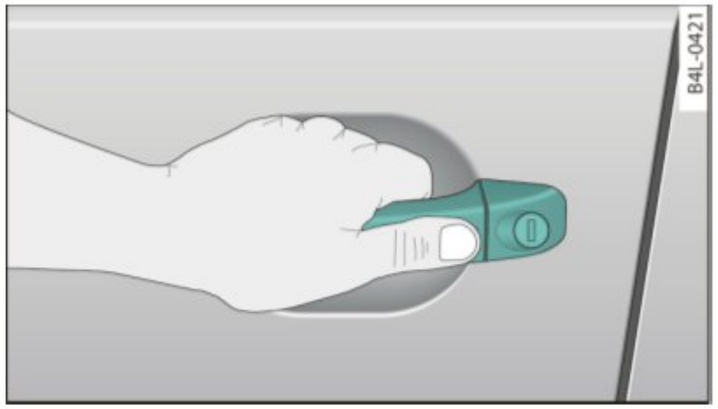



**Fig. 47 Convenience key: unlocking vehicle door**

– Take hold of the door handle. The door is unlocked automatically.
– Pull the handle to open the door.

A door is unlocked as soon as you approach the door handle and the system recognizes an authorized master key. The vehicle can be unlocked at any door. The authorized master key only has to be within a range of about 5 feet (1.5 meters) from the respective door.

When a door is unlocked, the driver's door is always unlocked as well. It depends on the settings in the central locking menu in the MMI whether the entire vehicle is unlocked or only certain doors ⇒ *page 55*.

**Tips**

If your vehicle has been standing for an extended period, please note the following: ▶

- The proximity sensors are deactivated after a few days to save power. You then have to pull on the door handle once to unlock the vehicle and a second time to open the vehicle.
- To prevent the battery from being discharged and to preserve your vehicle's ability to start for as long as possible, the energy management system gradually switches off unnecessary convenience functions. It is possible that you will not be able to unlock your vehicle using these convenience functions. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Convenience key

## Locking the vehicle

*The vehicle can be locked without operating the master key.*

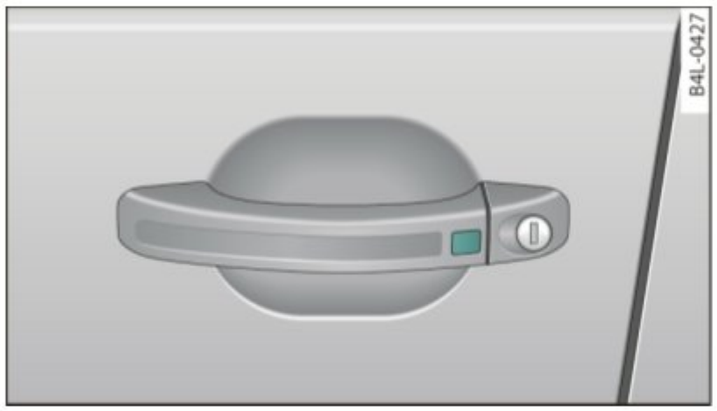



**Fig. 48 Convenience key: Locking the vehicle**

– Move the selector lever to the P position.
– Press the locking button in the door handle to lock the vehicle ⇒ ⚠.

The vehicle can be locked at any door. The authorized master key only has to be within a range of about 5 feet (1.5 meters) from the particular door.

The selector lever must be in the P position, otherwise the vehicle cannot be locked.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **When you lock your vehicle from outside, nobody - especially children - should remain inside the vehicle. Remember, when you lock the vehicle from the outside the windows cannot be opened from the inside.**
- **When you leave the vehicle, always remove the ignition key and take it with you. This will prevent passengers (children, for example) from accidentally being locked in the vehicle should they accidentally press the power locking switch in the front doors.**
- **Do not leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised. In an emergency it would be impossible to open the doors from the outside without the key.**

**Tips**

It is not possible to re-open the door for a brief period directly after closing it. This allows you to ensure that the doors are properly locked. ■

## Anti-theft alarm system

*The anti-theft alarm triggers an alarm if anyone attempts to break into the vehicle.*

The anti-theft alarm system triggers an audible alarm and turns on the emergency flasher if an unauthorized interference with the vehicle is sensed by the system.

### How is the anti-theft alarm system switched on?

The anti-theft alarm system is switched on when you lock the vehicle. The system is activated approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked. The indicator light on top of the door trim start flashing rapidly for 30 seconds and then blink slowly. ▶

### How is the anti-theft alarm system switched off?

The anti-theft alarm system is switched off only when you unlock your vehicle. If you do not open a door within 60 seconds after you have unlocked with the remote control, the vehicle will lock itself again automatically.

### When will the anti-theft alarm system be triggered?

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm system monitors and protects the following parts of the vehicle:

- engine compartment
- luggage compartment
- doors
- ignition

When the system is activated, the alarm will be triggered if one of the doors, the engine hood or the rear lid are opened, or if the ignition is turned on. The anti-theft alarm system will also go off when the battery is disconnected.

You can also trigger the alarm by pressing the PANIC button on your remote control. This will alert other people in case of emergency. Press the **PANIC** button again to turn off the alarm.

### How is the anti-theft alarm switched off when triggered?

The alarm system is switched off when you unlock the vehicle or when the ignition is switched on. The alarm will also switch itself off when it comes to the end of its cycle.

### Emergency flasher and horn

The emergency flasher will blink briefly and the horn sounds when the doors, engine hood and rear lid are properly closed.

If the emergency flashers do not blink, or the horn does not sound, check the doors, engine hood and rear lid to make sure they are properly closed. If you close a door, the hood or the rear lid with the anti-theft alarm switched on, the emergency flashers will blink and the horn will sound only after you have closed the door or lid.

### Tips

For the anti-theft alarm system to function properly, make sure all vehicle doors and windows are closed before leaving the vehicle. ■

# Power windows

## Controls

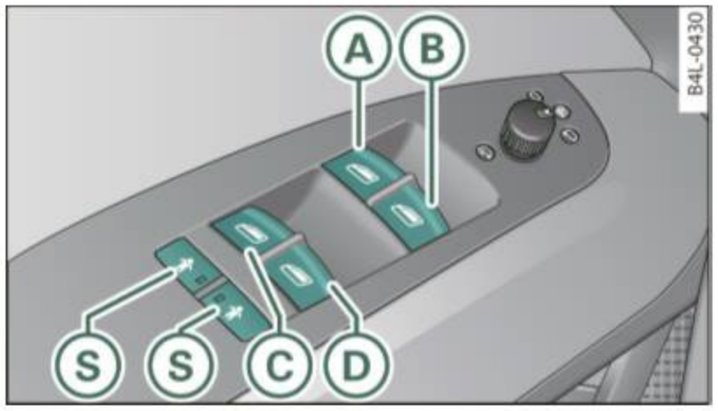



**Fig. 49 Driver's door: power window switches**

### Switches for front door windows

Ⓐ operates the window in the driver's door.
Ⓑ operates the window in the front passenger's door.

### Switches for rear windows

Ⓒ operates the left rear window.
Ⓓ operates the right rear window.

### Safety switch

Ⓢ Safety switch for rear window operation.

**WARNING**

**• Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, especially with access to vehicle keys. Unsupervised use of the keys can result in**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

**starting of the engine and use of vehicle systems such as power windows, etc. which could result in serious injury.**

- **Remember – you can still open or close the power windows for about ten minutes after the ignition is switched off. Only when either of the front doors are opened are the power windows switched off.**
- **Be careful when closing the windows. Check to see that no one is in the way, or serious injury could result!**
- **Always remove the ignition key whenever you leave your vehicle.**
- **If you lock your vehicle from the outside, no one, especially children, should remain in the vehicle.**
- **Do not stick anything on the windows or the windshield that may interfere with the driver's field of vision.**

**Tips**

In addition to the switches in the driver's door there is a separate switch in each door for the power window in that door ⇒ *page 66,* fig. 50. ■

## Switches in the driver's door

*The driver can operate all windows.*

If the respective switch is pushed or pulled the window will open or close. The power window switches have a **two-position function**:

### Opening the windows

– Push the switch to the **first stop** and hold it there until the window has lowered to the desired position.

– Push the switch briefly to the **second stop**: the window will automatically open all the way.

### Closing the windows

– Pull the switch up to the **first stop** and hold it there until the window has risen to the desired position.

– Pull the switch quickly to the **second position**: the window will automatically close all the way ⇒ ⚠ in "Controls" on *page 64*.

### Activating/deactivating the rear windows

– Press the left switch ⇒ *page 64,* fig. 49 to **deactivate** only the window regulator in the **left** door. The indicator light in the switch illuminates.

– Press the right switch ⇒ *page 64,* fig. 49 to **deactivate** only the window regulator in the **right** door. The indicator light in the switch illuminates.

– Press the switch again to reactivate the window regulator. The indicator light in the switch goes out.

If you press both switches (S) in succession, the following functions are switched off in the rear of the vehicle:

- The window regulator switches in the rear doors.
- The buttons for the Panoramic sliding sunroof*.
- On vehicles with rear climate control*, operation from the rear is blocked. Dashes "---" are shown in the displays for the rear climate controls, and the rear air-conditioning can only be operated from the climate controls in the cabin ⇒ *page 131*.
- If **only the left** switch was pressed, the window regulator in the **left rear door** and the buttons in the rear for the Panoramic sliding sunroof* are deactivated. In addition, the door is locked. ▶

• If **only the right** switch was pressed, the window regulator in the **right rear door** and the buttons in the rear for the Panoramic sliding sunroof* are deactivated. In addition, the door is locked.

This feature has been provided for the safety of small children riding in the rear of the vehicle.

**Tips**

• The windows can still be opened and closed for about ten minutes after the ignition has been turned off. The power windows are not shut off until one of the front doors is opened.

• In order to activate the child safety lock on the left and the right side, you have to press the two safety switches in succession. Make certain that the check light comes on the corresponding safety switch when the child safety lock is activated. ■

## Switch in the front passenger's door and on the rear doors

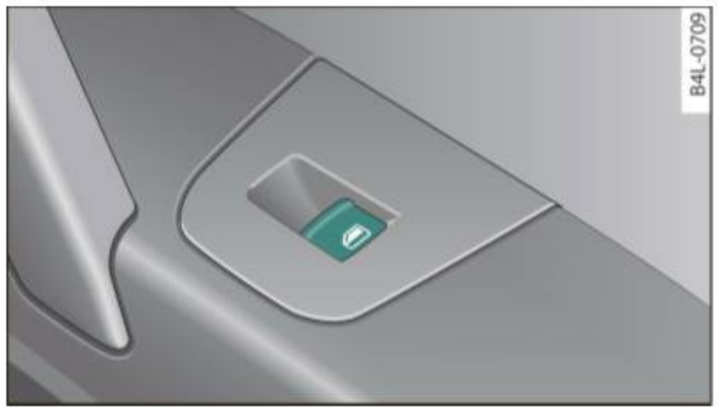



**Fig. 50 Switch location front passengers door**

The power window switch has a **two-position function**:

### Opening the windows

– Press the switch to the **first position** and hold it until you have opened the window as far as you want.

– Press the switch quickly to the **second position** and the window will automatically open all the way.

### Closing the windows

– Pull the switch to the **first position** and hold it until you have closed the window as far as you want.

– Pull the switch quickly to the **second position** and the window will automatically close all the way.

**Tips**

The windows can still be opened and closed for about ten minutes after the ignition has been turned off. The power windows are not shut off until one of the front doors is opened. ■

## Convenience close/open feature with the lock in the driver's door

*You can close or open the windows from outside when you lock or unlock your car with the key in the driver's door lock.*

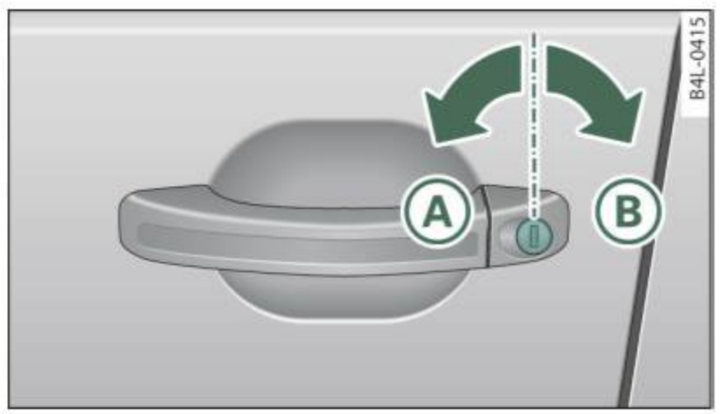



**Fig. 51 Key turns for opening and closing**

### Closing windows

– Insert the key into the lock of the driver's door. ▶

– Make sure that the windows are not blocked ⇒ ⚠.
– Turn and hold the key in the lock position (B) ⇒ *page 66,* fig. 51 until the windows and the Panoramic sliding sunroof* with the power sun blind are completely closed.

### Opening windows

– Insert the key into the lock of the driver's door.
– Turn and hold the key in the open position (A).

The automatic close/open function will cease if the key is returned to its original position.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Be careful when closing the windows. Check to see that no one is in the way, or serious injury could result!**
- **Always read and heed WARNING ⇒ ⚠ in "General description" on *page 52.* ■**

## Reactivating the system after battery disconnection

If the vehicle battery is disconnected and then reconnected, the automatic closing and opening function will not work until it is reactivated. To reactivate this feature, perform the following steps:

### Reactivating close/open feature

– Pull and hold the power window switch until the window is completely closed.
– Release the switch.
– Pull the switch again for one second. The automatic closing/opening is now reactivated. ■

# Panoramic sliding sunroof

Applies to vehicles: with Panoramic sliding sunroof

## Description

The Panoramic sliding sunroof of two individual glass roof segments, which can be adjusted electrically independently of each other.

The front segment can be tilted and slid open. The rear segment can be tilted, but it cannot be slid open.

The Panoramic sliding sunroof is operated by the driver or passenger when the ignition is on with a rotary switch (for the front roof segment) and a rocker switch (rear roof segment).

After the ignition has been switched off, the Panoramic sliding sunroof can still be opened or closed for about 10 minutes. However, as soon as the driver's or passenger's door is opened, the switches for the Panoramic sliding sunroof are inoperative.

**Note**

You should always close the Panoramic sliding sunroof when you leave your vehicle. Sudden rain can drench the interior equipment and damage the electronic convenience features in your vehicle.

**Tips**

If you park your vehicle in the sun, we recommend that you close both sun blinds ⇒ *page 69.* ■

Applies to vehicles: with Panoramic sliding sunroof

## Tilting/sliding open Panoramic sliding sunroof

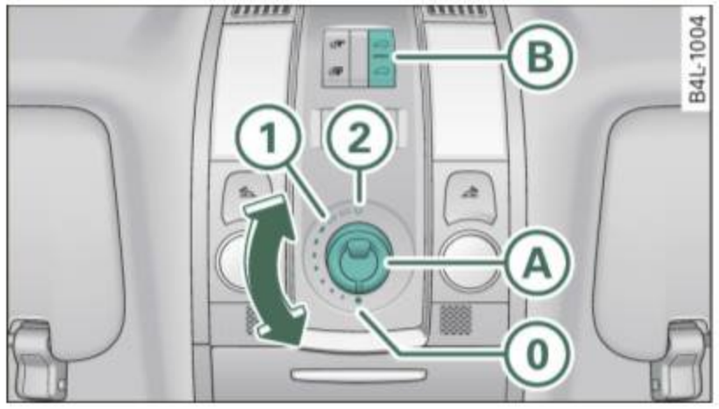



**Fig. 52 Section of front headliner: Switch for Panoramic sliding sunroof**

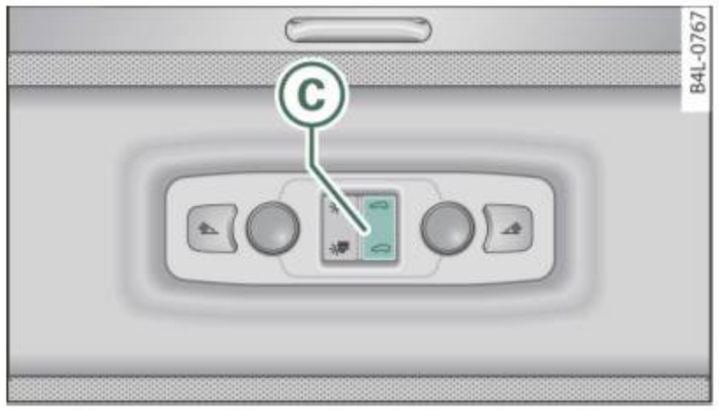



**Fig. 53 Section of headliner in rear: Switch for Panoramic sliding sunroof**

### Tilting front roof segment

– Press switch ⇒ fig. 52 (A) in the initial position (0) **briefly** to open the roof segment completely. Press it **longer** to set an intermediate position manually.

### Tilting rear roof segment

– Tap the rocker switch ⇒ fig. 52 (B) or ⇒ fig. 53 (C) in the rear area ⇦ **briefly**, the roof segment tilts up automatically.

– To set an intermediate position manually, press the rocker switch (B) or (C) in the rear area ⇦ **until** the roof segment has reached the desired tilted position.

### Opening front roof segment to comfort setting

– Turn the rotary switch ⇒ fig. 52 (A) to position (1), you will feel the switch engage. The roof segment is slid open only to a comfort position with low wind noise. This is the recommended standard setting for normal driving conditions.

### Sliding front roof segment fully open

– Rotate and hold the switch (A) in position (2) until the roof segment has reached the desired position. There may be increased wind noise in this position.

### Tips

- In position (2), the switch jumps back to position (1) again as soon as the switch is released.
- When driving with the Panoramic sliding sunroof open, open the front roof segment to the comfort setting to minimize wind noise. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Panoramic sliding sunroof

## Closing Panoramic sliding sunroof

### Closing tilted front roof segment

– Pull the switch ⇒ fig. 52 (A) and **hold it until** the roof segment has reached the desired position.

– Pull the switch **briefly** to close the roof segment automatically. By activating the switch briefly again, the roof segment can be stopped in any position ⇒ ⚠. ▶

### Closing front roof segment when slid open

– Rotate switch ⇒ *page 68,* fig. 52 (A) to position (0) to close the roof segment ⇒ ⚠. To move to an intermediate position, rotate the switch to the corresponding click-stop.

### Closing tilted rear roof segment

– Tap the rocker switch ⇒ *page 68,* fig. 52 (B) or ⇒ *page 68,* fig. 53 (C) in the front area ⇦ **briefly** to close the roof segment completely ⇒ ⚠.

– To set an intermediate position manually, press the rocker switch in the front area ⇦ **until** the roof segment has reached the desired tilt position ⇒ ⚠.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improper use of the Panoramic sliding sunroof can cause serious personal injury.**

- **Be careful when closing the Panoramic sliding sunroof. Not paying attention could cause you or others to be trapped and injured as the Panoramic sliding sunroof closes.**
- **Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle to prevent injuries caused by the Panoramic sliding sunroof closing**
- **Never leave children or persons requiring assistance alone in the vehicle, especially when they could access the vehicle keys. Unsupervised use of the keys can result in the engine being started or use of vehicle systems such as the power windows, etc. which could result in serious injury. The doors could be locked with the remote key, delaying help in an emergency.**
- **The Panoramic sliding sunroof will continue to operate until the ignition key has been removed and one of the front doors has been opened. ■**

Applies to vehicles: with Panoramic sliding sunroof

## Convenience closing feature

*The Panoramic sliding sunroof can be closed from outside with the key in the driver's door lock.*

– Insert the key into the driver's door lock.

– Turn and hold the key in the lock position (B) ⇒ *page 54,* fig. 35 until the Panoramic sliding sunroof is completely closed ⇒ ⚠ in “Closing Panoramic sliding sunroof” on *page 68.* The power sun blind is also closed.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Be careful when closing the Panoramic sliding sunroof. Not paying attention could cause you or others to be trapped and injured as the Panoramic sliding sunroof closes. ■**

Applies to vehicles: with Panoramic sliding sunroof

## Opening and closing sunshade




**Fig. 54 Section of front headliner: Switch for sunshade**




**Fig. 55 Section of headliner in rear: Switch for sunshade**

The two segments of the Panoramic sliding sunroof are each equipped with a sunshade for protection against the sun's rays. The front shade is power operated, the rear shade is opened and closed manually. To prevent the vehicle interior from heating up, you should close both sunshades when you park your vehicle in the sun.

### Opening and closing front sunshade

– Tap the rear of the rocker switch ⇒ *page 69,* fig. 54 or the rocker switch for rear-seat passengers ⇒ fig. 55 **briefly** to open the sunshade fully.

– Tap the front of the rocker switch **briefly** to close the sunshade fully ⇒ ⚠.

– To set an intermediate position manually, press the front or rear of the rocker switch (depending on the position of the shade) **until** the desired position is reached ⇒ ⚠.

### Opening and closing rear sunshade

– Hold the sunshade by the grip and push it to the desired position.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never close the sunshade without paying attention or checking - danger of injury! ■**

Applies to vehicles: with Panoramic sliding sunroof

## Emergency closing

*In an emergency, the Panoramic sliding sunroof can be closed electrically.*

The Panoramic sliding sunroof is equipped with *overload protection.* If it cannot be closed in normal operation, it can still be closed using the emergency closing function.

### Emergency closing of front roof segment

– Turn the switch ⇒ *page 68,* fig. 52 Ⓐ to the normal position ⓪.

– Pull the switch and **hold it until** the roof segment is closed ⇒ ⚠.

### Emergency closing of rear roof segment

– Press the front of the rocker switch ⇒ *page 68,* fig. 52 Ⓑ **until** the roof segment is closed ⇒ ⚠.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improper use of the Panoramic sliding sunroof can cause serious personal injury.**

- **Be careful when closing the Panoramic sliding sunroof. Not paying attention could cause you or others to be trapped and injured as the Panoramic sliding sunroof closes.**
- **Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle to prevent injuries caused by the Panoramic sliding sunroof closing**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Never leave children or persons requiring assistance alone in the vehicle, especially when they could access the vehicle keys. Unsupervised use of the keys can result in the engine being started or use of vehicle systems such as the power windows, etc. which could result in serious injury. The doors could be locked with the remote key, delaying help in an emergency.**
- **The Panoramic sliding sunroof will continue to operate until the ignition key has been removed and one of the front doors has been opened. ■**

Applies to vehicles: with Panoramic sliding sunroof

## Mechanical emergency closing for front roof segment (Step 1)

*The Panoramic sliding sunroof can be closed manually in an emergency.*

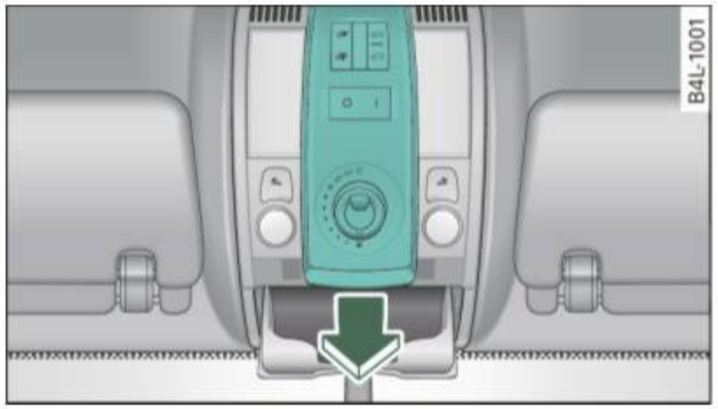



**Fig. 56 Section of front headliner: Removing cover**

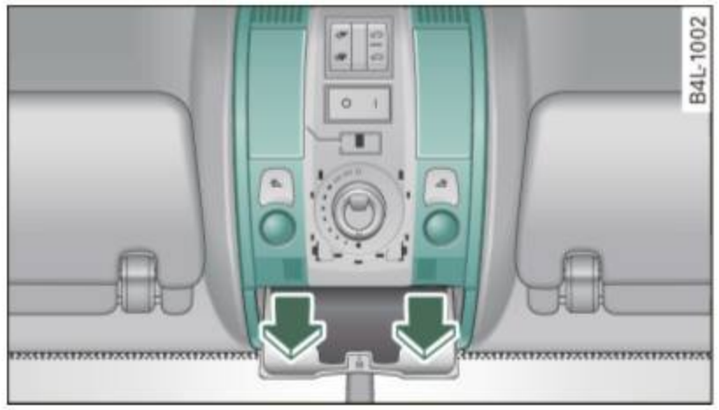



**Fig. 57 Section of front headliner: Removing the cover for the light unit**

Removal of the light unit requires some dexterity.

– Open the compartment.
– Pull the chrome strip down carefully, along with the center cover ⇒ fig. 56 -Arrow-.
– Pull the cover for the light unit down carefully ⇒ fig. 57 -Arrows-. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Panoramic sliding sunroof

## Mechanical emergency closing for front roof segment (Step 2)




**Fig. 58 Section of front headliner: Removing light unit**

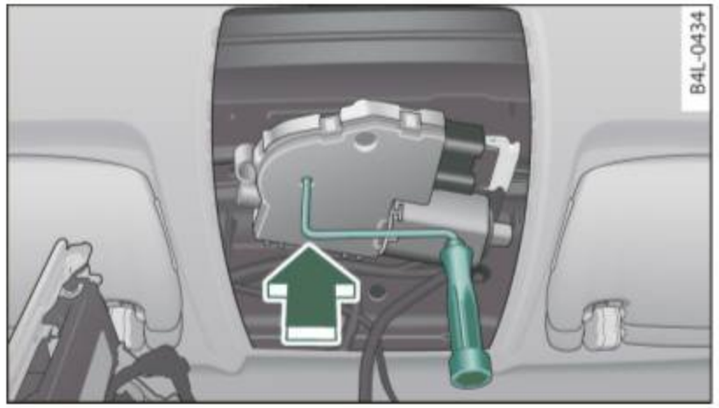



**Fig. 59 Section of front headliner: Crank for emergency operation**

- Take the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit ⇒ *page 371*.
- Remove the two screws ⇒ *page 71*, fig. 58 -Arrows- from the light unit.
- Carefully remove the light unit.
- Remove the crank from the bracket on the fuse cover on the left front of the instrument panel ⇒ *page 381*, fig. 308 (B).
- Push the crank into the hexagonal hole as far as it can go ⇒ fig. 59.
- Hold the crank down and turn it to close the roof.
- Re-install the light unit. For installation, reverse the removal sequence.
- Return the crank to its location in the fuse box cover ⇒ *page 381*, fig. 308 and install the cover.
- Have the problem corrected.

**Tips**

To turn the crank for emergency closing more easily, you should use the screwdriver handle as an aid ⇒ fig. 59. First, remove the screwdriver from the handle, then push the handle onto the crank. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Panoramic sliding sunroof

## Mechanical emergency closing for rear roof segment

- Carefully remove the cover for the rear roof segment drive in the rear area of the headliner.
- Remove the crank from the bracket on the fuse cover on the left front of the instrument panel ⇒ *page 381*, fig. 308 (B).
- Press the crank into the hexagonal hole in the drive as far as it will go (basically, as shown in ⇒ fig. 59).
- Hold the crank down and turn it to close the roof.
- Re-install the cover.
- Return the crank to its location in the fuse box cover ⇒ *page 381*, fig. 308 and install the cover.
- Have the problem corrected.

**Tips**

To turn the crank for emergency closing more easily, you should use the screwdriver handle from the tool kit ⇒ *page 371* as an aid. First, remove the screwdriver from the handle, then push the handle onto the crank. ■

# Clear vision

## Lights

### Switching the headlights on and off

*In the "AUTO" position, a light sensor* automatically switches the head- and taillights on and off in response to light conditions.*




**Fig. 60 Instrument panel: light switch**

The light switch must not be overturned past the stops in **either** direction.

#### Switching on automatic headlight control

– Turn the light switch to **AUTO** ⇒ fig. 60.

#### Switching on the side marker lights

– Turn the light switch to ⇒.

#### Switching on the headlights and high beam

– Turn the light switch to ≡D.

– Push the high beam lever forward towards the instrument panel ⇒ *page 77*.

#### Switching off the lights

– Turn the light switch to **O**.

The headlights only work when the ignition is switched on. While starting the engine or when switching off the ignition, the headlights will go off and only the side marker lights will be on.

After starting the engine, the headlights are automatically adjusted* to the load and angle of the vehicle (for example, during acceleration, braking). This prevents oncoming traffic from experiencing unnecessary headlight glare from your headlights.

If the system is not operating properly, a warning symbol in the Auto-Check Control is displayed ⇒ *page 37*.

With the side marker lights or headlights switched on, the symbol next to the light switch illuminates ⇒.

#### Daytime running lights

- **USA models:** On vehicles with *xenon lights* the daytime running lights will come on automatically when the ignition is turned on and the light switch ⇒ fig. 60 is in the **O** position or the **AUTO** position (only in daylight conditions). The **Daytime running lights** function can be turned on and off in the MMI menu **Exterior lighting** ⇒ *page 74*. On vehicles with *halogen lights*, daytime running lights can be activated by your authorized Audi dealer ⇒ ⚠.
- **Canada models:** The daytime running lights will come on automatically when the ignition is turned on and the light switch ⇒ fig. 60 is in the **O** position or the **AUTO** position (only in daylight conditions) ⇒ ⚠.

#### Automatic headlight control*

In the switch position **AUTO** the **automatic headlight control** is turned on. The low beams and tail lights are turned on automatically through a light sensor as soon as ambient brightness (e.g. when driving into a tunnel) falls below a value preset at the factory. When ▶

ambient brightness increases again, the low beams are turned off again automatically ⇒ ⚠.

In the **AUTO** position the low beams are switched off automatically when the ignition is turned off.

### Light Sensor Malfunction*

In the event of a light sensor malfunction, the driver is notified in the instrument cluster display:

**Automatic headlights/automatic wipers defective**

For safety reasons the low beams are turned on permanently with the switch in **AUTO**. However, you can continue to turn the lights on and off using the light switch. Have the light sensor checked as soon as possible at an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never use daytime running lights to see where you are going. They are not bright enough and will not let you see far enough ahead for safety, especially at dusk or when it is dark. Always switch on the low beams at dusk or when it is dark.**
- **Automatic headlights* are only intended to assist the driver. They do not relieve the driver of his responsibility to check the headlights and to turn them on manually according to the current light and visibility conditions. For example, fog and rain cannot be detected by the light sensors. So always switch on the headlights under these weather conditions and when driving in the dark.**
- **Crashes can happen when you cannot see the road ahead and when you cannot be seen by other motorists.**
  - **Always turn on the headlights so that you can see ahead and so that others can see your car from the back.**

**Tips**

- With the switch in **AUTO** front fog lights and rear fog lights cannot be turned on in addition.
- The light sensor* for headlight control is located in the rear view mirror mount. Do not apply any stickers to the windshield in this area to prevent malfunctions or failures.
- If you remove the ignition from the ignition lock while the headlights are still on, a buzzer will sound as long as the driver's door is open to remind you to turn off the lights.
- Always observe the specific local regulations for your area as to when to use your lights. ■

## Adjusting exterior lighting

*The functions are set in the MMI.*




**Fig. 61 MMI display: Exterior lighting**

– Press the CAR function button.

– Select **Exterior lighting**. The menu **Exterior lighting** appears ⇒ fig. 61.

### Coming home*

The **Coming home** function ensures that after **turning off the ignition and opening the driver's door** the vehicle periphery is illuminated in the dark. In addition, the front fog lights, the tail lights and the license plate light are turned on. On-time can be set for a period from 0 (off) to 60 seconds. ▶

### Leaving home*

The **Leaving home** function ensures that **when unlocking** the vehicle periphery is illuminated in the dark. In addition, the front fog lights, the tail lights and the license plate light are turned on. This function can be turned on and off.

### Daytime running lights

**USA models:** On vehicles with *xenon lights* the daytime running lights can be turned on or off using this function. On vehicles with *halogen lights*, daytime running lights can be activated by your authorized Audi dealer.

**Canada models:** The function cannot be turned off. It is activated automatically each time the ignition is turned on. This menu item is shown "greyed out". ■

## Front fog lights




**Fig. 62 Instrument panel: light switch**

The light switch must not be overturned past the stops in **either** direction.

### Switching on the front fog lights

– Turn the light switch to or to .

– Pull the light switch to the *first* stop (1).

When the front fog lights are on, the symbol next to the light switch will illuminate.

### Tips

With the switch in **AUTO** front fog lights and rear fog lights cannot be turned on in addition. ■

## Rear fog lights




**Fig. 63 Instrument panel: light switch**

The light switch must not be overturned past the stops in **either** direction.

– Turn the light switch to or to .

– Pull the light switch to the *second* stop (2).

When the rear fog lights are on, both the and symbols next to the light switch will illuminate.

### Note

The rear fog lights can distract drivers behind you, so, they should be turned on **only** in conditions of very poor visibility. Always observe local regulations when using the rear fog lights. ▶

### Tips

With the switch in **AUTO** front fog lights and rear fog lights cannot be turned on in addition. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Light

## Adaptive Light

*When driving around bends, the relevant area of the road is better illuminated.*

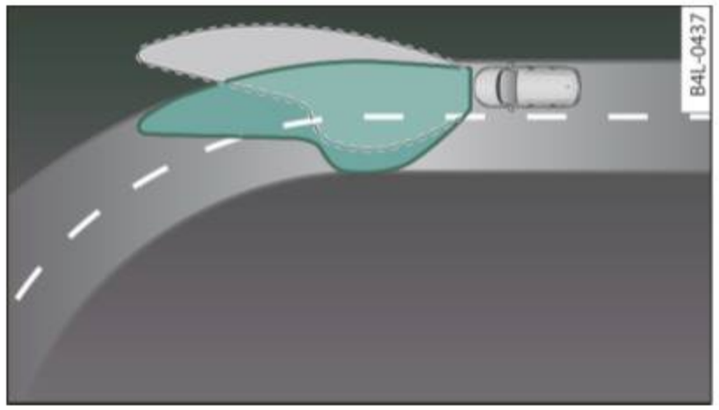



**Fig. 64 Adaptive Light when driving**

The benefit of Adaptive Light is that the curve and the edge of the road are better illuminated ⇒ fig. 64. The Adaptive Light is controlled automatically, depending on vehicle speed and steering wheel angle.

When driving around bends, the headlights are controlled according to steering wheel angle. So that there is no black area ahead of the vehicle, the two main beams pivot at different angles.

### Tips

The system works above a speed of about 6 mph (10 km/h). ■

Applies to vehicles: with light package

## Perimeter lighting in the mirror housing

*LEDs in the exterior mirror housing illuminate the ground during entry.*

This function ensures that **when unlocking**, the vehicle periphery is illuminated in the dark. LEDs in the exterior mirror housing are switched on. The function cannot be turned off separately. ■

## Emergency flasher ⚠

*The emergency flasher makes other motorists aware that you or your vehicle are in an emergency situation.*




**Fig. 65 Center console: emergency flasher switch**

– Press the switch ⚠ ⇒ fig. 65 to turn the emergency flashers on or off.

When the emergency flasher is on, all four turn signals blink at the same time. The turn signal indicator lights ⇦ ⇨ in the instrument cluster, as well as the light in the emergency flasher switch ⚠ blink likewise.

The emergency flashers will turn on automatically if you are in an accident where the airbag has deployed. ▶

### Tips

You should turn on the emergency flashers when:

- you are the last vehicle standing in a traffic jam so that any other vehicles coming can see you, or when
- your vehicle has broken down or you are in an emergency situation, or when
- your vehicle is being towed by a tow truck or if you are towing another vehicle behind you. ■

## Turn signal ⇦ ⇨ and high beam ≡D lever

*The lever on the left side of the steering column is used to operate the turn signals and the high beam as well as the headlight flasher.*

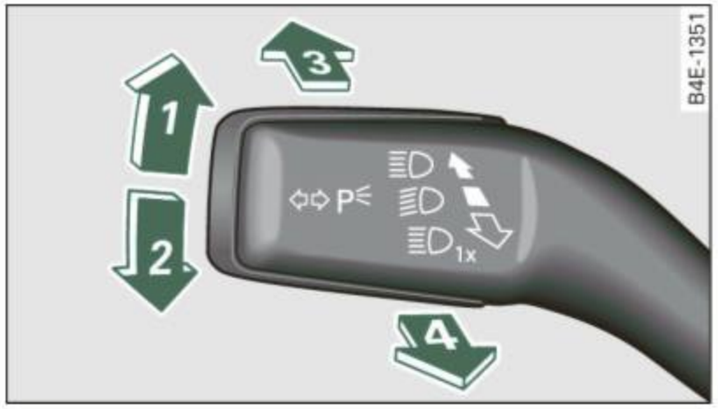



**Fig. 66 Turn signal and high beam lever**

The turn signal and high beam lever has the following functions:

### Turn signals ⇦ ⇨

– Lift the lever up all the way ⇒ fig. 66 (1) to use the right turn signals, or push the lever down all the way (2) to use the left turn signals.

### Auto-blink

– Move the lever (up or down) just to the point of resistance to use the turn signals for as long as you need them, for example when changing lanes.
– Move the lever (up or down) just to the point of resistance and then release it right away to make the turn signals blink *three times*. You can use this feature for example when changing lanes on highways.

### High beam ≡D

– Push the lever forward (3) to switch on the high beam.
– Pull the lever back towards you to switch off the high beam.

### Headlight flasher ≡D

– Pull the lever toward the steering wheel (4) to use the headlight flasher.

### Notes on these features

- The *turn signals* only work with the ignition turned on. The indicator lights ⇦ or ⇨ in the instrument cluster ⇒ *page 17* also blink.
- After you have turned a corner, the turn signal switches off automatically.
- The *high beam* works only when the headlights are on. The indicator light ≡D in the instrument cluster illuminates when the high beams are on.
- The *headlight flasher* works only as long as you hold the lever - even if there are no lights turned on. The indicator light ≡D in the instrument cluster illuminates when you use the headlight flasher. ▶

**Note**

Do not use the high beam or headlight flasher if you know that these could blind oncoming traffic. ■

# Interior lights

## Front interior lights

*The interior lights include reading lights for both the driver and the front passenger.*




**Fig. 67 Headliner: Front interior lights**




**Fig. 68 Headliner: Front reading lights:**

The rocker switch (A) ⇒ fig. 67 for operating the interior lighting has the following functions:

### Door contact switch

– Place the switch (A) in the middle position.

### Interior light switched on

– Place the switch (A) in position I.

### Interior light switched off

– Place the switch (A) in position O.

### Reading lights

– Press one of the switches (B) to turn the right or left reading light on or off ⇒ fig. 68.

In the door contact switch position (switch (A) in the middle position), the interior lights turn on as soon as you unlock the vehicle or open the doors. The interior lights are also turned on when the ignition key is removed. The light goes out about 30 seconds after the doors are closed. When the vehicle is locked or when the ignition is turned on, the interior lights are turned off.

When a door is open, the interior lights are turned off after about 10 minutes to prevent draining the battery.

The brightness of the lights is controlled automatically by a dimmer when they are switched on and off. ■

## Rear interior lights

*There are reading lights in the rear for the passengers.*

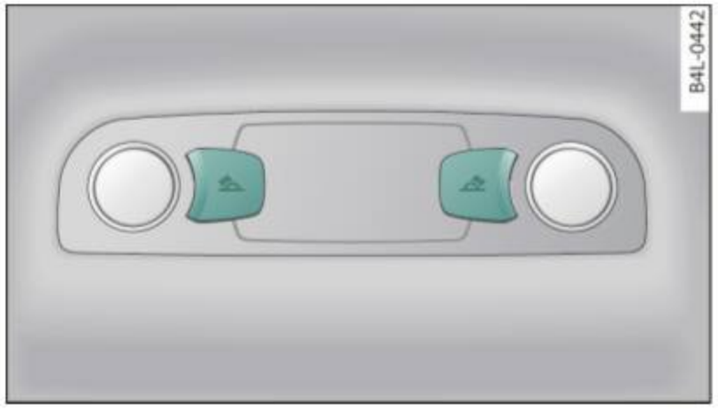



**Fig. 69 Headliner: Rear reading lights**




**Fig. 70 Headliner: Third row reading light**

– Press one of the switches to turn the right or left reading light on or off ⇒ fig. 69.

For vehicles with third row seating*, the luggage compartment light can be switched on and off with the button and used as a reading light ⇒ fig. 70. The rear lid has to be closed.

The lights in the luggage compartment and in the rear lid switch on and off automatically when the lid is opened and closed.

### Tips

If the rear lid remains open longer than 10 minutes, the luggage compartment lights turn off automatically to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging. ■

Applies to vehicles: with background lighting

## Background lighting

*The background lighting can be adjusted in the MMI.*




**Fig. 71 Car: Background lighting**

– Press the **Systems*** control button in the car menu.

– Select **Background lighting**.

– Rotate the control knob *clockwise* to increase the brightness, and

– Rotate the control knob *counterclockwise* to reduce the brightness.

When the vehicle is unlocked, the standard lighting turns on automatically and dims after approx. 2 minutes, and when the ignition is turned on it switches off immediately. ▶

**The following interior lighting is controlled through Background lighting:**

- Front footwell
- Rear footwell
- Front door panel
- Rear door panel ■

# Vision

## Sun visors

*Using the sun visors makes driving safer.*

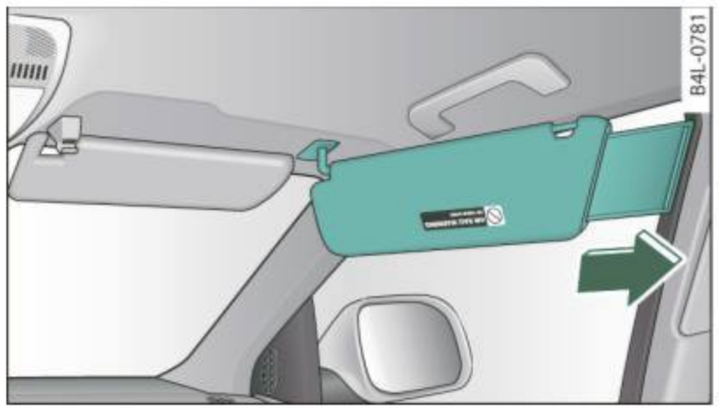



**Fig. 72 Passenger side: Sun visor**

### Sun visors

The forward visor of the dual sun visor can be pulled out of its bracket in the center of the vehicle and swung towards the door. The sun visor can be extended after it is swung towards the door ⇒ fig. 72.

### Vanity mirror

The vanity mirrors on the sun visors are covered. When the cover is raised, the mirror lighting switches on automatically. It turns off when the lid is closed and the visor is folded up again. ■

Applies to vehicles: with sun shade

## Sun shade

*The windows in the rear doors and the rear window are each equipped with a sun shade.*




**Fig. 73 Sun shade pulled up on a rear window**




**Fig. 74 Sun shade pulled up on the rear lid window**

### Sun shade (rear doors)

– Pull the shade out and hang it in the bracket on the upper door frame ⇒ fig. 73.

### Sun shade (rear window)

– Pull the shade out and hang it in the bracket on the rear lid frame ⇒ fig. 74. ■

# Wiper and washer system

## Front windshield wipers

*The windshield wiper lever controls both the windshield wipers and the washer system.*

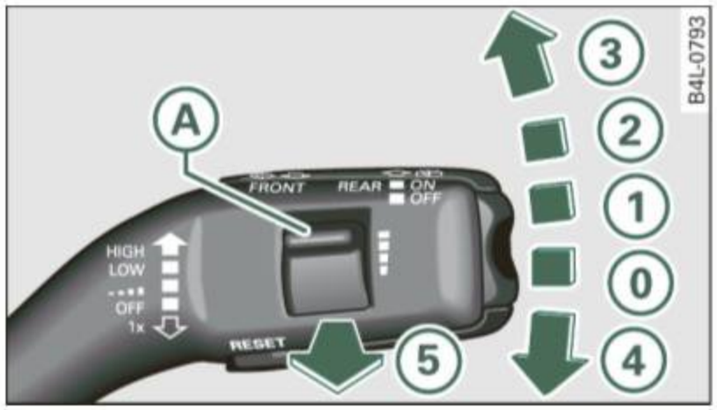



**Fig. 75 Windshield wiper lever**

The windshield wiper lever ⇒ fig. 75 has the following positions:

### Intermittent wiping (activating rain sensor*)

– Move the lever up to position (1).

– Move switch (A) up or down, to change the intervals or to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor*.

### Low wiper speed

– Move the lever up to position (2).

### High wiper speed

– Move the lever up to position (3).

### One-touch wiping

– Move the lever to position (4), when you want to wipe the windshield *briefly*.

### Automatic wiper/washer

– Pull the lever to position (5) (toward the steering wheel) and hold.

– Release the lever. The washer stops and the wipers keep going for about four seconds. Depending on how long the lever is held, different numbers of wash cycles are performed.

### Turning off the wipers

– Move the lever back to position (0).

### General information

The windshield wipers and the windshield washer system operate only with the ignition on.

During a temporary stop, e.g. at a traffic signal, the set wipe speed is automatically reduced by one stage.

The windshield washer nozzles are heated at low temperatures when the ignition is on.

### Removing water droplets

About 5 seconds after the wash cycle is complete, the wiper system performs a single automatic wipe cycle to remove any water droplets that remain on the windshield.

If you would like to deactivate this delayed wipe cycle while driving, you have to pull the lever to position (5) again within 10 seconds after this wipe cycle.

Water droplet removal is reactivated after the ignition is switched off and then on again. ▶

### Winter position

To speed up de-icing of the windshield wipers, they move to the winter position when the ignition is switched off and at an outside temperature below 39 °F (4 °C). In this position, the windshield wipers are in an area on the glass which is reached by the air vents below the glass. It is also easier to remove snow and ice from the windshield wipers in this position.

The wipers leave the winter position, when the ignition is switched on, if the windshield wiper lever is operated or the active rain sensor* reacts to moisture.

### Rain sensor*

The rain sensor operates only in the interval wiper position. When it starts to rain, the interval wiper mode is activated automatically.

If the windshield wiper lever is in the interval wipe position with the ignition switched off, the rain sensor is not activated until vehicle speed is above 4 mph (6 km/h).

To reduce the sensitivity of the rain sensor, the switch (A) must be moved down. To increase the sensitivity of the rain sensor, the switch must be moved up.

The higher the sensitivity setting, the sooner the windshield wipers react to moisture on the windshield. Increased sensitivity is signaled by the windshield wipers making a single pass over the windshield.

The rain sensor wiper intervals depend on the sensitivity setting as well as vehicle speed. During brief stops, wiper motion will adjust in relation to the amount of rain on the windshield.

**WARNING**

- **Wiper blades are crucial for safe driving! Only when they are in good condition are they able to clear the windows properly to provide uncompromised visibility. Worn or damaged wiper blades are a safety hazard ⇒ *page 84,* "Installing new wiper blades"!**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **The rain sensor* is only designed to assist and support the driver. It remains entirely the driver's responsibility to monitor outside weather conditions and to manually activate the wipers as soon as rain or drizzle reduces visibility through the windshield.**

**Note**

In freezing or near freezing conditions:

- Always check that the wiper blades are not frozen to the glass before you turn the wipers on. Loosen a wiper blade which is frozen in place before operating the wipers to prevent damage to the wiper blade or the wiper motor.
- Do not use the wipers to clear a frosted window. Using the wipers as a convenient ice scraper will destroy the wiper blades.
- Before you take your vehicle to an automatic car wash, make sure you have the windshield wiper system switched off (lever in position 0), otherwise the windshield wiper system could get damaged in the car wash if it should suddenly come on.

**Tips**

- The rain sensor* is part of the interval wiping system. Turning off the ignition will also deactivate the rain sensor. To reactivate the sensor, switch off the interval wiping function, then switch it back on again.
- Worn or dirty windshield wiper blades cause smearing which can affect the operation of the rain sensor*. Check the condition of your windshield wiper blades regularly.
- Make sure the washer fluid reservoir in the engine compartment is topped off before going on a long trip. Look up ⇒ *page 346* for checking and filling the washer container. ■

## Rear window wiper

*The wiper lever is also used to operate the rear window wiper and the automatic wiper/washer function.*

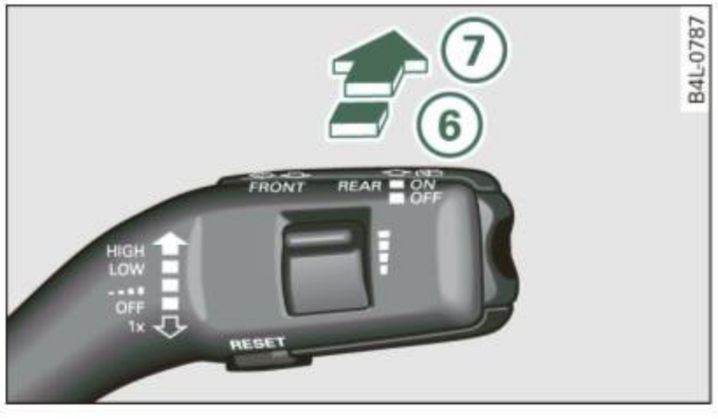



**Fig. 76 Wiper lever: activating the rear window wiper and washer**

The rear window wiper and the automatic wiper/washer functions are activated as follows:

### Intermittent wiping

– Push the wiper lever forward to the *first* position (6) ⇒ fig. 76. The rear window wiper will wipe the window approx. every four seconds.

### Automatic wiper/washer function

– Push the wiper lever forward *to the second stop*, position (7), and hold it there for as long as you want the rear wiper/washer to operate.

– Release the lever again. the wiper will keep running for approx. four seconds.

### Switching intermittent wiper action off

– Pull the lever all the way back to the original position.

As soon as the reverse gear is engaged and the front wipers are turned on and operating at the same time, the rear wiper also turns on automatically.

**WARNING**

**Wiper blades are crucial for safe driving! Only in good condition are they able to clear the windows properly to provide unrestricted visibility. Worn or frayed wiper blades are a safety hazard!**
**⇒ *page 84,* "Installing new wiper blades"**

**Note**

In freezing or near freezing conditions:

- Always check that the wiper blades are not frozen to the glass before you turn the wiper on. Loosen a wiper blade which is frozen in place before operating the wiper to prevent damage to the wiper blade or the wiper motor.
- Do not use the wiper to clear a frosted window. Using the wipers as a convenient ice scraper will destroy the wiper blades. ■

Applies to vehicles: with headlight washer system

## Headlight washer system

*The headlight washer system cleans the headlights.*

– Operate the windshield wiper/washer system ⇒ *page 81,* fig. 75 (5) with the headlights turned on by holding the lever for longer than one second.

The washer jets extend forward out of the front bumper driven by water pressure to spray the front headlights with water.

You should inspect the headlights regularly (for example when refueling) and clean off any solid dirt or insects from the lenses.

To ensure the system works properly in winter, keep the washer jets free of snow and remove any ice using a de-icing spray. ■

## Service position

*The wiper blades can only be changed in the service position.*




**Fig. 77 MMI display: Windshield wipers**

– Move the windshield wiper lever to the normal position (0) ⇒ *page 81*, fig. 75.
– At below freezing outside temperatures, make sure first that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield.
– Press the CAR function button.
– Select **Windshield wipers**. The **Windshield wipers** menu appears ⇒ fig. 77.
– Select **Service position on** to turn the service position on or **off** to return the windshield wiper to its original position.

You must only attempt to change the wiper blades when the service position is activated. This way, when you are working on the windshield wipers, you can avoid damaging the paint on the engine hood.

### Note

Never drive your vehicle when the windshield wiper arms are in the service position and pulled away from the windshield. When you drive faster than 4 mph (6 km/h), the wiper arms automatically return back to the park position and could cause paint damage to the engine hood!

### Tips

- You can also turn on the service position, for example, if you want to protect the windshield from icing, using a cover.
- The service position moves to **off** automatically when you operate the windshield wiper lever, or speed exceeds 4 mph (6 km/h). ■

## Installing new wiper blades

*Wiper blades in good condition help keep the windshield clear.*

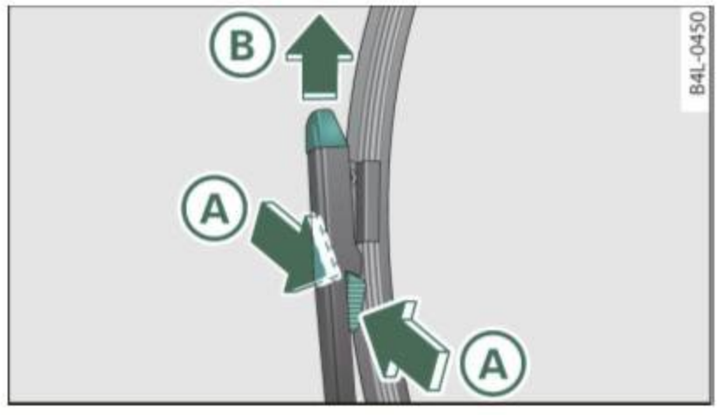



**Fig. 78 Removing the wiper blades**

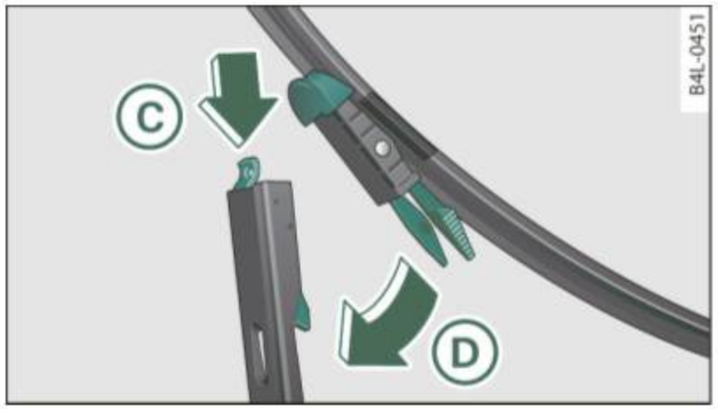



**Fig. 79 Installing wiper blades**

### Removing a wiper blade

– Bring the windshield wipers to the service position ⇒ *page 84*.

– Lift the wiper arm away from the windshield.

– Squeeze the plastic bracket on the windshield wiper arm together on both sides Ⓐ ⇒ *page 84*, fig. 78.

– Turn the wiper blade away from the wiper arm.

– Lift the wiper blade off in the direction of the arrow Ⓑ.

### Installing wiper blade

– Place the new wiper blade in the retainer on the wiper arm Ⓒ ⇒ fig. 79.

– Swing the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow Ⓓ against the wiper arm.

– Squeeze the corrugation on the wiper until you hear the bracket click in the wiper arm.

– Place the wiper arm back against the windshield.

Clean your wiper blades regularly with a windshield washer solution to prevent streaking. If the blades are very dirty, for example with insects, carefully clean the blades with a sponge or a soft brush.

If the wiper blades begin to streak the windshield, this could be caused by residue left on the windshield by automatic car washes.

Fill the windshield washer container with a special solution available at your authorized Audi dealer to remove the residue.

**WARNING**

**Be sure to inspect the condition of your wiper blades regularly. See your authorized Audi dealer for replacement blades.**

**Note**

To prevent damage to the wiper system:

- Always loosen blades which are frozen to the windshield before operating wipers.
- Do not use gasoline, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near the wiper blades.
- Do not attempt to move the wipers by hand.
- The windshield wiper blades must only be replaced when in the service position ⇒ *page 84*! Otherwise, you risk damaging the paint on the hood or the windshield wiper motor.

**Tips**

Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes affect the cleanability of the windshield. ■

## Changing the rear wiper blade

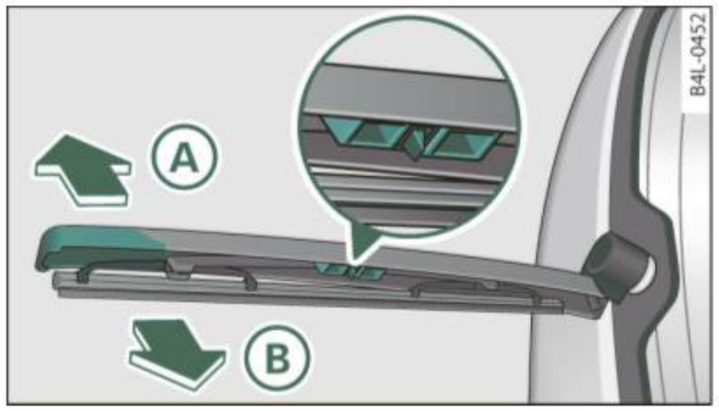



Fig. 80 Rear window wiper Detaching the rear wiper blade

### Removing the wiper blade

– Fold the windshield wiper arm away from the glass.

– Grasp the upper end of the wiper arm with one hand and the metal clamp on the wiper blade with the other ⇒ fig. 80.

– Hold the wiper arm in the direction of the arrow (A) and pull the wiper blade out of the holder only in the direction of the arrow (B).

### Attaching the wiper blade

– Adjust the wiper blade in the holder.

– Hold the upper end of the wiper arm with one hand.

– Press the wiper blade into the holder with your other hand.

– Fold the wiper arm back onto the windshield.

**WARNING**

- **To avoid streaks, you should clean the windshield wiper blades regularly with window cleaner. For heavy soiling, for example, insects, the wiper blades can also be cleaned with a sponge or a cloth.**
- **For safety reasons, the windshield wiper blades should be replaced once or twice a year. ■**

# Mirrors

## Manual anti-glare adjustment

### Standard setting

– Move the small lever (located on the bottom edge of the mirror) to the front.

### Anti-glare setting

– Move the small lever (located on the bottom edge of the mirror) to the rear. ■

Applies to vehicles: with automatically dimming inside mirror

## Automatically dimming inside mirror

*The automatic dimming function can be turned on and off if required.*

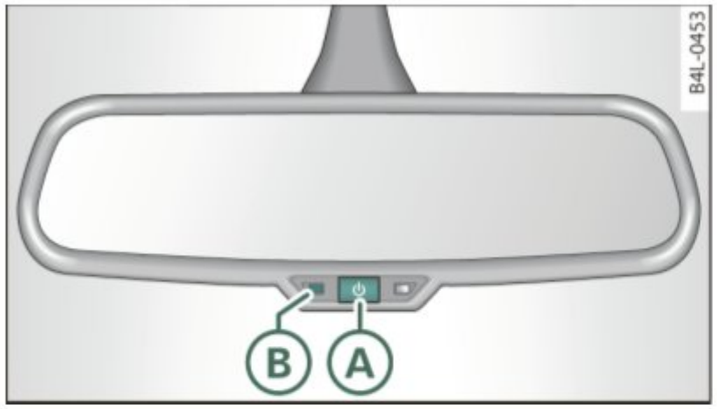



**Fig. 81 Inside rear view mirror**

### Disabling auto dimming

– Press button (A) ⇒ fig. 81 *briefly*, - the green indicator light (B) goes out.

### Activating/reactivating auto dimming

– Press button (A) *briefly*, - the green indicator light (B) goes on.

#### Automatic dimming function

The automatic dimming function is activated every time the ignition is turned on. The green indicator light is lit to indicate auto dimming is active.

When dimming is activated, the inside mirror will darken *automatically* in response to the amount of light striking the mirror (such as headlights from rearward approaching vehicles). Even in dimming mode, the mirror surface turns bright when:

- the interior light is switched on
- reverse gear is engaged.

**WARNING**

**The glass of the inside rear view mirror is layered and contains an electrolyte to achieve its properties. Be aware of liquid electrolyte leaking from a broken mirror glass. This liquid can cause irritation to skin, eyes, and respiratory system. If you get electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with plenty of water. If irritation persists, seek medical attention.**

**Note**

Liquid electrolyte leaked from a broken mirror glass will damage any plastic surfaces it comes in contact with. Clean up spilled electrolyte immediately with clear water and a sponge.

**Tips**

- **If you switch off the automatic dimming function on the inside mirror, automatic dimming of the outside mirrors* will likewise be disabled.**
- Check to make sure there are no objects preventing light from reaching the inside mirror.
- Do not attach any stickers to the windshield in front of the light sensor*, as this would interfere with the automatic operation of the headlights and the automatic dimming of the inside mirror.
- Be aware that automatic dimming of the inside mirror can only operate properly if the rear window sun blind* is retracted. ■

## Outside mirrors

*The outside mirrors are electrically adjusted.*

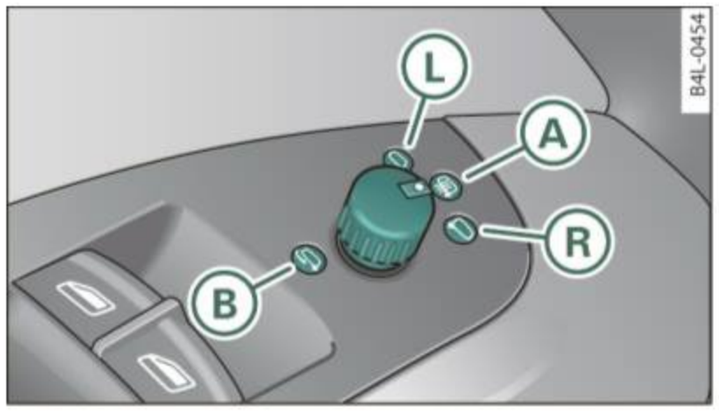



**Fig. 82 Forward section of driver's armrest: power mirror controls**

### Adjusting the outside mirrors

– Turn the adjusting knob to position (L) ⇒ fig. 82 to adjust the outside mirror on the driver's side.

– Turn the adjusting knob to position (R) to adjust the outside mirror on the passenger side.

– Press the knob in the appropriate direction to move the mirror surface so that you have a good view to the rear.

### Heated mirrors

– Turn the knob to position (A).

### Folding both outside mirrors flat*

– Turn the knob to (B).

Depending on the outside temperature, the mirror surfaces are heated until the ignition is switched off - even if the knob is no longer in position (A).

We recommend folding* the outside mirrors flat to help when parking your vehicle or when maneuvering in very tight spaces.

### Memory setting for the outside mirrors*

When the seat position is saved in the memory, the position of the outside mirrors is saved at the same time ⇒ *page 97*.

If the position of the passenger mirror is changed when the vehicle is in reverse gear and the switch is in the (R) position, this new tilted position will be automatically saved to the remote key when the vehicle is taken out of reverse gear. To save, the rotary knob for mirror adjustment must be in the (R) position, the selector lever must be in the P position and the ignition must be off. This will now become the stored setting when the vehicle is put in reverse gear again.

### Tilting the passenger's side outside mirror (only with seat memory)

When you move the selector lever into **R** (Reverse), the mirror on the front passenger's door (knob turned to (R) ⇒ fig. 82) will tilt slightly downward. This make is easier for you to see the curb when you are backing into a parking space.

The mirror returns to its initial position as soon as reverse gear is disengaged and vehicle speed is above about 9 mph (15 km/h). The mirror also returns to its initial position if the switch is moved to the driver's outside mirror (L) or the ignition is switched off.

### Automatic anti-glare for the outside mirrors*

The outside mirrors dim at the same time as the inside mirror. When the ignition is switched on, the mirrors automatically dim depending on the amount of light striking the mirrors (such as headlights shining into the vehicle from the rear).

When you turn on the interior light, or when you move the selector lever into **R** (Reverse), the anti-glare function stops and the mirrors return to their original condition (not darkened).

**Note**

- Curved (i.e. convex) mirror surfaces increase your field of view. Remember that vehicles or other objects will appear smaller and ▶

farther away than when seen in a flat mirror. If you use this mirror to estimate distances of following vehicles when changing lanes, you could estimate incorrectly and cause an accident.

- If the mirror housing is moved unintentionally (for example, while parking your vehicle), then you must first fold the mirror electrically. Do not readjust the mirror housing manually. You could damage the motor which controls the mirror.
- If you take the vehicle to an automatic car wash, you must fold the exterior mirrors flat to prevent damaging them. Power folding exterior mirrors* must not be folded in or out by hand. Use the power function!

### Tips

If there should be a malfunction in the electrical system, you can still adjust the outside mirrors by pressing the edge of the mirror. ■

Applies to vehicles: with automatic dimming for outside mirrors

## Automatic dimming for outside mirrors

The outside mirrors are dimmed together with the automatic dimming of the inside mirror. When the ignition is switched on, the mirrors darken automatically depending on the light striking them (e.g. headlights from the rear).

When the interior lighting is switched on and when reverse gear is engaged, the mirrors are switched back to their original brightness (not dimmed).

**⚠ WARNING**

**The glass of the inside rear view mirror is layered and contains an electrolyte to achieve its properties. Be aware of liquid electrolyte leaking from a broken mirror glass. This liquid can cause irritation to skin, eyes, and respiratory system. If you get electrolyte in your**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

**eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with plenty of water. If irritation persists, seek medical attention.**

### Note

Electrolyte leaking from a broken mirror glass attacks the vehicle paint and plastic surfaces. Clean up spilled electrolyte immediately with clear water and a sponge.

### Tips

- **If automatic dimming for the inside mirror is switched off, the outside mirrors are also not dimmed automatically.**
- Automatic dimming for the mirror only operates properly if the sunshade* for the rear window is retracted, or the light striking the inside mirror is not hindered by other objects. ■

# Digital compass

Applies to vehicles: with digital compass

## Activating or deactivating the compass

*The direction is displayed on the interior rear view mirror.*

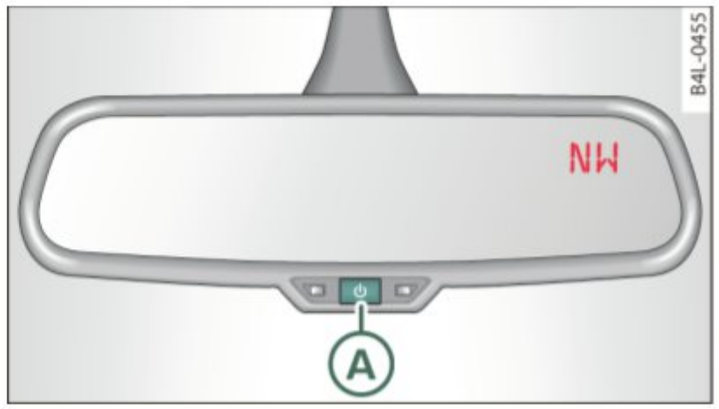



**Fig. 83 Inside rear view mirror: digital compass activated**

– To activate or deactivate, hold the (A) button down until the red display appears or disappears.

The digital compass only works with the ignition turned on. The directions are displayed as initials: **N** (North), **NE** (Northeast), **E** (East), **SE** (Southeast), **S** (South), **SW** (Southwest), **W** (West), **NW** (Northwest).

### Tips

To avoid inaccurate directions, do not allow any remote controls, electrical systems, or metal parts close to the mirror. ■

Applies to vehicles: with digital compass

## Setting the magnetic deflection zone

*The correct magnetic deflection zone must be set in order to display the directions correctly.*

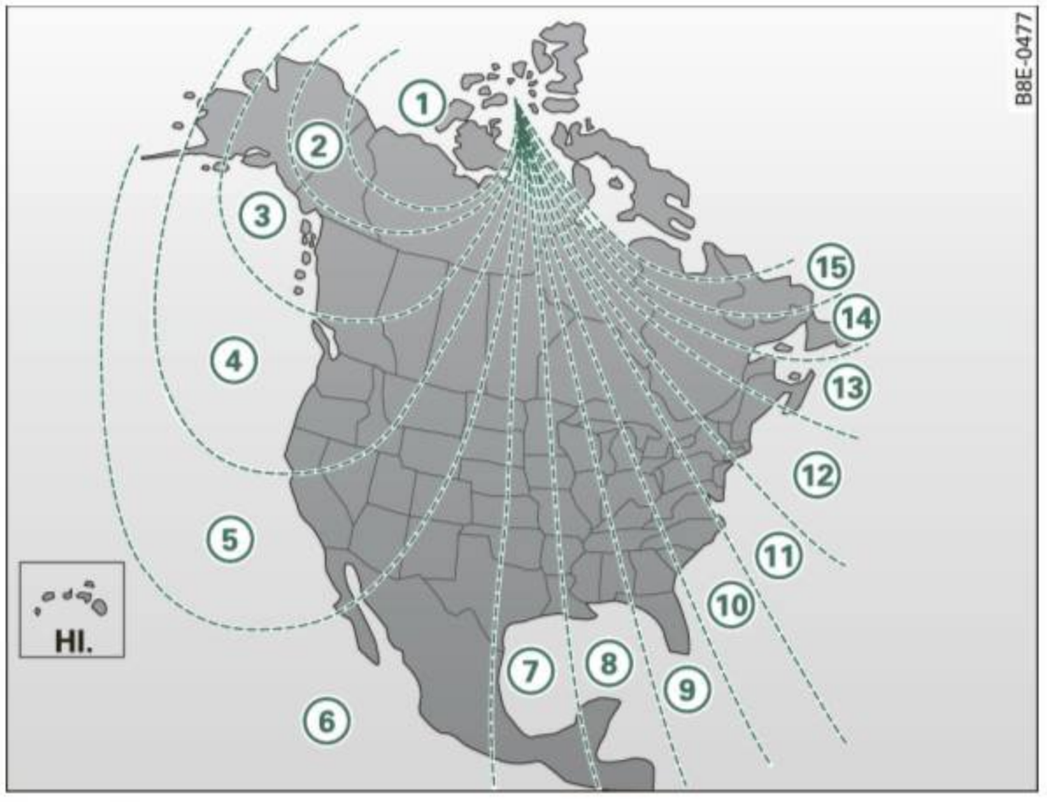



**Fig. 84 North America: magnetic deflection zone boundaries**

– Hold the (A) ⇒ *page 89,* fig. 83 button down until the number of the set magnetic deflection zone appears on the interior rear view mirror.

– Adjust the magnetic deflection zone by repeatedly pressing on the (A) button. The set mode automatically deactivates after a few seconds. ■

Applies to vehicles: with digital compass

## Calibrating the compass

*The compass has to be recalibrated if the display is wrong or inaccurate.*

– Hold the (A) button down until the letter **C** is displayed on the interior rear view mirror.

– Drive in a circle at a speed of about 5 mph (10 km/h) until a direction is shown on the interior rear view mirror.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The digital compass is to be used as a directional aid only. Even though you may want to look at it while you are driving, you must still pay attention to traffic, road and weather conditions as well as other possible hazards. ■**

# Seats and storage

## General recommendations

### Why is your seat adjustment so important?

*The safety belts and the airbag system can only provide maximum protection if the front seats are correctly adjusted.*

There are various ways of adjusting the front seats to provide safe and comfortable support for the driver and the front passenger. Adjust your seat properly so that:

- you can easily and quickly reach all the switches and controls in the instrument panel
- your body is properly supported thus reducing physical stress and fatigue
- the safety belts and airbag system can offer maximum protection ⇒ *page 241*.

In the following sections, you will see exactly how you can best adjust your seats.

There are special regulations and instructions for installing a child safety seat on the front passenger's seat. Always follow the information regarding child safety provided in ⇒ *page 263,* "Child Safety".

**⚠ WARNING**

**Incorrect seating position of the driver and all other passengers can result in serious personal injury.**

- **Always keep your feet on the floor when the vehicle is in motion — never put your feet on top of the instrument panel, out of the window or on top of the seat cushion. This applies especially to the passengers. If your seating position is incorrect, you increase the risk of injury in the case of sudden braking or an accident. If**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

**the airbag inflates and the seating position is incorrect, this could result in personal injury or even death.**

- **It is important for both the driver and front passenger to keep a distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between themselves and the steering wheel and/or instrument panel. If you're sitting any closer than this, the airbag system cannot protect you properly. In addition, the front seats and head restraints must be adjusted to your body height so that they can give you maximum protection.**
- **Always try to keep as much distance as possible between yourself and the steering wheel or instrument panel.**
- **Do not adjust the driver's or front passenger's seat while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly, causing sudden loss of vehicle control and personal injury. If you adjust your seat while the vehicle is moving, you are out of position.** ■

### Driver's seat

*The correct seat position is important for safe and relaxed driving.*

We recommend that you adjust the driver's seat in the following manner:

– Adjust the seat in fore and aft direction so that you can easily push the pedals to the floor while keeping your knees slightly bent ⇒ ⚠ in "Why is your seat adjustment so important?".

– Adjust the seatback so that when you sit with your back against the seatback, you can still grasp the top of the steering wheel. ▶

– Position the head restraint according to the occupant's height ⇒ *page 101*. For maximum protection, the top of the head restraint should be at least at eye level, preferably higher and ideally level with the top of the head ⇒ *page 225,* fig. 237.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never place any objects in the driver's footwell. An object could get into the pedal area and interfere with pedal function. In case of sudden braking or an accident, you would not be able to brake or accelerate. ■**

## Front passenger's seat

*Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position.*

To avoid contact with the airbag while it is deploying, do not sit any closer to the instrument panel than necessary and always wear the three-point safety belt provided adjusted correctly. We recommend that you adjust the passenger's seat in the following manner:

– Move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position of the fore and aft adjustment range ⇒ ⚠ in "Why is your seat adjustment so important?" on *page 92*.

– Bring the backrest up to an (almost) upright position. **Do not** ride with the seat reclined.

– The ideal position for the head restraint is with the upper edge of the restraint level with the top of your head ⇒ *page 101*. You should *not* lower the top of the restraint below the level of your eyes.

– Place your feet on the floor in front of the passenger's seat. ■

# Power seat

## Controls

*The operating logic for the switches corresponds to the construction and function of the seat.*

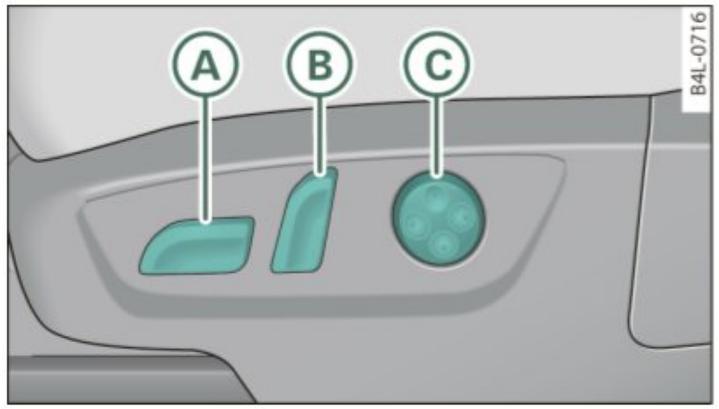



**Fig. 85 Power seat: Controls for seat adjustment**

The switches to adjust the seats correspond to the layout, the design and the function of the seat. The seats are adjusted by moving the switches following this logic.

Ⓐ Seat adjustment ⇒ *page 94*
Ⓑ Adjusting the angle of the seatback ⇒ *page 94*
Ⓒ Adjusting the lumbar support ⇒ *page 95*

**⚠ WARNING**

**• Never adjust the driver's or front passenger's seat while the vehicle is moving. If you do this while the vehicle is moving, you will be out of position. Always adjust the driver's or front passenger's seat when the vehicle is not moving.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Be careful when adjusting the seat height. Check to see that no one is in the way, or serious injury could result!**
- **Because the seats can be electrically adjusted with the ignition key removed, never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Unsupervised use of the electric seat adjustments may cause serious injury. ■**

## Seat adjustment

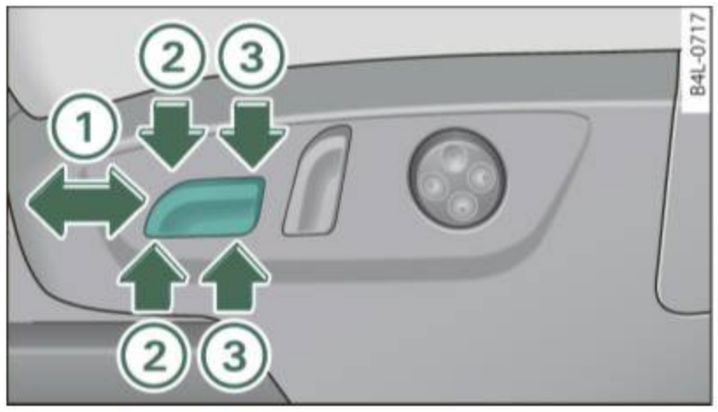



**Fig. 86 Power seat: Switch for seat adjustment**

### Moving the seat forward and backward (1)

– Press the switch forward or backward horizontally ⇒ ⚠.

### Adjusting the seat height (2) and (3) together

– *Pull* the switch *evenly at both ends* to *raise* the seat ⇒ ⚠.
– *Push* the switch *evenly at both ends* to *lower* the seat ⇒ ⚠.

### Angling the seat cushion up and down (2) or (3)

– To angle the seat cushion *up, pull* the switch *at the front only* ⇒ ⚠.
– Alternatively, *push* the switch *at the rear only* ⇒ ⚠.
– To angle the seat cushion *down, push* the switch *at the front only* ⇒ ⚠.
– Alternatively, *pull* the switch *at the rear only* ⇒ ⚠.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never adjust the driver's or front passenger's seat while the vehicle is moving. If you do this while the vehicle is moving, you will be out of position. Always adjust the driver's or front passenger's seat when the vehicle is not moving.**
- **Be careful when adjusting the seat height. Check to see that no one is in the way, or serious injury could result!**
- **Because the seats can be electrically adjusted with the ignition key removed, never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Unsupervised use of the electric seat adjustments may cause serious injury. ■**

## Adjusting the seatback

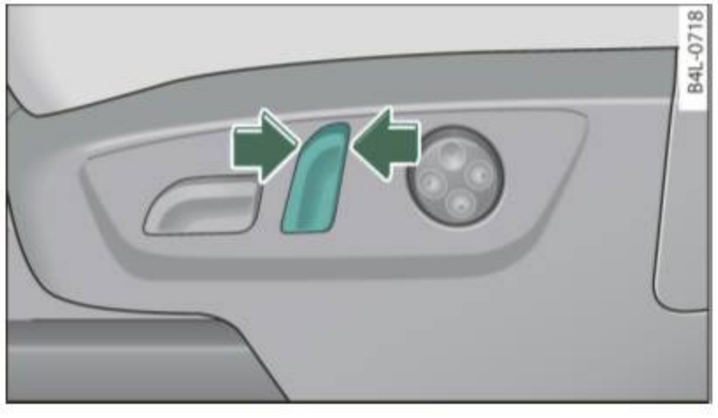



**Fig. 87 Power seat: Switch for seat back angle**

– Push the switch ⇒ fig. 87 forward or to the rear in the direction of the arrow to adjust the angle of the seat back ⇒ ⚠.

**WARNING**

- **Never adjust the seatback while the vehicle is moving. If you adjust your seat while the vehicle is moving, you are out of position. Never adjust the seatback when the vehicle is moving.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury in the case of sudden braking or accident, front passengers must never ride in a moving vehicle with the seatback reclined. Safety belts and the airbag system only offer maximum protection when the seatback is upright and the safety belts are properly positioned on the body. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the risk of personal injury from an incorrect seating position and improperly positioned safety belts.** ■

## Lumbar support

*The lumbar support can be adjusted to fit the natural curvature of the occupant's spine.*

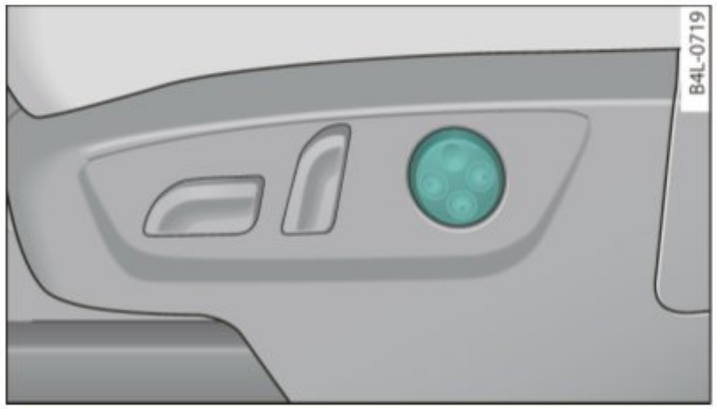



**Fig. 88 Power seat: Switch shell for lumbar support**

### Adjusting the contour

– Push the *forward* depression on the switch shell to *increase* the curvature.

– Push the *rear* depression on the switch shell in order to *decrease* the curvature.

### Adjusting the height

– Push the *top* depression on the switch shell to move the support to a *higher* position in the backrest.

– Push the *bottom* depression on the switch shell to move the support to a *lower* position in the backrest.

The lumbar support is particularly effective in supporting the natural curvature of the spine so that the seating position is more comfortable over long distances.

**WARNING**

**Never adjust the lumbar support while the vehicle is moving. If you adjust your seat while the vehicle is moving, you are out of position. Never adjust the seatback when the vehicle is moving.** ■

# Adjusting front passenger's seat manually

Applies to vehicles: with manually adjustable passenger seat

## Adjustment controls

*Various controls on the manual front passenger's seat provide a wide range for individual adjustments.*

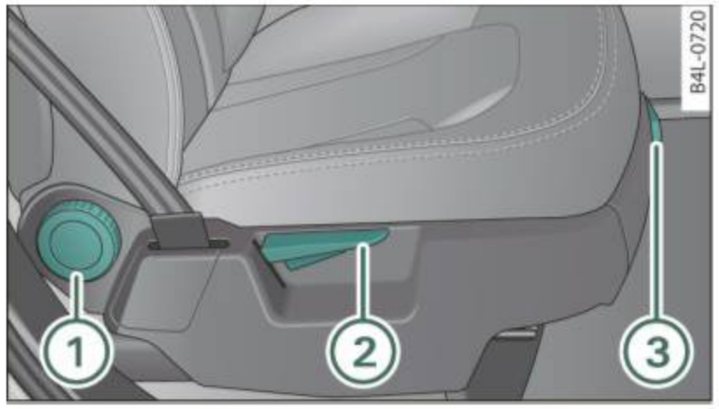



**Fig. 89 Adjustment controls: locations on front passenger's seat**

① Adjusting the seatback angle
② Adjusting the seat height
③ Moving the seat forward or backward ■

Applies to vehicles: with manually adjustable passenger seat

## Adjusting the manual front passenger's seat

*Position, angle and shape of the manual front passenger's seat can be adjusted to provide safe and comfortable seating.*

Reed and heed all **WARNINGS** ⇒ ⚠ before you adjust your seat.

### Moving the seat forward or backward

– Lift the lever ③ ⇒ fig. 89 and slide the seat to the desired position.

– Release the lever and then move the seat further until you feel and hear it engage.

### Adjusting the seat height

– *Pull* the lever ② *up* and pump it to *raise* the seat.

– *Push* the lever *down* and pump it to *lower* the seat.

### Adjusting the seatback angle

– Lean forward to take your weight off the seatback.

– Turn the hand wheel ① in the direction you want the seatback to tilt.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never adjust the front passenger's seat while the vehicle is moving. If you do this while the vehicle is moving, you will be out of position. Always adjust the front passenger's seat when the vehicle is not moving.**
- **Be careful when adjusting the seat height. Check to see that no one is in the way, or serious injury could result!**
- **To reduce the risk of injury in the case of sudden braking or accident, front passengers must never ride in a moving vehicle with the seatback reclined. Safety belts and the airbag system only offer maximum protection when the seatback is upright and the safety belts are properly positioned on the body. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the risk of personal injury from an incorrect seating position and improperly positioned safety belts!** ■

# Seat memory

Applies to vehicles: with seat memory

## Driver's seat memory

*The seat adjustment settings for two drivers can be stored using the memory buttons in the driver's door.*

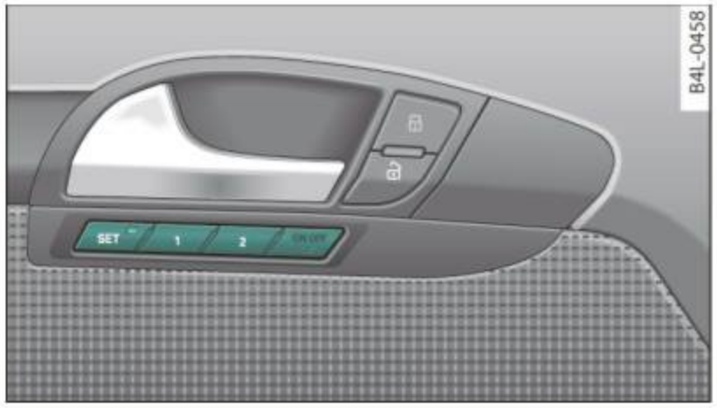



**Fig. 90 Driver's door: Seat memory**

In addition to the setting for the driver's seat, the settings for the steering column* and both exterior mirrors can be stored.

### Storing and recalling settings

Using the memory buttons 1 and 2, you can store and recall the settings for two different drivers ⇒ fig. 90.

The current settings are also automatically stored on the remote control key being used when the vehicle is locked. When the vehicle is unlocked, the settings stored on the remote control key being used are automatically recalled. This function has to be activated in the MMI ⇒ *page 98,* "Activating remote control key memory".

### Turning seat memory on and off

If the ON/OFF switch is depressed, the seat memory is inoperative. The word **OFF** next to the ON/OFF switch illuminates.

All the stored settings are retained. We recommend using the ON/OFF switch and deactivating the seat memory if the vehicle is only going to be used *temporarily* by a driver whose settings are not going to be stored. ■

Applies to vehicles: with seat memory

## Storing and recalling a seat position

Before you can store or recall your seat position, the ON/OFF button must be engaged (down).

### Storing settings

- Adjust the driver's seat ⇒ *page 93.*
- Adjust the steering column* ⇒ *page 141.*
- Adjust both outside mirrors ⇒ *page 88.* In the tilt-down position, the passenger mirror can be adjusted to the preferred position and saved in the seat memory.
- Press the SET button and hold it down. At the same time, press one of the memory buttons for at least one second.
- Release the buttons. The settings are now stored under the corresponding memory button.

### Recalling settings

- Driver's door open - press the desired memory button.
- Driver's door closed - press the corresponding memory button until the stored position is reached.

Successful storage is confirmed audibly and by the light in the SET button illuminating.

When the vehicle is **locked**, the current settings are stored and assigned to the remote control key. But the settings stored on memory buttons 1 and 2 are not deleted. They can be recalled at any ▶

time. When the vehicle is **unlocked**, the settings stored on the remote control key are restored.

If your vehicle is driven by other persons using your remote control key, you should save your individual seat position on one of the memory buttons. You can recall your settings again simply and conveniently by pressing the corresponding memory button. When the vehicle is locked, these settings are automatically re-assigned to the remote control key and stored.

**WARNING**

- **For safety reasons, the seat setting can only be recalled when the vehicle is stationary - otherwise you risk having an accident.**
- **In an emergency, the recall operation can be stopped by pressing the ON/OFF button or by briefly pressing any given memory button.** ■

Applies to vehicles: with seat memory

### Activating remote control key memory

*To be able to recall the stored settings with the remote control key, the function has to be activated in the MMI.*




**Fig. 91 MMI display: Drivers' seat**

– Select **Seat adjustment** in the CAR menu.

– Select **Driver's seat**.

– Select **Remote control key on** to activate the remote control key memory ⇒ fig. 91. ■

## Rear seats

### General information

*Safe transportation of passengers on the rear seats requires proper safety precautions.*

All passengers on the rear seats must be seated in compliance with the safety guidelines explained in ⇒ *page 231* and ⇒ *page 241*. The correct seating position is critical for the safety of front *and* rear seat passengers alike ⇒ *page 224*.

**WARNING**

- **Occupants in the front *and* rear seats must always be properly restrained.**
- **Do not let anyone ride in the vehicle without the head restraints provided. Head restraints help to reduce injuries.**
- **Loose items inside the passenger compartment, can fly forward in a crash or sudden maneuver and injure occupants. Always store articles in the luggage compartment and use the fastening eyes, especially when the rear seat backs have been folded down.**
- **Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ *page 224*, "Proper seating positions for passengers in rear seats".** ■

## Adjusting seat (second row seating)

*The fore-and-aft adjustment* of the seat cushion and the seat back angle can be adjusted.*

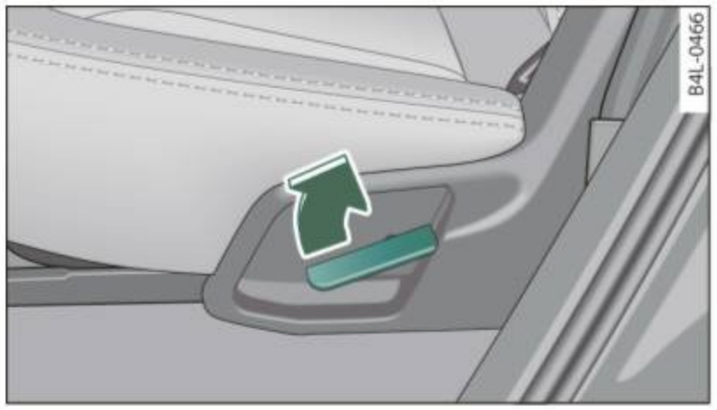



**Fig. 92 Adjusting seat back angle**

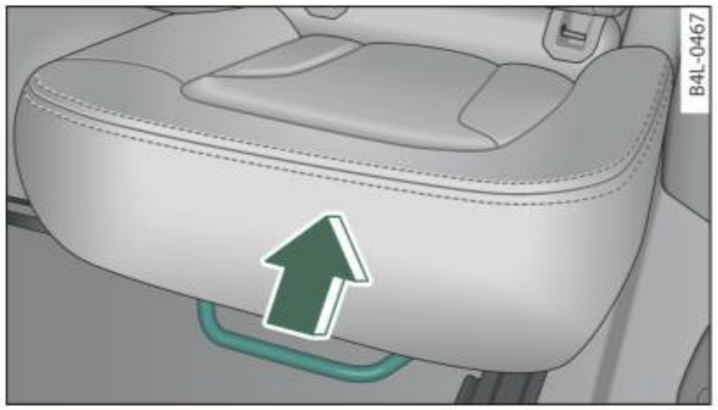



**Fig. 93 Fore-and-aft adjustment**

### Adjusting seat back angle

– Pull the lever up and push the seat back toward the rear to the desired position ⇒ fig. 92. Release the lever.

– Pull the lever up so that the seat back pivots forward. Release the lever and push the seat back to the rear to return the seat back to the normal position.

### Fore-and-aft adjustment*

– Pull the handle up and push the seat forward or back ⇒ fig. 93.

– Release the handle and continue to push the seat until the seat latch engages.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **For safety reasons, the seat must only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary - danger of accident!**
- **Exercise caution when adjusting the seat. Adjusting the seat without checking or paying attention can pinch fingers or limbs - danger of injury! ■**

Applies to vehicles: with entry assist

## Entry assist (second row seating)

*The entry assist makes it easier for occupants to reach the third row seating*.*

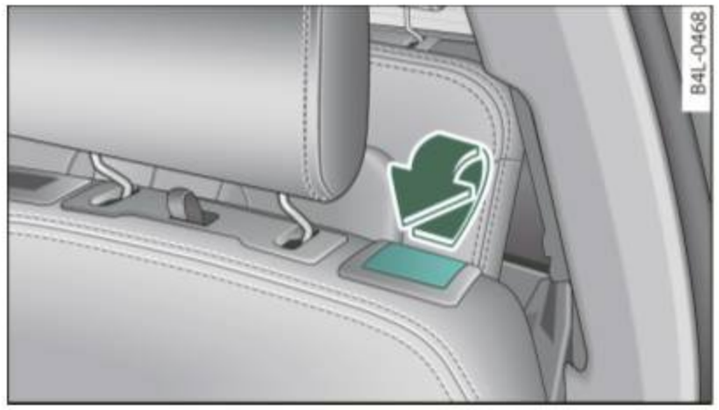



**Fig. 94 Seat back second row seating: Seat back latch**

### Pushing second row of seats forward

– Lift the lever ⇒ fig. 94.

– Tilt the seatback forward.

– Push the seat forward.

### Pushing second row of seats back

– Push the seat back.

– Fold the seat back up until it latches.

To make entry to and exit from the rear of the vehicle easier, the seat backs for the second row seating can be folded forward. At the same time, the seats can be pushed forward and to the rear. ■

Applies to vehicles: with third row seating

## Folding seat back up and down (third row seating)

*The third row seating is suitable for persons up to 1.6 meters (5 ft 3 in) in height.*

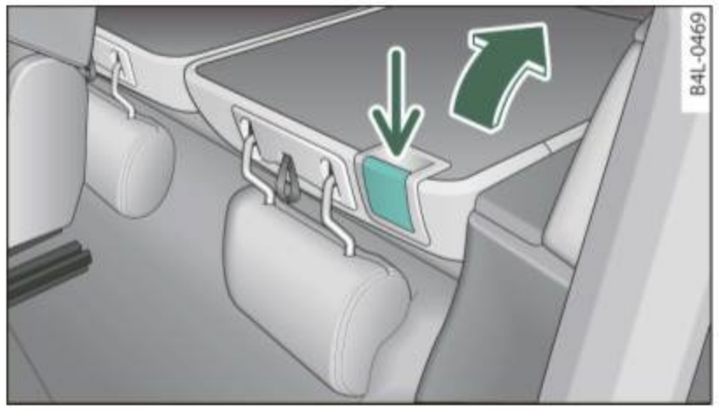



**Fig. 95 Third row of seats: Folding seat back up**

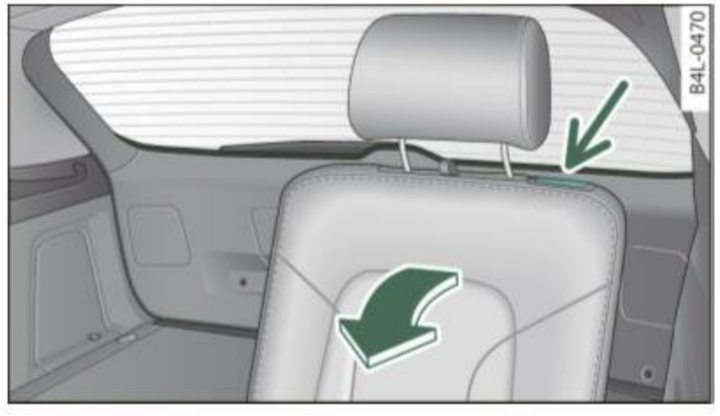



**Fig. 96 Third row of seats: Folding seat back down**

### Raising seat back

– Lift the lever -Arrow- ⇒ fig. 95 and raise the seat back until it locks.

– Raise the head restraint until it locks.

### Folding seat back down

– Lift the lever -Arrow- ⇒ fig. 96 and fold the seat back down completely until it locks.

– The head restraint is automatically tipped down.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Only persons up to a height of 5 feet 3 inches (1.6 m) may be carried on the seats in the third row.**
- **Exercise caution when folding the seat backs up and down. Inattentiveness or carelessness when folding the seat back up and down can pinch fingers or hands.**
- **Always check whether the latch is fully engaged by pulling the seat back forward. ■**

# Head restraints

## Adjusting head restraints, front seats

*The head restraints must be adjusted properly to provide protection.*

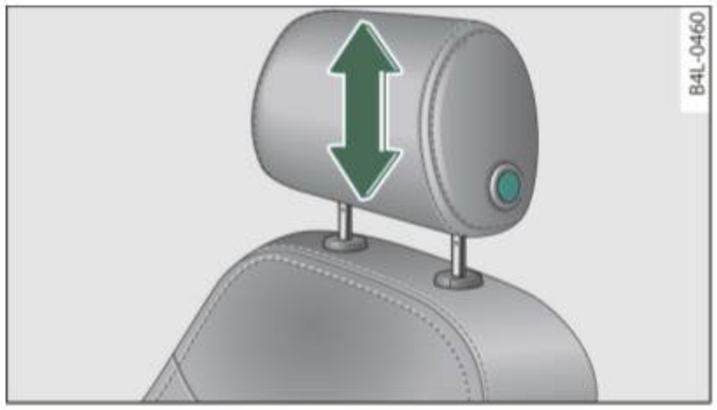



**Fig. 97 Front seats head restraints: adjusting the height**

The head restraints on the *front* seats can be adjusted to provide safe support to head and neck at the optimum height. When optimally adjusted, the top of the restraint should be level with the top of the head ⇒ *page 225,* "Proper adjustment of head restraints".

### Raising head restraint

– Grasp the side of the head restraint with both hands.

– Adjust the head restraints so that the top of the head restraint is *at least* level with your eyes or higher ⇒ fig. 97.

### Lowering head restraint

– Grasp the sides of the head restraint with both hands.

– Press the button ⇒ fig. 97 and adjust the head restraint.

– Adjust the head restraints so that the top of the head restraint is *at least* level with your eyes or higher ⇒ fig. 97.

Refer to ⇒ *page 225,* "Proper adjustment of head restraints" for guidelines on how to adjust the height of the front head restraints to suit the occupant's body size.

**WARNING**

- **Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically.**
- **Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ *page 225.***

**Tips**

Correctly adjusted head restraints and safety belts are an extremely effective combination of safety features. ■

## Outer head restraints

*Passengers may only be carried in the outer rear seats when the head restraint is raised.*

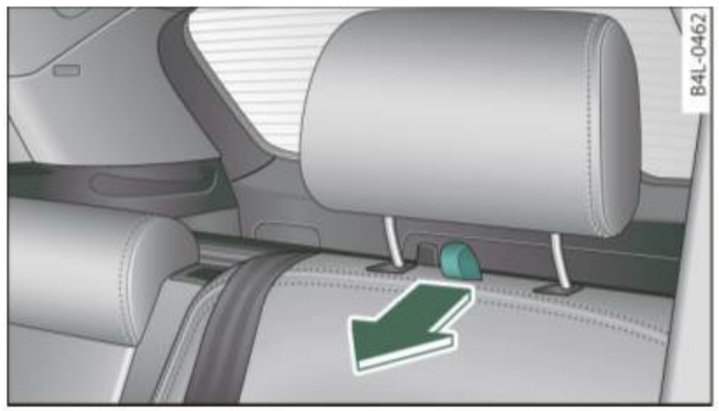



**Fig. 98 Outer rear seats: Head restraint**

If the outer rear seat is not occupied, you can lower the head restraint to obtain better vision to the rear.

– Pull on the loop to fold the head restraint down ⇒ *page 101,* fig. 98.

– Push the head restraint up again until it latches with an audible click.

**⚠ WARNING**

**• The head restraints for the outer seats in the second row must be folded up when persons are being carried in the third row seating* - danger of injury!**

**• Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ *page 225* ■**

## Center rear head restraints

*Passengers may only be carried in the center rear seat if the head restraint has been raised to its uppermost position.*

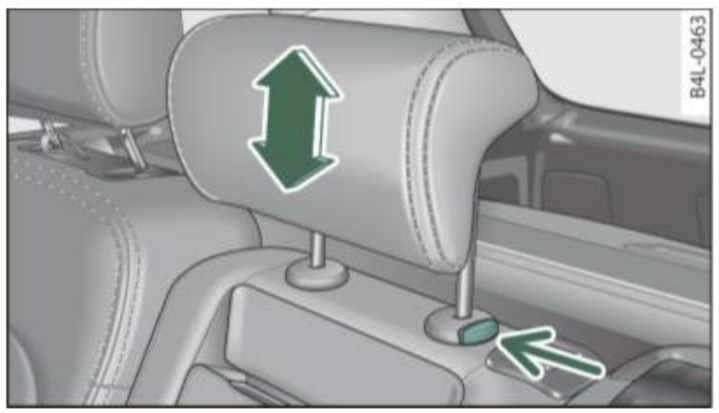



**Fig. 99 Center rear seat position: Head restraint**

When the rear seats are not occupied, you can lower the head restraints (park position) and obtain better rearward vision.

### Moving the head restraints to the "in-use position"

– Grasp the sides of the head restraint with both hands.

– Move the head restraint to the uppermost position ⇒ fig. 99 until it latches (in-use position).

### Moving the head restraints to the "park position"

– Press the button -Arrow- and at the same time push the head restraint down until it is lying against the rear seat back (park position).

**⚠ WARNING**

**• Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted dramatically increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury.**

**• Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ *page 225.* ■**

Applies to vehicles: with convenience center arm rest

## Arm rest

*The arm rest contains a storage compartment and two cup holders.*




**Fig. 100 Arm rest between driver's and passenger's seat**

– Push on the release lever ⇒ fig. 100 to open the storage compartment.

A maximum of two beverages can be accomodated in the arm rest. The second cup holder is located under a cover.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Spilled hot liquid can cause an accident and personal injury.**

- **Never carry any beverage containers with hot liquids, such as hot coffee or hot tea, in the vehicle while it is moving. In case of an accident, sudden braking or other vehicle movement, hot liquid could spill, causing scalding burns. Spilled hot liquid can also cause an accident and personal injury.**
- **Use only soft cups in the cupholder. Hard cups and glasses can cause injury in an accident.**

**Note**

Only drink containers with lids should be carried in the cupholder. Liquid could spill out and damage your vehicle's electronic equipment or stain the upholstery, etc. ■

Applies to vehicles: with long center console

## Long center console

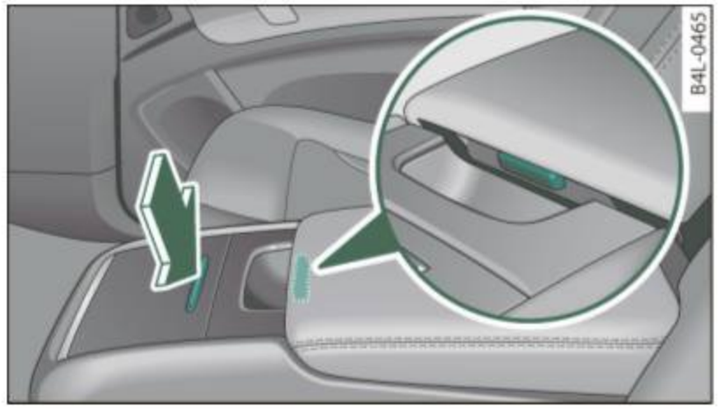



**Fig. 101 Long rear center console**

There are two cupholders and a storage bin in the *long* rear center console. The arm rest is also height adjustable.

### Beverage holder

– Tap the cover ⇒ fig. 101 -Arrow- for it to open automatically.

– Push the cover down to close the bin.

### Storage compartment

– Lift the cover by the front to open the compartment.

– Push the cover down to close the bin. ▶

### Adjusting the arm rest

– Press the release button. The arm rest moves up automatically.

– Release the button when the desired height is reached.

– Press the release button again and at the same time push the arm rest down to lower it.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Spilled hot liquid can cause an accident and personal injury.**

- **Never carry any beverage containers with hot liquids, such as hot coffee or hot tea, in the vehicle while it is moving. In case of an accident, sudden braking or other vehicle movement, hot liquid could spill, causing scalding burns. Spilled hot liquid can also cause an accident and personal injury.**
- **Use only soft cups in the cupholder. Hard cups and glasses can cause injury in an accident.**

**Note**

Only drink containers with lids should be carried in the cupholder. Liquid could spill out and damage your vehicle's electronic equipment or stain the upholstery, etc. ■

# Luggage compartment

## Expanding luggage compartment

*To expand the luggage compartment, the seat backs can be folded forward separately or together.*




**Fig. 102 Release lever for outer seat back**




**Fig. 103 Release lever for center seat back**

### Folding the seatback forward

– Pull the lever up⇒ fig. 102. The seat back pivots forward.

– Allow the seat back to latch in the lowermost position. ▶

### Raising the seatback

– Pull the lever up ⇒ *page 104,* fig. 102 and raise the seat back until it is securely latched ⇒ ⚠.

### Folding center seat back down

– Press the release button ⇒ *page 104,* fig. 103. The red mark on the release lever is visible.

– Tilt the seatback forward.

### Raising center seat back

– Raise the seatback until it is securely latched ⇒ ⚠. It is securely latched when the red mark on the release button is no longer visible.

The center seat back can be folded forward separately. Using this loading option, long objects (e.g. skis) can be carried in the interior.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The backrest must always be securely latched so that the safety belt of the center seating position can work properly to help protect the occupant.**
- **The backrest must be securely latched in position so that no items contained in the luggage compartment can slide forward upon sudden braking.**
- **Always check whether the latch is fully engaged by pulling the seat back forward.**
- **On vehicles with third row seating*, the center seat back must be in the upright position and securely latched when persons are being carried in the third row seats - danger injury!**
- **Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware.**
- **Torn or frayed safety belts can tear and damaged belt hardware can break in a crash. Inspect the belts periodically. Belts showing damage to webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors must be replaced.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

**damage to webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors must be replaced.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always read and heed WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ in "Loading the luggage compartment" on *page 227*.**

**Note**

- When folding the backrest back into place, make sure the safety belt does not get caught, because it can be damaged. A damaged belt can fail to provide safe restraint.
- The heating wires in the rear window can be damaged by abrasive objects on the parcel shelf. ■

## Tie-down rings

*There are four tie-down rings in the luggage compartment for securing luggage items.*

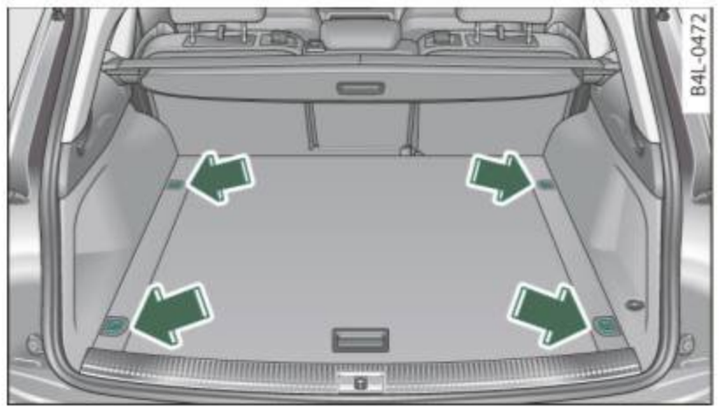



**Fig. 104 Location of the tie-down rings in the luggage compartment**

– Secure the cargo to the tie-down rings ⇒ fig. 104.

– Observe the safety notes ⇒ *page 229*.

In a collision, the laws of physics mean that even smaller items that are loose in the vehicle will turn into heavy missiles that can cause serious injury. Items in the vehicle pick up kinetic energy which varies with the vehicle and the weight of the item. Vehicle speed is the most significant factor.

For example, in a frontal collision at a speed of 30 mph (48 km/h), the forces acting on a 10-lb (4.5 kg) object are about *20 times* the normal weight of the item. This means that the weight of the item would suddenly be the equivalent of about 200 lbs (90 kg). One can easily imagine the injuries that an item of that weight flying freely through the passenger compartment can cause in a collision at a speed considered relatively low.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Weak, damaged or improper straps used to secure items to tie-downs can fail during hard braking or in a collision and cause serious personal injury.**

- **Always use suitable retaining straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from shifting or flying forward.**
- **When the rear seat backrest is folded down, always use suitable retaining straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from flying forward into the passenger compartment.**
- **Never attach a child safety seat tether strap to a tie-down. ■**

Applies to vehicles: with rail system

## Fastening eyelets

*There are four fastening eyelets in the luggage compartment that can be adjusted lengthwise for securing items of baggage and other objects.*

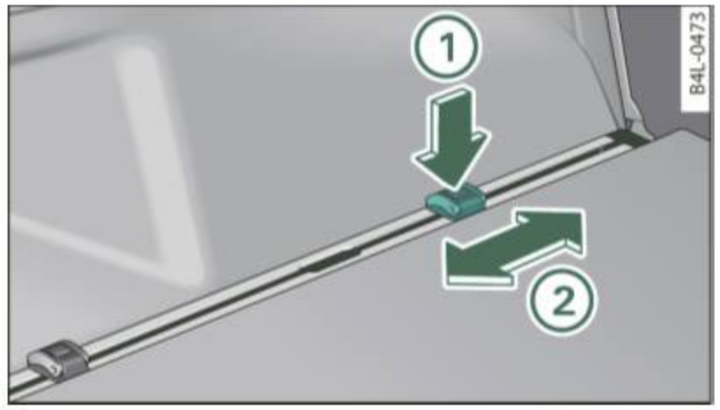



**Fig. 105 Adjusting, removing the fastening eyelets in the luggage compartment**

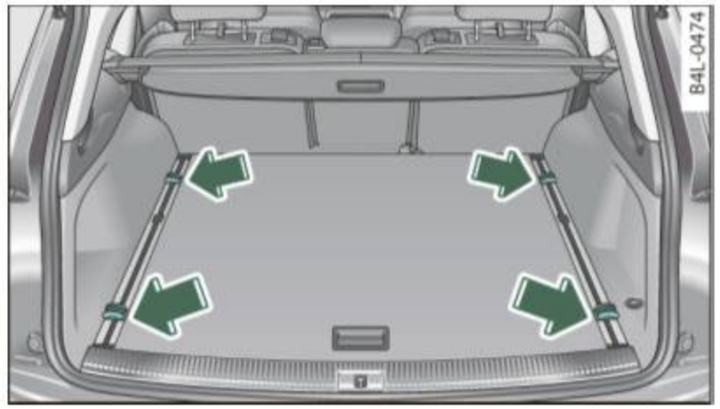



**Fig. 106 Overview of the fastening eyelets in the luggage compartment**

The fastening eyelets can be adjusted individually according to the item by moving the track system.

### Adjusting, removing the fastening eyelets

– Press the knob on the fastening eyelet ⇒ fig. 105 (1).

– Move the eyelet in the desired direction (2). ▶

– To remove the eyelet, move it approximately to the middle of the track (notch). Remove the eyelet.

### Securing the cargo

– Fold the clip on the fastening eyelet up and secure the cargo ⇒ *page 106,* fig. 106 -arrow-.

– Observe the safety notes ⇒ *page 229*.

In a collision, the laws of physics mean that even smaller items that are loose in the vehicle will turn into heavy missiles that can cause serious injury. Items in the vehicle pick up kinetic energy which varies with the vehicle and the weight of the item. Vehicle speed is the most significant factor.

For example, in a frontal collision at a speed of 30 mph (48 km/h), the forces acting on a 10-lb (4.5 kg) object are about *20 times* the normal weight of the item. This means that the weight of the item would suddenly be the equivalent of about 200 lbs (90 kg). One can easily imagine the injuries that an item of that weight flying freely through the passenger compartment can cause in a collision at a speed considered relatively low.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Weak, damaged or improper straps used to secure items to tie-downs can fail during hard braking or in a collision and cause serious personal injury.**

- **Always use suitable retaining straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from shifting or flying forward.**
- **When the rear seat backrest is folded down, always use suitable retaining straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from flying forward into the passenger compartment.**
- **Never attach a child safety seat tether strap to a tie-down.** ■

Applies to vehicles: with cargo net

## Cargo net

*The cargo net prevents light objects from sliding around in the luggage compartment.*

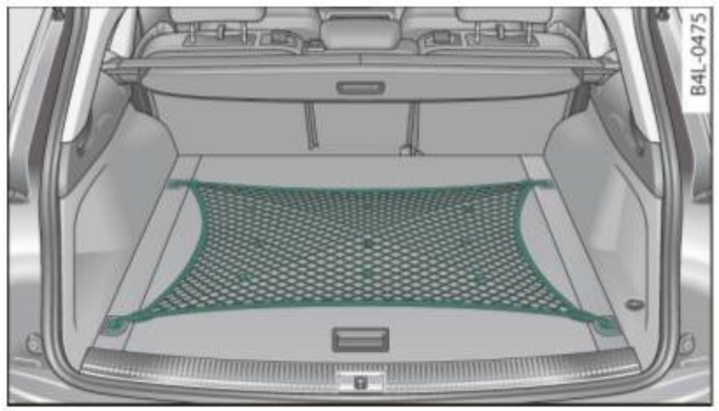



**Fig. 107 Luggage compartment: cargo net**

– Next, hang the *front* hooks in the fastening eyelets.

– Then, hang the *rear* hooks in the fastening eyelets.

**⚠ WARNING**

**For strength-related reasons, the mounting hooks can only be used to secure objects weighing up to 10 lb. (5 kg). Heavier objects will not be adequately secured – there is a risk of injury.**

### Tips

On vehicles with the rail system* ⇒ *page 106*, the luggage net can be attached to the adjustable tie-down rings. ■

## Retractable luggage compartment cover

*The luggage compartment cover keeps luggage or other objects out of view.*

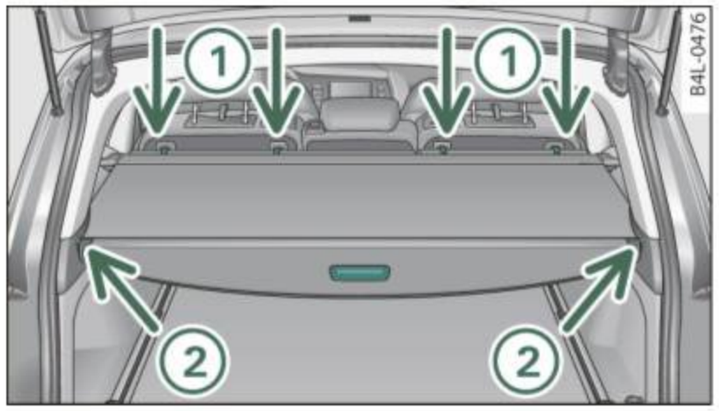



**Fig. 108 Luggage compartment: compartment cover closed**

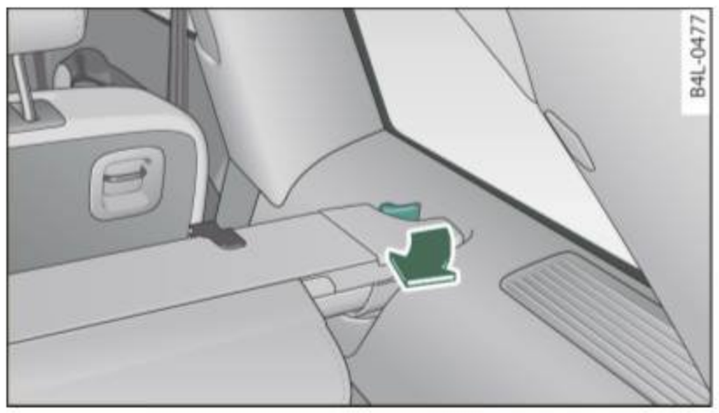



**Fig. 109 Section from the front part of the luggage compartment, right side: release button for removing the luggage compartment trim panel**

### Extending front luggage compartment cover

– Pull the rolled-up cover evenly towards the front of the vehicle.

– Hang the ends of the cover in the attaching eyes on the left and right of the seat back ⇒ fig. 108 (1).

### Extending rear luggage compartment cover

– Pull the rolled-up cover evenly towards the rear of the vehicle using the handle.

– Hook the ends of the rod in the openings in the left and right side trim panels ⇒ fig. 108 (2).

### Rolling up front luggage compartment cover

– Pull the ends of the cover out of the attaching eyes in the seat back.

– Allow the cover to roll up slowly.

### Rolling up rear luggage compartment cover

– Pull the rod out of the openings in the side trim panels.

– Allow the cover to roll up slowly.

### Removing the luggage compartment cover

– Pull the lever in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 109 and at the same time lift the cover up and out.

### Installing the luggage compartment cover

– Lay the cover in the left retainer in the side trim and then press it into the right retainer until it latches.

**WARNING**

**Whenever driving, never place any hard or heavy objects on the luggage compartment or allow pets to sit on the luggage compartment cover. They could become a hazard to vehicle occupants in the event of sudden braking or in an accident.**

**Note**

- Make sure that the heating wires in the rear lid do not get damaged by objects scraping against them.

- The two inner attaching eyes on the left and right in the seatback ⇒ fig. 108 (1) are not suitable for tying down cargo - risk of damage. Only the luggage compartment cover should be attached here.

### Tips

- You can use the luggage compartment cover to store light weight clothing or articles but do not leave any heavy or sharp objects in the pockets of the clothing.
- Remember that placing clothing or articles on the luggage compartment cover can block the driver's vision in the rear view mirror. This also applies especially when you have to transport large objects.
- So that stale air can escape from the vehicle be sure not to cover the ventilation slot between the rear lid and the luggage compartment cover. ■

## Protective liner

*Dirty or wet objects can be transported under the cargo floor in a protective tray.*

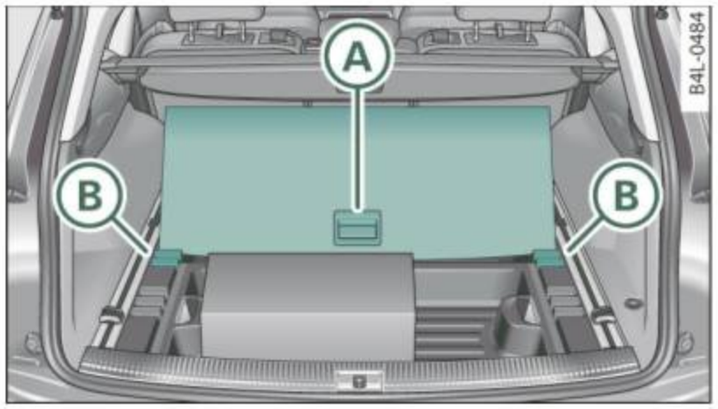



**Fig. 110 Cargo floor: folded upright**

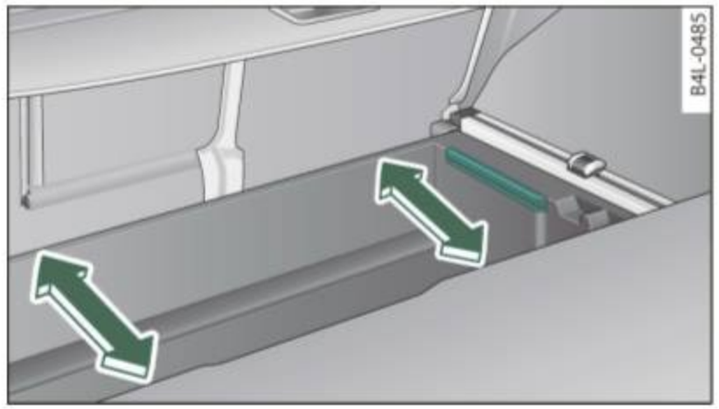



**Fig. 111 Removing the cargo floor**

### Setting up the cargo floor

– Open the rear lid.

– Set up cargo floor with the help of the handle (A) ⇒ fig. 110 and adjust the outside edges in the recesses (B).

– Lay the items in the protective tray.

### Folding the cargo floor up

– Open the rear lid.

– Fold the cargo floor up to the seatback with the help of the handle (A).

### Removing the cargo floor, installing

– Open the rear lid.

– Fold the cargo floor up to the seatback with the help of the handle (A).

– To remove, pull the entire cargo floor out of the guides -arrow- ⇒ fig. 111 in the direction of the rear of the vehicle.

– To install the cargo floor, set the front of it into the guides and push it in the direction of the seatback until it engages.

You can also store small items **under** the cargo floor.

The storage room in the protective tray can be enlarged by folding the cargo floor forward or removing it.

The protective tray can be removed upward by the grip.

On vehicles with **6 or 7 seats*** the cargo floor cannot be folded up, only raised. If the cargo floor is removed, the hooks must be pushed into the guides under the third row seating when the cargo floor is re-installed.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When the cargo floor is folded upright, the items being transported must not exceed the maximum cargo height, 2/3 of the cargo floor space with the floor folded forward, or a weight of about 33 lb. (15 kg).**

**Tips**

We recommend that you use a tie-down strap to secure objects to the tie-down eyelets on the right and left sides of the vehicle. ■

Applies to vehicles: with securing attachments

## Securing attachments

*The fixture set is secured on the track system.*

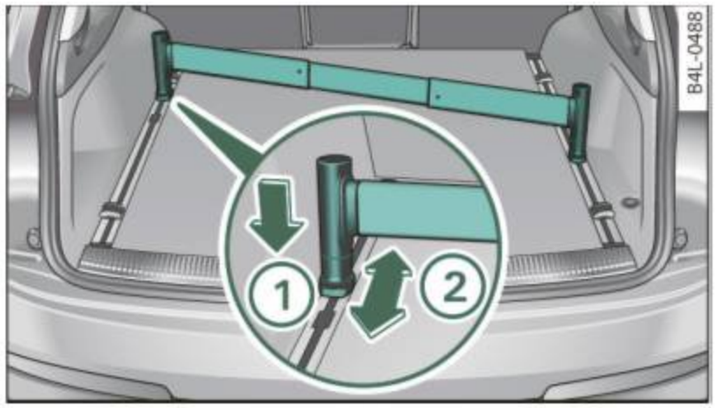



**Fig. 112 Luggage compartment: Telescoping tracks**

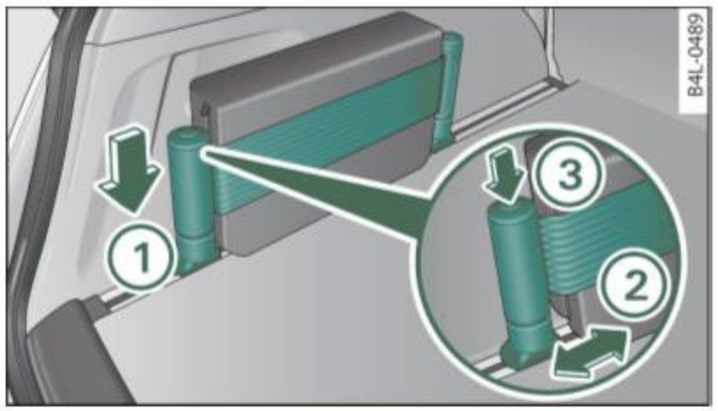



**Fig. 113 Luggage compartment: Securing strap**

The fixture set consists of a telescoping band and a securing strap.

### Telescoping track

– Set the holder for the telescoping track in the opening of the track system.

– Push the holder down ⇒ fig. 112 (1) and at the same time, slide it into the desired position (2).

– Check that the holder has latched into place. ▶

– If it has not already been done, fold both seatbacks up and hang the partition net ⇒ ⚠.

### Securing strap

– Set the holder for the securing strap in the opening of the track system.

– Push the holder down ⇒ *page 110,* fig. 113 (1) and at the same time, slide it into the desired position (2).

– Check that the holder has latched into place.

– Lay the object to be secured behind the securing strap.

– Push the knob on the front side of the holder (3) to tighten the strap.

– If it has not already been done, fold both seatbacks up and hang the partition net ⇒ ⚠.

The securing strap can also be secured on the left and right of the track system, if needed.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The backrest must be securely latched in position so that no items contained in the luggage compartment can slide forward upon sudden braking.**
- **Loose items inside the passenger compartment, can fly forward in a crash or sudden maneuver and injure occupants.** ■

Applies to vehicles: with ski sack

## Ski sack

*The ski sack allows a maximum of 4 pairs of skis or 2 snowboards to be carried inside the vehicle.*

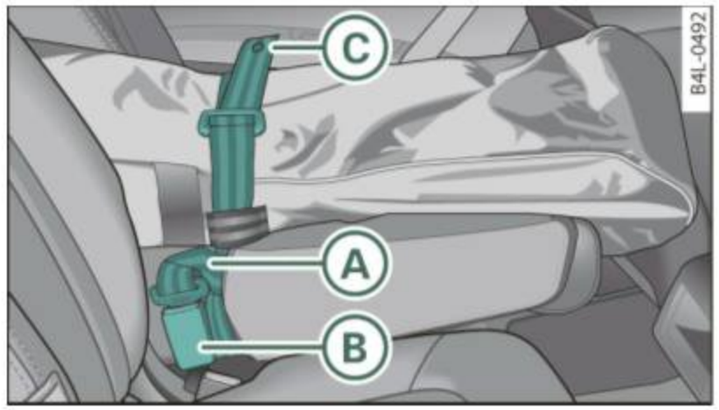



**Fig. 114 Securing the ski sack at the center rear seat belt buckle**

### Loading

– Fold the center seatback forward ⇒ *page 104.*

– Remove the sack from the luggage compartment and unfold it.

– Place the empty sack over the lowered seatback so that the end with the zip fastener is in the luggage compartment.

– Load objects from the luggage compartment into the ski sack ⇒ ⚠.

### Securing

– Insert the ski sack strap (A) ⇒ fig. 114 into the center seat belt buckle (B).

– Pull the securing strap tight by the free end of the belt (C).

– Vehicles with 6 seats*: The ski sack has two straps with hooks on the underside. Hang the hooks into the luggage compartment by the rear fastening eyes and pull the securing strap tight by the free end Ⓒ.

### Storage

– Release the securing strap for the sack.

– Pull the sack to the rear over the folded down seatback.

– Raise the seatback until it is securely latched .

– Fold up the empty sack.

– Stow the ski sack in the luggage compartment so that it cannot slide around.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The ski sack is intended only for the transportation of skis, snowboards and other light objects. To reduce the risk of serious personal injury never transport heavy or pointed objects in the ski sack.**
- **When braking rapidly or during an accident the load could be displaced and cause injury to occupants.**
- **Sharp edges on the load must be covered for protection. Always fasten the belt tightly around the sack and its contents ⇒ *page 111,* fig. 114.**

**Tips**

Never stow the ski sack away if it's wet or damp (for example, snow melting from skis). Let it dry completely before you stow it away. ■

# Roof rack

## First things first

*A roof rack can be fitted to carry additional luggage on the roof.*

– Always read and follow the instructions provided by the roof rack manufacturer when the roof rack system must be installed.

If you are transporting luggage or other objects on the roof, please note the following:

- Your vehicle has specially designed aerodynamic roof rails. Only install a roof rack specifically designed for your model. Contact the nearest authorized Audi dealer for information on approved modular roof racks for your vehicle.
- These approved roof racks are the basis for a complete roof rack system. Additional attachments for the basic roof rack are necessary to safely transport luggage, bicycles, surf boards, skis or small boats. All necessary hardware for these systems is available at your authorized Audi dealer.
- We recommend that you keep the installation instructions for your roof rack system together with your Owner's literature in the vehicle.

### When should the roof rack be removed?

- Before going through an automatic car wash (it is best to ask the car wash operator for advice).
- When not in use, to reduce fuel consumption, wind noise and to guard against theft. ▶

**WARNING**

- **Use of an unapproved roof rack or incorrect mounting of an approved roof rack can cause the roof rack or the items attached to it to fall off the roof onto the road.**
- **Objects falling from the roof of a vehicle can cause a crash and personal injury.**
- **Only mount the system between the markings shown in ⇒ fig. 115.**
- **The roof rack system must be installed exactly according to the instructions provided.**

**Note**

- Your vehicle warranty does not cover any damages to the vehicle caused by using roof racks or mounting structures not approved by Audi for your vehicle. The same applies to damage resulting from incorrect roof rack installation.
- Always check the roof rack mountings and hardware before each trip and during a trip to make sure everything is securely tightened. If necessary, retighten the mountings and check the entire system from time to time.
- After mounting a roof rack system, or when you transport objects on the roof of your vehicle, the height of the vehicle is naturally increased. Be careful when driving under low bridges or in parking garages for example. This could cause damage to the load and even the vehicle itself. ■

## Roof rack mounting locations

*Roof racks must be installed only at the locations marked on the roof rails.*

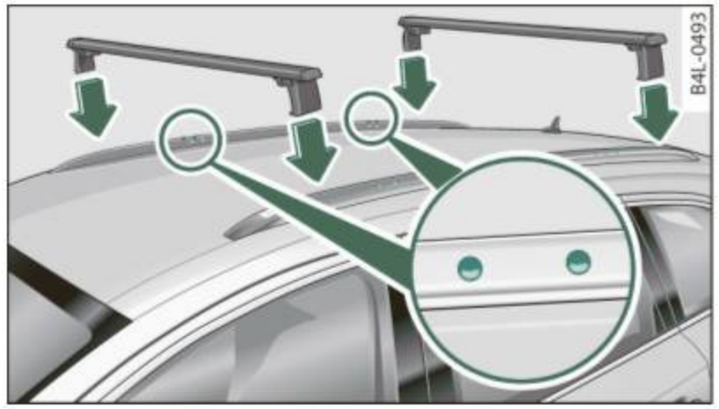



**Fig. 115 Roof rails: front and rear mounting locations**

Mount the front and rear cross bars between the punched markings on the inside of the roof railings ⇒ fig. 115. The markings are located on the inside of the railings. ■

## Loading the roof rack

*Always distribute loads evenly. Make sure anything on the roof rack is securely tied down.*

– Always distribute the loads on the roof rack evenly.

– Always attach items to the roof rack securely before you drive off.

The maximum permissible roof weight is **220 lb (100 kg)**. The roof weight is made up of the weight of the roof rack system and the weight of the object being transported.

When using a roof rack system which has a lower load carrying capacity, you must not use up the total maximum permissible load carrying capacity specified above. Instead, you should load the roof ▶

rack system only to the maximum capacity specified by the manufacturer of the roof rack system.

**WARNING**

**Weak, damaged or improper straps used to secure items to the roof rack can fail during hard braking or in a collision and cause serious personal injury.**

- **Make sure the roof rack is installed exactly as specified above ⇒ *page 113*.**
- **Always use suitable mounting straps for securing items to the roof rack to help prevent items from shifting or flying forward.**
- **Items on the roof rack must always be securely mounted.**
- **The use of a roof rack can negatively affect the way a vehicle handles. Cargo that is large, heavy, bulky, long or flat will have a greater negative influence on the vehicle's aerodynamics, center of gravity and overall handling. Always drive slowly, avoid sudden braking and maneuvers when transporting cargo on the roof of your vehicle.**
- **Never exceed the maximum permissible load carrying capacity of the roof of your vehicle, the permissible axle weights and the permissible total weight of your vehicle ⇒ *page 397*, "Weights".**
- **Always drive slowly, avoid sudden braking and maneuvers when transporting cargo on the roof of your vehicle.**

**Note**

Make sure that the opened rear lid does not come in contact with the cargo on the roof.

**For the sake of the environment**

Sometimes it may be easier to leave a roof rack installed even though you are not using it. Due to the increased air resistance your vehicle will unnecessarily use more fuel. Remove the roof rack if you are not going to use it. ■

# Cupholder

## Front cupholders

*The cupholders are located in the center arm rest.*




**Fig. 116 Center armrest: Beverage holder**




**Fig. 117 Convenience center arm rest: Beverage holder**

– Open the cover at the recess on the side ⇒ fig. 117.

A maximum of two beverages can be accomodated in the center arm rest ⇒ fig. 116. With the convenience center armrest* ⇒ fig. 117, the second beverage holder is located under a cover.

**WARNING**

**Spilled hot liquid can cause an accident and personal injury.** ▶

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Never carry any beverage containers with hot liquids, such as hot coffee or hot tea, in the vehicle while it is moving. In case of an accident, sudden braking or other vehicle movement, hot liquid could spill, causing scalding burns. Spilled hot liquid can also cause an accident and personal injury.**
- **Use only soft cups in the cupholder. Hard cups and glasses can cause injury in an accident.**

**Note**

Only drink containers with lids should be carried in the cupholder. Liquid could spill out and damage your vehicle's electronic equipment or stain the upholstery, etc. ■

## Cupholder in the rear center armrest

*The cupholder is located in the center console.*

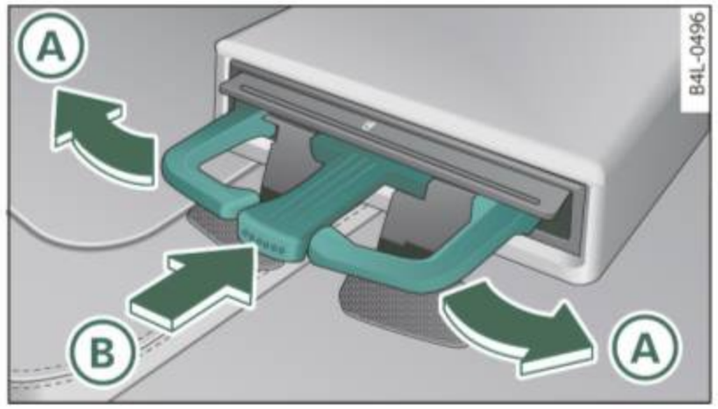



**Fig. 118 Rear center armrest: cupholder extended**

– To open, press on the symbol ⇒ fig. 118.
– To close, press the corrugated area (B) and fold the cover down.

The holder (A) adjusts to the beverage holder. The cupholder is designed to hold no more than two cups or cans.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Spilled hot liquid can cause an accident and personal injury.**

- **Never carry any beverage containers with hot liquids, such as hot coffee or hot tea, in the vehicle while it is moving. In case of an accident, sudden braking or other vehicle movement, hot liquid could spill, causing scalding burns. Spilled hot liquid can also cause an accident and personal injury.**
- **Use only soft cups in the cupholder. Hard cups and glasses can cause injury in an accident.**

**Note**

Only drink containers with lids should be carried in the cupholder. Liquid could spill out and damage your vehicle's electronic equipment or stain the upholstery, etc. ■

## Beverage holders in the door pockets

*There is a beverage holder in all four doors.*




**Fig. 119 Section of door panel: Beverage holder**

The beverage holders in the door pockets are suitable for 1 to 1.5-liter bottles.

**WARNING**

**Spilled hot liquid can cause an accident and personal injury.**

- **Never carry any beverage containers with hot liquids, such as hot coffee or hot tea, in the vehicle while it is moving. In case of an accident, sudden braking or other vehicle movement, hot liquid could spill, causing scalding burns. Spilled hot liquid can also cause an accident and personal injury.**
- **Use only soft cups in the cupholder. Hard cups and glasses can cause injury in an accident.**

**Note**

Only drink containers with lids should be carried in the cupholder. Liquid could spill out and damage your vehicle's electronic equipment or stain the upholstery, etc. ■

# Ashtray

Applies to vehicles: with ashtray

## Front ashtray




**Fig. 120 Center console: front ashtray**

### To open ashtray

– Tap the edge of the ashtray ⇒ ⚠.

### To close ashtray

– Tap the lid to close the ashtray automatically.

### Removing ashtray insert

– Push the lever in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 120 - the ashtray insert pops out slightly.

– Lift the ashtray insert up and out.

### To reinstall ashtray

– Press the ashtray insert back into its holder.

**WARNING**

**Never put waste paper in the ashtray. Hot ashes or other hot objects in the ashtray could set waste paper on fire. ■**

Applies to vehicles: with ashtray

## Rear ashtray

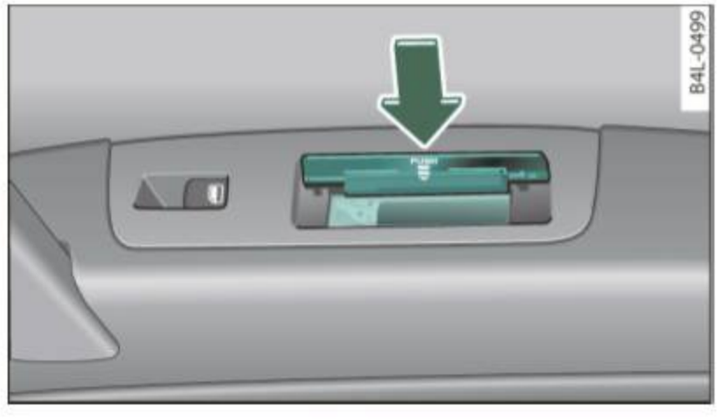



**Fig. 121 Rear ashtray**

### To open ashtray

– Touch the lid to open the ashtray.

### Removing ashtray insert

– Press the front of the open lid downward in the direction of the arrow ⇒ *page 116,* fig. 121 - the ashtray insert pops out slightly.

– Lift the ashtray insert up and out.

### Reinstalling ashtray insert

– Open the lid on the ashtray insert and press the insert into the housing as far it can go.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never put waste paper in the ashtray. Hot ashes or other hot objects in the ashtray could set waste paper on fire. ■**

## Cigarette lighter/socket

Applies to vehicles: with cigarette lighter

### Cigarette lighter




**Fig. 122 Open front beverage storage compartment with cigarette lighter**

### Using the cigarette lighter

– Push the knob in.

– Wait until the cigarette lighter knob pops out.

– Remove the cigarette lighter immediately and use it.

– Reinsert cigarette lighter into the socket after use.

### Connecting an appliance

– Remove cigarette lighter.

– Plug in appliance to be used.

The socket of the cigarette lighter may be used for 12-volt appliances with maximum consumption of up to 100 watts, such as a flash light, small vacuum cleaner, etc.

Before you purchase any accessories, always read and follow the information in ⇒ *page 403,* "Additional accessories and parts replacement".

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improper use of the cigarette lighter can cause serious injury or start a fire.**

- **Be careful when using the cigarette lighter. If you do not pay attention to what you are doing when you are using the cigarette lighter you can burn yourself.**
- **The cigarette lighter and socket remain functional even if the ignition is switched off or the ignition key is removed. Never leave children inside the vehicle without supervision.**

**Note**

- To avoid damaging the socket, only use plugs that fit properly. ▶

• Only use the cigarette lighter socket as a power source for electrical accessories for short durations. Use the sockets in the vehicle when a power source is needed for longer durations.

**Tips**

When the engine is off and accessories are still plugged in and are on, the vehicle battery can still be drained. ■

## Outlet

*An electrical accessory can be connected to the 12-volt power outlet.*

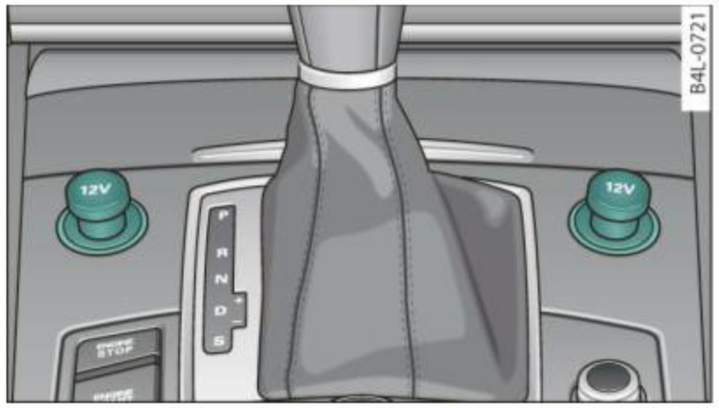



**Fig. 123 Section from center console: 12-volt outlets**

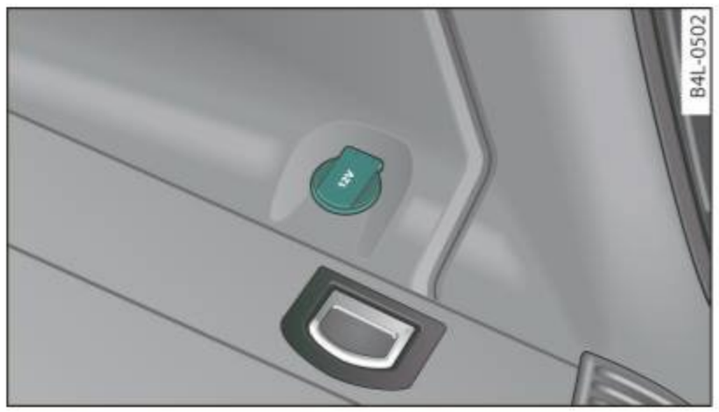



**Fig. 124 Section from right side of luggage compartment: 12-volt outlet**

– Remove the cover from the outlet ⇒ fig. 123.

– Lift up the cover for the outlet ⇒ fig. 124.

– Plug in appliance to be used.

The outlet may be used for 12-volt appliances with maximum consumption of up to 100 watts, such as a flash light, small vacuum cleaner, etc.

There are two additional 12-volt outlets in the rear center console.

Before you purchase any accessories, always read and follow the information in ⇒ *page 403,* "Additional accessories and parts replacement".

**WARNING**

**The outlet plus any appliances plugged into it remain functional even if the ignition is switched off or the ignition key is removed. Never leave children inside the vehicle without supervision.**

**Note**

To avoid damaging the socket, only use plugs that fit properly.

**Tips**

When the engine is off and accessories are still plugged in and are on, the vehicle battery can still be drained. ■

# Storage

## General overview

*There are numerous places to store items in your vehicle.*


| | |
|---|---|
| Glove compartment | ⇒ *page 119* |
| Cooling box in glove compartment | ⇒ *page 120* |
| Storage compartment in roof | ⇒ *page 121* |
| Coat hooks | ⇒ *page 121* |
| Storage in the door panels | ⇒ *page 121* |
| Storage net in footwell | ⇒ *page 122* |
| Storage net in the front seat backs | ⇒ *page 122* |
| Storage net in luggage compartment | ⇒ *page 122* |
| Storage compartment beneath cargo floor | ⇒ *page 109* |


**WARNING**

- **Always remove objects from the instrument panel. Any items not stored could slide around inside the vehicle while driving or when accelerating or when applying the brakes or when driving around a corner.**
- **When you are driving make sure that anything you may have placed in the center console or other storage locations cannot fall out into the footwells. In case of sudden braking you would not be able to brake or accelerate.**
- **Any articles of clothing that you have hung up must not interfere with the driver's view. The coat hooks are designed only for lightweight clothing. Never hang any clothing with hard, pointed or heavy objects in the pockets on the coat hooks. During sudden braking or in an accident - especially if the airbag is deployed - these objects could injure any passengers inside the vehicle.** ■

## Glove compartment




**Fig. 125 Unlocking button for glove compartment**

### To open glove compartment

– Press the button ⇒ fig. 125 (arrow) - the lid opens automatically.

### To close glove compartment

– Push the glove compartment lid up until the lock engages.

In the glove compartment lid you will find a place to store a pen and a pad of paper.

**WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of personal injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove compartment closed while driving.**

**Tips**

Should you not be able to open the glove compartment as described, make sure the valet key function is not activated ⇒ *page 51*. ■

## Cooling box in glove compartment

*The cooling box works only when the air-conditioning is in cooling mode.*

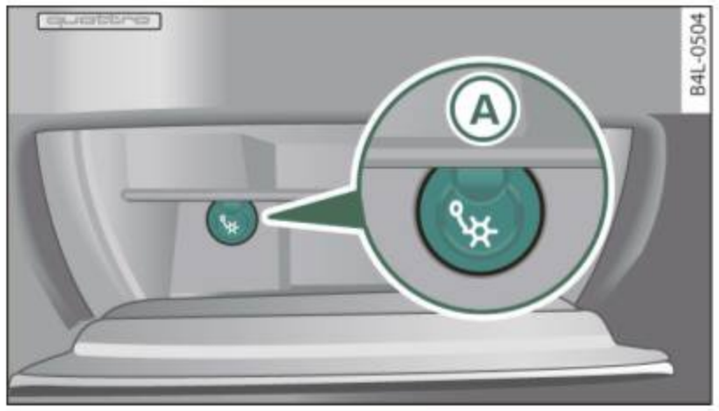



**Fig. 126 Glove box with cooling box open and switched on**

– Open the glove compartment ⇒ *page 119,* fig. 125.

– Turn the rotary switch (A) counter-clockwise to switch the cooling on. The symbols on the rotary switch must be displayed ⇒ fig. 126 accordingly.

– Turn the rotary switch (A) clockwise to switch the cooling off.

The cooling box works only in the cooling mode. If the climate control is in the heating mode, we recommend switching the cooling box off. ■

## Emergency unlocking of glove compartment

*The glove compartment can be unlocked in an emergency.*

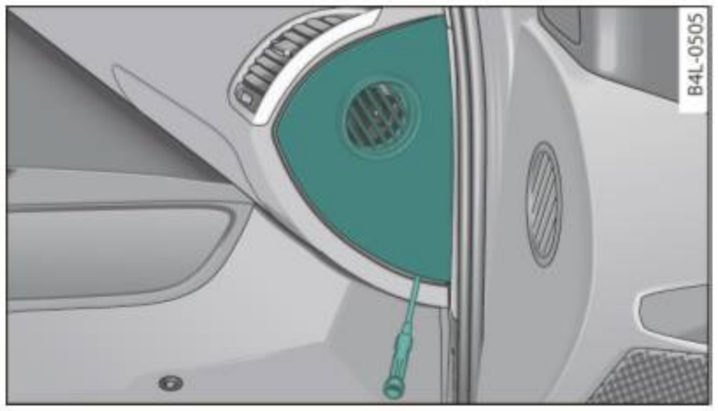



**Fig. 127 Instrument panel right: pry off security cover**

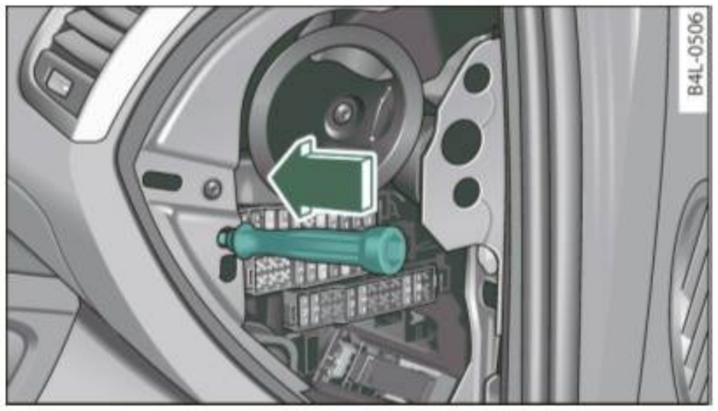



**Fig. 128 Locking pin for glove compartment**

– Remove with the cover with the aid of a screwdriver ⇒ fig. 127.

– Now press the locking pin inward with the screwdriver ⇒ fig. 128. ■

## Storage compartment in roof




Fig. 129 Storage compartment in roof

– To open the lid you have to touch the bar ⇒ fig. 129 (Arrow). The lid opens automatically.

– To close the lid, push it up until it engages.

**WARNING**

**Always keep the lid closed while driving to reduce the risk of injury during a sudden braking maneuver or in the event of an accident. ■**

## Coat hooks




Fig. 130 Coat hooks at rear doors

**WARNING**

- **Hang clothes in such a way that they do not impair the driver's vision.**
- **The coat hooks must only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp edged objects in the pockets which may interfere with the side curtain airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in a crash.**
- **Do not use coat hangers for hanging clothing on the coat hooks as this can interfere with proper deployment of the side curtain airbags in an accident.**
- **Do not hang heavy objects on the coat hooks, as they could cause personal injury in a sudden stop. ■**

## Storage in the door panels

*There is a storage compartment in the interior door panel.*

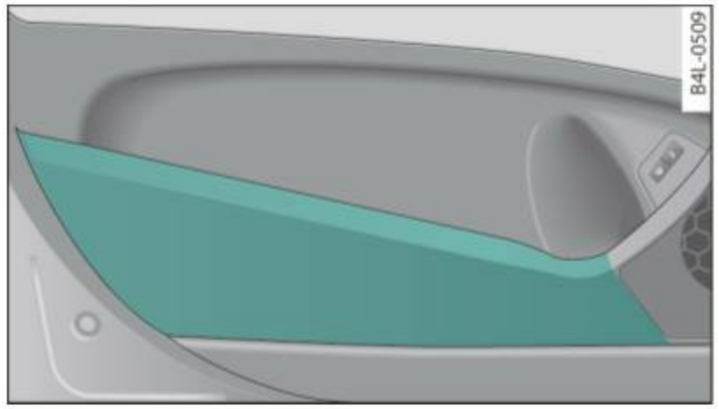



Fig. 131 Door panel with storage compartment.

**WARNING**

**Use the storage compartments in the door panels only for holding small objects, which do not protrude from the compartment, so that the effective range of the side airbags is not compromised. ■**

## Storage net in the footwell

*There is a storage net in the passenger's footwell.*

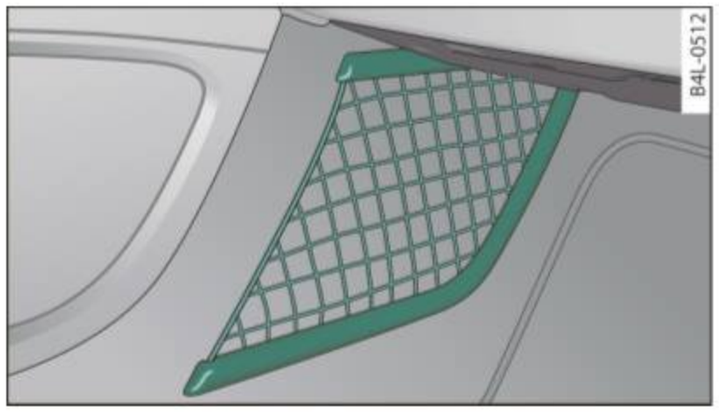



**Fig. 132 Storage net in passenger's footwell**

**Tips**

Do not keep any sharp or pointed objects in the storage net - danger of injury! ■

## Storage net in the seatbacks

*There is a storage net behind both front seatbacks.*

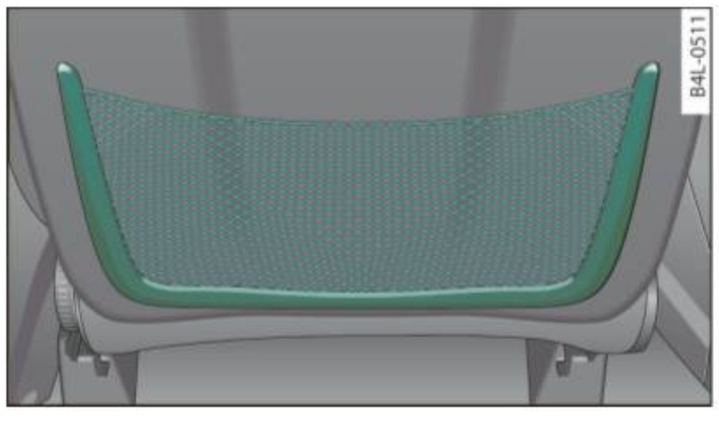



**Fig. 133 Storage net on the front seatback**

**Tips**

Do not keep any sharp or pointed objects in the storage net - danger of injury! ■

## Storage net in luggage compartment

*There is a storage net on the left side of the luggage compartment.*

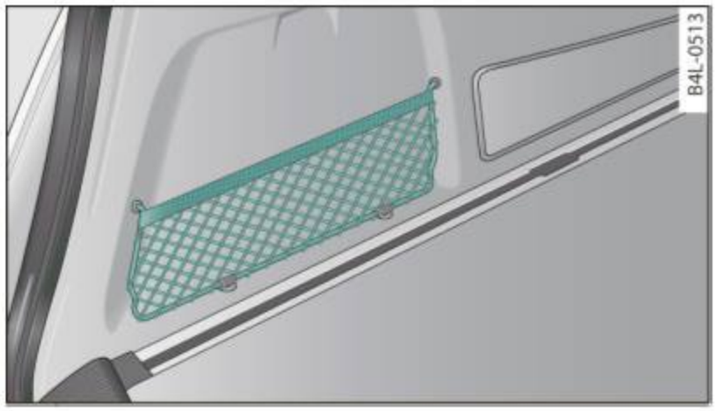



**Fig. 134 Storage net in luggage compartment**

The storage net can be compacted by pushing it down on the guides at the side, if necessary ⇒ fig. 134.

**Tips**

Do not keep any sharp or pointed objects in the storage net - danger of injury! ■

# Warm and cold

## Climate control

### Description

*The air conditioner is fully automatic and is designed to maintain a comfortable and uniform climate inside the vehicle.*

We recommend the following settings:

– Set the temperature to 72 °F (+22 °C).

– Press the AUTO button.

With this setting, you attain maximum comfort in the least amount of time. Change this setting, as desired, to meet your personal needs.

The climate controls are a combination of heating, ventilation and cooling systems, which automatically reduce humidity and cool the air inside your vehicle.

The air temperature, air flow and air distribution are automatically regulated to achieve and maintain the desired passenger compartment temperature as quickly as possible.

The system automatically compensates for changes in outside temperature and for the intensity of the sunlight entering the vehicle. We recommend you use the **Automatic** mode ⇒ *page 126* for year-round comfort.

**Please note the following:**

Turn on the air conditioner to reduce humidity in the vehicle. This also prevents the windows from fogging up.

When the outside temperature is high and the air is very humid, **condensation** from the evaporator may drip under the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.

If the outside temperature is low, the fan normally only switches to a higher speed once the engine coolant has warmed up sufficiently.

The air conditioner temporarily switches off when you drive off from a standstill using full throttle to save engine power.

The compressor also switches off if the coolant temperature is too high, so that the engine can be adequately cooled under extreme loads.

#### Air pollutants filter

The air pollutants filter (a combined particle filter and activated charcoal filter) reduces or prevents outside air pollution (dust, or pollen) from entering the vehicle. The air is also filtered in air recirculation mode.

The air pollutants filter must be changed at the intervals specified in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet, so that the air conditioner can properly work.

If you drive your vehicle in an area with high air pollution, the filter may need to be changed more frequently than specified in your Audi Warranty & Maintenance booklet. If in doubt, ask your authorized Audi Service Advisor for advice.

#### Key coded settings

The air conditioner settings selected are automatically stored and assigned to the key being used. When the vehicle is started, the air conditioner automatically selects the settings assigned to that key. This way every driver will maintain his/her own personal settings and does not have to reset them manually.

If a different driver uses your key and changes the air conditioner settings, the latest adjustments will erase and replace the settings you have stored. ▶

### Energy management

To prevent the battery from being discharged and to restore the balance of energy, components which require large amounts of energy are temporarily cut back or switched off ⇒ *page 295*. Heating systems in particular require a great deal of energy. If you notice, for example, that the seat* or rear window heating is not heating, they have been temporarily cut back or switched off by **energy management**. These systems are available again as soon as the energy balance has been restored.

**WARNING**

**Reduced visibility is dangerous and can cause accidents.**

- **For safe driving it is very important that all windows be free of ice, snow and condensation.**
- **Completely familiarize yourself with the proper use and function of the heating and ventilation system and especially how to defog and defrost the windows.**
- **Never use the windshield wiper/washer system in freezing weather until you have warmed the windshield first, using the heating and ventilation system. The washer solution may freeze on the windshield and reduce visibility.**

**Note**

- If you suspect that the air conditioner has been damaged, turn on ECON and contact an authorized Audi dealer to have the system inspected.
- Repairs to the Audi air conditioner require special technical knowledge and special tools. Contact an authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

**Tips**

- Keep the air intake slots (in front of the windshield) free from ice, snow and debris in order to maintain the proper function of the climate control system.
- Air inside the vehicle escapes through air vents located in the side trim panels beneath the rear side windows. Make sure that the outlet slots are not covered by clothing, etc.
- Climate control works most effectively if the windows and the Panoramic sliding sunroof* are closed. However, if the interior of a parked vehicle is extremely hot from the sun's rays, briefly opening the windows can speed up the cooling process. ■

## Controls

*This overview will help you to familiarize yourself with the air conditioning controls.*




**Fig. 135 Air conditioning control elements**

The left display indicates the temperature selected for the driver's side, the right display indicates the temperature selected for the passenger's side.

If the settings for seat heating*, air distribution, or the air conditioning fan are changed, the relevant indicator will appear briefly on the MMI Display.

Each function is turned on or off by briefly pressing the corresponding button. The indicator light in the button illuminates when the function is active.

| Button(s) | Function | Page |
|---|---|---|
| ECON ON/OFF | Switch climate control on and off, switch cooling system on and off | ⇒ *page 126* |
| AUTO | Automatic mode | ⇒ *page 126* |
| Control knob - + | Temperature selection | ⇒ *page 127* |
| | Seat heating* | ⇒ *page 136* |
| | Air distribution | ⇒ *page 127* |
| | Blower | ⇒ *page 128* |
| | Defrost | ⇒ *page 127* |
| | Manual recirculation | ⇒ *page 128* |
| | Heated rear window | ⇒ *page 129* |
| SETUP | Basic settings | ⇒ *page 134* |

### Residual heat

With the ignition turned off, you can activate the residual heat function by pressing the ECON ON/OFF button. The residual heat from the coolant can be used to heat the vehicle interior. The residual heat function is turned off automatically after 30 minutes.

### Synchronizing climate control

By pressing and holding the control knob on the driver's side, the temperature setting on the driver's side can be switched to the passenger's side, and vice versa. The new temperature is shown in the display.

### Synchronizing four-zone automatic comfort air conditioning*

By pressing and holding the control knob on the driver's side, the temperature setting on the driver's side can be switched to the ▶

passenger's side and to the outer rear seats. The new temperature is shown in the display.

By simultaneously pressing and holding the control knobs on the driver's side and front passenger's side, the temperature setting on the driver's side can be switched to the front passenger's side. The new temperature is shown in the display.

**Tips**

The grille between the ECON ON/OFF and SETUP buttons must remain unobstructed and must not be taped over. Measuring sensors are located behind it. ■

## Turning on and off ECON ON/OFF

### Turning the air conditioning on

– Press ECON ON/OFF briefly, or

– Press AUTO.

### Turning the air conditioning off

– Press the ECON ON/OFF button *for at least 2 seconds* to switch the air conditioning off and to block the air supply from the outside. “OFF” appears in the display.

### Switching air conditioning on/off

– Switching the air conditioning system on/off is done with climate control switched on.

– Press the ECON ON/OFF button just *briefly*.

The air conditioner turns back on if you press one of the control buttons or the control knob.

ECON operation is indicated by the glowing LED on the right next to the word ECON.

The air conditioning (compressor) is turned off in ECON mode. “ECON” means “Economy”. You save fuel by switching off the air conditioning ⇒ *page 131*.

Please note that vehicle interior temperature cannot be lower than the outside temperature in the ECON mode. The air is not cooled or dehumidified. This can cause the windows to fog up.

**Tips**

With the ignition turned off, you can activate the residual heat function by pressing the ECON ON/OFF button. The residual heat from the coolant can be used to heat the vehicle interior. ■

## Automatic mode AUTO

*The automatic mode is the standard setting for all seasons.*

### Turning on AUTO

– Select temperature between 60 °F (+16 °C) and 84 °F (+28 °C).

– Press AUTO ⇒ *page 125,* fig. 135.

Automatic operation ensures constant temperatures in the interior and dehumidifies the air inside the vehicle. Air temperature, volume and distribution are controlled automatically to reach or maintain the desired interior temperature as quickly as possible. Fluctuations in exterior temperature and the effects of temperature from the position of the sun are compensated for automatically.

This operating mode works only in the adjustable temperature range, from 60 °F (+16 °C) to 84 °F (+28 °C). If a temperature below 60 °F (+16 °C) is selected, **LO** appears in the display. At temperatures above 84 °F (+28 °C), **HI** is displayed. At both extreme settings, climate control runs continuously at maximum cooling or heating power. There is no temperature regulation. ■

## Setting the temperature

*Separate temperatures can be selected for the driver's and front passenger's side.*

– Rotate the control knob ⇒ *page 125,* fig. 135 to the left to reduce the temperature, or to the right to increase the temperature.

### Tips

When you briefly press the control knob on the driver or front passenger air conditioning control element, the temperature appears for a short time on the MMI Display. ■

## Air distribution

*The automatically controlled air distribution can be changed manually.*




**Fig. 136 MMI Display: Air distribution**

– Press the **Distribution** button.

– Rotate the climate control knob to the desired setting ⇒ fig. 136.

You can adjust the air circulation so that air flows from specific vents ⇒ *page 130,* fig. 139.

- In position ⇧, air flows only to the windows; the vents (1) are open.
- In position ☰, air flows only to the driver/passenger; the vents (2) and (3) are open.
- In position ⇩, air flows only to the footwell; the vents (4) are open.
- In position ⇳, air flows only to the windows and footwell; the vents (1) and (4) are open.

There are additional combinations available to adjust air distribution as needed.

To regulate air distribution automatically, switch to AUTO. ■

## Defrosting

*The windshield and side windows are rapidly defrosted or defogged.*

– To turn on the defogger/defroster, press the button ⇒ *page 125,* fig. 135.

– Press again or press AUTO to turn off the defogger/defroster.

The temperature is automatically controlled. Maximum airflow is primarily blown in through outlets (1) ⇒ *page 125,* fig. 135. To defrost the driver and front passenger side windows most effectively, the vents (2) should be directed toward the side windows.

To defog the rear side windows, the air vents in the door pillars should be open and directed at the windows. The vents in the rear center console should be closed.

By pressing, both air recirculation and ECON are switched off. ■

## Blower

*The automatically preset fan speed can be reduced or increased.*




**Fig. 137 MMI Display: Blower**

– Press the **Blower** button.

– Rotate the climate control knob to the desired fan speed ⇒ fig. 137.

The climate control system automatically regulates fan speed depending on interior temperature. You can adjust the volume of air produced by the fan to your own requirements.

### Tips

If the difference between the desired temperature set by you and the vehicle's interior temperature is too great, the fan speed will change automatically. This occurs so that the desired temperature setting is reached as quickly as possible. ■

## Manual air circulation

*Air recirculation prevents exhaust fumes or other pollution from entering the vehicle.*

### Turning on air recirculation

– Press ⇒ *page 125,* fig. 135 ⇒ ⚠

### Turning off air recirculation

– Press again, or

– Press AUTO, or

– Press .

In the air recirculation mode, the air in the passenger compartment is recirculated and filtered to prevent exhaust fumes and other pollution from entering the vehicle. We recommend that you use the manual air recirculation under the following conditions:

- when driving through tunnels
- in a traffic jam.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not use this setting for extended periods of time. The windows could fog up since no fresh air can enter the vehicle. If the windows fog up, press the air recirculation button again immediately to switch off the air recirculation function or select defrost. ■**

## Rear window defogger

*The rear window defogger clears the rear window of condensation.*




**Fig. 138 Switch for rear window defogger**

– Press the switch to turn the rear window defogger on and off ⇒ fig. 138.

The rear window defogger works only when the engine is running. The light in the switch will illuminate when the defogger is on.

The rear window defogger will switch off automatically after a short time. The time the rear window defogger remains on will vary depending on the outside temperature.

At very low outside temperatures, the rear window defogger can be switched on continuously by pushing the button for more than 2 seconds. This remains stored until the ignition is switched off.

A rear window defogger that was switched on also remains stored for 15 minutes after the ignition is switched off. If the engine is restarted within these 15 minutes, the rear window defogger is also activated, depending on outside temperature. With a vehicle that is parked for a short time, the rear window defogger does not need to be manually activated again.

### For the sake of the environment

Turn the defogger off when the rear window is clear. When you save electricity, you save fuel. ■

## Air outlets

*Air distribution determines the air flow to the individual vents.*




**Fig. 139 Instrument panel: air outlet locations and airflow directions**

### Air outlets ② and ③

– Rotate the horizontal thumb wheel located below the particular outlet to increase, reduce, or shut down the airflow from that outlet.

– To adjust the direction of the airflow from the outlet, move the tab in the center of the outlet in the desired direction. The direction of the air delivered from the vents can be adjusted horizontally and vertically.

① Air flows to windshield and to driver and front passenger side windows

② Air flows to driver/front passenger or to the driver and front passenger side windows

③ Air flows to driver/front passenger

④ Air flows to footwell

You can adjust the air circulation ⇒ *page 127* so that air flows from specific vents ⇒ *page 127,* fig. 136.

The air outlets are actuated either automatically or manually depending on the operating mode selected.

### Tips

When climate control is working, cooled air will flow primarily from outlets ② and ③. To assure adequate cooling, outlets ② and ③ should never be completely closed. ■

## Air outlets in the rear

### Outlets in the center console

– Rotate the thumbwheel located next to the outlet to open or close it.

– To adjust the direction of the airflow from the outlet, move the tab in the center of the outlet in the desired direction. The direction of the air delivered from the vents can be adjusted horizontally and vertically.

### Outlets in the door pillars

– Rotate the horizontal thumb wheel located below the outlet to open or close it. ▶

– To adjust the direction of the airflow from the outlet, move the tab in the center of the outlet in the desired direction. The direction of the air delivered from the vents can be adjusted horizontally and vertically.

The air outlets are actuated either automatically or manually depending on the operating mode selected. Heated or unheated fresh air, or cooled air flows from the vents.

The air outlets to heat the rear footwell are located under the front seats.

**Tips**

If the climate control system is operating in cooling mode, air flows primarily from the outlets in the center console and in the door pillars. To achieve adequate cooling, you should never close the outlets completely. ■

## Using climate control economically

*Using the climate controls prudently can help save fuel.*

When you use the air conditioner, engine power is reduced and fuel consumption increases. To save fuel, you should use the air conditioner only when necessary. Also please note the following points:

– If you want to save fuel, activate ECON.

– If you are going to drive with the windows or Panoramic sliding sunroof* open, use ECON.

– If the vehicle is extremely hot due to the heat of the sun, briefly open doors and windows.

**For the sake of the environment**

By reducing the amount of fuel you use, you also reduce the amount of pollutants emitted into the air. ■

# Rear Air Conditioning

Applies to vehicles: with four-zone automatic comfort air conditioning

## Rear air conditioning - controls

*This overview is to assist you in familiarizing yourself with the rear air conditioning controls.*




**Fig. 140 Rear air conditioning controls**

The left display indicates the temperature selected for the rear left passenger, the right display indicates the temperature selected for the rear right passenger. If the settings for seat heating*, air distribution or the air conditioning fan are changed, the relevant indicator will appear briefly on the MMI Display.

Each function is turned on or off by briefly pressing the corresponding button. The indicator light in the button illuminates when the function is active. ▶

| Button(s) | Function | Page |
|---|---|---|
| ON/OFF | Turning rear air conditioning on and off | ⇒ *page 132* |
| AUTO | Automatic mode | ⇒ *page 132* |
| Control knob - + | Temperature selection | ⇒ *page 133* |
| | Seat heating* | ⇒ *page 136* or ⇒ *page 137* |
| | Air distribution | ⇒ *page 133* |
| | Blower | ⇒ *page 133* |

**Synchronizing rear air conditioning:** By pressing and holding the control knob on the rear left side, the temperature setting of the rear left side can be switched to the rear right side and vice versa. The new temperature is shown in the display. ■

Applies to vehicles: with four-zone automatic comfort air conditioning

## Turning rear air conditioning on and off ON/OFF

### Turning on rear air conditioning

– Press ON/OFF briefly, or

– Press AUTO.

### Turning off rear air conditioning

– Press the ON/OFF button *for at least 2 seconds* to switch the rear air conditioning off. **OFF** appears in the display.

### Turning the cooling system on/off

– Turning the cooling system on/off is done when the air conditioning is on.

– Press the ON/OFF button just *briefly*.

The air conditioner turns back on if you press one of the control buttons or the control knob.

### Tips

If the electronic child safety system is on, the rear air conditioning control element will not operate. In this case, dashes "---" will appear in the air conditioning control element display. ■

Applies to vehicles: with four-zone automatic comfort air conditioning

## Automatic mode in rear AUTO

*The automatic mode is the standard setting for all seasons.*

### Turning on AUTO

– Select temperature between 60 °F (+16 °C) and 84 °F (+28 °C).

– Press AUTO ⇒ *page 131*.

Automatic operation ensures constant temperatures in the interior and dehumidifies the air inside the vehicle. Air temperature, volume and distribution are controlled automatically to reach or maintain the desired interior temperature as quickly as possible. Fluctuations in exterior temperature and the effects of temperature from the position of the sun are compensated for automatically.

This operating mode works only in the adjustable temperature range, from 60 °F (+16 °C) to 84 °F (+28 °C). If a temperature below 60 °F (+16 °C) is selected, **LO** appears in the display. At temperatures above 84 °F (+28 °C), **HI** is displayed. At both extreme settings, climate control runs continuously at maximum cooling or heating power. There is no temperature regulation. ■

Applies to vehicles: with four-zone automatic comfort air conditioning

## Setting rear temperature

*The temperature can be separately adjusted for the rear left and right sides.*




**Fig. 141 Rear air conditioning controls: Adjusting the temperature**

– Rotate the control knob ⇒ fig. 141 to the left to reduce the temperature, or to the right to increase the temperature.

The range in temperature can be adjusted from 18 °C (64 °F) to 28 °C (84 °F). ■

Applies to vehicles: with four-zone automatic comfort air conditioning

## Rear air distribution

*The automatically controlled air distribution can be changed manually.*

– Press the **Distribution** button ⇒ fig. 141.

– Rotate the control knob on the rear air conditioning control element to the desired setting.

You can adjust the air circulation so that air flows from specific vents.

- In position, all air flows from the vents in the center console and the outlets to the door pillars.
- In position, air flows from the outlets in the door pillars.
- In position, air flows from the outlets under the front seats.

There are additional combinations available to adjust air distribution as needed.

To regulate air distribution automatically, switch to AUTO. ■

Applies to vehicles: with four-zone automatic comfort air conditioning

## Rear fan

*The automatically preset fan speed can be reduced or increased.*

– Press the **Blower** button ⇒ fig. 141.

– Rotate the control knob to the desired fan speed.

The climate control system automatically regulates fan speed depending on interior temperature. You can adjust the volume of air produced by the fan to your own requirements.

### Tips

If the difference between the desired temperature set by you and the vehicle's interior temperature is too great, the fan speed will change automatically. This occurs so that the desired temperature setting is reached as quickly as possible. ■

# Basic settings SETUP

## General

*The basic settings for the climate control are performed in the SETUP menu.*

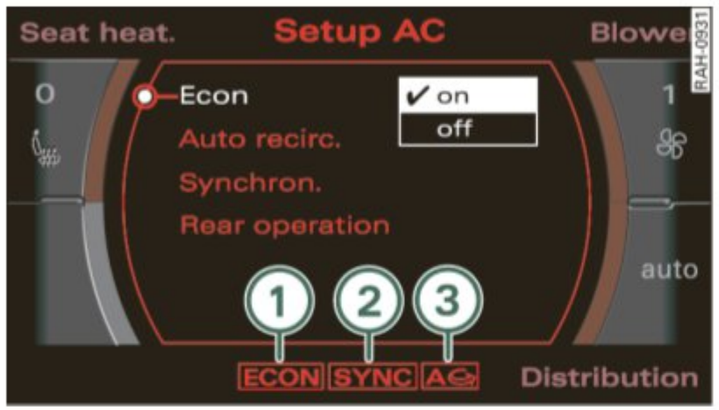



**Fig. 142 MMI Display: Setup climate control**

The basic settings for the air conditioning can only be made with MMI turned on.

– Press the SETUP button in the controls to access the menu.

– Select the desired function using the control knob (driver or passenger) in the air conditioning controls.

The following functions can be selected:

- ECON ⇒ *page 134*
- Auto recirc. ⇒ *page 134*
- Synchron. ⇒ *page 135* or ⇒ *page 135*
- Rear operation* ⇒ *page 135*

**① ECON**

When the **ECON** function is on ⇒ *page 134*, this symbol appears in the status line.

**② Synchron.**

When the **Synchron.** function is on ⇒ *page 135* or ⇒ *page 135*, this symbol appears in the status line.

**③ Auto recirc.**

When the **Auto recirc.** function is on ⇒ *page 134*, this symbol appears in the status line. ■

## ECON

*The ECON mode helps to save fuel.*

The air conditioning is turned off in ECON mode. “ECON” means “Economy”. By switching off the air conditioning (compressor), you save fuel.

Please note that vehicle interior temperature cannot be lower than the outside temperature in the ECON mode. The air is not cooled or dehumidified.

If the vehicle interior becomes too hot or if the windows fog up, ECON mode should be turned off. As soon as the AUTO button in the air conditioning controls is pressed, the system automatically leaves the ECON mode, and the air conditioning compressor is turned on again. ■

## Automatic recirculation mode

*An air quality sensor detects increased concentrations of pollutants in the outside air and automatically switches to recirculation mode.*

We recommend that you always keep automatic air recirculation ON to prevent polluted outside air from entering the vehicle interior.

If the **air quality sensor** located in the air conditioning system detects polluted outside air, the sensor decides whether the air pollution can be reduced by the factory-installed pollutant filter or whether it is necessary to switch to air recirculation. With heavy ▶

concentrations of pollutants, the air conditioning system is switched automatically to recirculation mode and the supply of outside air is blocked. As soon as the concentration of pollutants in the outside air drops, fresh air is supplied to the vehicle interior again.

In the event that the windows fog up during automatic air recirculation, you must press the button immediately.

Under certain operating conditions, automatic air recirculation is switched off automatically. With outside temperatures below about +10 °C, automatic air recirculation is limited to 30 seconds. With outside temperatures below about -1 °C and in the ECON mode, automatic air recirculation is limited to 15 seconds. ■

## Synchronization

*One climate control setting for the driver and front passenger seats.*

With synchronization active, the driver's settings are adopted for the passenger or vice versa. All the other settings that were made are transferred to the other seat. This includes all the climate control settings, except for the Seat heating*.

If a different setting is selected at a “synchronized seat”, synchronization is cancelled. ■

Applies to vehicles: with four-zone automatic comfort air conditioning

## Synchronization

*One climate control setting for all seats.*

With synchronization active, the driver's settings are adopted for the front passenger and the rear left and right seats. All the other settings that were made are transferred to the other seats. This includes all the climate control settings, except for the Seat heating*.

If a different setting is selected at a “synchronized seat”, synchronization is cancelled. ■

Applies to vehicles: with four-zone automatic comfort air conditioning

## Rear operation

*Using the "Rear operation" function, settings can be made in the center console control element for the rear left and right sides of the vehicle.*




**Fig. 143 MMI Display: Rear operation**




**Fig. 144 MMI Display: Temperature setting for rear left side**

– Press the SETUP button in the controls to access the menu. ▶

– Select the **Rear operation** ⇒ *page 135,* fig. 143 function using the (driver or front passenger) control knob on the air conditioning control element in the center console ⇒ *page 125,* fig. 135 to adjust the rear air conditioning.

### Setting the temperature

If you turn the control knob on the middle console driver side control element ⇒ *page 125,* fig. 135 to the left, the temperature in the rear on the left side is decreased. If you turn the control knob to the right, the temperature in the rear on the left side is increased ⇒ *page 135,* fig. 144.

If you turn the control knob on the middle console front passenger side control element to the left, the temperature in the rear on the right side is decreased. If you turn the control knob to the right, the temperature in the rear on the right side is increased.

### Air distribution

If you press the **Distribution** control button and then turn the control knob on the driver or front passenger side, you can set the desired air distribution for the rear left or right side.

### Blower

If you press the **Blower** control button and then turn the control knob on the driver or front passenger side, you can set the desired fan speed for the rear left or right side.

### Seat heating

If you press the **Seat heat.** control button and then turn the control knob on the driver or front passenger side, you can set the desired temperature for the rear left or right side ⇒ *page 137.* ■

# Heated Seats

Applies to vehicles: with electrically heated seats

## Heated front seats

*The seat cushion and the seat back of the front seats can be heated electrically.*




**Fig. 145 MMI Display: Seat heating**

– Press the **Seat heat.** button.

– Adjust the desired temperature with the climate control knob ⇒ fig. 145.

In position 0 the heating for the seats is turned off. The range of adjustment is between 1 and 6.

The heater for the front seats can be turned on when the weight of the particular seat's occupant is detected. However, the front seats can be pre-heated for about 10 minutes using the activated seat heater. After this time has elapsed, the seat heater automatically turns off if it does not detect an occupant's weight for the particular seat.

**Note**

To avoid damage to the heating elements in the seats, do not kneel on the seats or place heavy loads on a small area of the seat. ▶

**Tips**

Please note that the weight of objects placed on the seat will also be detected. This weight may be enough to cause the seat heater to turn on. ■

Applies to vehicles: with heated rear seats

## Heated rear seats

*The seat cushions and seat backs of the two outer rear seats can be heated electrically.*

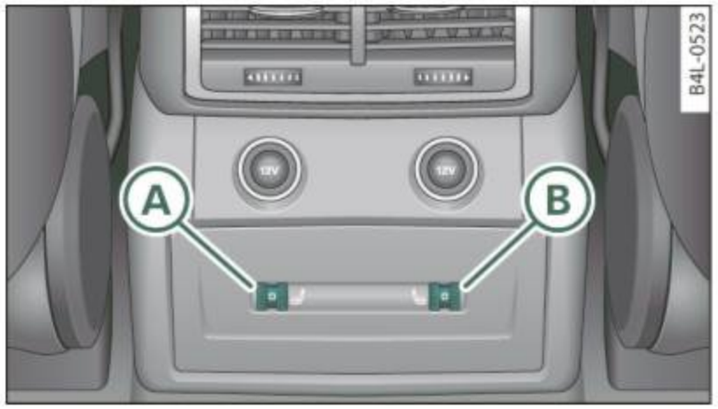



**Fig. 146 Center console rear: Heated seats**

– Rotate the thumb wheel (A) to turn on and adjust the heating for the left rear seat.
– Rotate the thumb wheel (B) to turn on and adjust the heating for the right rear seat.

With the thumb wheel in the 0 position, heating for the seats is turned off. The range of adjustment is from 1 to 6.

The heater for the outer rear seats can be turned on when the weight of the particular seat's occupant is detected. However, the rear seats can be pre-heated for about 10 minutes using the activated seat heater. After this time has elapsed, the seat heater automatically turns off if it does not detect an occupant's weight for the particular seat.

**Note**

To avoid damage to the heating elements in the seats, do not kneel on the seats or place heavy loads on a small area of the seat.

**Tips**

Please note that the weight of objects placed on the seat will also be detected. This weight may be enough to cause the seat heater to turn on. ■

Applies to vehicles: with heated rear seats, four-zone automatic comfort air conditioning

## Heated rear seats

*The seat cushions and seat backs of the two outer rear seats can be heated electrically.*




**Fig. 147 Center console in rear: Turning on heated rear seats**




**Fig. 148 Center console in front: Turning on heated rear seats**

### Adjusting heated seat settings on rear control element

– Press the **Seat heat.** button on the rear control element ⇒ *page 137,* fig. 147.

– Adjust the desired temperature with the control knob.

### Adjusting heated seat settings on center console control element

– Press the SETUP button on the air conditioning control element to access the menu.

– Select **Rear operation** ⇒ *page 135,* fig. 143 to adjust the rear air conditioning settings using the center console control element.

– Press the **Seat heat.** control button on the center console control element ⇒ fig. 148.

– Adjust the desired temperature with the control knob.

In position 0 the heating for the seats is turned off. The range of adjustment is between 1 and 6.

The heater for the outer rear seats can be turned on when the weight of the particular seat's occupant is detected. However, the rear seats can be pre-heated for about 10 minutes using the activated seat heater. After this time has elapsed, the seat heater automatically turns off if it does not detect an occupant's weight for the particular seat.

**Note**

To avoid damage to the heating elements in the seats, do not kneel on the seats or place heavy loads on a small area of the seat.

**Tips**

Please note that the weight of objects placed on the seat will also be detected. This weight may be enough to cause the seat heater to turn on. ■

Applies to vehicles: with steering wheel heating

## Steering wheel heating

*The steering wheel can be heated electrically.*




**Fig. 149 Multifunction steering wheel: Button for steering wheel heating**

– Press the button to turn the steering wheel heating on and off ⇒ fig. 149. The message
**Steering wheel heating on !** or
**Steering wheel heating off !** appears in the instrument cluster display.

When the steering wheel heating is switched on, the steering wheel is heated to about 82 °F (28 °C) and held there.

The last setting selected for the steering wheel heating (on or off) is automatically saved when the vehicle is shut off and is assigned to the remote key. ■

# On the road

## Steering

Applies to vehicles: with manually adjustable steering wheel

### Manually adjusted steering wheel

*The height and reach of the steering wheel can be adjusted.*

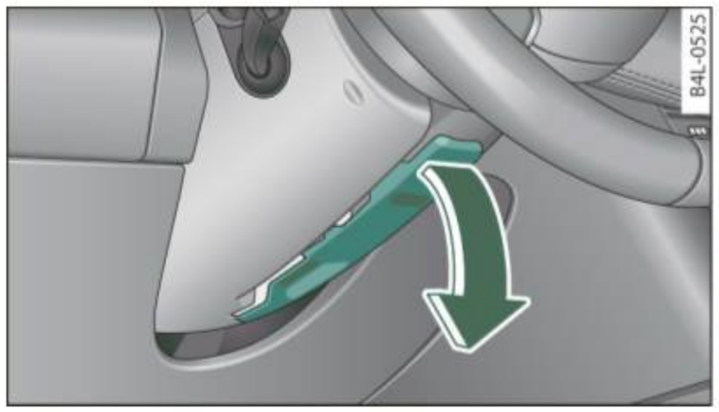



**Fig. 150 Lever under the steering column**

First, adjust the driver's seat correctly.

– Pull the lever ⇒ fig. 150 -Arrow- ⇒ ⚠.

– Move the steering wheel to the desired position.

– Push the lever against the steering column until it locks.

There must be at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your chest and the center of the steering wheel. If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, see if adaptive equipment is available to help you reach the pedals and increase the distance from the steering wheel.

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver's seat, see ⇒ *page 93*.

The steering wheel can be adjusted even when the ignition is turned Off. For vehicles with seat memory, the individual positions for the steering wheel can be stored along with the seat position.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improper use of steering wheel adjustment and improper seating position can cause serious personal injury.**

- **Adjust the steering wheel column only when the vehicle is not moving to prevent loss of vehicle control.**
- **Adjust the driver's seat or steering wheel so that there is a minimum of 10 inches (25 cm) between your chest and the steering wheel ⇒ *page 222*, fig. 235. If you cannot maintain this minimum distance, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.**
- **If physical limitations prevent you from sitting 10 inches (25 cm) or more from the steering wheel, check with your authorized Audi dealer to see if adaptive equipment is available.**
- **If the steering wheel is aligned with your face, the supplemental driver's airbag cannot provide as much protection in an accident. Always make sure that the steering wheel is aligned with your chest.**
- **Always hold the steering wheel with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag deploys.**
- **Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag deploys.** ■

Applies to vehicles: with electrically adjusted steering wheel

## Electrically adjusted steering wheel

*The height and reach of the steering wheel can be electrically adjusted to suit the driver.*

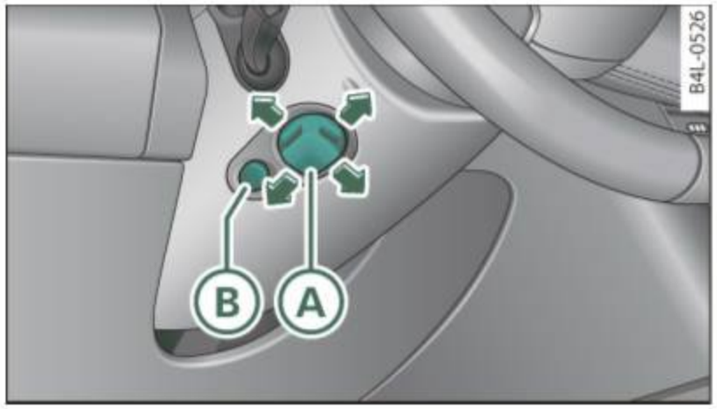



**Fig. 151 Switch for steering wheel adjustment**

First, adjust the driver's seat correctly.

### Height adjustment

– Push the switch (A) up or down ⇒ fig. 151. The steering wheel height changes for as long as you press the switch.

### Reach adjustment

– Push the switch (A) forward or backward ⇒ fig. 151. The steering wheel reach changes for as long as you press the switch.

There must be at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your chest and the center of the steering wheel. If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, see if adaptive equipment is available to help you reach the pedals and increase the distance from the steering wheel.

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver's seat, see ⇒ *page 93*.

The steering wheel can be adjusted even when the ignition is turned Off. For vehicles with seat memory, the individual positions for the steering wheel can be stored along with the seat position.

**WARNING**

**Improper use of steering wheel adjustment and improper seating position can cause serious personal injury.**

- **Adjust the steering wheel column only when the vehicle is not moving to prevent loss of vehicle control.**
- **Adjust the driver's seat or steering wheel so that there is a minimum of 10 inches (25 cm) between your chest and the steering wheel ⇒ *page 222*, fig. 235. If you cannot maintain this minimum distance, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.**
- **If physical limitations prevent you from sitting 10 inches (25 cm) or more from the steering wheel, check with your authorized Audi dealer to see if adaptive equipment is available.**
- **If the steering wheel is aligned with your face, the supplemental driver's airbag cannot provide as much protection in an accident. Always make sure that the steering wheel is aligned with your chest.**
- **Always hold the steering wheel with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag deploys.**
- **Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag deploys.** ■

## Easy entry feature

*The easy entry feature makes it easier to enter and exit the vehicle by automatically adjusting the steering wheel.*

Press the button (B) ⇒ *page 141,* fig. 151 to turn the easy entry feature on or off.

When the easy entry feature is turned on (button depressed), the steering wheel moves up to the parked position when the ignition is turned off. After you enter the vehicle, the steering wheel moves to the stored position as soon as you turn on the ignition.

### Easy entry feature on vehicles with memory seat*

For the stored steering wheel position to be recalled, the driver's seat memory must be switched on (ON OFF switch in depressed position).

If the easy entry feature is switched off, the steering wheel moves to the stored position as soon as you press the seat memory button. ■

# Ignition lock and ignition switch

## Ignition key positions

*The engine can be started or turned off with the ignition key.*

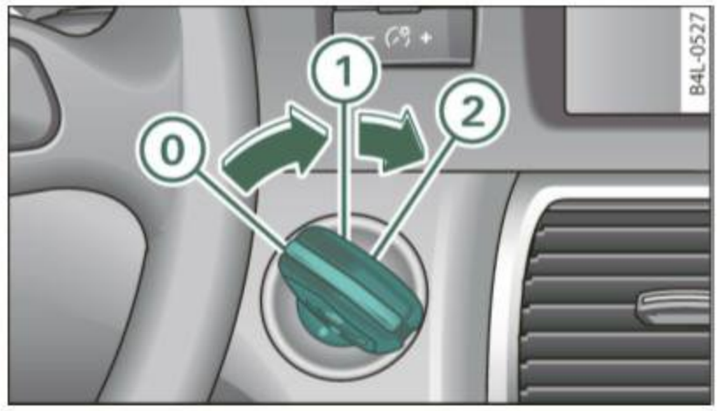



**Fig. 152 Ignition switch positions**

### Position (0)

The ignition key can be inserted into the ignition switch in this position. This automatically unlocks the steering column lock. When the ignition key is removed, the steering column lock is automatically locked ⇒ ⚠.

### Ignition on (1)

Turn the ignition key to this position and release it.

### Starting the engine (2)

The engine starts with the key in this position. Major electrical loads are temporarily turned off.

### Ignition off (0)

Turn the ignition key to this position and release it. ▶

**WARNING**

- **Never remove the key from the ignition lock while the vehicle is moving. The steering wheel will lock, causing loss of control.**
- **If you have to leave your vehicle, even for just a minute, always remove the ignition key and take it with you. This is especially important if you are going to leave children unattended in the vehicle. The children could start the engine or use other vehicle controls. Unsupervised use of vehicle controls (for example, power windows) can cause serious personal injuries.**

**Note**

- If the symbol in the display blinks, there is a malfunction in the electronic steering column lock. Follow the instructions in ⇒ *page 34,* "Steering malfunction".
- If the symbol in the display blinks, there is a malfunction in the electronic ignition lock. Follow the instructions in ⇒ *page 34,* "Ignition lock malfunction".

**Tips**

- If you release the ignition key in position (2), the key automatically returns to position (1).
- If you open the driver's door when the ignition is switched on, a buzzer sounds and the message **Ignition is on** appears in the instrument cluster display. Please switch the ignition off. ■

## Ignition key safety lock

*The ignition key can only be removed when the selector lever is in the "P" (Park) position.*

After turning off the ignition, the ignition key can only be removed from the ignition lock when the selector lever is in the "P" (Park) position. After you have removed the key, the selector lever is locked and cannot be moved. ■

# Starting and stopping the engine

## Starting the engine

*The engine can only be started with your original Audi key.*

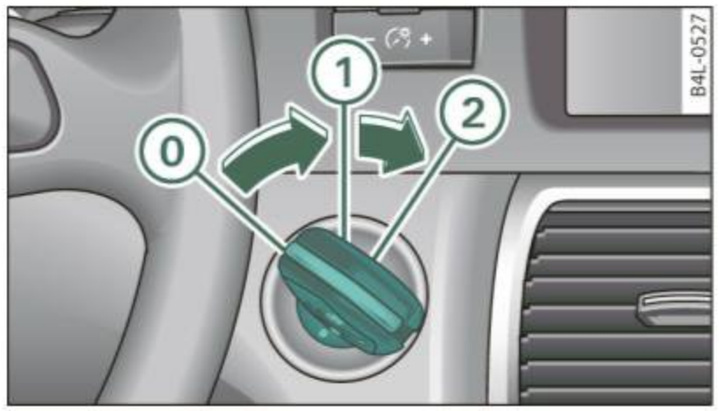



**Fig. 153 Ignition key positions**

– Step on the brake.
– Move the selector lever into P or N ⇒ .
– Turn the ignition key to position (2) ⇒ fig. 153 - do not depress the gas pedal when starting the engine.

A cold engine may sound loud after it has been started. This is due to the hydraulic valves building up oil pressure. This is normal and is not a need for concern.

If the engine does not start immediately, stop trying after 10 seconds and then try to restart the engine about 30 seconds later. ▶

**WARNING**

**Never start or let the engine run in a confined or enclosed area. Exhaust fumes from the engine contain carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas. Carbon monoxide can be fatal if inhaled.**

- **Never leave the engine idling unattended. An unattended vehicle with a running engine poses a danger of personal injury or theft.**

**Note**

- Avoid high engine speeds, fast acceleration or heavy engine loads while the engine is still cold. This could damage the engine.
- The engine cannot be started by pushing or towing the vehicle.

**For the sake of the environment**

To avoid unnecessary engine wear and to reduce exhaust emissions, do not let your vehicle stand and warm up. Be ready to drive off immediately after starting your vehicle. Maintain moderate speed until the engine is completely warm. Remember, the engine performs best at operating temperature. ■

## Stopping the engine

– Turn the ignition key to position (0) ⇒ *page 143,* fig. 153.

**WARNING**

- **Never turn off the engine until the vehicle has come to a complete stop.**
- **The brake booster and servotronic only work when the engine is running. With the ignition turned off, you have to apply more force when steering or braking. Since you cannot steer and stop normally, this can lead to accidents and serious injuries.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **The radiator fan can continue to run for up to 10 minutes even after you have turned off the engine and removed the ignition key. The radiator fan can also turn on again if the engine coolant heats up because of intense sunlight or heat build-up in the engine compartment.**

**Note**

Do not stop the engine immediately after hard or extended driving. Keep the engine running for approximately two minutes to prevent excessive heat build-up. ■

# Starting and stopping the engine with Convenience key

Applies to vehicles: with Convenience key

## Starting the engine with the START button

*This button switches on the ignition and starts the engine.*




**Fig. 154 Convenience key: ENGINE START button**

The START button is provided with **two-stage operation** ⇒ fig. 154. ▶

### Switching the ignition on

– Press the START button once to the first stage to switch on only the ignition.

### Starting the engine

– Step on the brake.

– Move the selector lever to the P or N position ⇒ ⚠.

– Press the START button to the second stage to start the engine.

After a cold engine is started, there may be a brief period of increased noise because oil pressure must first build up in the hydraulic valve adjusters. This is normal and not a cause for concern.

If the engine does not start immediately, stop trying after 10 seconds and then try to restart the engine about 30 seconds later.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never allow the engine to run in confined spaces - danger of asphyxiation.**

**Note**

- Avoid high engine rpm, full throttle and heavy engine loads until the engine has reached operating temperature - otherwise you risk engine damage.
- The engine cannot be started by pushing or towing the vehicle.

**For the sake of the environment**

Do not allow the engine to warm up with the vehicle stationary. Start driving right away. In this way you avoid unnecessary emissions.

**Tips**

If you open the driver's door when the ignition is switched on, a buzzer sounds and the message **Ignition is on** appears in the instrument cluster display. Please switch the ignition off. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Convenience key

## Switching engine off with the STOP button




**Fig. 155 Convenience key: ENGINE STOP button**

– Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

– Move the selector lever to the P or N position.

– Press the STOP button ⇒ fig. 155.

Pressing the STOP button once switches off the engine and the ignition. If you press the STOP button again for more than 1 second, the steering is locked, provided that the selector lever is in the P position ⇒ ⚠.

### Emergency OFF function

If necessary, the engine can be switched off with the selector lever in the R, D or S positions. To do so, step on the brake pedal and press and hold the STOP button (vehicle speed must be less than 6 mph / 10 km/h. ▶

**WARNING**

- **Never turn off the engine until the vehicle has come to a complete stop.**
- **The brake booster and servotronic only work when the engine is running. With the ignition turned off, you have to apply more force when steering or braking. Since you cannot steer and stop normally, this can lead to accidents and serious injuries.**
- **For safety reasons, you should always park your vehicle with the selector lever in P. Otherwise, the vehicle could inadvertently roll away.**
- **After the engine has been switched off, the radiator fan can continue to run for up to 10 minutes - even with the ignition switched off. It can also switch on again after some time if the coolant temperature rises as the result of a heat buildup or if the engine is hot and the engine compartment is additionally heated by the sun's rays.**

**Note**

If the engine has been under heavy load for an extended period, heat builds up in the engine compartment after the engine is switched off - there is a risk of damaging the engine. Allow the engine to run at idle for about 2 minutes before switching it off. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Convenience key

## Driver messages in the instrument cluster display

*If a function is not present, a driver message appears.*

**No key identified**

This message appears when the START button is pressed if there is no master key inside the vehicle or if the system does not recognize it. For example, the master key cannot be recognized if it is covered by an object (e.g. aluminum brief case) which *screens* the radio signal. Electronic devices such as cell phones can also interfere with the radio signal.

**Press brake pedal to start engine**

This message appears if you press the START button to start the engine and do not depress the brake pedal. The engine can only be started if the brake pedal is depressed.

**Engage N or P to start engine**

This message appears when the engine is started if the selector lever for the automatic transmission is not in the P or N position. The engine can only be started with the selector in these positions.

**Key not in vehicle**

This message appears along with the symbol if the master key is removed from the vehicle with the engine running. It is intended to remind you (e.g. when changing drivers) not to continue the journey without the master key.

If the master key is no longer in the vehicle, you cannot switch off the ignition after stopping the engine and you also cannot start the engine again. Moreover, you cannot lock the vehicle from the outside with the key.

**Shift to P, otherwise vehicle can roll away. Doors do not lock if lever is not in P.**

This message appears for safety reasons along with a warning buzzer if the selector lever for the automatic transmission is not in the P position when the ignition is switched off with the STOP button and the driver's door is opened. Move the selector lever to the P position, otherwise the vehicle is not secured against rolling away. You also cannot lock the vehicle using the locking button on the door handle or using the remote key.

**To engage steering lock, press and hold STOP button**

This message appears for safety reasons if the engine and the ignition have been switched off by pressing the STOP button once, ▶

and then the driver's door is opened. In this instance, the steering is not locked. The steering is locked:

- If you press the STOP button again for more than 1 second.
- If you close the driver's door and lock your vehicle from the outside. ■

# Parking brake

## Operation

*The parking brake replaces the handbrake.*

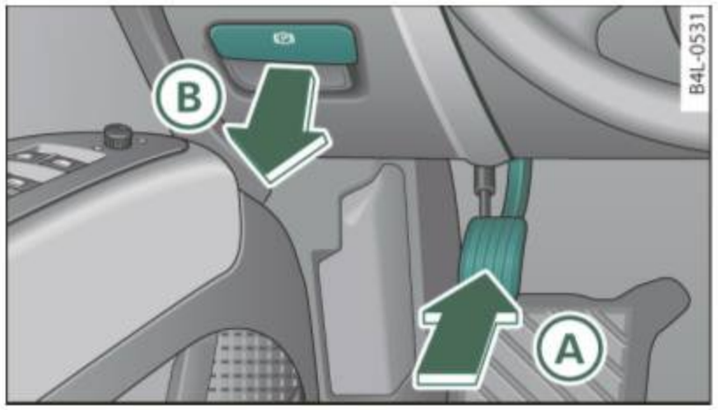



**Fig. 156 Section of instrument cluster: Parking brake**

### Applying parking brake

– Press the pedal down forcefully ⇒ fig. 156 (A) in the direction of the arrow.

### Releasing parking brake

– Pull the handle to the rear (B) in the direction of the arrow ⇒ ⚠.

If you should drive off with the parking brake still set, a warning tone will sound and the following will appear in the instrument cluster to remind you to release the parking brake:

**Parking brake is applied**

The parking brake warning comes on only after you have driven for longer than 3 seconds and faster than 5 mph (5 km/h).

The parking brake warning light PARK BRAKE (USA)/ (P) (CDN) illuminates when the parking brake is set and you switch on the ignition.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always release the parking brake completely. A partially engaged brake will overheat the rear brakes, reduce their effectiveness and cause excessive wear. This could lead to brake failure and an accident.**

**Note**

Only after the vehicle has come to complete stop, should you firmly set the parking brake and move the selector lever into “P”. ■

## Parking

*To prevent a parked vehicle from rolling away, there are a few things you should do.*

### When you park your vehicle, do the following

– Stop the vehicle using the brake pedal.
– Apply the parking brake firmly.
– Move the selector lever into the **P** position ⇒ ⚠.
– Switch off the engine and remove the ignition key from the ignition lock. ▶

### When you park your vehicle on hills, do the following

– Stop the vehicle using the brake pedal.

– Apply the parking brake firmly.

– If you are parking headed **downhill**, turn the front wheels *toward* the curb.

– If you are parking headed **uphill**, turn the front wheels *away* from the curb.

– Move the selector lever into the **P** position.

– Switch off the engine and remove the ignition key from the ignition lock.

**WARNING**

**This is how you can reduce the risk of injury when leaving your vehicle.**

- **Never park the vehicle where it can come in contact with dry grass, spilled fuel or any other flammable materials.**
- **When parking on hills, always turn the wheels so that the front wheels will first roll into the curb, if the vehicle should start to roll.**
- **Never allow anyone - especially small children - to remain in the vehicle when it is locked. Locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to access the passenger compartment in the event of an emergency. Danger to life!**
- **Never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle. Children could release the parking brake or move the gearshift lever out of gear. The vehicle could start to roll away and cause an accident.**
- **No matter what the season is, the temperature in a parked vehicle can reach dangerous levels.**

**Note**

- Please exercise care when you park your vehicle in parking areas with parking barriers or curbs. Parking barriers and curbs vary in height and could damage your bumper and related components as the front of your vehicle moves over a barrier or curb that is too high, as you park or as you back out of a parking spot. In order to be sure that no such damage can occur, you may wish to stop short of having the front tires of your car touch the parking barrier or curb.
- Please also exercise exceptional care when you drive up or down steep ramps or drive over curbs or other obstacles, for which the vehicle is not designed, because components of the vehicle close to the ground, such as bumper covers, spoilers and suspension and exhaust system components, may become damaged. ■

## Starting on hills

Hill hold assist makes it easier to start on hills.

The system is activated when the brake pedal is depressed **for a few seconds**. For this, the vehicle must be standing in uphill driving direction.

After releasing the brake pedal, the brake power is held for a *brief moment* to prevent the vehicle from rolling back when starting. At this time, you can easily begin to move your vehicle.

**WARNING**

- **If you did not begin moving immediately after releasing the brake pedal, under certain circumstances, the vehicle would begin to roll backward. Depress the brake pedal immediately or engage the parking brake.**
- **Should the engine stall, depress the brake pedal immediately or engage the parking brake.**

▶

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **In order to prevent the vehicle from rolling back unintentionally when starting in stop-and-go traffic, keep the brake pedal depressed for a few seconds before driving off.**
- **When you leave the vehicle - even if only briefly - , switch off the ignition and make sure to remove the ignition key. Also engage the parking brake to prevent your vehicle from rolling unintentionally. This particularly applies if children are left in the vehicle - danger of accident! ■**

# Cruise control

## Switching the system on

*The cruise control system makes it possible to drive at a constant speed starting at 20 mph (30 km/h).*

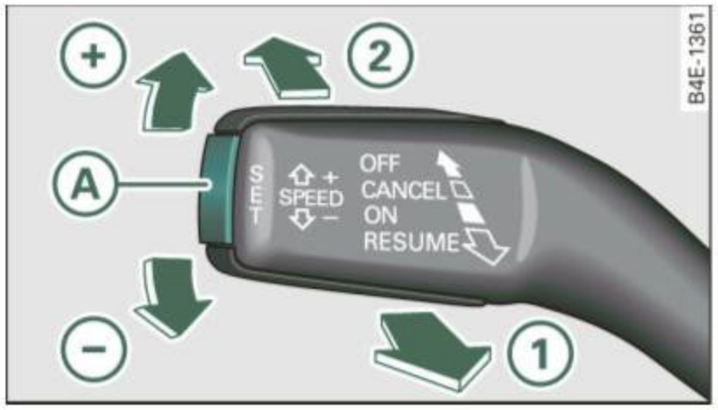



**Fig. 157 Control lever with set button**




**Fig. 158 Display: Selected speed**

– Pull the lever to position (1) ⇒ fig. 157 to switch the system on.

– Drive at the speed you wish to set.

– Press button (A) to set that speed.

The display ⇒ fig. 158 will show the set speed. The display may vary depending on the type of display in your vehicle. The indicator light CRUISE (US model) / (Canadian model) will also light up in the instrument cluster.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always pay attention to traffic even when the cruise control is switched on. You are always responsible for your speed and the distance between your vehicle and other vehicles.**
- **For safety reasons, the cruise control should not be used in the city, in stop-and-go traffic, on twisting roads and when road conditions are poor (such as ice, fog, gravel, heavy rain and hydroplaning) - risk of accident.**
- **Turn off the cruise control temporarily when entering turn lanes, highway exit lanes or in construction zones.**
- **Please note that inadvertently "resting" your foot on the accelerator pedal causes the cruise control not to brake. This is because the cruise control is overridden by the driver's acceleration.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Never use the cruise control when driving off-road or on unpaved roads. The Cruise control is intended for use only when the vehicle is being operated on paved roads, and is not suitable for use off-road or on unpaved roads.**

**Tips**

The cruise control cannot maintain a constant speed when driving downhill. The vehicle will accelerate under its own weight. Downshift to a lower gear or use the brakes to slow down. ■

## Changing speed

– Press lever in the (+) or (-) direction ⇒ *page 149,* fig. 157 to increase or decrease your speed.
– Release the lever to save that speed.

Change speed in increments of 1 mph (1 km/h) by lightly pressing the lever. If you keep the lever pressed down, you will alter your speed in 5 mph (10 km/h) increments.

You can also press the accelerator pedal down to increase your speed, e.g. if you want to pass someone. The speed you saved earlier will resume as soon as you release the accelerator pedal.

If, however, you exceed your saved speed by 5 mph (10 km/h) for longer than 5 minutes, the cruise control will turn off temporarily. The symbol will go out but the saved speed will be retained. ■

## Presetting your speed

*You can preset your desired speed while the vehicle is not moving.*

– Turn on the ignition.
– Pull lever into position (1) ⇒ *page 149,* fig. 157.
– Press the lever in the (+) or (-) direction to increase or decrease your speed.
– Release the lever to save that speed.

This function makes it possible, for example, to save the speed you want before driving on the highway. Once on the highway, activate the cruise control by pulling the lever toward (1). ■

## Switching the system off

### Temporary deactivation

– Press the brake pedal, or
– Press the lever into position (2) (not clicked into place) ⇒ *page 149,* fig. 157, or
– Drive for longer than 5 minutes at more than 5 mph (10 km/h) above the stored speed.

### Switching off completely

– Press lever into position (2) (clicked into place), or
– Switch the ignition off.

The system retains the saved speed if you deactivate the cruise control temporarily. To resume the saved speed, release the brake pedal and pull the lever to position (1).

Switching the ignition off erases the saved speed. ▶

**WARNING**

**You should only return to the saved speed if it is not too fast for the current traffic conditions - risk of an accident! ■**

# Adaptive Cruise Control

## Speed and distance control system

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Cruise Control

### Description

*The Adaptive Cruise Control driver assistance program is a combined speed and distance control system.*




**Fig. 159 Front bumper: Position of radar sensor (not visible from outside)**

Adaptive Cruise Control can help make driving more relaxed and less tiring, particularly during long trips on interstates or other highways that are generally straight. The system can also assist in stop and go traffic.

The Adaptive Cruise Control works within a speed range between 0 and 95 mph (150 km/h). Set ACC to maintain a constant, legal travel speed between 20 and 95 mph (30 - 150 km/h) that is appropriate for prevailing traffic conditions. Select a following distance to the vehicle ahead and ACC will adjust your speed to maintain that distance down to a stop. At a speed below 20 mph (30 km/h), the minimum speed setting of 20 mph (30 km/h) will be selected automatically.

Adaptive Cruise Control has technical limitations that you must know, so please read this section carefully, understand how the system works and use it properly at all times.

#### How does it work?

You can operate the Adaptive Cruise Control using the lever on the steering wheel column ⇒ *page 156,* "How is the speed stored?" and ⇒ *page 158,* "How is the distance (time interval) set?".

#### Driver information

Important information is brought up in the speedometer and in the instrument cluster display as the vehicle is being driven ⇒ *page 160,* "Driver information".

#### What is important for you to know

The Adaptive Cruise Control is set with system-specified limits; that is, as a driver, you will have to adjust the speed and distance to the vehicle ahead in some instances ⇒ *page 164,* "Driver intervention prompt" and ⇒ *page 165,* "System limitations".

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improper use of the Adaptive Cruise Control can cause collisions, other accidents and serious personal injury.**

- **Always remember that the Adaptive Cruise Control has limits – it will not slow the vehicle down or maintain the set distance when you drive towards an obstacle or something on or near the road that is not moving, such as vehicles stopped in a traffic jam, a stalled or disabled vehicle.**
- **Always remember that the Adaptive Cruise Control cannot detect a vehicle that is driving towards you in your traffic lane and that it cannot detect narrow vehicles such as motorcycles and bicycles.**
- **Never drive at speeds that are too fast for traffic, road and weather conditions.**
- **Never follow a vehicle so closely that you cannot stop your vehicle safely. The Adaptive Cruise Control cannot slow or brake**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

**the vehicle safely when you follow another vehicle too closely. Always remember that the Adaptive Cruise Control has a braking power that is only about 30% of the vehicle's maximum braking ability. The automatic braking function cannot bring the vehicle to a sudden or emergency stop. Always be prepared to brake and take evasive action to avoid collisions and other accident situations.**

- **Never allow the closing speed between you and other vehicles to be so high that the Adaptive Cruise Control may not be able to slow your vehicle safely. If closing speed is too high, you must apply the brakes yourself to reduce the risk of a rear-end crash.**
- **Never rest your foot on the accelerator pedal, especially when the Adaptive Cruise Control is being used. Pressure on the accelerator will override the ACC braking function and prevent the brakes from being applied when ACC detects a situation when the brakes must be applied.**
- **Never use Adaptive Cruise Control when you cannot drive safely at a steady speed, including on city streets, on winding roads or when road conditions are poor (for example, on ice, gravel, in fog, heavy rain or on wet roads that increase the risk of hydroplaning).**
- **The radar sensor's *vision* can be reduced by rain, snow and heavy road spray. These and similar conditions can prevent vehicles up ahead from being accurately detected and in some cases they may not be detected at all. Do not use ACC when the radar sensors cannot accurately detect vehicles moving ahead of you in traffic.**
- **Always turn off Adaptive Cruise Control when entering turn lanes, exit lanes and construction zones or in similar situations because the vehicle will automatically accelerate to the stored speed when the road ahead is clear.**
- **To prevent unintended operation, always switch ACC off when it is not being used.**

## Tips

- For safety reasons, the stored speed is deleted when the ignition is turned off.
- The Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) and the Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) cannot be deactivated when the Adaptive Cruise Control is switched on. If the ESP and the Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) has been deactivated and you then switch on the Adaptive Cruise Control, the ESP function will also be activated automatically.
- Damage caused by accidents and some minor collisions can affect the radar sensor settings and cause the system to malfunction or switch off completely.
- The radar sensor cover is heated. In winter conditions, you should still check before driving to make sure it is free of ice and snow. If necessary, clean the area near the radar sensor carefully ⇒ *page 152,* fig. 159.
- To ensure that the radar sensor is not blocked, foreign objects (e.g. stickers, larger license plate mounts, add-on parts) must not cover the area near the radar sensor ⇒ *page 152,* fig. 159. The area near the radar sensor must not be painted, either.
- For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇒ *page 404.* ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Cruise Control

## How does Adaptive Cruise Control work?

*Vehicles traveling ahead are detected with the aid of a radar sensor.*

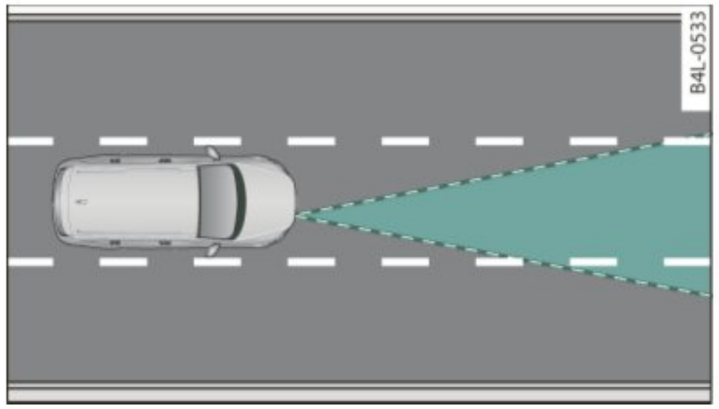



**Fig. 160 Basic principle diagram: Radar sensor measurement range**

Adaptive Cruise Control uses a radar sensor in the front of the vehicle ⇒ fig. 160. The system has limitations ⇒ *page 165*. Things that are not moving in your lane and in your direction of travel will not be detected. The sensor measures the distance to reflective surfaces that must have a certain size. The system responds only after the distance measurement has been made. If a measurement is not possible, the system cannot respond and will not react to a vehicle or something else up ahead.

### Open road

When the road is clear, the Adaptive Cruise Control works like cruise control. It maintains a constant target speed specified by the driver.

### Driving in traffic

If a slower vehicle driving ahead is detected, the Adaptive Cruise Control decelerates (within the limits of the system) ⇒ *page 164,* "Driver intervention prompt" and ⇒ *page 165,* "System limitations" to its speed and after adjusting, tries to maintain the set distance from the vehicle ahead. The vehicle may temporarily drive slower than the set speed while adjusting ⇒ ⚠ in "Description" on *page 152*.

If the vehicle in front accelerates, Adaptive Cruise Control also accelerates up to the speed that you have set.

If the vehicle ahead slows to a stop, ACC will slow your vehicle down and to a complete stop if this is possible within the system's limits and capabilities. ACC will not make an emergency stop. The text message **ACC off: manual control!** appears in the instrument cluster display. Once the vehicle stops, you must depress the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from moving forward or "creeping". Depressing the brake pedal turns off ACC. When the vehicle ahead accelerates you can reactivate ACC ⇒ *page 157*, as soon as your vehicle has reached a speed of 1 mph (2 km/h).

### Situations requiring driver intervention

In some situations you will have to use the footbrake to slow the vehicle down in order to keep a safe distance from vehicle in front of you or to avoid a rear-end collision. In this situation, a symbol appears and a warning tone sounds ⇒ *page 164*.

### Passing another vehicle

If you move into the passing lane and no vehicle is detected ahead, the Adaptive Cruise Control accelerates to the speed you have set and maintains it.

### Overriding ACC

You can increase your speed at any time by stepping on the accelerator pedal. After you release the accelerator pedal, the system adjusts back down to the speed you previously set.

### Reducing stopping distance

If the radar sensor detects that the distance to the vehicle ahead is less than defined minimum distance, the brakes are automatically prepared for emergency braking by the driver. The brake pads are moved very close to the brake discs without actually braking the vehicle. This brake assistant feature reacts more quickly to the driver's braking, and also works when Adaptive Cruise Control is off. The stopping distance is reduced as a result of this advance brake ▶

preparation. This function does not perform any emergency braking maneuvers by itself; the driver must always apply the brakes.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If ACC initiates a braking maneuver, the brake pedal will be retracted. Interference with the brake pedal can prevent ACC from slowing the vehicle down and cause a crash and serious personal injury.**

- **Never put anything in the driver's footwell or let anything fall into it. An object in the driver's footwell can interfere with the pedals and prevent the accelerator from being used to override ACC or prevent ACC from being switched off when the brake pedal is depressed and also prevent the vehicle from being slowed down or stopped.**
- **Only use floor mats that keep the area around the pedals free and that can be securely fastened to the footwell.**
- **Never drive with your foot underneath the brake pedal.**
- **Always read and heed the information and WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ in "Description" on *page 152*.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never rely on the distance control feature of ACC alone to prevent rear-end collisions. Always be prepared to brake and take evasive action to avoid collisions and other accident situations.**
- **Never allow the closing speed between you and other vehicles to be so high that the Adaptive Cruise Control may not be able to slow your vehicle safely. If closing speed is too high, you must apply the brakes yourself to reduce the risk of a rear-end crash.**

**Tips**

Please note that the amount of acceleration the Adaptive Cruise Control uses depends on the Distance setting selected. DISTANCE 1 gives you acceleration that is dynamic and sporty. DISTANCE 4, on the other hand, gives more moderate acceleration. For more information about the time intervals ⇒ *page 158,* "How is the distance (time interval) set?".

- Please note that if the Adaptive Cruise Control has begun braking the vehicle and the driver chooses to brake the vehicle additionally, the brakes may feel "hard". This is simply due to the pressure build-up of the initial braking.
- Adaptive Cruise Control is switched off after pressing the foot-brake. The speed saved up this point can be resumed. To resume the saved speed, release the brake pedal and pull the control lever toward you ⇒ *page 157,* "Turning Adaptive Cruise Control off temporarily". ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Cruise Control

## Switching the system on and off




**Fig. 161 Control lever: Switching on and off**

### Switching the system on

– Pull the lever to position (1) ⇒ fig. 161.

### Switching the system off

– Press the lever to position (2) (latched). ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Cruise Control

## How is the speed stored?

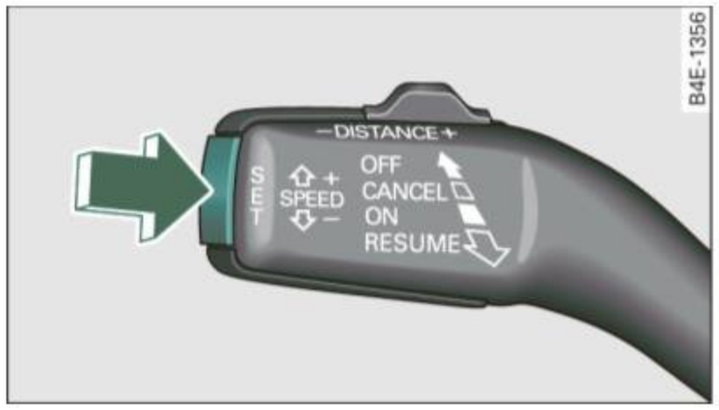



**Fig. 162 Control lever: Storing speed**

With **the system switched on** the speed is stored as follows:

– Drive at the speed you want.

– Press the SET button ⇒ fig. 162 to store the desired speed.

After the SET button is released, the current speed is stored and maintained. If you are driving at a speed below 20 mph (30 km/h), the minimum speed setting of 20 mph (30 km/h) will be set.

The saved speed is now shown in the LED display in the speedometer by one or two illuminated red light diodes ⇒ *page 161*. At the same time, the saved speed is also shown for a short time in the Information line ⇒ *page 163*.

### Tips

For safety reasons, the stored speed is erased when the ignition or the ACC is turned off. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Cruise Control

## Changing stored speed

*The speed can be changed without touching the accelerator or brake pedal.*

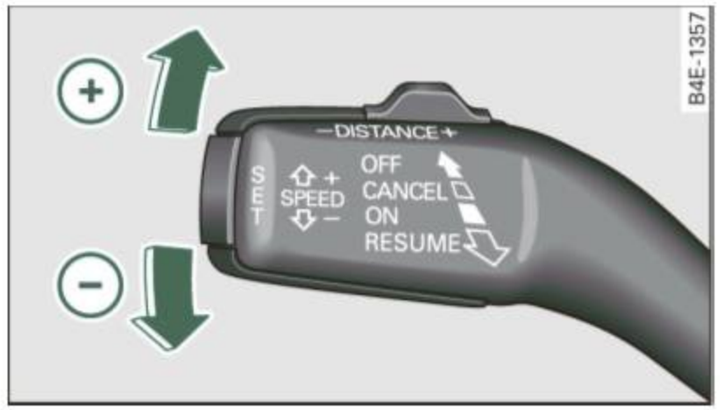



**Fig. 163 Control lever: Changing speed**

### Increasing speed

– Press the lever **briefly** upwards (+) ⇒ fig. 163. USA models: the speed increases by about 2.5 mph. Canada models: speed will increase by one mark on the speedometer scale.

– Press the lever upwards (+) and **hold** it. As long as you hold the control switch down, the light diode display in the speedometer LED display in the speedometer moves forward and the speed is increased.

### Reducing speed

– Press the lever **briefly** downwards (-). USA models: the speed decreases by 2.5 mph. Canada models: speed will decrease by one mark on the speedometer scale. ▶

– Press the lever downwards (-) and **hold** it. As long as you hold the control switch down, the light diode display in the speedometer LED display moves backward and the speed is reduced.

After releasing the control switch, the system regulates the speed to the value just set.

After each adjustment, the newly-set speed is shown for a short time in the Information line ⇒ *page 163*.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improper use of the Adaptive Cruise Control features and inattention can lead to an accident causing serious personal injury.**

- **It is dangerous to use the "RESUME" feature when the previously set speed is too high for existing road, traffic or weather conditions.**
- **Always read and heed the information and WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ in "Description" on *page 152*.**

**Tips**

You can increase your speed at any time by stepping on the accelerator pedal. After you release the accelerator pedal, the system adjusts back down to the speed you previously set. A new desired speed can be stored at any time by pressing the SET button ⇒ *page 156*, fig. 162. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Cruise Control

## Turning Adaptive Cruise Control off temporarily

*In some situations it makes sense to turn Adaptive Cruise Control off temporarily.*

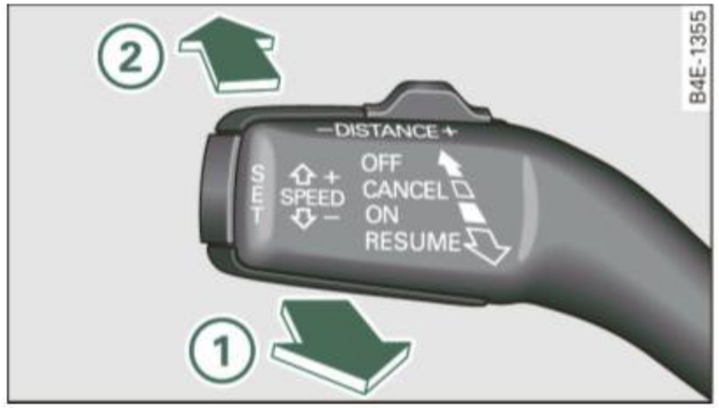



**Fig. 164 Control lever: Turning Adaptive Cruise Control off temporarily**

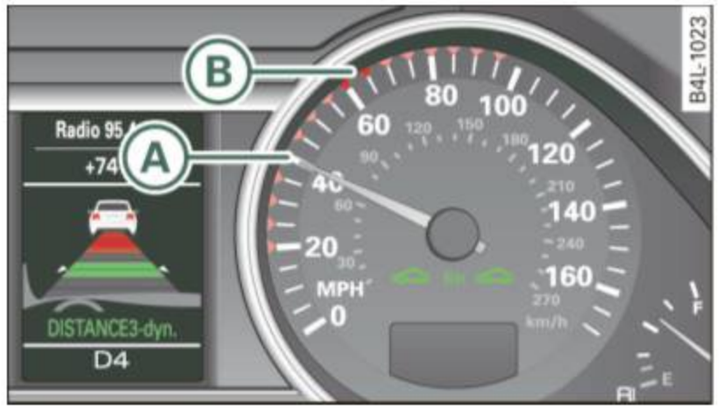



**Fig. 165 Display in the speedometer**

### Turning control off temporarily

– To shut off the control with the save function, either depress the brake pedal, or

– Press the lever in the direction of the arrow (2) ⇒ fig. 164. ▶

### Reactivating control

– To resume the speed and distance control, release the brake pedal and press the lever in the direction of the arrow (1).

### Display in the speedometer

(A) Current vehicle speed ⇒ *page 157*, fig. 165

(B) Saved speed

As long as a speed is saved the set desired speed will be displayed in the LED display in the speedometer by one or two illuminated red light diodes. When the control function is resumed the Adaptive Cruise Control accelerates to reach the desired speed if no slower vehicle ahead is detected.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improper use of the Adaptive Cruise Control can cause collisions, other accidents and serious personal injuries.**

- **Never resume the stored speed if the speed is too high for prevailing road, traffic or weather conditions.**

**Tips**

When the system is turned off temporarily, the speed set at that time is stored. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Cruise Control

## How is the distance (time interval) set?

*Distance can be set in four stages.*

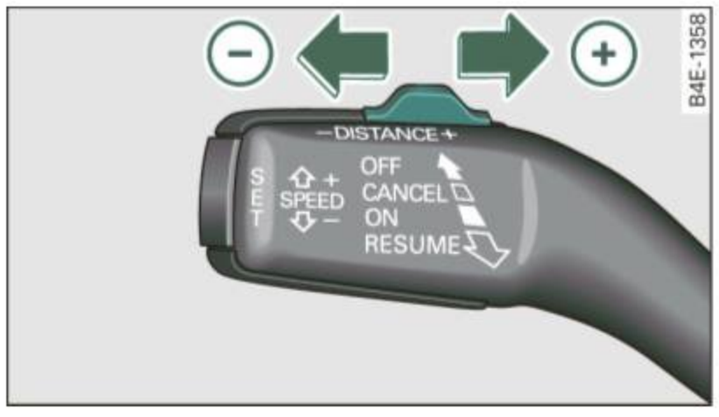



**Fig. 166 Control lever: Setting distance**

### Increasing distance

– Push the slider switch **once** to the right (+) ⇒ fig. 166. The distance currently set is shown for 3 seconds in the instrument cluster display.

– Push the slider switch **again** to the right (+) to increase the distance by one step.

### Reducing distance

– Push the slider switch **once** to the left (-). The distance currently set is shown for 3 seconds in the instrument cluster display.

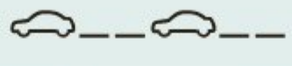
– Push the slider switch **again** to the left (-) to decrease the distance by one step.

The distance at which the Adaptive Cruise Control follows a vehicle in front is determined by *time* intervals. A time interval to a vehicle in front is established and maintained. This produces a speed-dependent interval. The higher the speed, the greater the safety interval in feet (meters) ⇒ ⚠.

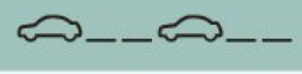
For example, if the interval **DISTANCE 3** is set, a vehicle in front is followed at a *time interval* of 1.8 seconds.

For a speed of **50 mph (80 km/h)** this would be equivalent to a distance of **131 feet (40 meters)** to the vehicle in front.

The distances given here are nominal values. The vehicle speed may exceed or fall short of these target speeds, depending on the driving situation and the driving style of the vehicle ahead.

| | DISTANCE 1 | DISTANCE 2 | DISTANCE 3 | DISTANCE 4 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Symbol |  |  |  |  |
| Time interval | 1 second | 1.3 seconds | 1.8 seconds | 2.3 seconds |
| Dynamics | Sporting | Standard | Standard | Comfortable |
| **Distance at 25 mph (40 km/h)** | 36 Feet (11 Meters) | 46 Feet (14 Meters) | 66 Feet (20 Meters) | 82 Feet (25 Meters) |
| **Distance at 50 mph (80 km/h)** | 72 Feet (22 Meters) | 95 Feet (29 Meters) | 131 Feet (40 Meters) | 167 Feet (51 Meters) |
| **Distance at 75 mph (120 km/h)** | 108 Feet (33 Meters) | 144 Feet (44 Meters) | 197 Feet (60 Meters) | 249 Feet (76 Meters) |

How your vehicle responds when accelerating and following other vehicles with ACC operating can be adapted to your personal wishes through different driving programs. Depending on which driving program and which distance you choose, your vehicle will respond more dynamically or more comfortably when accelerating and braking. The setting is selected through the MMI menu **Adaptive Cruise Control** ⇒ *page 165,* "MMI settings".

| **Settings** | **DISTANCE 1** | **DISTANCE 2** | **DISTANCE 3** | **DISTANCE 4** |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Symbol for time interval** |  |  |  |  |
| **Support for:** | Bumper-to-bumper traffic, brisk driving | Bumper-to-bumper traffic, "keeping pace" comfortably | Bumper-to-bumper traffic, "keeping pace" comfortably | Secondary roads, trailer operation |
| **Response in "dynamic" driving program** | 1 | 2 | 2 | 3 |
| **Response in "standard" driving program** | 2 | 3 | 3 | 4 |
| **Response in "comfort" driving program** | 3 | 4 | 4 | 5 |
| (dynamic) 1 ––––– 2 ––––– 3 ––––– 4 ––––– 5 (comfortable) | | | | |

**WARNING**

**Following other vehicles too closely increases the risk of a crash and serious personal injury.**

- **Following other vehicles too closely, particularly at higher speeds increases the risk of collisions and serious personal injury.**
- **Setting short distances to the traffic ahead reduces the time and distance available to bring your vehicle to a safe stop and makes it even more necessary to pay close attention to traffic.**
- **Always select a speed and distance to traffic ahead that is safe and appropriate under the prevailing traffic, road, weather and lighting conditions.**
- **Never rely on the distance control feature of ACC alone to prevent rear-end collisions. Always be prepared to brake and take evasive action to avoid collisions and other accident situations.**
- **Never allow the closing speed between you and other vehicles to be so high that the Adaptive Cruise Control may not be able to slow your vehicle safely. If closing speed is too high, you must apply the brakes yourself to reduce the risk of a rear-end crash.**
- **Always select a greater following distance to the vehicle ahead on wet roads than on dry roads.**
- **Always read and heed the information and WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ in "Description" on *page 152*.**

**Tips**

The distance setting is reset to the factory default **DISTANCE 3** the next time the ignition is turned on. ■

# Driver information

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Cruise Control

## Displays in the instrument cluster

*Depending on the driving situation, driver information is displayed in the instrument cluster.*




**Fig. 167 Overview instrument cluster**

Ⓐ Speedometer and indicator light display

Ⓑ Display in the instrument cluster

### Ⓐ Speedometer and indicator light display

Important information concerning vehicle operation with Adaptive Cruise Control is shown in display area Ⓐ. The desired speed you set is indicated in the speedometer (LED lights around the edge).

The indicator lights show whether the system has detected a vehicle traveling ahead.

### Ⓑ Display in the instrument cluster

In display area Ⓑ information from the navigation system* and the trip computer is displayed in addition to information about Adaptive Cruise Control.

You can select among the different information by repeated brief taps on the RESET button on the windshield wiper lever ⇒ *page 41*, "Operation".

Certain pieces of information in the bottom part of the display are not shown permanently. Information is displayed only if you set or change the speed setting, change the time interval, when messages are displayed or if the Adaptive Cruise Control is turned off for safety reasons. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Cruise Control

## Display in the speedometer




**Fig. 168 Display in the speedometer**

### Desired speed

The desired speed set by the driver is displayed by a red LED.

If the desired speed was set between two lines on the speedometer using the SET button, the two closest light emitting diodes will come on ⇒ fig. 168.

The system allows only speeds to be set between 20 to 95 mph (30 to 150 km/h) to be set. This speed range is faintly illuminated in the speedometer (LED lights).

### Indicator lights (symbols)

- **Open road:** The indicator light shows that ACC is active and that no moving vehicle has been detected with in range of the radar sensor up ahead in your lane of travel. The set speed is maintained.
- **Driving in traffic:** The indicator light shows that a vehicle moving in your lane of travel has been detected up front in your lane of travel. Your speed is adjusted according to the speed of the vehicle up front. ACC accelerates and brakes automatically within the system's capabilities.
- **Driver intervention prompt:** The red flashing warning light means **Request for driver to assume control**. You as the driver must slow the vehicle with the foot brake. The symbol tells you that the Adaptive Cruise Control is not able to slow the vehicle down enough to keep a enough distance to the vehicle in front of you. A warning tone will also sound when the symbol appears. For more information about the driver intervention prompt ⇒ *page 164*.

**WARNING**

**Improper use of the Adaptive Cruise Control features and inattention can lead to a crash and serious personal injury.**

- **Never allow the closing speed between you and other vehicles to be so high that the Adaptive Cruise Control may not be able to slow your vehicle safely. If closing speed is too high, you must apply the brakes yourself to reduce the risk of a rear-end crash.**
- **Always select a greater following distance to the vehicle up ahead on wet roads than on dry roads.**
- **Always read and heed the information and WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ in "Description" on *page 152*.**

**Tips**

- If you use the accelerator to go faster than the speed of the vehicle ahead of you, the driver intervention prompt will not be accompanied by a warning tone.
- If the speed you previously set is exceeded, the indicator light in the speedometer will switch off. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Cruise Control

## Display in the instrument cluster

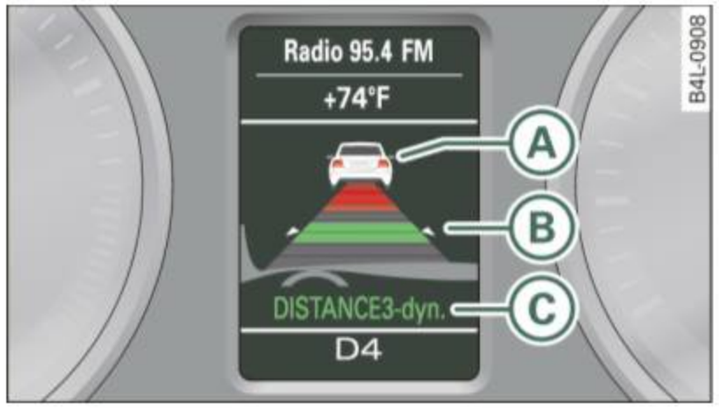



**Fig. 169 Display in the instrument cluster**

Scroll through the available information displays by briefly tapping the RESET button at the end of the windshield wiper lever. You can select information from the trip computer, navigation system* or Adaptive Cruise Control.

Ⓐ Vehicle symbol
Ⓑ Distance
Ⓒ Status

### Ⓐ Vehicle symbol

The vehicle symbol indicates whether the system has detected an object traveling in front.

- **Vehicle outline**: Open road, no vehicle ahead.
- **White vehicle**: A vehicle is detected ahead.
- **Red vehicle**: Request for driver to assume control.

### Ⓑ Distance

Using the arrows and scale, you can detect how far it is to the vehicle in front of you.

- **Open road:** No arrow appears when the vehicle is on an open road and there is no vehicle ahead.
- **Driving in traffic:** If a vehicle is detected ahead, the arrow moves on the scale. The green area represents the distance set. When approaching slowly, the arrow moves from the **gray** zone to the **green** zone on the scale.
- **Driver intervention prompt:** When approaching rapidly, the arrow serves as an early warning signal. If the distance selected is exceeded or possibly not reached, the arrow moves into the **red** zone on the scale. In certain driving situations, you as the driver will have to take action ⇒ *page 164,* "Driver intervention prompt".

### Ⓒ Status

- The text **ACC OFF** appears in white letters when Adaptive Cruise Control is turned off.
- The text **ACC AVAILABLE** appears in white letters when the system is turned on but no desired speed has been set.
- The text **OVERRIDE** appears in white letters when you exceed the desired speed by accelerating.
- The text **DISTANCE!** appears in red letters when the interval to a vehicle traveling ahead is too short and you have to slow your vehicle additionally with the foot brake.
- The text messages **DISTANCE 1** to **DISTANCE 4** appear in green letters to indicate the time interval you have set and Adaptive Cruise Control is in management mode.
- If the driving program "standard" is replaced by "comfort" or "dynamic" using the MMI, the above text message is supplemented by an appropriate prompt, e.g. **DISTANCE 1 - dyn.**. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Cruise Control

## System status indicator

*The text messages and symbols shown in this area of the display are not displayed permanently.*




**Fig. 170 System status indicator**

### Time intervals (such as ⌓____⌓)

The different symbols for the time intervals (distance) appear if you change the settings ⇒ fig. 170.

### ...

Three white dots ... appear if a setting cannot be made with the operating lever. The following are possible reasons

- If you pull the control lever towards you to resume speed but no requested speed was set.
- If you push the lever up to increase (or down to reduce) speed when no speed has been set previously.
- If you push the lever up to increase (or down to reduce) speed and this speed is outside the 20 to 95 mph (30 to 150 km/h) speed range.

### ACC not available

The text message **ACC not available** appears, for example, if the temperature of the brakes is excessive. Adaptive Cruise Control is temporarily not available. A warning tone sounds as a reminder.

### ACC not available!

The text message **ACC not available!** appears in the event of a malfunction. Adaptive Cruise Control is turned off. A warning tone sounds as a reminder. Have the system inspected by a qualified dealership.

### ACC sensor blocked !

The text message **ACC sensor blocked !** appears when the ACC System can no longer accurately detect vehicles moving up ahead in your lane of travel. Adaptive Cruise Control is turned off. A warning tone also sounds as a reminder.

To decide whether it is necessary to switch off the ACC (ACC sensor blocked !) or if it is only a temporary condition (ACC Functionally limited), the system will also takes into consideration the outside temperature and/or the windshield wiper operation.

The ACC sensor is dirty or blocked (e.g. leaves, snow).

The ACC sensor is located behind the area to the right of the front license plate. If the ACC sensor is dirty or blocked, clean the area to restore system operation.

### ESP activation

The text message **ESP activation** appears if the Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) has intervened. In this case the Adaptive Cruise Control is automatically turned off. This is accompanied by a warning tone.

### Speed

The set speed in mph (Canada km/h) always appears when saving or changing the speed in Adaptive Cruise Control ⇒ *page 156,* "How is the speed stored?" and ⇒ *page 156,* "Changing stored speed".

### ACC functionality limited

The message **ACC functionality limited** appears when the ACC System does not detect any moving vehicles up ahead in your lane of travel for a longer period of time. During this time, the distance to moving vehicles in your lane of travel up ahead is not being main- ▶

tained. The ACC system is not switched off, and increased attention to the traffic situation is absolutely necessary. The following may be reasons why the message **ACC functionality limited** appears:

- The ACC sensor is dirty. The ACC system is not reacting, or is not reacting correctly, to moving vehicles up ahead in your lane of travel.
- There may be very light traffic on and there is nothing that marks the side of the road (for example, guard rails, traffic signs, trees). As soon as a moving vehicle up ahead is detected again, ACC becomes active again and the message disappears.

The ACC sensor is located behind the area to the right of the front license plate. If the ACC sensor is dirty or blocked, clean the area to restore system operation.

### Parking brake !

The text message **Parking brake !** appears, when the parking brake is applied. ACC is turned off. A warning tone sounds as a reminder.

### Stationary object ahead

The text message **Stationary object ahead** appears, when you want to activate the system and there is a stationary vehicle or an object immediately in front of you.

### Gradient too steep

The text message **Gradient too steep** appears when the maximum gradient for proper ACC operation has been exceeded. Adaptive Cruise Control is turned off. A warning tone also sounds as a reminder.

### ACC off: manual control!

The text message **ACC off: manual control!** appears after the vehicle has been brought to a standstill by the Adaptive Cruise Control. In this case you must depress the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling. A warning tone sounds as a reminder.

### Selector lever position!

The text message **Selector lever position!** appears when the selector lever is moved to position **N**. In this position, Adaptive Cruise Control is not available. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Cruise Control

## Driver intervention prompt

*The driver intervention prompt calls on the driver to take over the situation.*

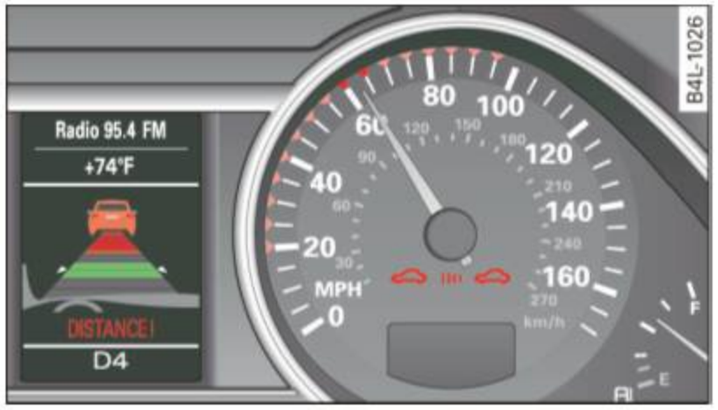



**Fig. 171 Instrument cluster: Driver intervention prompt**

In certain situations, the braking power of the Adaptive Cruise Control is not enough to maintain an adequate distance to the vehicle up ahead. In these situations, the Adaptive Cruise Control calls the driver to take action.

The **driver intervention prompt** alerts you visually and audibly to take over.

- A red vehicle is shown in the instrument cluster display ⇒ fig. 171.
- The text **DISTANCE!** appears in the status line.
- The indicator light in the speedometer blinks red.
- A warning tone sounds.

### Tips

- Adaptive Cruise Control is switched off after pressing the foot-brake. The speed saved up this point can be resumed.
- To resume the saved speed, release the brake pedal and press the control lever ⇒ *page 157,* "Turning Adaptive Cruise Control off temporarily".
- If you use the accelerator to go faster than the speed of the vehicle ahead of you, the **driver intervention prompt** will not be accompanied by a warning signal.
- If the speed you previously set is exceeded, the indicator light in the speedometer will switch off. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Cruise Control

## MMI settings

*Individual settings for Adaptive Cruise Control can be selected in the MMI.*

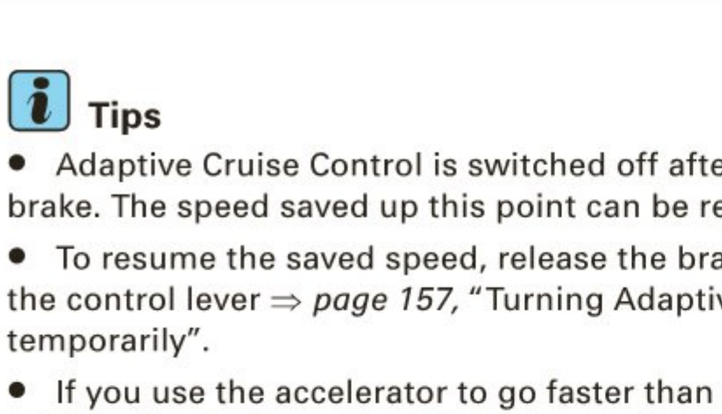



**Fig. 172 MMI Display: Adaptive Cruise Control**

Settings for the **driving program** can be adjusted individually to the particular user and saved in the MMI. This can only be done with the engine running.

– Press the CAR function button.
– Select **Systems*** in the CAR menu.
– Select **Adaptive Cruise Control**. The **Adaptive Cruise Control** menu appears.
– Select **driving program**.
– Select the desired **driving program**.

### Setting the driving program

In the **driving program** menu you can adjust the characteristics of Adaptive Cruise Control to your own preferences using **dynamic**, **standard** or **comfort**.

### Saving settings

Your individual settings are automatically saved and assigned to the remote control key being used (remote key storage). If the key is given to another person, the saved settings remain as they are. ■

## System limitations

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Cruise Control

## General information

*The radar sensor has limits that the driver must know to be able to use ACC properly.*

The Adaptive Cruise Control works within limits that are also related to radar sensor range and sight distance. In some situations ACC may react unusually or late from the driver's point of view. Therefore, always be attentive to what is happening around you and always be ready to intervene, if necessary:

- when driving around curves ⇒ *page 166*
- when vehicles up front are not in line with your vehicle ⇒ *page 166*
- when other vehicles are changing lanes ⇒ *page 167*

- when other vehicles are difficult to detect ⇒ *page 167*
- when vehicles up ahead are not moving or obstacles are in your travel lane ⇒ *page 167*

**⚠ WARNING**

**The radar sensor's function and range can be reduced by rain, snow and heavy spray. Moving vehicles up ahead may not be promptly detected or may not be detected at all.**

- **Always pay careful attention to the traffic situation and be ready to intervene and be ready to take complete control whenever necessary. ■**

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Cruise Control

## When driving around curves

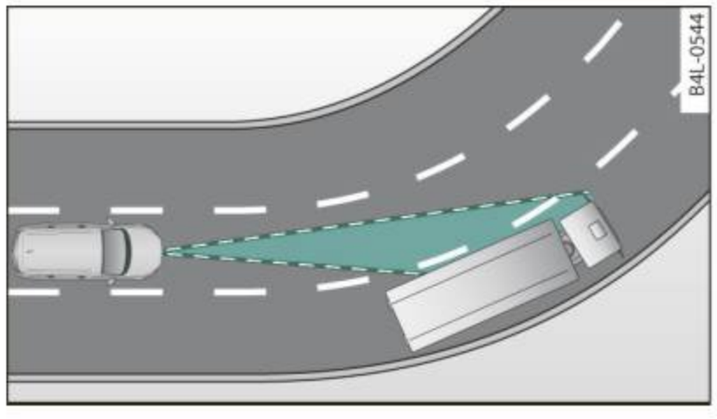



**Fig. 173 Vehicle entering a curve**

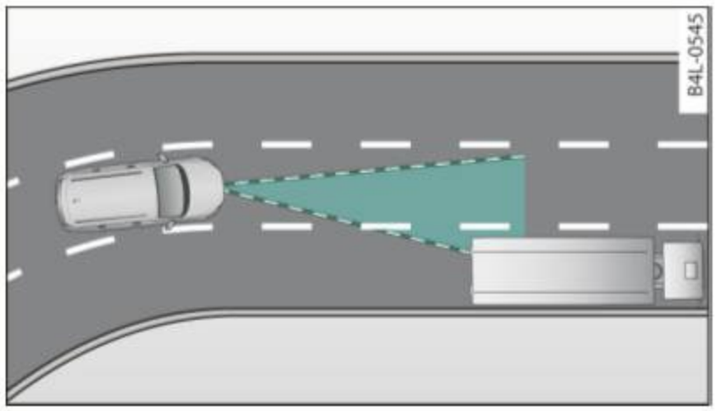



**Fig. 174 Vehicle leaving a curve**

### Entering a curve

When entering a curve, the Adaptive Cruise Control may react to a vehicle in the next lane and apply the brakes in your vehicle ⇒ fig. 173. The braking action can be overridden by depressing the accelerator pedal.

### Leaving a curve

At the end of very long curves, ACC's predictive lane reading can cause ACC to react to another vehicle in the next lane and apply the brakes on your vehicle ⇒ fig. 174. The braking action can be overridden by depressing the accelerator pedal. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Cruise Control

## Vehicles offset to one side

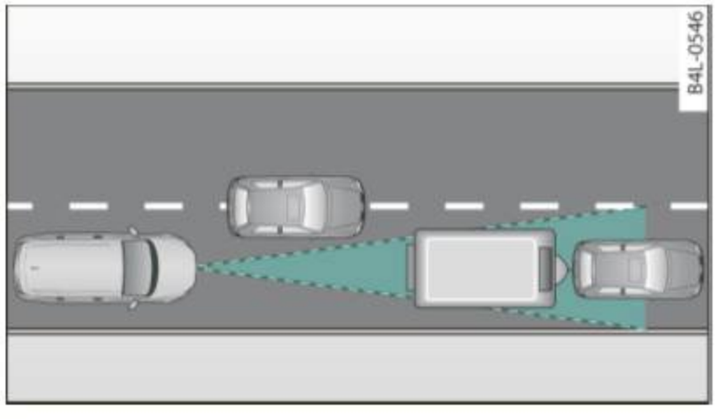



**Fig. 175 Vehicle traveling ahead outside the detection range of the radar sensor**

Vehicles moving up ahead but offset in the lane cannot be detected by ACC until they are in sensor range. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Cruise Control

## Lane changes by other vehicles

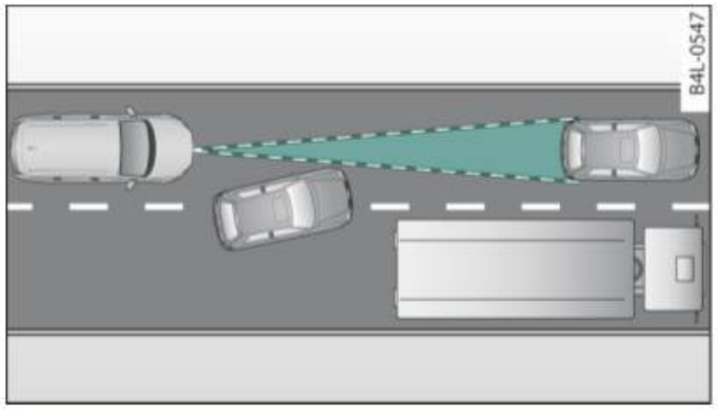



**Fig. 176 A vehicle changes lanes**

Vehicles that cut into your lane a short distance in front of you cannot be detected by ACC until they are in sensor range. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Cruise Control

## Vehicles that are difficult to detect

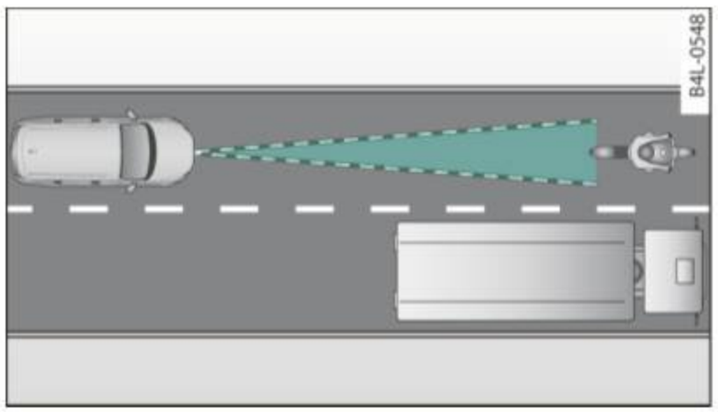



**Fig. 177 Two-wheeled vehicle driving ahead**

Some vehicles moving up ahead in your lane of travel are difficult to detect, for example two-wheeled vehicles, vehicles with high ground clearance, loads sticking out the back. Vehicles like this are often detected late or in some situations not at all. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Cruise Control

## Stationary vehicles

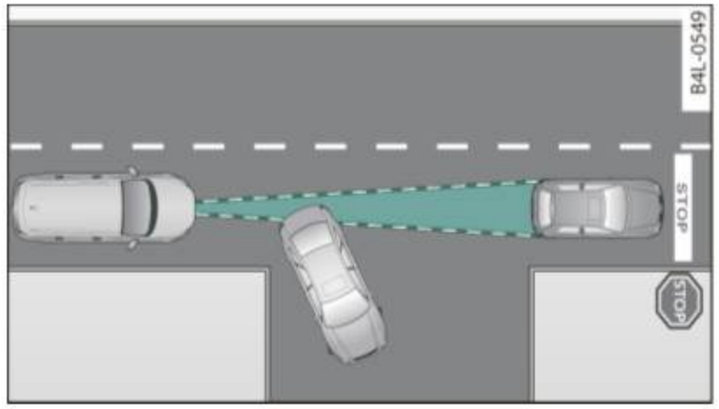



**Fig. 178 Turning and stationary vehicle**

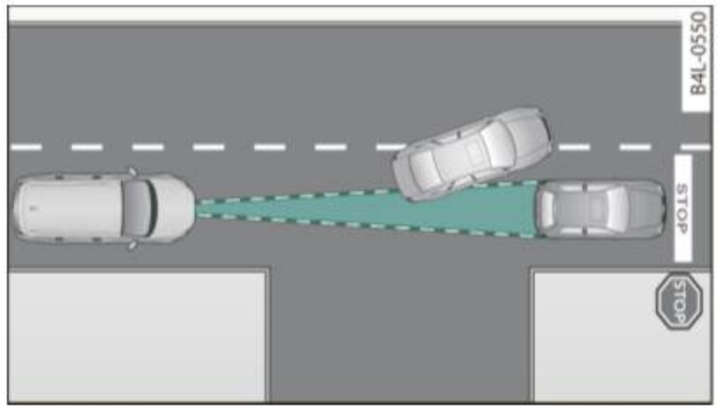



**Fig. 179 Sheering out and stationary vehicle**

If a vehicle that has been detected by ACC exits the highway or sheers out into the neighboring travel lane, and there is a stationary vehicle ahead of that vehicle, ACC will not detect or react to that stationary vehicle ⇒ fig. 178 and ⇒ fig. 179. ■

# Audi braking guard

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Cruise Control

## Description

*Audi braking guard warns you of a possible collision with a moving vehicle up ahead.*




**Fig. 180 Display in the instrument cluster**

The Audi braking guard is active from a speed of approx. 20 mph (30 km/h) and works within the system limits ⇒ *page 165* even when the Adaptive Cruise Control is deactivated.

A radar sensor is built into the front of the vehicle ⇒ *page 154,* fig. 160. The system is intended to measure the distance to reflective surfaces. If a measurement is not possible, the system does not respond.

When the measurement has been taken, the system can recognize a possibly hazardous situation, for example, when a vehicle up ahead in your lane of travel suddenly brakes or when your own vehicle is moving at high speed towards a much slower vehicle up ahead. As soon as the system senses that a possible collision with the vehicle up ahead can only be avoided by immediate full brake application or by an avoidance maneuver, a warning appears.

The system has a default response time to be able to signal before a collision occurs. This system response time is automatically reduced if you accelerate actively, for example to join a highway.

Braking, transverse acceleration and the steering angle can lead to a reduced system response time. The warning is deactivated if you begin to overtake with full acceleration.

The system can make you aware of two different hazardous situations:

### Distance

The distance warning is given if the system calculates that there is not enough distance to the vehicle up ahead a period of more than 5 seconds. If the distance is less than 30 feet (9 meters) at 50 mph (80 km/h), for example, an optical display comes on in the instrument cluster ⇒ fig. 180.

If the vehicle ahead brakes sharply, Audi braking guard cannot help you to avoid a collision, even in the case of an immediate response. Take immediate action to avoid the collision and increase the distance to the vehicle up ahead.

### Speed

If there is a much slower vehicle moving up ahead in your lane, or if the vehicle ahead brakes sharply, the Audi braking guard calculates the point from which a collision can only be avoided by full braking or by an avoidance maneuver. If a warning does sound, a possible collision with the vehicle in front can only be avoided through an evasive maneuver or by braking.

The warning is given in two stages:

- **Pre-warning:** A visual display appears in the instrument cluster and a warning tone sounds.
- **Acute warning:** If you do not respond to the pre-warning, the second stage warning is given. A quick brake application helps to direct your attention to the road and traffic situation.

Under heavy braking, the brake assistant ⇒ *page 154* also helps you benefit from maximum braking efficiency. ▶

**WARNING**

**Inattention can cause collisions, other accidents and serious personal injuries.**

- **Always pay close attention to the traffic, even when the Audi braking guard is switched on. The Audi braking guard provides a warning but does not brake the car for you. You must apply the brakes yourself!**
- **Always keep the safe and legal distance between your vehicle and vehicles up ahead.**
- **Audi braking guard works within limits and will not respond outside the system limits, for example when approaching a stopped vehicle or stationary obstacle (end of a traffic jam or vehicle that has broken down in traffic).**
- **Always remember that the radar sensor for the Audi braking guard works within defined detection and range limits that may prevent the proper detection of other vehicles.**
- **The radar sensor's function and range can be reduced by rain, snow and heavy spray. Moving vehicles up ahead may not be promptly detected or may not be detected at all.**
- **Always pay careful attention to the traffic situation and be ready to intervene and be ready to take complete control whenever necessary.**
- **Reflective surfaces including crash barriers or tunnel entrances may impair the function of the radar sensor.** ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Cruise Control

## Settings in the MMI

*The settings of the Audi braking guard are performed in the MMI.*




**Fig. 181 MMI-Display: Audi braking guard**

Settings regarding the system and the early warning can be adjusted to the respective user and saved in the MMI. This can only be done with the engine running.

### Switching the system on and off

– Press the CAR function button.

– Select **Systems*** in the CAR menu.

– Select **Audi braking guard**. The **Audi braking guard** menu appears ⇒ fig. 181.

– Select **System on** to switch the system on or **off** to switch the system off.

### Switching the early warning on and off

– Press the CAR function button.

– Select **Systems*** in the CAR menu. ▶

– Select **Audi braking guard**. The **Audi braking guard** menu appears.

– Select **Early warning on** to switch the acoustic and visual warning on or **off** to switch the system off.

**Tips**

When handing over the keys to another person, the previous settings are adopted if the Audi braking guard is activated ⇒ *page 53*. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Cruise Control

## Driver's information in the instrument cluster display

**braking guard brake jolt**

This message appears when the Audi braking guard applies the brakes during a second stage (acute) warning.

**braking guard off**

This message appears when the system has been deactivated via the MMI. This message also appears briefly at each beginning of a trip if the system is switched off.

This message also appears when the system is not available because of a malfunction or if ESP is switched to the Offroad mode⇒ *page 288*. The system can no longer warn of an impending collision. ■

# Audi lane assist

## Lane assist

Applies to vehicles: with lane assist

### Description

*Lane assist helps you keep your vehicle in your lane.*

Lane assist uses a camera to detect lane boundary lines. If the system detects that your vehicle is about to leave a lane boundary line, the steering wheel *vibrates* to alert the driver. If lane assist detects boundary lines on both sides of the vehicle's lane, the system enters active standby mode, which is indicated by the green indicator light /⁞\ on the instrument cluster.

If the system is in active standby mode and the turn signal is activated before driving over the boundary line, the warning does not occur since the system allows for intentional lane changes.

The system is designed for driving on freeways and expanded highways and thus works only at speeds of 40 mph (65 km/h) or more.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Lane assist will not keep your vehicle in your lane. The system only warns the driver when the vehicle is leaving the lane. The driver is always responsible for keeping the vehicle in the lane.**
- **The camera is not able to detect all lane boundary lines and in some cases might also detect lane structures or objects as boundary lines. This can lead to incorrect warnings or warnings that fail to go off at all.**
- **The camera's visibility can be impaired by vehicles ahead of you, for instance, or by rain, snow, heavy spray or light shining into the camera lens. This can cause lane assist to fail to detect boundary lines.** ■

Applies to vehicles: with lane assist

### Activating and deactivating

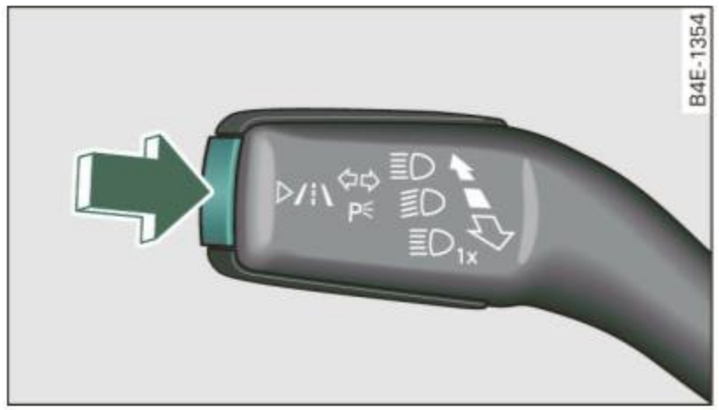



**Fig. 182 Turn signal lever: Lane assist button**

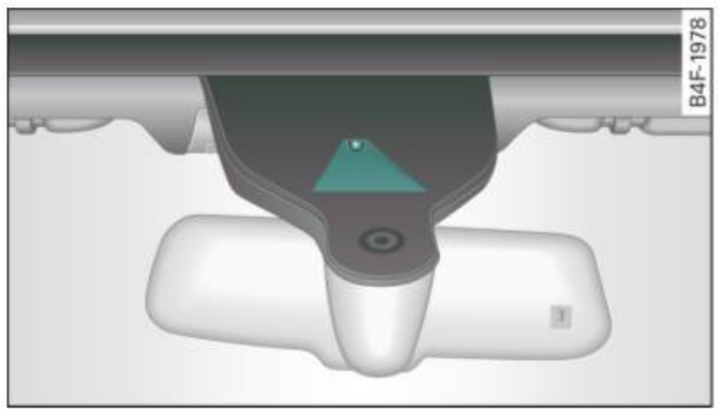



**Fig. 183 Windshield: Lane assist camera viewing window**

– Press the ⇒ fig. 182 button to activate or deactivate the system. The /⁞\ indicator light on the instrument cluster will illuminate or go out.

#### Instrument cluster indicator light

/⁞\ **Ready:** The green indicator light shows that the system is ready to use. A warning alerts the driver when the vehicle drives over detected lane boundary lines. ▶

⚠ **Not ready:** The yellow indicator light shows that the system is turned on but unable to send a warning. This can be due to the following:

- There are no boundary lines, or there is only one boundary line present.
- The boundary lines are not detected (e.g. due to snow, dirt, wet conditions or light shining into the camera lens).
- More than two boundary lines (such as at construction sites) are located in the vehicle's lane.
- The vehicle's speed is below the speed needed to activate it, which is about 40 mph (65 km/h).
- The lane is narrower than about 8 ft. (2.5 m), or wider than about 16 ft. (5 m).
- The curve is too sharp.

### Notes on the instrument cluster display

When the lane assist turns off automatically, the instrument cluster indicator goes out and one of the following messages appears on the display:

**Audi lane assist not available: Currently no sensor vision**

This message appears when the camera can no longer function because it cannot detect the boundary lines. This may be due to the following:

- The exterior side of the camera viewing window ⇒ *page 171,* fig. 183 is covered with dirt or ice. Clean this part of the windshield.
- The camera viewing window is fogged up on the inside. In this case, wait until the fog disappears before turning lane assist on again.
- The system was unable to detect boundary lines over an extended period of time due to road conditions (such as snow-covered lanes). Do not turn lane assist on again until the lines can be more easily detected.

**Audi lane assist not available**

A temporary malfunction is preventing lane assist from operating. Try turning on lane assist again at a later time.

**Audi lane assist: system fault**

The system should be checked by an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop.

### Tips

- Make sure that the camera viewing window ⇒ *page 171,* fig. 183 is not covered by stickers or similar objects.
- Always keep the camera viewing window clean. This can usually be done by operating the windshield wipers. ■

Applies to vehicles: with lane assist

## MMI settings

*You can use the MMI to adjust the warning time and steering wheel vibration.*




**Fig. 184 MMI Display: Setting the warning time and steering wheel vibration**

### Setting the warning time

– Press the CAR function button.
– Select **Systems*** in the CAR menu.
– Select **Audi lane assist**.

– Select **Warning early**, **adaptive** or **late** ⇒ *page 172*, fig. 184.

### Setting the steering wheel vibration

– Press the CAR function button.

– Select **Systems*** in the CAR menu.

– Select **Audi lane assist**.

– Select **Steering vibration weak**, **medium** or **strong**.

#### Setting the warning time

**Early**: This setting warns the driver before a wheel touches the detected lane boundary line. The warning depends on the vehicle's angle as it approaches the boundary line. If you approach a boundary line gradually, the warning will occur earlier. If you approach the boundary line at a very sharp angle, the warning will occur just before a wheel touches the line.

**Adaptive**: In this setting, the warning time adjusts to the characteristics of the road and the vehicle speed. The warning occurs later for curves and occurs earlier for straight stretches of road. The warning occurs later on narrow roads than on wide roads.

**Late**: This setting warns the driver when a wheel drives over the detected lane boundary line.

#### Setting the steering wheel vibration

When adjusting the steering wheel vibration, the steering wheel vibrates so that you can check the intensity you have set.

### Tips

- When making the adjustment, lane assist is not activated. The steering wheel vibrates briefly only to assist you in changing the setting.
- Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used. ■

# Audi side assist

## Lane Change Assistant

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

### Description

*The side assist helps you when changing lanes.*




**Fig. 185 Rear bumper: Position of radar sensors (not visible on outside)**

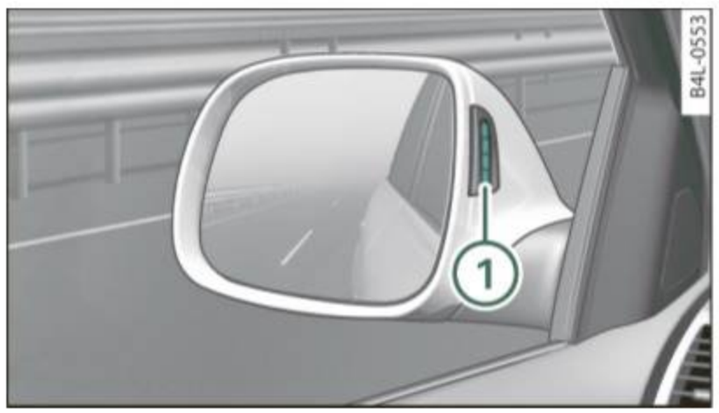



**Fig. 186 Signal light on the outside mirror - driver's side**

Side assist uses radar sensors (not visible on outside) ⇒ fig. 185 to help the driver check blind spots, and see what is happening in traffic behind the vehicle ⇒ *page 176,* fig. 188.

Signal lights are built into both outside mirrors ⇒ fig. 186. The signal light on the left outside mirror assists when moving over into the left lane and the signal light on the right outside mirror assists when moving over into the right lane.

The signal light comes on to tell you that side assist has detected a vehicle on that side and that the position of this other vehicle should be taken into account if you were to change lanes. This is called the **informational stage signal** ⇒ *page 176.* The informational stage signal is designed so that you notice it only when you are looking in the outside mirror.

When you activate the turn signal and side assist detects a vehicle in a notable location, the corresponding signal on the outside mirror flashes briefly and brightly several times. This is the **alert stage signal** ⇒ *page 176.* ■

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

### Activating and deactivating




**Fig. 187 Driver's door: Side assist button**

#### Activating

– Press the ⇒ fig. 187 button. The indicator on the button lights up. ▶

## Deactivating

– Press the button again. The indicator light on the button goes out.

The system works at speeds faster than 19 mph (30 km/h).

**WARNING**

- **Improper reliance on the side assist system can cause collisions and serious personal injury:**
  - **Never rely only on side assist when changing lanes.**
  - **Always check rear view mirrors to make sure that it is safe to change lanes.**
- **Side assist cannot detect all vehicles under all conditions- danger of accident!**
- **Side assist cannot detect vehicles in time to alert you when they approach from behind at very high speed, or fall drop back very quickly.**
- **The radar sensor's *vision* can be reduced or entirely blocked by rain, snow, and heavy spray. This can result in side assist not adequately detecting vehicles or, in some cases, not detecting them at all. Always keep an eye on the direction you are traveling and the relevant area around the vehicle.**
- **Please note that side assist indicates there are approaching vehicles, or vehicles in your blind spot, only after your vehicle has reached a driving speed of at least 19 mph (30 km/h).**
- **Side assist signal does not work around tight corners (turning radius less than 328 feet, or 100 m).**
- **Side assist is no replacement for the driver's full attention. The driver alone is responsible for lane changes and similar driving maneuvers. Always keep an eye on the direction you are traveling and the relevant area around the vehicle.**

**Note**

- To ensure that you do not adversely affect side assist, do not block the area on the rear bumper where the radar sensors are located with foreign objects (such as stickers or bicycle racks).
- Make sure that the signal light on the outside mirror is not blocked by stickers or other items.

**Tips**

- Side assist automatically deactivates if it detects that the radar sensors are blocked ⇒ *page 181*. The indicator light on the button goes out.
- The area on the bumper where the radar sensors are located must consistently remain free of snow, ice, and heavy soiling so that side assist can function properly. Follow the additional notes on ⇒ *page 182*.
- For vehicles with a factory installed towing hitch* or a trailer hitch* that was installed later according to factory specifications, side assist is automatically deactivated as soon as the electrical connection to the trailer electrical socket is made ⇒ *page 181*.
- For vehicles with a trailer hitch that was **not** installed according to factory specifications, switch off the side assist when towing a trailer.
- Additional tinting on the front side windows can make it harder to see and correctly understand the signal light on the outside mirror.
- For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇒ *page 404*. ■

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

## Sensor detection area

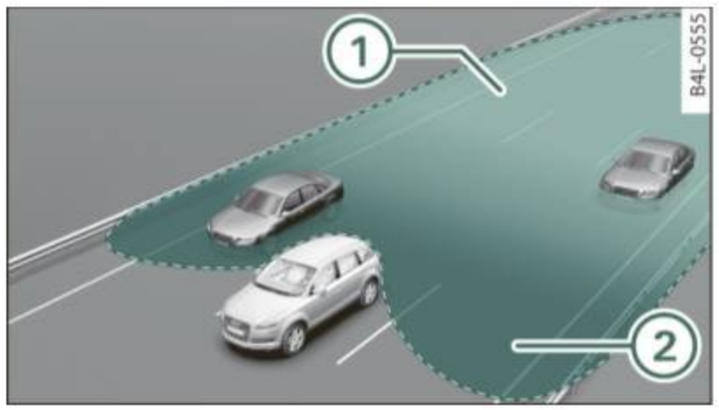



**Fig. 188 Schematic illustration: Sensor detection area**

The detection ⇒ fig. 188 of the radar sensor detection area is made up of:

- the approach area (light green area) (1), about 230 feet (70 m) behind the vehicle, and
- the "blind spot" (dark green area) (2).

The radar sensors cover the adjacent left and right lanes. Other lanes are *not* covered by the radar sensors.

### Tips

Side assist does not measure actual lane width. The system assumes a fixed lane width. Detection in the left and right lanes is based on this assumed lane width. When driving on narrow roads or when driving to the left or right of the center of a travel lane, it is possible that vehicles will be detected that are *not* in the lane next to the lane you are using ⇒ *page 181*. ■

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

## Operation

Side assist compares the distance and difference in speed of detected vehicles with the speed of your vehicle. Whenever the difference in speed and distance is registered as notable if you were to change lanes, a signal light appears on the respective mirror.

The signal can light up if you are passed by a vehicle or if you are passing another vehicle.

If you pass another vehicle slowly (difference in speed less than 9 mph, or 15 km/h), the signal light will come on as soon as the other vehicle is in your blind spot and is detected by side assist. When the difference in speed is greater, the signal light will not come on. ■

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

## Informational and alert stage signals

Side assist has two signal stages:

- the informational stage signal, and
- the alert stage signal.

Side assist helps you by using the appropriate signal stage, depending on whether or not you have activated the turn signal, and thus have indicated that you are or are not changing lanes.

### Informational stage signal

As long as you have not activated the turn signal, side assist informs you of detected vehicles that are registered as being in a notable location if you were to change lanes. Whenever the detected vehicle's difference in speed and distance is registered by side assist as notable, the signal light on the respective mirror produces muted illumination.

The brightness of the informational stage signal is designed not to be as intense, so that it does not interfere with your view of the road when you are driving and have no intention of changing lanes. ▶

When you look in the outside mirror, you can clearly see the informational stage signal.

### Alert stage signal

When you activate the turn signal, and side assist has detected a vehicle in a notable location on that particular side, the signal light on this side mirror flashes brightly. The repeated brief and bright flashing of the alert stage signal reminds you to carefully check traffic to the rear in the outside mirror and over your shoulder, so that you can safely complete the lane change ⇒ ⚠ in "Safety tips" on *page 182*.

### Tips

The brightness of the signal light on the outside mirrors can be adjusted with the MMI ⇒ *page 180*. ■

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

## Driving situation: Fast approaching vehicles

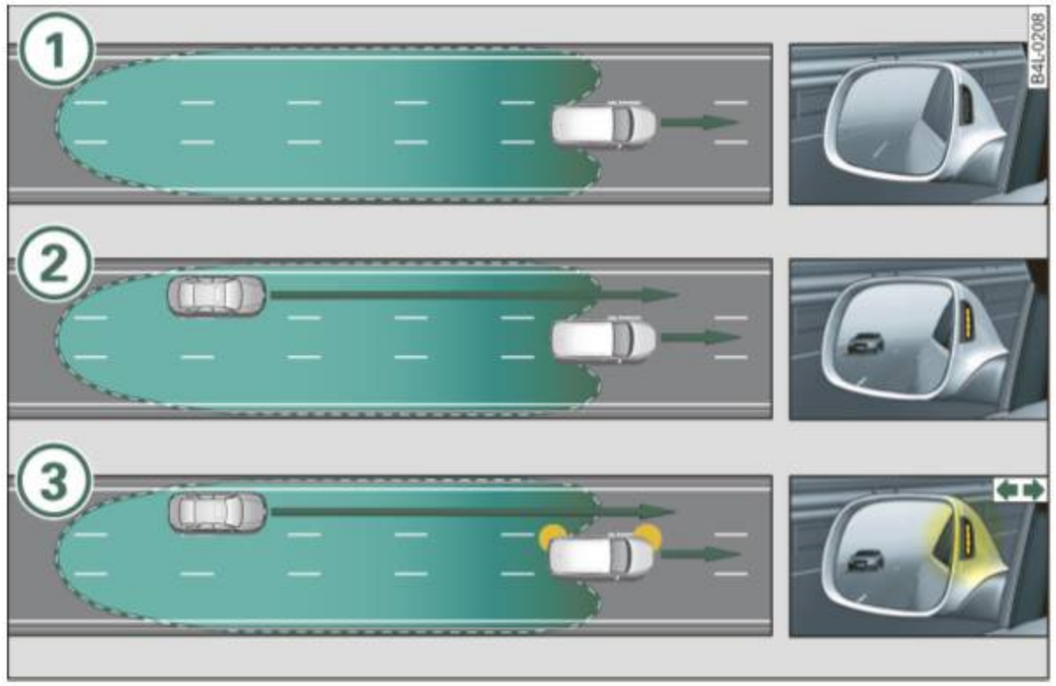



**Fig. 189 Side assist: Fast approaching vehicles**

### ① Signal on outside mirror does not light up

No vehicle was detected by the sensors. The signal on the outside mirror does not light up ⇒ ⚠ in "Safety tips" on *page 182*.

### ② Informational stage signal lights up

A fast approaching vehicle - in the left-hand lane for example - was detected by the sensors. Although this vehicle is still far away, it should be taken into account if you were to change lanes, due to the considerable difference in speed. The informational stage signal on the outside mirror lights up ⇒ *page 176*.

### ③ Alert stage signal flashes

If you activate your turn signal in driving situation ②, the signal briefly flashes repeatedly. Side assist is alerting you to a vehicle that you may not have noticed. ▶

### Tips

- The faster a vehicle approaches from the rear, the sooner the signal on the outside mirror lights up. Side assist will signal, at the latest, when a detected vehicle enters your “blind spot”.
- When vehicles approach very quickly, changing lanes can be dangerous even if the signal on the outside mirror does not light up. ■

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

## Driving situation: Slowly approaching vehicles

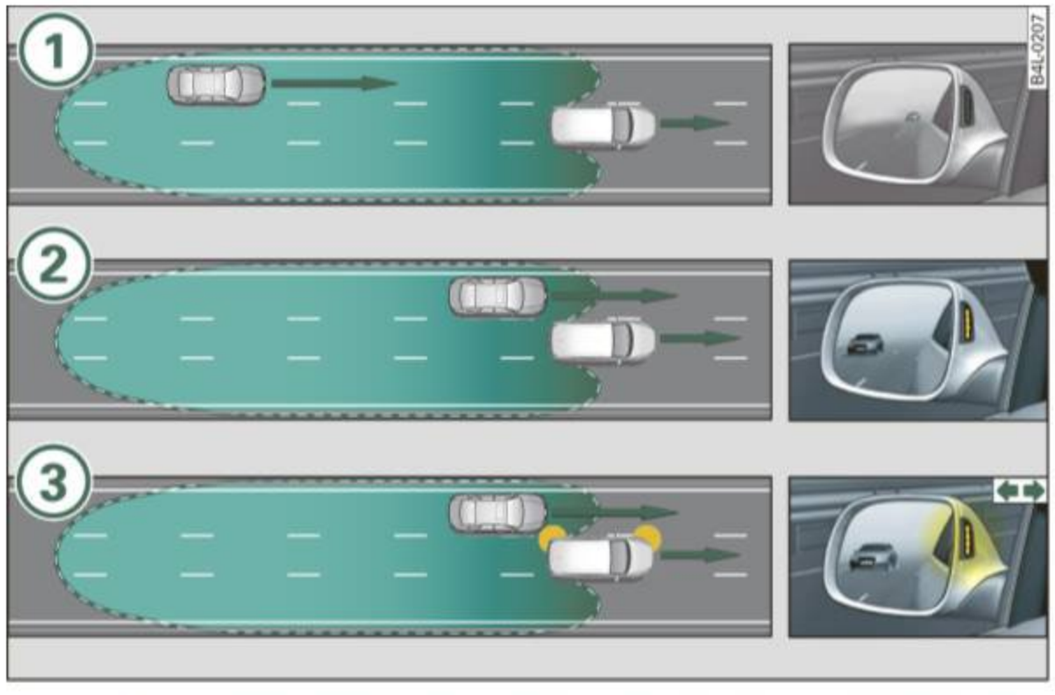



**Fig. 190 Side assist: Slowly approaching vehicles and vehicles in your blind spot**

### ① Signal on outside mirror does not light up

A vehicle approaching slowly - in the left-hand lane for example - was detected by the sensors. Because of the small difference in speed and the considerable distance from your vehicle, the signal on the outside mirror will not light up ⇒ ⚠ in “Safety tips” on *page 182*.

### ② Informational stage signal lights up

The distance between your vehicle and that of the slowly approaching vehicle has narrowed. The informational stage signal on the outside mirror lights up.

As soon as the difference in speed and distance is registered as notable if you were to change lanes, a signal on the mirror lights up. Side assist will signal at the latest when a detected vehicle enters your “blind spot”.

### ③ Alert stage signal flashes

If you activate your turn signal in driving situation ②, the signal light briefly flashes repeatedly. Side assist is alerting you of a vehicle that you may not have noticed.

### Tips

- The faster a vehicle approaches from the rear, the sooner the signal on the outside mirror lights up. Side assist will signal, at the latest, when a detected vehicle enters your “blind spot”.
- When vehicles approach very quickly, changing lanes can be dangerous even if the signal on the outside mirror does not light up. ■

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

## Driving situation: Vehicles dropping back slowly

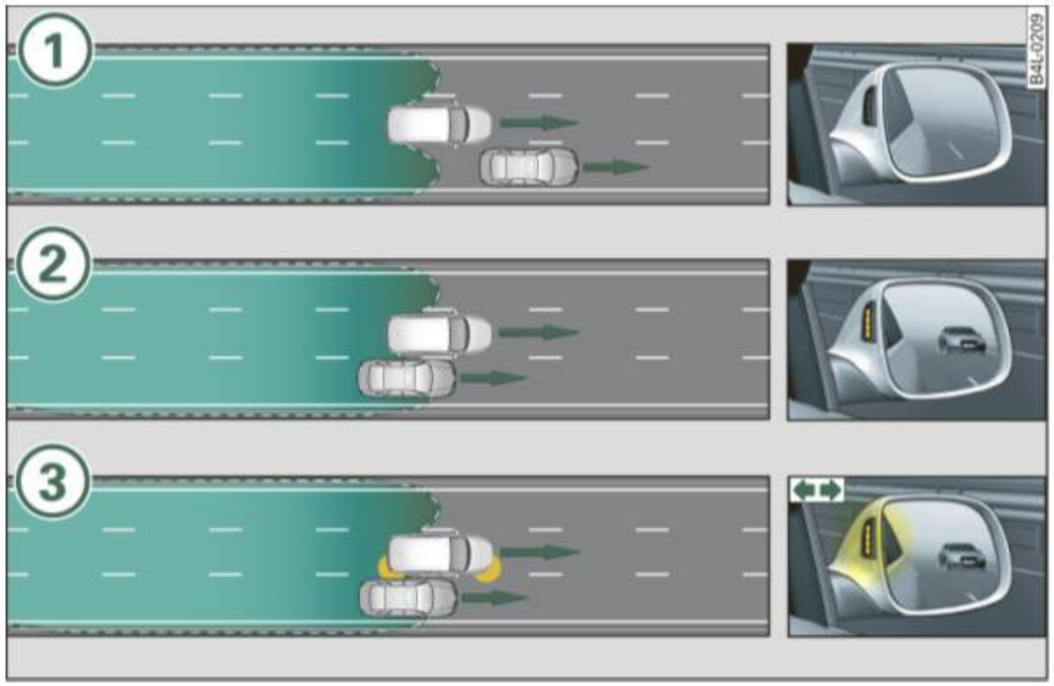



**Fig. 191 Side assist: Vehicles dropping back slowly**

### ① Signal on outside mirror does not light up

The vehicle that you passed has not yet been detected by side assist. The signal on the outside mirror does not light up ⇒ ⚠ in "Safety tips" on *page 182*.

### ② Informational stage signal lights up

A vehicle dropping back slowly on the right (difference in speed of less than 9 mph, or 15 km/h) has been detected by side assist. The informational stage signal on the outside mirror lights up.

### ③ Alert stage signal flashes

If you activate your turn signal in driving situation ②, the signal briefly flashes repeatedly. Side assist is alerting you of a vehicle that you may not have noticed. ■

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

## Driving situation: Vehicles dropping back quickly

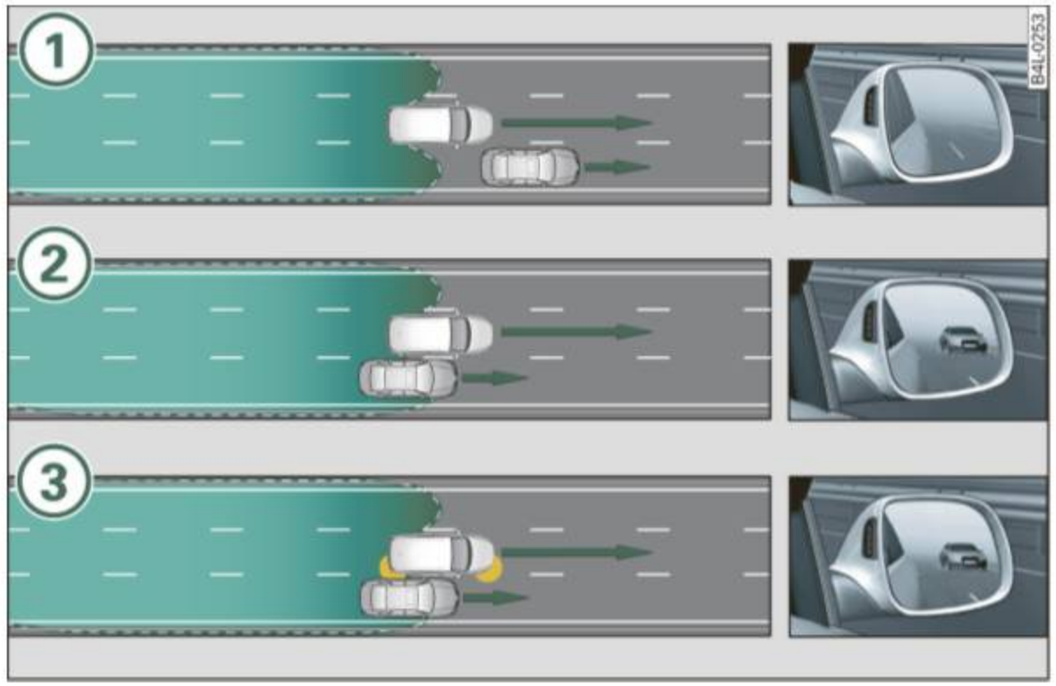



**Fig. 192 Side assist: Vehicles dropping back quickly**

### ① Signal on outside mirror does not light up

The vehicle just passed has not yet been detected by side assist. The signal on the outside mirror does not light up ⇒ ⚠ in "Safety tips" on *page 182*.

### ② Signal on outside mirror does not light up

The vehicle dropping back quickly on the right ( difference in speed of more than 9 mph, or 15 km/h) has been detected by side assist, but is not considered notable in the event of a lane change, because it is dropping back so quickly. The signal on the outside mirror does not light up ⇒ ⚠ in "Safety tips" on *page 182*. ▶

### ③ Signal on outside mirror does not light up

If you activate your turn signal in driving situation ②, the signal still does not light up on the outside mirror ⇒ ⚠ in "Safety tips" on *page 182*. ■

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

## MMI settings

*The basic brightness setting of the signal on the outside mirror can be adjusted via the MMI.*




**Fig. 193 MMI Display: Options menu**




**Fig. 194 MMI Display: Adjusting signal brightness**

– Press the CAR function button.
– Select **Systems*** in the CAR menu.
– Select **Audi side assist**.
– Select **Warning lamp: brightness**.
– Rotate the control knob to adjust the displayed brightness of the signal light on the outside mirrors ⇒ fig. 194.

The brightness of the signal light for both the informational and alert stages is automatically adjusted to ambient light conditions. In addition, you can adjust the *basic brightness* separately, via the brightness function ⇒ fig. 194.

While making the adjustment, the new brightness setting is displayed briefly. The brightness displayed is that of the informational stage signal. The alert stage signal brightness is linked to the informational stage signal brightness.

The informational stage signal brightness should be adjusted so that you notice the signal illumination when you look in the outside mirror, but not when you look forward through the windshield.

In very dark or light surroundings, the automatic brightness setting adjusts signal light brightness to maximum or minimum intensity, as needed. In circumstances such as these, you may not notice any change in the brightness on the outside mirror when adjusting the *basic brightness*.

You may not notice the change until lighting conditions are normal again.

### Tips

- Side assist is not active when the basic brightness is adjusted. The signal light comes on briefly to help you make the adjustment.
- Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used. ■

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

## General information

Side assist has limits and cannot detect vehicles under all road and weather conditions. Please remember system limitations and never rely on the system, especially when:

- driving through curves ⇒ *page 181*,
- lanes are of different widths ⇒ *page 181*. ■

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

## When driving through curves

Side assist cannot detect vehicles in curves with a turning radius of less than 328 feet (100 m).

When driving through a curve, it is possible that side assist may register a vehicle two lanes over, and the signal on the outside mirror will light up. ■

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

## Lane width

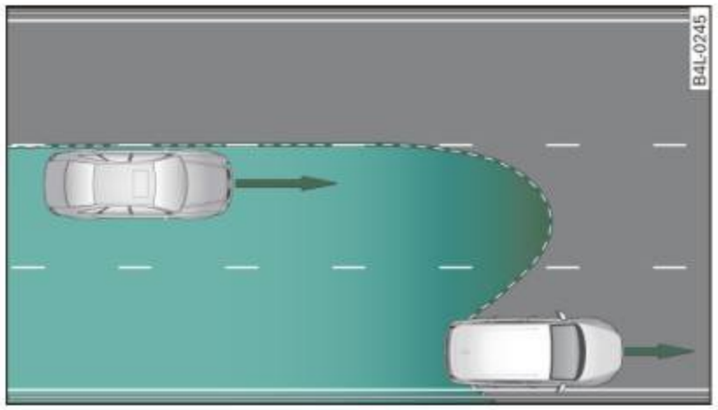



**Fig. 195 Lanes of a normal width are in detection area**

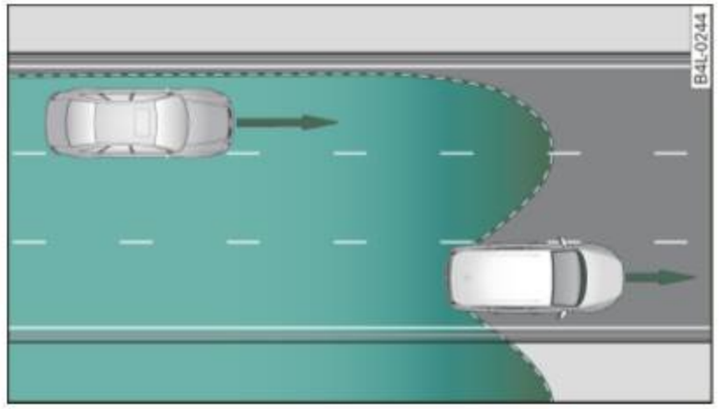



**Fig. 196 Narrow lanes: Side assist may detect vehicles two lanes away**

Side assist's detection area is designed to cover lanes of standard width to the left and right of your travel lane, depending on whether you drive in the center of your lane or closer to the edge.

If you drive in narrow lanes, side assist's detection area may also include other lanes - especially if you tend to drive on the edge of your lane ⇒ fig. 196. Under these conditions, vehicles can also be detected that are two lanes away, and side assist then could switch between the informational and warning stage signals.

When driving in very wide lanes, vehicles in the adjacent lane may not be detected because they are not inside the detection area. ■

# Notes

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

## Messages in instrument cluster display

If side assist turns off automatically, the indicator light on the button will go out and you will see a message in the instrument cluster display:

**Audi side assist not available: sensors possibly blocked**

The side assist sensors are built into the rear bumper on the left and right (not visible on the outside) ⇒ *page 174*, fig. 185. To ensure that you do not adversely affect the way side assist functions, foreign ▶

objects (such as stickers or bicycle racks) should not be attached to the area on the rear bumper where the sensors are located. If side assist functions are adversely affected, you will see this message in the instrument cluster display. Remove anything that may be blocking the sensors.

If no vehicle is detected for a longer period of time while driving, side assist will also switch off automatically.

**Audi side assist currently not available**

If there is a temporary problem (such as the vehicle's battery charge being low), side assist cannot be activated temporarily.

**Audi side assist: system fault**

Have the system checked by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

**Audi side assist not available when towing**

The radar sensor's view is limited when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a factory installed towing hitch or a trailer hitch that was installed later according to factory specifications, side assist is automatically deactivated as soon as the electrical connection to the trailer's electrical socket is made, and this status message appears in the instrument cluster display. Deactivation cannot be guaranteed when using a retrofitted towing hitch that was **not** installed according to factory specifications. ■

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

## Safety tips

The side assist detection may be limited when driving around narrow street corners, on hilly streets, and under poor weather conditions.

It is possible that the radar sensors may also detect other objects, such as high or staggered guardrails.

Side assist does not measure actual lane width. The system assumes a fixed lane width. Detection in the left and right lanes is based on this assumed lane width. When driving on narrow roads or when driving to the left or right of the center of a travel lane, it is possible that vehicles will be detected that are *not* in the lane next to the lane you are using.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Improper reliance on the side assist system can cause collisions and serious personal injury:**
  - **Never rely only on side assist when changing lanes.**
  - **Always check rear view mirrors to make sure that it is safe to change lanes.**
- **Side assist cannot detect all vehicles under all conditions-danger of accident!**
- **Side assist cannot detect vehicles in time to alert you when they approach from behind at very high speed, or fall drop back very quickly.**
- **The radar sensor's *vision* can be reduced or entirely blocked by rain, snow, and heavy spray. This can result in side assist not adequately detecting vehicles or, in some cases, not detecting them at all. Always keep an eye on the direction you are traveling and the relevant area around the vehicle.**
- **Please note that side assist indicates there are approaching vehicles, or vehicles in your blind spot, only after your vehicle has reached a driving speed of at least 19 mph (30 km/h).**
- **Side assist signal does not work around tight corners (turning radius less than 328 feet, or 100 m).**
- **Side assist is no replacement for the driver's full attention. The driver alone is responsible for lane changes and similar driving maneuvers. Always keep an eye on the direction you are traveling and the relevant area around the vehicle.**

### Note

To ensure that side assist is not adversely affected, you should not block the area on the rear bumper where the radar sensors are located with foreign objects (such as with stickers or bicycle racks).

### Tips

If the positions of the radar sensors have been changed as a result of a rear end-collision, for instance, have side assist checked by an authorized Audi dealer for safety reasons. ■

# Automatic transmission

## tiptronic® (6-speed automatic transmission)

### General information

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronically controlled automatic transmission. Upshifting and downshifting takes place *automatically*.

The transmission is also equipped with tiptronic®. It allows the driver to shift gears *manually* if desired ⇒ *page 188*. ■

### Driving the automatic transmission




**Fig. 197 Shift gate on the center console: selector lever with release button**

#### Starting the engine

– The selector lever must be in **N** or **P**.

#### Starting off

– Press and hold the brake pedal.

– Press and hold the release button in the selector lever handle and move the selector lever from **P** or **N** to **D** and release the button ⇒ ⚠.

– Wait briefly until the transmission has shifted (you will feel a slight movement).

– Remove your foot from the brake pedal and accelerate.

#### Rocking back and forth to become unstuck

– Shift only between **D** and **R** when the vehicle is at a full stop and the engine is running at idle speed.

#### Stopping

– Press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

– Keep the brake pedal depressed so that the vehicle cannot roll forward or backward while it is idling ⇒ ⚠.

– Once stopped, *do not* depress the accelerator pedal to rev up the engine ⇒ ⚠.

#### Parking

– Press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

– Set the parking brake firmly ⇒ *page 147*, “Parking”.

– Press and hold the release button in the selector lever handle, move the selector lever into **P** and then let go of the release button ⇒ ⚠.

▶

The selector lever must be in **N** or **P**. If one of the driving positions is engaged a safety switch will prevent the engine from being started. See also ⇒ *page 143*.

Before you move the selector lever from the **P** position, you must always apply the brake pedal before and while depressing the button in the handle of the selector lever.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Unintended vehicle movement can cause serious injury.**

  – **When the selector lever is in a driving position, the vehicle may creep, even at idle speed. Therefore do not release the parking brake or foot brake until you are ready to move, because power is transmitted to the wheels as soon as a driving position is engaged.**

  – **Do not accelerate while selecting a driving position. At this time the engine must be at idle speed so that undue stress is not placed on the clutches in the transmission.**

  – **Remember: - even when stopped briefly with the automatic transmission in "D", "S" or "R", engine power is being transmitted to the wheels. Your vehicle could "creep" forward or backward. When stopped, keep the brake pedal fully depressed and use the parking brake if necessary to keep the vehicle from rolling.**

- **If the selector lever is unintentionally moved into N while you are driving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal and wait for the engine to return to idle speed before selecting a driving position.**
- **Never shift into "R" or "P" when the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Never get out of the driver's seat when the engine is running.**
- **If you must get out of the vehicle, move the selector lever securely into the P position and apply the parking brake firmly.**
- **If the engine must remain running, never have any driving position engaged when checking under the hood. Make sure the selector lever has securely engaged and is locked in "P" with the parking brake firmly set ⇒ *page 324*, "Engine compartment". Otherwise, any increase in engine speed may set the vehicle in motion, even with the parking brake applied. ■**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

## Selector lever positions

*This section describes the selector lever positions and driving ranges.*




**Fig. 198 Display in the instrument cluster: selector lever in position D**

The instrument cluster display shows the current selector lever position and current gear.

### P - Park

In this selector lever position the transmission is mechanically locked. Engage **P** only when the vehicle is *completely stopped* ⇒ ⚠ in "Driving the automatic transmission" on *page 184*.

To shift in or out of position **P**, you must *first* press and hold the brake pedal *and then* press the release button in the selector lever handle while moving the selector lever to or from **P**. You can shift out of this position only with the ignition on.

### R - Reverse

The transmission will automatically select the **lowest gear ratio** when you shift into reverse. ▶

Select **R** only when the vehicle is at a *full stop* and the engine is running at idle speed ⇒ ⚠ in "Driving the automatic transmission" on *page 184*.

Before you move the selector lever to **R**, press *both* the button in the handle of the selector lever *and* the brake pedal at the same time.

When the ignition is on, the backup lights illuminate when the selector lever is moved into **R**.

### N - Neutral

The transmission is in neutral in this position. Shift to this position for standing with the brakes applied ⇒ *page 186*.

When the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 3 mph (5 km/h), you must always apply the footbrake before and while moving the lever out of **N**.

### D - Normal position for driving forward

Position **D** is for normal city and highway driving. It ranges from zero to top speed and all gears shift automatically, depending on engine load, driving speed and automatically selected shift programs.

When the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 3 mph (5 km/h), you must always apply the foot brake before and while moving the lever to **D** out of **N**.

In certain circumstances it may be advantageous to temporarily switch to the manual shift program to manually select gear ratios to match specific driving conditions ⇒ *page 188*.

### S – Sport position

Select this position for sportier performance. In this position, the transmission will not upshift as soon, allowing the vehicle to use the increased power available at higher engine speeds to achieve livelier acceleration.

When the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 3 mph (5 km/h), you must always apply the foot brake before and while moving the lever to **S** out of **N**.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ in "Driving the automatic transmission" on *page 184*.**

**Note**

Coasting downhill with the transmission in N and the engine not running will result in damage to the automatic transmission and possibly the catalytic converter. ■

## Automatic Shift Lock (ASL)

*The Automatic Shift Lock safeguards you against accidentally shifting into a forward or the reverse gear and causing the vehicle to move unintentionally.*




**Fig. 199 Shift gate: selector lever lock positions and interlock button highlighted**

The selector lever lock is released as follows:

– Turn the ignition on.

– Step on the brake pedal. *At the same time* press and hold the interlock button on the side of the gear selector knob ⇒ fig. 199 with your thumb until you have moved the selector lever to the desired position.

### Automatic selector lever lock

The selector lever is locked in the **P** and **N** positions when the ignition is turned on. To move the lever from these positions the driver must depress the brake pedal. As a reminder to the driver, the following warning appears in the instrument cluster display when the selector is in **P** and **N**:

**When stationary apply foot brake while selecting gear**

A time delay element prevents the selector lever from locking when it is moved through the **N** position (going from **R** to **D**). The locking element will lock the selector lever if the lever is left in N (Neutral) for more than approximately 1 second, without the brake pedal being pressed.

At speeds above about 3 mph (5 km/h) the Automatic Shift Lock is automatically deactivated in the **N** position.

### Interlock button

The lock button on the selector lever prevents the lever from being accidentally shifted into certain positions. Pressing this button deactivates the selector lever lock. Depending on the direction of the shift, the selector lever locks at different positions. The positions are highlighted in the illustration ⇒ *page 186,* fig. 199.

### Ignition key safety interlock

The key cannot be removed from the ignition unless the selector lever is in the **P** park position. When the ignition key is removed, the selector lever will be locked in the **P** position. ■

## Kick-down

*The kick-down feature allows the vehicle to generate maximum acceleration.*

When you press the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point that is reached at full throttle, the transmission will select a lower gear ratio based on vehicle speed and engine RPM. The engine RPM will be controlled to produce maximum vehicle acceleration as long as you continue to press the accelerator pedal beyond this resistance point.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Be careful when using the kick-down feature on slippery roads. Rapid acceleration may cause the vehicle to skid. ■**

## Dynamic shift program (DSP)

*The automatic transmission is electronically controlled.*

The transmission is self adapting and will **automatically** select the best shift program suited to the driving conditions and driving style.

The transmission will select one of the **economy** programs when you drive at a steady speed or a gradually changing speed without heavy acceleration. This achieves optimum fuel efficiency, with early upshifting and delayed downshifting.

The transmission will automatically select the **sporty** shift programs when you drive at higher speeds, or with heavy acceleration and frequently changing speeds. Upshifts are delayed to make full use of engine power. Downshifting takes place at higher engine speeds than in the economy programs.

The selection of the most suitable shift program is a continuous, automatic process. The driver can also make the transmission switch to a sporty program by **quickly** pressing down the gas pedal.

This causes the transmission to shift down to a lower gear to achieve rapid acceleration, e.g. for quickly passing another vehicle. You do not need to press the gas pedal into the kick-down range. After the transmission has upshifted, the original program is selected according to your driving style.

An additional shift program allows the automatic transmission to select the proper gear for uphill and downhill gradients.

This keeps the transmission from shifting up and down unnecessarily on hills. The transmission will shift down to a lower gear when ▶

the driver presses the brake pedal on a downhill gradient. This makes use of the braking effect of the engine without the need to shift down manually. ■

## Manual shift program

*Using the manual shift program you can manually select gears.*

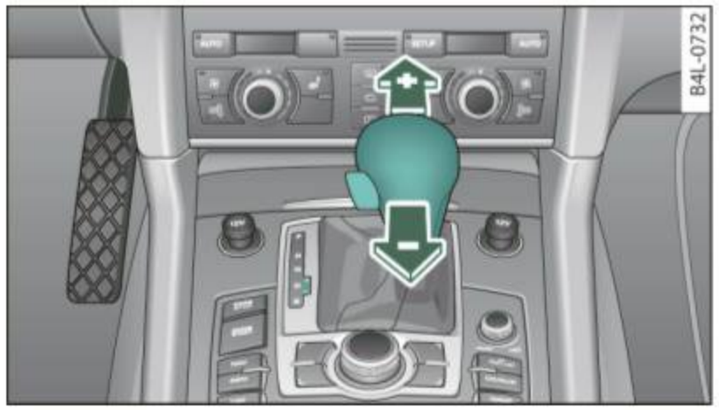



**Fig. 200 Center console: shifting the tiptronic® manually**




**Fig. 201 Display: manual shift program, selected gear**

### Switching to manual shift program

– Push the selector lever to the right from D. As soon as the transmission has switched over, the selected gear appears in the display ⇒ fig. 201.

### To upshift

– Push the selector lever forward to the plus position (+) ⇒ fig. 200.

### To downshift

– Push the lever to the minus position (-).

When accelerating, the transmission will automatically shift into gears 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5 before the engine reaches its maximum RPM.

If you apply a light throttle when accelerating, tiptronic® will automatically shift from 1st to 2nd gear to save fuel. If you apply a heavy throttle, the transmission will stay in 1st gear until near maximum RPM is reached, or until the driver shifts into 2nd gear.

If you take your foot off the accelerator pedal when driving down a steep incline, tiptronic® will downshift from the selected gear into the next lower gear until it reaches 1st gear, based on road speed and engine RPM. Automatic downshifting is interrupted as soon as you apply the throttle again.

### Tips

- When you shift into the next lower gear, the transmission will downshift only when there is no possibility of over-revving the engine.
- When the kickdown comes on, the transmission will shift down to a lower gear, depending on vehicle and engine speeds.
- tiptronic® is inoperative when the transmission is in the fail-safe mode. ■

Applies to vehicles: with tiptronic-steering wheel

## Steering wheel with tiptronic®

*The shift buttons on the steering wheel allow the driver to shift gears manually.*




**Fig. 202 Steering wheel: Shift buttons**

– To downshift, touch the button on the left (-).
– To upshift, touch the button on the right (+).

The shift buttons are activated when the selector lever is in D, S or in the manual shift program (tiptronic).

Of course, you can continue to use the manual shift program with the selector lever on the center console. ■

## Automatic transmission malfunction

In the event of a system malfunction, the automatic transmission switches to emergency operation mode.

**Gearbox malfunction: You can continue driving**

You can continue to drive the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop at the next opportunity.

**Gearbox malfunction: You can continue driving but functions are restricted**

There is a serious system malfunction:

- The program shifts only into certain gears.
- The engine may stall.
- It is not possible to restart the engine if it has been switched off.
- Continuing to drive could result in subsequent damage.

**Note**

If the transmission switches to fail-safe mode, you should take the vehicle to an authorized Audi dealership as soon as possible to have the condition corrected. ■

## Emergency release for selector lever

*If the vehicle's power supply fails, the selector lever can be released in an emergency.*

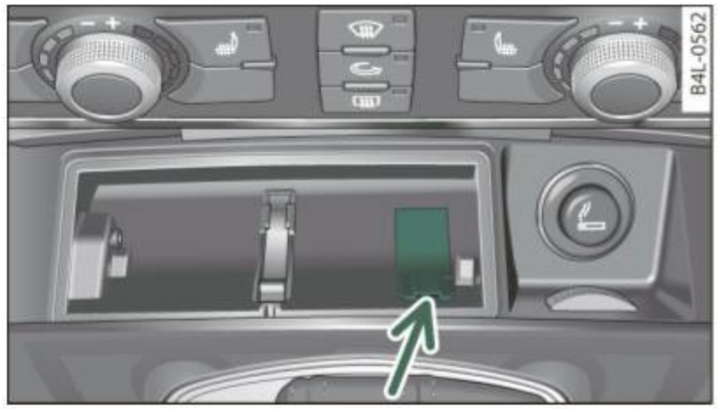



**Fig. 203 Remove the ashtray insert**




**Fig. 204 Emergency release for selector lever**

The emergency release is located under the insert for the ashtray.

– Slide open the cover for the ashtray.

– Remove the ashtray insert ⇒ *page 116*.

– Now you can see a small cover in the ashtray holder ⇒ *page 189*, fig. 203.

– Release and remove this cover from the ashtray holder.

– You now have access to a rocker switch. Using a screwdriver or similar object, press the rocker switch down and hold it down ⇒ fig. 204.

– Now press the interlock and move the selector lever to the **N** position.

The selector lever can only be moved from the **P** position if the ignition key is in the lock and the ignition is turned on. If the vehicle has to be pushed or towed if the power supply fails (e.g. battery is discharged), the selector lever must be moved to the **N** position using the emergency locking device.

### Tips

On vehicles **without an ashtray**, the rocker switch is located in the same position under the rubber cover. The rubber cover must be carefully lifted with a screwdriver or similar object in order to access the rocker switch. ■

# Advanced Parking System

## Advanced Parking System with rear view camera

Applies to vehicles: with Advanced Parking System with rear view camera

### General information




**Fig. 205 Trunk lid: Location of the rear-view camera**

In the case of *Advanced Parking System with rear view camera*, the visual display is installed in combination with the front and back acoustic parking assist and the rear-view camera.

The rear-view camera is located in the rear lid ⇒ fig. 205 and assists the driver when parking in reverse. The picture from the rear-view camera on the MMI display shows a mirror view of a section of the area behind the vehicle ⇒ *page 196,* fig. 211.

**Tips**

The visual image or rear-view camera picture is available as soon as the MMI display or the MMI is switched on or the start-up phase is completed. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Advanced Parking System with rear view camera

### Front and rear acoustic parking assist with visual display and rear-view camera

*The acoustic parking assist gives an acoustic and visual signal when obstacles are detected, and the rear-view camera provides further aid when parking.*

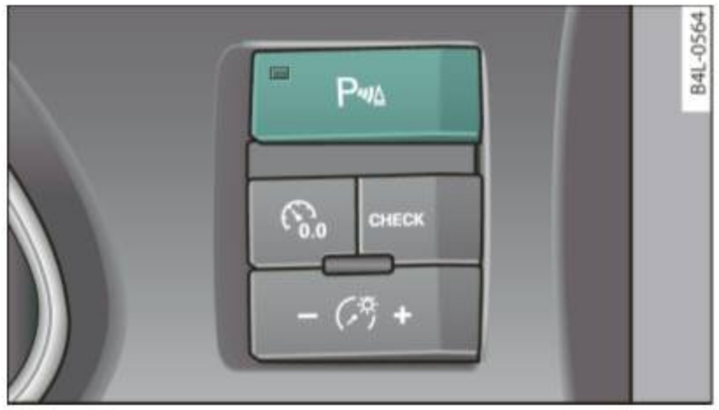



**Fig. 206 Section from center console: switch for acoustic parking assist**




**Fig. 207 MMI display: visual display of distance to a detected obstacle**

#### Activation

– When you engage reverse gear, the Audi parking system is activated automatically, or ▶

– Press the switch P in the center console ⇒ *page 191,* fig. 206 to activate the Audi parking system **manually**. Activation of the acoustic parking system is confirmed by a brief acknowledgement sound. The indicator light in the switch lights up.

### Deactivation

– If you drive forwards faster than approx. 6 mph (10 km/h), or

– if you switch the ignition off, the entire acoustic parking assist is automatically deactivated, or

– you can press the switch P in the center console ⇒ *page 191,* fig. 206 to deactivate the Audi parking system. The indicator light in the switch goes out.

You have to turn on the acoustic parking assist **manually** if you wish to park the vehicle forwards or if you wish to approach an obstacle forwards and want a distance warning.

The range at which the sensors start to measure is **about**:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Front | side | 3 ft (0.90 m) |
| | center | 4 ft (1.20 m) |
| Rear | side | 2 ft (0.60 m) |
| | center | 5.2 ft (1.60 m) |

### Warning tones

Distance warning is given by chimes which are generated by a signal generator. The volume and the pitch of the chimes can be adjusted in the MMI ⇒ *page 201*.

### Mute

In the case of vehicles with automatic transmission, an acoustic distance warning is discontinued when the transmission selector lever is moved to the P position. However, the system remains active. As soon as the selector lever is moved from the P position and the vehicle approaches an obstacle, the acoustic distance warning resumes.

### Driving forward/backward

Distance warning when driving forward/backward is based on detection of an obstacle in the range of the parking assist. As the distance decreases, the time interval between the audible tones becomes shorter.

When the distance is less than approx. 1 ft (0.30 m), the tone becomes continuous. At this point you should stop backing up or driving forward .

If the distance to an obstacle remains the same, the volume of the distance warning is gradually reduced after about 4 seconds (does not apply to the zone for the continuous tone). If you start to approach the detected obstacle again, the distance warning will sound at the normal volume again.

### Parking

When you select another gear when parking (e.g. reverse/forward), the warning tones are temporarily suppressed, but the visual display remains on the MMI display. If you start approaching a detected obstacle again, the distance warning will sound at the normal volume again.

### Visual display

The segments on the MMI display indicate a change in the distance between the vehicle and an obstacle. The number of segments displayed depends on the obstacles in front of or behind the vehicle. The closer the vehicle comes to the obstacle, the closer the segments approach the vehicle ⇒ *page 191,* fig. 207. When the segment before last is displayed, the vehicle has reached the collision zone. At this point you should stop backing up or driving forward ⇒ ⚠.

The image in the visual display can be switched off on the MMI display ⇒ *page 203*. The acoustic distance warning remains active.

If you press a function button on the MMI terminal, the visual display disappears. Manually switching the parking assist on again via the P switch shows the visual image on the MMI display again. Further information regarding the MMI terminal is included in the MMI user's manual.

### Rear-view camera (rear view)

The rear-view camera picture ⇒ *page 196,* fig. 212 appears on the MMI display as a mirror image. The rear-view camera picture has orientation lines and marked surfaces projected into it as an aid to the parking process ⇒ *page 194*. The red line in the picture ⇒ *page 194,* fig. 208 or ⇒ *page 194,* fig. 209 indicates the collision area. You should stop backing up, preferably before you reach this point ⇒ ⚠.

If your vehicle is close to an obstacle, the visual distance display also appears in the picture from the rear-view camera. This superimposed display is intended to help display the relevant critical vehicle area.

If the visual display is shown on the MMI display and you press the control button with the **Rear view** function ⇒ *page 191,* fig. 207, the picture from the rear-view camera is displayed.

If the picture from the rear-view camera is shown and you press the control button with the **Graphic** function ⇒ *page 196,* fig. 212, the visual display is shown.

The picture from the rear-view camera can be switched off on the MMI display ⇒ *page 203*. The acoustic distance warning remains active.

If you press a function button on the MMI terminal, the rear-view camera picture disappears. The rear-view camera picture reappears the next time you park. But the picture from the rear-view camera can also be shown again on the MMI display by manually switching off and on with the P switch. Further information regarding the MMI terminal is included in the MMI user's manual.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Sensors have dead spaces in which objects cannot be detected. Be especially careful to check for small children and animals before backing up. Small children and animals will not always be detected by the sensors.**
- **The Audi parking system is not a substitute for being careful and alert when backing up. Be especially careful during parking and similar maneuvers. Always watch where you are driving and make sure that nothing is in the way.**
- **Remember that low obstacles which have already been signaled may pass below the system's sensing zone when the vehicle is backing up. The fact that the signal stops does not mean that you have cleared the obstacle. When the signal stops, impact is imminent. Objects such as trailer hitches, chains, narrow posts or fences covered by a thin layer of paint may not always be detected by the system. They can still damage your vehicle without warning.**
- **Always make sure that the volume and frequency of the chimes is adjusted so that you can easily hear the acoustic distance signal even if the radio is playing, the air-conditioner blower is on High or there is a high level of outside noise.**
  - **Check the settings whenever someone else has driven the vehicle before you.**
- **Improper reliance on the Audi parking system can cause collisions and serious personal injury.**
  - **Never rely only on parking assist when backing up.**
  - **Always check rear view mirrors to make sure it is safe to back up.**

**Tips**

- The rear-view camera picture is available as soon as the MMI Display or the MMI is switched on, or the start-up phase is completed.

• Keep the sensors in the rear bumper and the rear-view camera lens clean and free of snow and ice, so that the Audi parking system can work properly. Please follow the additional notes on ⇒ *page 204*. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Advanced Parking System with rear view camera

## Rear-view camera (Rear View)

*The rear-view camera picture, appearing in the MMI Display, shows the area behind the vehicle.*

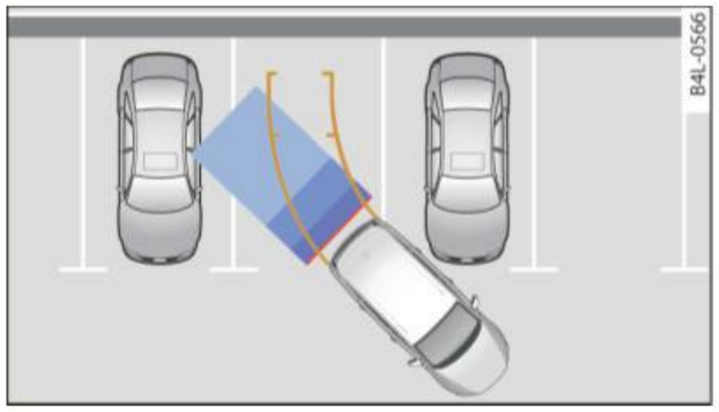



**Fig. 208 Top view: Parking mode 1**

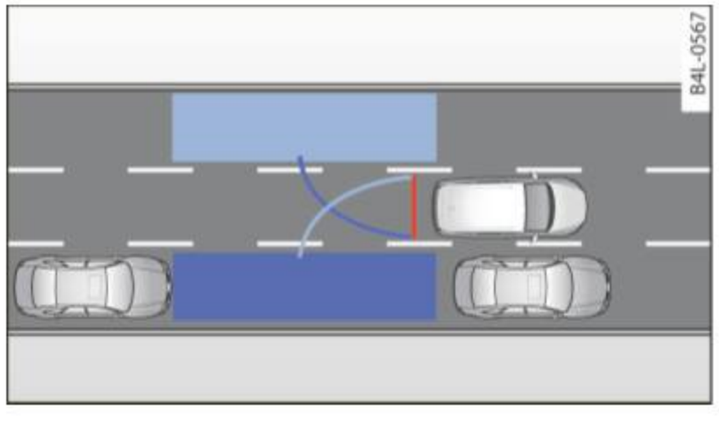



**Fig. 209 Top view: Parking mode 2**

### Parking mode

Two different parking modes are available for parking with the rear-view camera. The two different parking modes are denotes as "*parking mode 1*" ⇒ *page 196* and "*parking mode 2*" ⇒ *page 198*.

"Parking mode 1" ⇒ fig. 208, for example, can be used to park in a parking space or a parking garage ⇒ *page 196*.

"Parking mode 2" ⇒ fig. 209, for example, can be used to (parallel) park on the side of the road ⇒ *page 198*.

"Parking mode 1" appears by default in the MMI Display if the rear-view camera is activated ⇒ *page 191*. You can switch to "parking mode 2" by pressing the control button with the **mode** Ⓐ ⇒ *page 196*, fig. 213 function. By repeatedly pressing the control button with the **mode** function, you can switch back and forth between "parking mode 1" and "parking mode 2".

### Orientation lines and marked surfaces

Orientation lines and colored marked surfaces (⇒ *page 196*, fig. 212 or ⇒ *page 198*, fig. 214) are projected into the rear-view camera pictures, subject to the two different parking modes. These orientation lines and surfaces offer aid when parking or maneuvering. The orientation lines and surfaces refer to the height of a level driving surface.

When the indicated orientation lines and indicated blue surfaces superimpose vehicles or objects, at the latest, the respective distance to the vehicles or objects has become too short ⇒ *page 200*.

If the trunk lid is open, or if an electrical connection to the factory installed trailer socket*, or one installed according to factory specifications, is established ⇒ *page 201*, the orientation lines and marked surfaces are *not* displayed.

In the MMI you can preset which system is to be shown on the MMI display ⇒ *page 203*:

- Visual display,
- Rear-view camera picture,
- An automatic switch between visual display and rear-view camera, or
- No picture.

The rear-view camera can be turned on and off in the MMI ⇒ *page 203*. The acoustic distance warning remains active.

**WARNING**

- **The rear-view camera has blind spots, in which objects cannot be detected. Be especially careful to check for small children and animals before backing up. Small children and animals will not always be detected by the sensors.**
- **The Audi parking system is not a substitute for being careful and alert when backing up. Be especially careful during parking and similar maneuvers. Always watch where you are driving and make sure that nothing is in the way.**
- **Remember that low obstacles which have already been signaled may pass below the system's sensing zone when the vehicle is backing up. The fact that the signal stops does not mean that you have cleared the obstacle. When the signal stops, impact is imminent. Objects such as trailer hitches, chains, narrow posts or fences covered by a thin layer of paint may not always be detected by the system. They can still damage your vehicle without warning.**
- **Always make sure that the volume and frequency of the chimes is adjusted so that you can easily hear the acoustic distance signal even if the radio is playing, the air-conditioner blower is on High or there is a high level of outside noise.**
  - **Check the settings whenever someone else has driven the vehicle before you.**
- **Improper reliance on the Audi parking system can cause collisions and serious personal injury.**
  - **Never rely only on parking assist when changing backing up.**
  - **Always check rear view mirrors to make sure it is safe to back up.**

**Tips**

- Before parking with the rear-view camera, the Adaptive Air Suspension* comfort or automatic mode must be switched on ⇒ *page 21*.
- The rear-view camera picture is available as soon as the MMI Display or the MMI is switched on, or the start-up phase is completed.
- In order for the rear-view camera to function properly, the camera lens ⇒ *page 191*, fig. 205 must be kept clean, and free of snow and ice. Please follow the additional notes on ⇒ *page 204*.
- The camera coverage angle changes when the trunk lid is open. Therefore, the rear-view camera picture is displayed without orientation lines and without blue surfaces.
- Observe and follow the notes on towing mode* on ⇒ *page 201*. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Advanced Parking System with rear view camera

## Rear-view camera coverage area

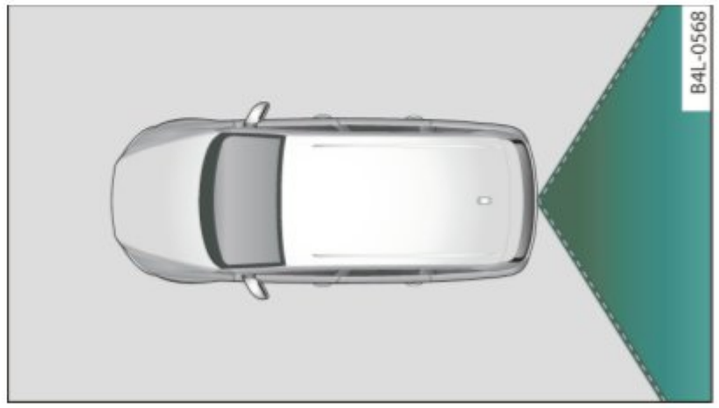



**Fig. 210 Top view: Rear-view camera coverage area**

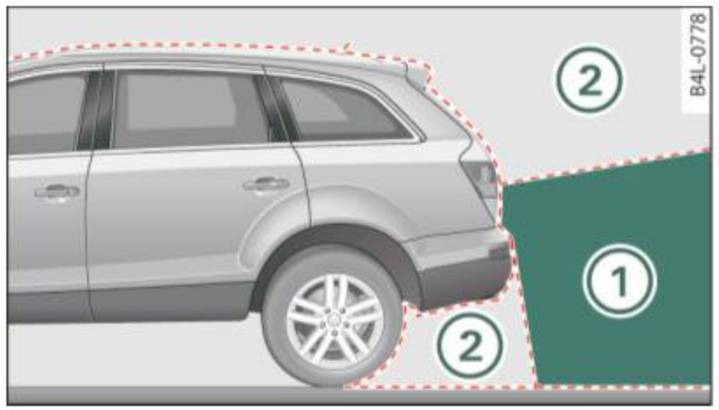



**Fig. 211 Side view: Covered area (1) and uncovered area (2) of the rear-view camera**

The rear-view camera section appearing in the MMI Display is approximately the same as the coverage area represented in ⇒ *page 195,* fig. 210 or (1) in ⇒ fig. 211. Objects located in the rear-view camera's uncovered area (2) ⇒ fig. 211 or in the close vicinity of the bumper are not recognized.

**WARNING**

**Please note that objects not touching the ground can appear to be further away than they really are (for example, the bumper of a parked vehicle, a trailer hitch, or the rear of a truck). In this case, you should not use the guide help lines to measure distance - danger of accident! ■**

Applies to vehicles: with Advanced Parking System with rear view camera

## Parking mode 1

*"Parking mode 1" can aid when parking in a garage or parking space, for example.*

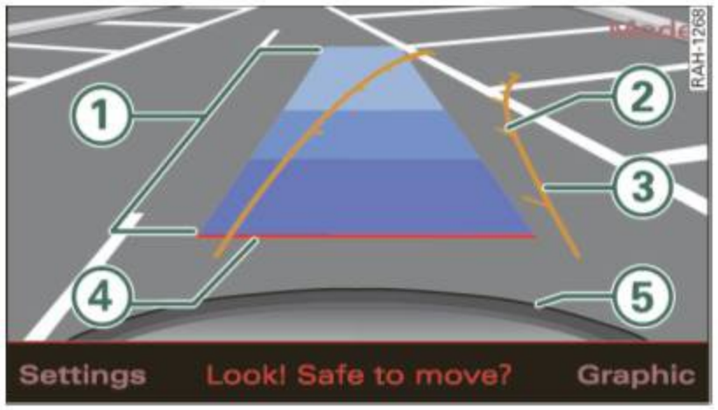



**Fig. 212 MMI Display: Aiming at the parking spot by adjusting the steering wheel angle**

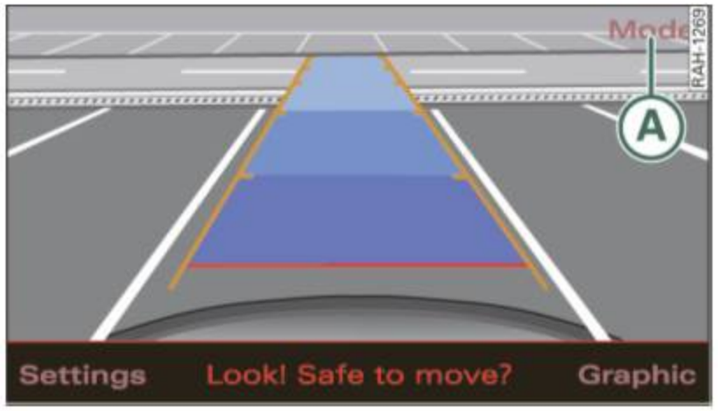



**Fig. 213 MMI Display: Orienting the vehicle with aid of the blue surface**

– Before parking, switch on the Adaptive Air Suspension* ⇒ *page 21* comfort or automatic mode.

– Activate the Audi parking system ⇒ *page 191*. "Parking mode 1" ⇒ fig. 212 is displayed by default. Dynamic orange orientation lines (3) and a blue static surface (1) are projected into the rear-view camera picture. ▶

– With the vehicle stationary, select the proper steering wheel angle for the parking spot with the aid of the orange orientation lines.

– While driving in reverse gear, adjust the steering wheel angle to fit the parking space with the aid of the orange orientation lines ⇒ (!).

– Align your vehicle corresponding to the blue surface. The blue surface should be parallel to the parking spot lines ⇒ *page 196,* fig. 213.

### (1) Blue surface

The surface behind the vehicle, identified by various shades of blue, represents an extension of the outer vehicle outline by approximately 16 ft (5 m) to the rear. The transitions of the blue surfaces are distanced approximately 3 ft (1 m), 6 ft (2 m), and 16 ft (5 m) away from the vehicle.

### (2) and (3) Orange orientation lines

The orientation lines change direction with the steering wheel angle. These lines identify the direction of travel the rear of the vehicle would be taking, driving in reverse gear with the current steering wheel angle.

The dynamic orientation lines are provided with markers (2). These markers are each placed at a distance of approx. 3 ft (1 m) from one another. Through these markers, the distance to an obstacle can be estimated.

### (4) Red line

The distance between your rear bumper (5) and the red line is approximately 16 inches (40 cm) ⇒ ⚠. Here, at the latest, you should stop backing up ⇒ *page 200*.

### (5) Rear bumper

The rear bumper of your vehicle also appears in the MMI Display, for better orientation.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Please note that objects not touching the ground can appear to be further away than they really are (for example, the bumper of a parked vehicle, a trailer hitch, or the rear of a truck). In this case, you should not use the guide help lines to measure distance - danger of accident!**

### (!) Note

In the MMI Display, the direction of travel of the vehicle rear is shown depending on the steering wheel angle. The vehicle front swings out more than the vehicle rear.

### Tips

- In order for the rear-view camera to function properly, the camera lens ⇒ *page 191,* fig. 205 must be kept clean, and free of snow and ice. Please follow the additional notes on ⇒ *page 204*.
- The positions of the orientation lines / surfaces are displaced up or down if the parking process is carried out with the rear-view camera in Adaptive Air Suspension* ⇒ *page 21* dynamic, offroad, or lift mode. Therefore, the accuracy is reduced. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Advanced Parking System with rear view camera

## Parking mode 2

*"Parking mode 2" can be used as aid when (parallel) parking on the side of the road, for example.*

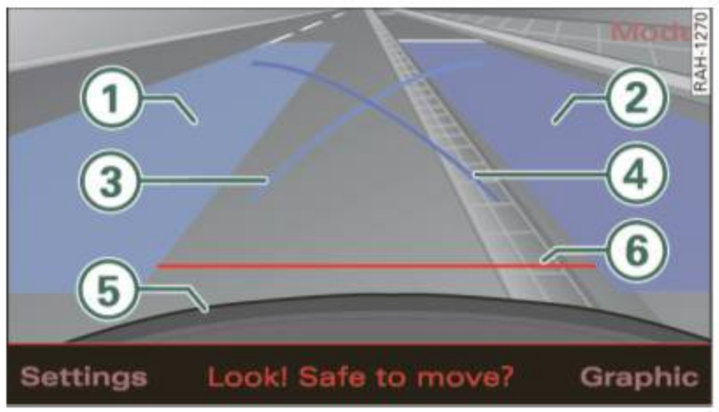



**Fig. 214 MMI Display: Blue surface aligned with targeted parking spot**

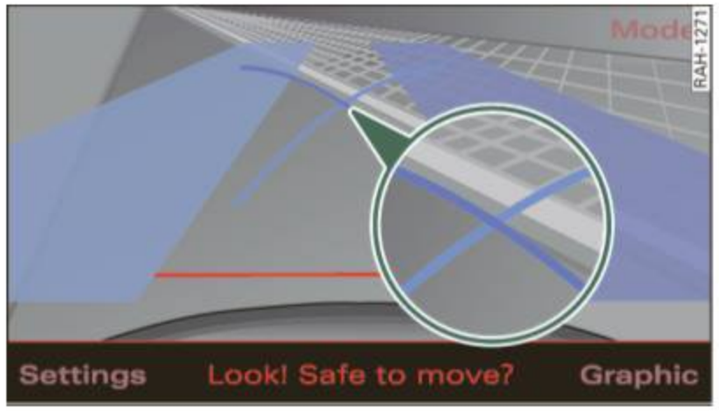



**Fig. 215 MMI Display: Contact of the blue curved line with the curb**

– Find a parking spot on the right side of the road, for example.

– Switch on the Adaptive Air Suspension* ⇒ *page 21* comfort or automatic mode.

– Position your vehicle parallel to the edge of the road, approximately 3 ft (1 m) away from a parked vehicle ⇒ *page 194,* fig. 209. When parking next to obstacles, please note ⇒ *page 199*.

– Activate the Audi parking system ⇒ *page 191*. "Parking mode 1" is displayed by default.

– Press the control button with the **mode** (A) ⇒ *page 196,* fig. 213 function. "Parking mode 2" ⇒ fig. 214 appears in the MMI Display.

– Back up in reverse gear and adjust the position of your vehicle in such a way, that the dark blue surface indicated in the MMI Display (2) ⇒ fig. 214 borders on the vehicle behind, or the parking spot line. If you are *not* parking next to any obstacles ⇒ *page 199*, the long side of the dark blue surface should border on the curb. The entire dark blue surface has to fit into the parking spot ⇒ *page 194,* fig. 209.

– While the vehicle is stationary, turn your steering wheel to the right as far as it will go.

– Back up into the parking spot. If you are *not* parking next to any obstacles ⇒ *page 199*, the dark blue bend (4) should touch the curb ⇒ fig. 215. Stop your vehicle.

– While the vehicle is stationary, turn your steering wheel in the opposite direction (left) as far as it will go.

– Continue to back up into the parking spot until the vehicle is parked parallel to the curb. When backing up, also keep an eye on the vehicle front ⇒ (!).

With "parking mode 2", you can park on the left and right side of the road. For this reason, the blue surfaces and curved lines are displayed in different shades of blue. The dark blue surface (2) and the dark blue curved line (4) can be used to park on the right side of the road. The light blue surface (1) and the light blue curved line (3) can be used to park on the left side of the road.

When the turn signal is switched on, only the necessary surfaces and curves are shown. To change the side that is shown, simply change the turn signal.

The displayed light blue (3) or dark blue (4) curved line identifies the turn-around point when maneuvering to park. If the curved line touches the curb, the steering wheel turn-around point has been reached ⇒ *page 198,* fig. 215.

The distance from the rear bumper (5) to the red line (6) is approximately 1.3 ft (40 cm). Here, at the latest, you should stop backing up ⇒ *page 200.*

**WARNING**

**Please note that objects not touching the ground can appear to be further away than they really are (for example, the bumper of a parked vehicle, a trailer hitch, or the rear of a truck). In this case, you should not use the guide help lines to measure distance - danger of accident!**

**Note**

In the MMI Display, the direction of travel of the vehicle rear is represented depending on the steering wheel angle. The vehicle front swings out more than the vehicle rear.

**Tips**

- In order for the rear-view camera to function properly, the camera lens ⇒ *page 191,* fig. 205 must be kept clean, and free of snow and ice. Please follow the additional notes on ⇒ *page 204.*
- The positions of the orientation lines / surfaces are displaced up or down if the parking process is carried out with the rear-view camera in Adaptive Air Suspension* ⇒ *page 21* dynamic, offroad, or lift mode. Therefore, the accuracy is reduced. ■

# Special parking situations

Applies to vehicles: with Advanced Parking System with rear view camera

## Parking next to obstacles

*When parking next to an obstacle, enough distance must left on the side.*

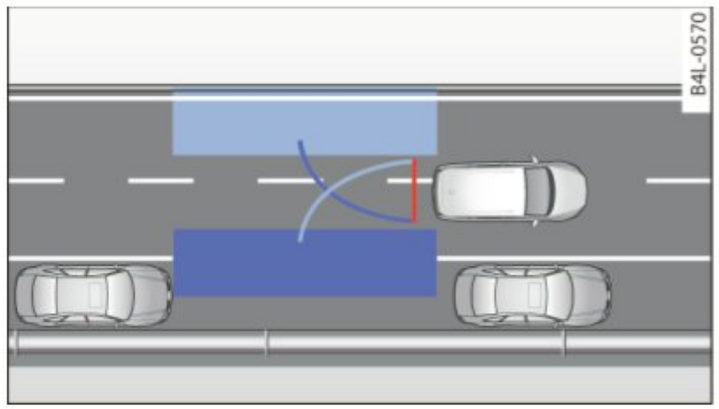



**Fig. 216 Top view: Parking next to a brick wall**

With “parking mode 2”, you can park very closely to a sidewalk curb with your vehicle ⇒ *page 194,* fig. 209.

However, when parking next to an obstacle, such as a brick wall, a larger side distance must be selected in order to prevent collision damage to the vehicle. Position the long side of the marked blue surface so that there is enough distance from the curb; the surface must not touch the curb ⇒ fig. 216.

Also, the turning process has to occur considerably sooner. This means that the corresponding blue curved line ⇒ *page 198,* fig. 215 must not touch the curb, but should rather be at a distance far enough from the curb ⇒ ⚠.

**WARNING**

- **Keep plenty of distance from an obstacle, so that your outside mirror or a corner of your vehicle does not collide with any obstacles - danger of accident!**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **The Audi parking system is not a substitute for being careful and alert when backing up. Be especially careful during parking and similar maneuvers. Always watch where you are driving and make sure that nothing is in the way.**
- **When maneuvering or parking, do not only use the MMI Display for orientation. Certain objects - depending on the screen resolution - may not, or not entirely, be displayed; for example trailer hitches, chains, narrow posts, or fences.**
- **Improper reliance on the Audi parking system can cause collisions and serious personal injury.**
  - **Never rely only on parking assist when changing backing up.**
  - **Always check rear view mirrors to make sure it is safe to back up. ■**

Applies to vehicles: with Advanced Parking System with rear view camera

## Notes on distance information

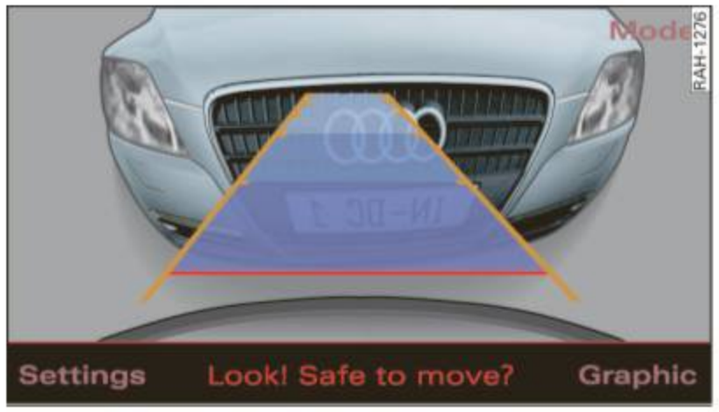



**Fig. 217 MMI Display: displayed red line touches the bumper**

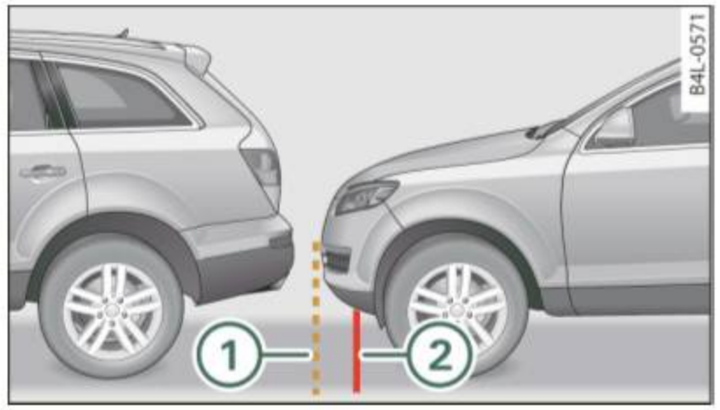



**Fig. 218 Actual distance from bumper**

The red line in the MMI Display ⇒ fig. 217 indicates the distance you should maintain from an obstacle, when parking. If an obstacle is located at road level, you can approach the obstacle until the red line touches the obstacle (1.3 ft, or 40 cm, distance). On the other hand, if an obstacle is not located at road level (the bumper of a vehicle, for example), you should **not** approach this obstacle until the red line touches the obstacle.

For instance, if you back up toward another vehicle, it will appear as though the guide help lines and surfaces are being pushed over the vehicle behind you ⇒ fig. 217. In this example, it can be recognized in the MMI Display that the red line exactly touches the bumper of the vehicle behind you. Indeed, however, the red line (2) ⇒ fig. 218 does not touch the bumper, but has rather been pushed **underneath** the bumper. The actual distance (dashed line (1)) to the vehicle behind you is meanwhile less than 1.3 ft (40 cm). Your vehicle bumper must also be taken into consideration for the distance ⇒ ⚠.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Please note that objects not touching the ground can appear to be further away than they really are (for example, the bumper of a parked vehicle, a trailer hitch, or the rear of a truck). In this case, you should not use the guide help lines to measure distance - danger of accident!**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Maintain plenty of distance from an obstacle, so that your outside mirror or a corner of your vehicle does not collide with any obstacles - danger of accident!**
- **The Audi parking system is not a substitute for being careful and alert when backing up. Be especially careful during parking and similar maneuvers. Always watch where you are driving and make sure that nothing is in the way.**
- **When maneuvering or parking, do not only use the MMI Display for orientation. Certain objects - depending on the screen resolution - may not, or not entirely, be displayed; for example trailer hitches, chains, narrow posts, or fences. ■**

Applies to vehicles: with Audi Parking System and factory installed towing hitch

## Towing hitch

For vehicles with a factory installed towing hitch, or a trailer hitch installed according to factory specifications, the rear acoustic parking sensors are not activated when the vehicle is put in reverse gear while an electrical connection to the trailer socket* is established. No distance alert occurs in the rear ⇒ *page 191*. The rear-view camera picture ⇒ *page 194* is displayed without orientation lines and without blue surfaces. ■

# Settings in the MMI

Applies to vehicles: with Advanced Parking System with rear view camera

## Adjusting the chimes - option 1

*The volume and the pitch (frequency) of the chimes can be adjusted in the MMI.*




**Fig. 219 MMI display: Selection menu**

– Press the CAR function button.

– Select **Systems*** in the CAR menu.

– Select **Audi parking system**.

– Select **Front volume** to change the volume of the front audible signal generator, or **Rear volume** to change the volume of the rear audible signal generator.

– Select **Front frequency** to change the frequency of the front audible signal generator or **Rear frequency** if you want to change the frequency of the rear audible signal generator.

When you adjust the volume and frequency, the new setting will sound for approximately 2 seconds from the signal generator affected. ▶

The volume and frequency settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote master key.

**WARNING**

**Always make sure that the volume and frequency of the chimes is adjusted so that you can easily hear the acoustic distance signal even if the radio is playing, the air-conditioner blower is on High or there is a high level of outside noise. Check the settings whenever someone else has driven the vehicle before you. ■**

Applies to vehicles: with Advanced Parking System with rear view camera

## Adjusting the chimes - option 2

*The menu for adjusting signal sounds can also be called up via the control button with the "settings" function.*

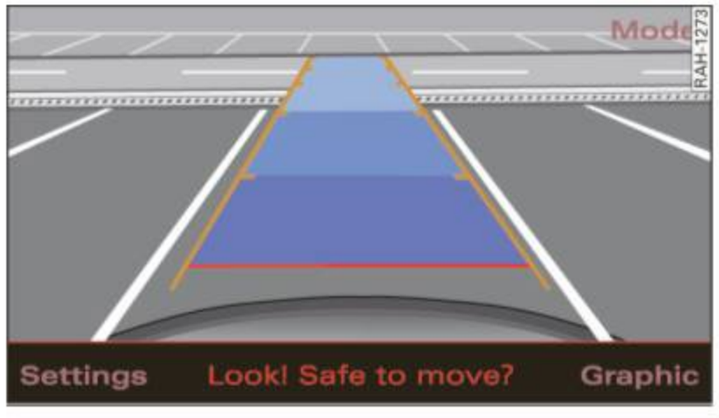



**Fig. 220 MMI Display: Rear-view camera picture**




**Fig. 221 MMI Display: Audi parking system**

– Activate the Audi parking system ⇒ *page 191*. The rear-view camera picture appears in the MMI Display.

– Select **Settings** ⇒ fig. 220. The menu for adjusting **Front volume**, **Front frequency**, **Rear volume** and **Rear frequency** appears in the MMI Display ⇒ fig. 221.

– Select **Front volume** to change the volume of the front audible signal generator, or **Rear volume** to change the volume of the rear audible signal generator.

– Select **Front frequency** to change the frequency of the front audible signal generator or **Rear frequency** if you want to change the frequency of the rear audible signal generator.

– Select **Settings** ⇒ fig. 221, or

– Press the RETURN button. The rear-view camera picture appears in the MMI Display again.

When adjusting the volume and frequency, the new setting will sound for about 2 seconds from each audible signal generator. The volume and frequency settings are automatically stored and assigned to the master key with remote control.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always make sure that the volume and frequency of the chimes is adjusted so that you can easily hear the acoustic distance signal even if the radio is playing, the air-conditioner blower is on High or there is a high level of outside noise. Check the settings whenever someone else has driven the vehicle before you. ■**

Applies to vehicles: with Advanced Parking System with rear view camera

## Switching the visual display/rear-view camera on and off

*The visual display and rear-view camera are preset in the MMI.*




**Fig. 222 MMI display: Display APS - submenu**




**Fig. 223 MMI display: visual display of distance to a detected obstacle**

– Press the CAR function button.
– Select **Systems*** in the CAR menu.
– Select **Audi parking system**.
– Select **Display APS** ⇒ fig. 222.
– Select **Graphic**, **Rear View**, **automatic** or **off**.

The rear-view camera and the visual display can be used separately or in combination for parking.

When you switch manually to the rear-view camera via the control button with the **Rear View** function ⇒ fig. 223, the control button with the **Graphic** function ⇒ *page 198,* fig. 215 appears. You can switch back and forth between the rear-view camera and visual parking assist at any time via the displayed control button function. The presettings in the MMI are retained.

### "Graphic" setting

If you have set the **Graphic** function, the visual display will be displayed in the MMI display by default upon activation of the parking assist system ⇒ fig. 223.

### "Rear View" setting

If you have set the **Rear View** function, the picture from the rear-view camera ⇒ *page 196,* fig. 213 will be displayed when driving backward and forward whenever the parking assist system is activated.

### "Automatic" setting

If you have set the **automatic** function, the picture from the rear-view camera will automatically be displayed when reverse gear is engaged and the visual display will be displayed on the MMI display when you drive forward. ▶

### "Off" setting

If you have set the **off** function, both the rear-view camera and the visual display will be deactivated. The acoustic parking assist remains active.

### Tips

If you change the settings in the MMI, the new settings do not become active until the parking assist is switched on again. ■

# Safety tips

Applies to vehicles: with Advanced Parking System with rear view camera

## Acoustic parking system error message

If you hear a continuous tone for several seconds while the front and back parking assist with visual display is activated and the LED in the switch P flashes when you engage the reverse gear, there is a malfunction in the acoustic parking assist.

This system error is immediately output after:

- Every manual activation via the switch P ⇒ *page 191*,
- Reverse gear is engaged for the first time during an ignition cycle, or
- An error is detected during operation.

### Tips

If the system reports an error, have an Audi dealer or an authorized dealership correct this system error. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Advanced Parking System with rear view camera

## Rear-view camera tips

We recommend that you practice parking with the rear-view camera in a traffic-free location, or parking lot, to become familiar with the system, the orientation lines, and their function. When doing this, there should be good light and weather conditions.

In the MMI Display, objects or vehicles appear closer or further away if:

- you are driving in reverse gear from a level surface onto an incline, or a downward slope,
- you are driving in reverse gear toward protruding objects,
- the vehicle is carrying too much load in the rear.

The accuracy of the orientation lines and blue surfaces diminishes if:

- the Adaptive Air Suspension* is defective, or the dynamic, offroad, or lift mode is switched on,
- the rear-view camera does not provide a reliable image, for example, in poor visibility conditions or if the lens is dirty,
- the image on the screen is not visible due to sun glare and reflection.

**Caring for the rear-view camera lens:**

- Dampen the lens with a household alcohol-based glass cleaner, and clean the lens with a dry cloth.
- Remove snow with a hand brush.
- Remove ice, preferably with de-icing spray ⇒ !.

### WARNING

- **The rear-view camera does not replace the view to the rear and the rear view mirrors.**
- **The rear-view camera – because of technical limitations – does not show the entire area behind the vehicle ⇒ *page 196*, fig. 211.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

**Be especially careful to check for small children and animals before backing up. Small children and animals will not always be shown in the rear-view display.**

- **The Audi parking system is not a substitute for being careful and alert when backing up. Be especially careful during parking and similar maneuvers. Always watch where you are driving and make sure that nothing is in the way.**
- **Do not allow yourself to be distracted from traffic by the rear-view camera pictures.**
- **When maneuvering or parking, do not only use the MMI Display for orientation. Certain objects - depending on the screen resolution - may not, or not entirely, be displayed; for example trailer hitches, chains, narrow posts, or fences.**
- **Only use the rear-view camera for aid if it shows a good, clear picture. The image may be obscured, for example, by the sun shining into the lens, dirt on the lens, or as the result of a defect - danger of accident!**
- **If the image is hazy when the MMI Display is switched on or the area behind the vehicle is not visible (for example, as the result of a dirty or defective lens), the rear-view camera must not be used for aid in maneuvering - danger of accident!**
- **The rear-view camera generates two-dimensional images. For this reason, please note that recesses in the ground and protruding parts on another vehicle, or protruding objects fixed to the ground, will be more difficult or impossible to recognize on the MMI Display, due to the missing spacial depth.**
- **If the position and the installation angle of the camera has changed, for example, after a rear end collision, do not continue to use the system for safety reasons. Have it checked by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.**
- **Only use the rear-view camera when the rear lid is fully closed. Make sure that objects mounted on the rear are not obscuring the camera view.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Remove ice, preferably with de-icing spray.**

## Note

- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow or ice from the rear-view camera lens - danger of crack formation on the lens!
- When cleaning the lens, never use care products with an abrasive effect.

## Tips

The positions of the orientation lines / surfaces are displaced up or down if the parking process is carried out with the rear-view camera in Adaptive Air Suspension* ⇒ *page 21* dynamic, offroad, or lift mode. Therefore, the accuracy is reduced. ■

# Adaptive Air Suspension

## Air suspension and damping

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Air Suspension

### Description

*Air suspension and damping can be regulated as desired by driver, and they adapt automatically to the driving situation at the time.*

Adaptive Air Suspension is an electronically controlled springing and damping system. This chassis system makes it easier on the driver by adapting to the particular situation through imperceptible control processes.

The **Adaptive Air Suspension** component regulates ground clearance depending on vehicle speed and driver input. It functions independently from the load condition. Accelerating to a speed above a predetermined limit will make the vehicle lower itself. On the other hand, driving more slowly results in the vehicle raising again at specific speeds.

The **damping** component provides individual control of the damping forces. For example, with damping characteristics set to provide greater comfort, damping is set somewhat harder for a brief period only as required, for example, when going around a curve or when braking.

#### Settings

Adaptive Air Suspension provides the driver with the opportunity to set the chassis characteristics also to their individual preference. With the driving modes *comfort*, *automatic* and *dynamic* the driver has three chassis settings available, ranging from comfort to sporty. The *offroad* mode can be selected for driving on poor quality stretches of road. In addition, *lift* provides a fifth mode, which can be selected when exceptionally high ground clearance is needed ⇒ *page 207*, "Chassis controls".

The modes are set in MMI ⇒ *page 208*.

**WARNING**

**The height of the parked vehicle can change due to temperature fluctuations or changes in load.**

**Note**

- Whenever you park your vehicle, always make sure there is adequate clearance above and below the vehicle. The height of the parked vehicle can change as the result of temperature fluctuations, changes in load condition and changes in the driving mode (ground clearance).
- If the vehicle is being transported (e.g. by tow truck, train, ship, etc.), mount the tie-down chains/cables over the running surface (circumference) of the tires. Never secure the vehicle by the axle, the suspension struts or the front or rear towline eye. For technical reasons, the pressure in the suspension struts may change during the transport, which could result in the vehicle no longer being secured properly.
- If you are going to tow a trailer with a trailer hitch that was **not** installed according to factory specifications, you must activate the trailer operation mode manually ⇒ *page 211*.

**Tips**

- Before you can raise your vehicle using the vehicle jack (for example, when changing a flat tire) or a vehicle lift, you must activate the jacking mode ⇒ *page 210*.
- On some models, the vehicle can reach its maximum speed only in the *automatic* and *dynamic* modes. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Air Suspension

## Chassis controls

*Five different driving modes can be set by the driver.*

The automatic control processes are speed- and time-dependent. For example, it is not possible to raise the suspension to a high level above certain speeds.

When a speed of about 75 mph (120 km/h) is exceeded for more than 30 seconds, the vehicle is automatically lowered to *low level* when in comfort and automatic mode. Ground clearance is about 0.6 inch (15 mm) less, compared to the *normal level*.

When a speed of about 100 mph (160 km/h) is exceeded for more than 20 seconds, the vehicle is automatically lowered to *highway level* when in automatic and dynamic mode. Ground clearance is about 1.4 inches (35 mm) less, compared to the *normal level*. Road holding is optimized as a result of the lower center of gravity, and fuel consumption is reduced as a result of reduced wind resistance.

| Level adjustment | Ground clearance |
|---|---|
| high level 2 | about 9.4 inches (240 mm) |
| high level 1 | about 8 inches (205 mm) |
| normal level | about 7 inches (180 mm) |
| low level | about 6.5 inches (165 mm) |
| highway level | about 5.3 inches (135 mm) |

The segment display (3) ⇒ *page 208,* fig. 225 in the MMI Display ⇒ *page 208* or in the instrument cluster display ⇒ *page 209* shows the current vehicle level.

### automatic

Select the automatic mode if you prefer a balanced, comfortable suspension setting. The damping characteristics are adjusted accordingly.

- **Automatic lowering:** When a speed of about 75 mph (120 km/h) is exceeded for more than 30 seconds, the vehicle is automatically lowered by about 0.6 inch (15 mm) to the *low level*, which is more suitable for highway speeds. Road holding is optimized as a result of the lower center of gravity and fuel consumption is reduced as a result of reduced wind resistance. When a speed of about 100 mph (160 km/h) is exceeded for more than 20 seconds, the vehicle is automatically lowered by an additional 0.8 inch (20 mm) to *highway level*.
- **Automatic raising:** When the vehicle is at *highway level* and the speed falls below about 80 mph (130 km/h) for more than 20 seconds, the vehicle is automatically raised to *low level*. The vehicle is automatically raised again to *normal level* if the speed falls below about 44 mph (70 km/h) for a period of 2 minutes. The vehicle is raised immediately when speed falls below about 22 mph (35 km/h).

### dynamic

Select the dynamic mode if you prefer a sporty suspension setting. In this mode, the vehicle is lowered to *low level* while it is still stationary and sporty damping characteristics are selected. The warning light in the instrument cluster will come on for a few seconds just to remind you of the reduced ground clearance.

If you switch off the engine while the vehicle is in the dynamic mode and then switch on the ignition once again, the warning light will also come on again for a few seconds as a reminder.

- **Automatic lowering:** When a speed of about 100 mph (160 km/h) is exceeded for more than 20 seconds, the vehicle is automatically lowered by 0.8 inch (20 mm) to *highway level*.
- **Automatic raising:** The vehicle is automatically raised to *low level* again, if the speed falls below about 80 mph (130 km/h) for a period of 20 seconds. The vehicle is raised immediately when speed falls below about 22 mph (35 km/h).

### comfort

Select the comfort mode if you desire a suspension setting with a special emphasis on comfort. Damping characteristics with a clear emphasis on comfort are selected in this mode.

- **Automatic lowering:** When a speed of about 75 mph (120 km/h) is exceeded for more than 30 seconds, the vehicle is automatically lowered by 0.6 inch (15 mm) to *low level*.
- **Automatic raising:** The vehicle is automatically raised to *normal level* again, if the speed falls below about 44 mph (70 km/h) for a period of 2 minutes. The vehicle is raised immediately when speed falls below about 22 mph (35 km/h).

### offroad

Select the offroad mode when you have to travel over poor quality sections of road (e.g. trails). In this mode, the vehicle is raised to *high level 1*, and damping characteristics for poor road stretches are selected. When switching to offroad mode, the Adaptive Air Suspension indicator appears automatically in the instrument cluster display ⇒ *page 209*.

- **Automatic lowering:** When a speed of about 62 mph (100 km/h) is exceeded, the vehicle is lowered by 1 inch (25 mm) to *normal level*.
- **Automatic raising:** The vehicle is raised to *high level 1* again when the speed falls below about 43 mph (70 km/h).

### lift

Select the lift mode when exceptionally high ground clearance is needed at a reduced speed. In this mode, the vehicle is raised to *high level 2*. When switching to lift mode, the Adaptive Air Suspension indicator appears automatically in the instrument cluster display ⇒ *page 209*.

The lift mode can be activated only at speeds below 12 mph (20 km/h). When a speed of about 25 mph (40 km/h) is exceeded, the system automatically leaves lift mode and the offroad mode is activated. The instrument cluster display automatically switches the display to Adaptive Air Suspension to indicate reduced ground clearance.

### Tips

Please note that driving at high speeds on paved roads while in offroad mode for extended periods of time leads to increased tire wear. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Air Suspension

## MMI settings

*Driving modes are adjusted in the MMI and the current vehicle level is displayed.*

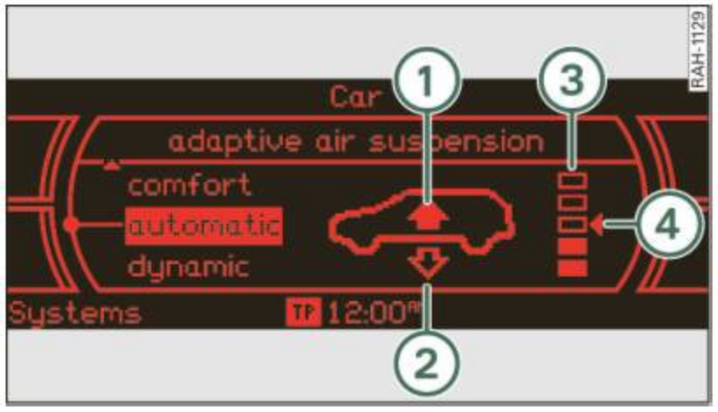



**Fig. 224 MMI basic Display: Settings**

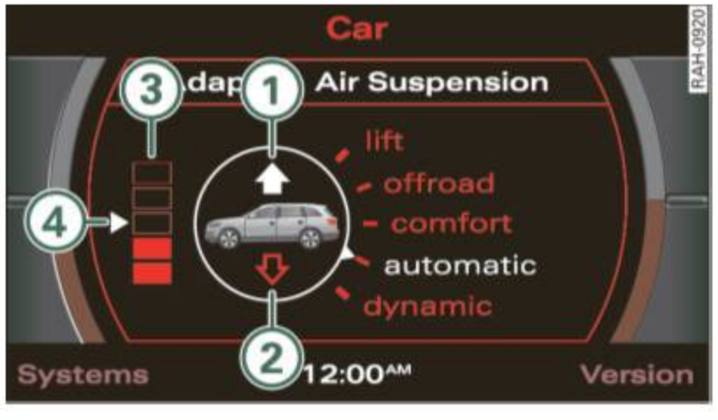



**Fig. 225 MMI Display: Settings**

The ignition must be switched on to set the driving modes. ▶

– Press the CAR function button. The main menu **Adaptive Air Suspension** appears ⇒ *page 208,* fig. 224 or ⇒ *page 208,* fig. 225.
– Select the desired mode by rotating and pressing the control knob.

### Raising and lowering

If arrow (1) is *white* ⇒ *page 208,* fig. 225, the vehicle is raised.

If arrow (2) is *white*, the vehicle is lowered.

The respective arrow stays on until the level change is complete. The time used for a level change can vary, depending on the current driving conditions.

### Displaying the vehicle level

The current vehicle level is shown with segments filled out in the segment display (3). If only the bottom segment is filled out, the vehicle is at highway level. If all segments are filled out, the vehicle is at high level 2 and has the greatest amount of ground clearance possible.

While the vehicle is being raised or lowered, the target level is indicated by an arrow (4) next to the corresponding segment. The arrow disappears again when the vehicle is at the target level.

### Limitations to MMI settings

Please note that not every driving mode can be selected in every driving situation. For example, it is not possible to switch to "lift" mode at speeds above 12 mph (20 km/h). This mode is then shown *greyed out* in the MMI Display.

The vehicle can only be lowered when **all** of the vehicle's doors are closed. If one door is open, all driving modes whose level setting is **below** the current vehicle level appear *greyed out* in the MMI Display. If a door is opened while the vehicle is being lowered, the lowering process is interrupted until all doors are closed again.

If the system is temporarily unavailable due to, for instance, an empty compressed air tank, the driving modes that cannot be set appear *greyed out* in the MMI Display. As soon as the system is available again, the driving modes can once more be selected in the display.

### Tips

- For additional information on the driving modes ⇒ *page 207,* "Chassis controls".
- When the compressed air tank is empty, the compressor can be switched on by starting the engine. The Adaptive Air Suspension is once again available, after waiting a few minutes. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Air Suspension

## Appearance in the instrument cluster display

*You can view the current vehicle level in the instrument cluster display.*

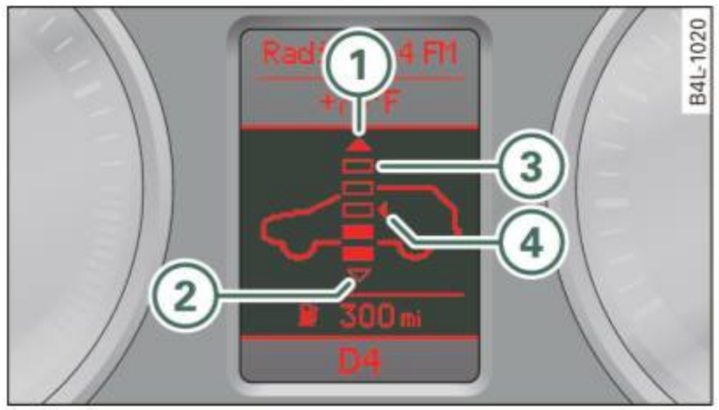



**Fig. 226 Display: Adaptive Air Suspension**

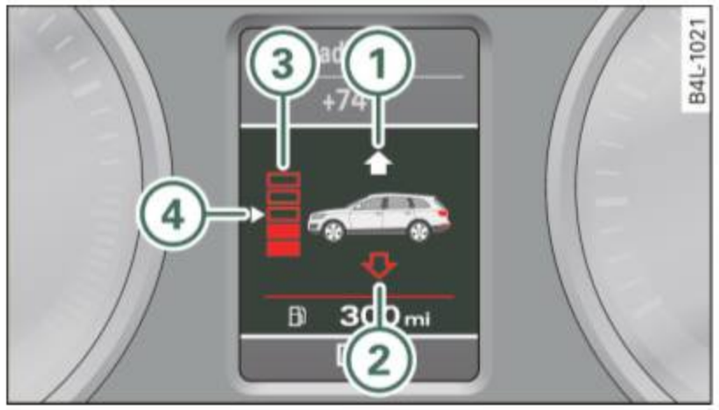



**Fig. 227 Display: Adaptive Air Suspension**

Repeated, brief tapping of the RESET button on the windshield wiper lever allows you to select whether information concerning the trip computer, digital tachometer, navigation* or "Adaptive Air Suspension" is to appear in the instrument cluster display.

Display of the Adaptive Air Suspension is automatic when the offroad or lift mode is selected, or when the vehicle is automatically lowered in lift mode.

### Raising and lowering

If arrow (1) is *solid red* ⇒ *page 209,* fig. 226 or *white* ⇒ fig. 227, the vehicle is raised.

If arrow (2) is *solid red* or *white*, the vehicle is lowered.

The respective arrow stays on until the level change is complete. The time required for a level change can vary, depending on the current driving conditions.

### Displaying the vehicle level

The current vehicle level is shown with segments filled out in the segment display (3). If only the bottom segment is filled out, the vehicle is at highway level. If all segments are filled out, the vehicle is at high level 2 and has the greatest amount of ground clearance possible.

While the vehicle is being raised or lowered, the target level is indicated by an arrow (4) next to the corresponding segment. The arrow disappears again when the vehicle is at the target level. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Air Suspension

## Jacking mode when changing a flat tire

*This mode must be activated before raising the vehicle with a jack or on a vehicle lift.*




**Fig. 228 MMI Display: Activate jacking mode**

### Switching jacking mode on and off

– Press the CAR function button. The main menu **Adaptive Air Suspension** appears.

– Press the SETUP function button. The main menu **Adaptive Air Suspension** appears ⇒ fig. 228.

– Turn the control knob to **Vehicle jack mode** and select **on** or **off** as required.

The vehicle jack mode must be activated before changing a wheel so that the automatic control processes for the air suspension do not make lifting with the vehicle jack more difficult.

The check lamp in the instrument cluster display illuminates in vehicle jack mode.

### Tips

The vehicle jack mode is switched off automatically at speeds above 9 mph (15 km/h). ■

Applies to vehicles: with towing hitch and Adaptive Air Suspension

## Towing a trailer

*Automatic lowering is not desirable when towing a trailer.*




**Fig. 229 MMI Display: Trailer towing mode**

### Switching the trailer towing mode on and off

– Press the CAR function button. The main menu **Adaptive Air Suspension** appears.

– Press the SETUP function button. The menu **Adaptive Air Suspension** appears ⇒ fig. 229.

– Select **Trailer towing mode on** or **off** as required.

As long as towing mode is activated, a vehicle with a trailer appears in the **Adaptive Air Suspension** main menu.

#### Level Adjustment when towing a trailer

- Before hitching up the trailer **and** before adjusting the tongue weight at the trailer, the automatic or comfort mode **must** be selected so that the vehicle can be at normal level ⇒ *page 208,* “MMI settings”.
- If driving in dynamic mode is desired, this mode **must** be selected before hitching up the trailer and before adjusting the tongue weight. However, note that your vehicle is lowered and ground clearance is reduced.
- If you have to drive under difficult road conditions, you can select offroad or lift mode, after hitching up the trailer or after adjusting the tongue weight.
- If the vehicle is at *normal level*, and you select offroad mode while traveling at speeds higher than 22 mph (35 km/h), the vehicle will not be raised. Offroad mode will appear as the active mode in the MMI Display.
- If the vehicle is in offroad mode at *high level 1*, it automatically lowers to *normal level* when the vehicle is traveling at speeds exceeding approximately 31 mph (50 km/h). The vehicle is automatically raised to *high level 1* again when the traveling speed falls below approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

#### Restrictions when operating with a trailer

When operating with a trailer, the lift mode can only be selected up to about 12 mph (20 km/h). Lift mode is automatically canceled again when a speed of about 25 mph (40 km/h) is exceeded.

If the vehicle is in automatic, comfort, offroad or lift mode before the trailer towing mode is activated, the dynamic mode cannot be activated.

If the vehicle is in dynamic mode before towing operation is activated, it can be driven in this mode. If the suspension is switched from this mode to another mode, dynamic mode cannot be re-selected.

#### Tips

- For vehicles with a factory installed towing hitch or a trailer hitch that was installed later according to factory specifications, the system recognizes “Trailer towing mode” and activates this special mode automatically, as soon as the electrical connection on the trailer socket is connected. The mode ceases automatically when the electrical connection to the trailer socket is disconnected.
- If the trailer towing mode has been activated, the vehicle will not drop to the low or highway level. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Air Suspension

## Cargo mode

*The rear of the vehicle can be lowered to make it easier to load.*




**Fig. 230 MMI Display: Cargo mode**




**Fig. 231 Luggage compartment detail: Cargo mode switch**

### Activating cargo mode in the MMI

– Close all vehicle doors.

– Press the CAR function button on the MMI Terminal. The **Adaptive Air Suspension** main menu appears in the MMI Display.

– Press the SETUP function button. The **Adaptive Air Suspension** menu appears ⇒ *page 210,* fig. 228.

– Use the control knob to select **Lower vehicle for loading**. The rear of the vehicle is lowered, and the cargo mode indicator appears in the MMI Display ⇒ fig. 230.

### Using switch for activating cargo mode

– Close all vehicle doors.

– Open the trunk lid.

– Press the lower part of the switch (3) ⇒ fig. 231. The rear of the vehicle is lowered.

– Press the upper part of the switch (1). The rear of the vehicle is raised again.

In cargo mode, the rear axle is lowered by 2.2 inches (55 mm), compared to the normal level.

While the vehicle is in cargo mode, the segments do not appear as filled in the segment display.

Cargo mode is automatically canceled again when a different mode is selected in the MMI Display, or when a speed of about 3 mph (5 km/h) has been exceeded.

If the system is temporarily unavailable due to, for instance, an empty compressed air tank, the **Lower vehicle for loading** function appears *greyed out* in the MMI Display. As soon as the system is available again, the function can once more be selected in the display.

While the vehicle is being lowered, the indicator light (2) ⇒ fig. 231 on the switch in the luggage compartment flashes. When the cargo level has been reached, the indicator light comes on and remains on as long as the vehicle is in cargo mode. When the vehicle is raised again, the indicator light flashes again. ▶

### Note

Make sure before canceling cargo mode that there is sufficient clearance above the vehicle and around the trunk lid, if open.

### Tips

- The vehicle will not be lowered if one of the vehicle doors is open, or if the compressed air tank is empty. The indicator light on the switch flashes three times.
- When the compressed air tank is empty, it will refill when you drive at speeds over 25 mph (40 km/h). The vehicle can be lowered to cargo level when the compressed air tank is adequately filled.
- If the vehicle is in lift or offroad mode when you activate cargo mode, the vehicle will first drop down to normal level. ■

# HomeLink®

## Universal remote control

Applies to vehicles: with HomeLink® universal remote control

### General information

*The HomeLink® feature can learn up to three radio frequency codes for most current transmitters used for operating garage doors, estate gates, home or outdoor lighting systems, and other devices.*

You must first program the HomeLink® transmitter before you can use the system ⇒ *page 215,* "Programming the HomeLink® transmitter".

In order to program the HomeLink® transmitter for devices utilizing rolling code, a second person on a ladder who can safely reach the garage door opener motor is recommended. It is also necessary to locate the "learn" button on your garage door opener motor. Refer to the operating instructions for the opener, as the location and color of this button may vary by manufacturer.

You can still use the original remote control for the device at any time.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never use the HomeLink® transmitter with any garage door opener that does have not the safety stop and reverse feature as required by federal safety standards. This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982.**
- **A garage door opener which cannot detect an object, signaling the door to stop and reverse does not meet current federal safety standards. Using a garage door opener without these features increases risk of serious injury or death.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **For safety reasons never release the parking brake or start the engine while anyone is standing in front of the vehicle.**
- **A garage door or an estate gate may sometimes be set in motion when the HomeLink® remote control is being programmed. If the device is repeatedly activated, this can overstrain motor and damage its electrical components - an overheated motor is a fire hazard!**
- **To avoid possible injuries or property damage, please always make absolutely certain that no persons or objects are located in the range of motion of any equipment being operated.**

**Tips**

- If you would like more information on HomeLink®, where to purchase the HomeLink® compatible products, or would like to purchase the HomeLink® Home Lighting Package, please call toll-free: 1-800-355-3515.
- For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇒ *page 404.* ■

Applies to vehicles: with HomeLink® universal remote control

## Programming the HomeLink® transmitter

*The transmitter is programmed in two phases. For rolling code transmitters, a third phase is also necessary.*

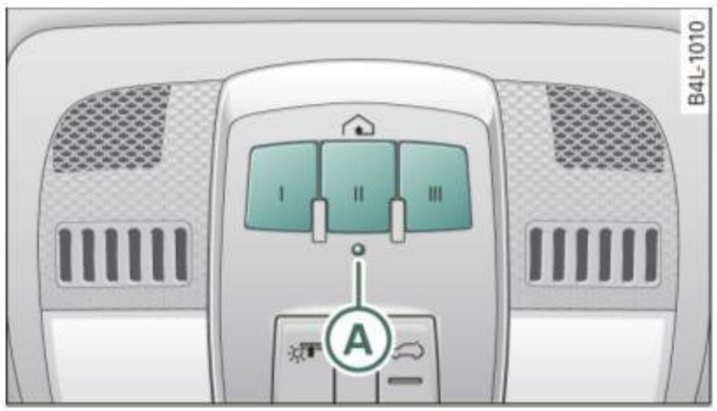



**Fig. 232 Overhead console: HomeLink® keypad**

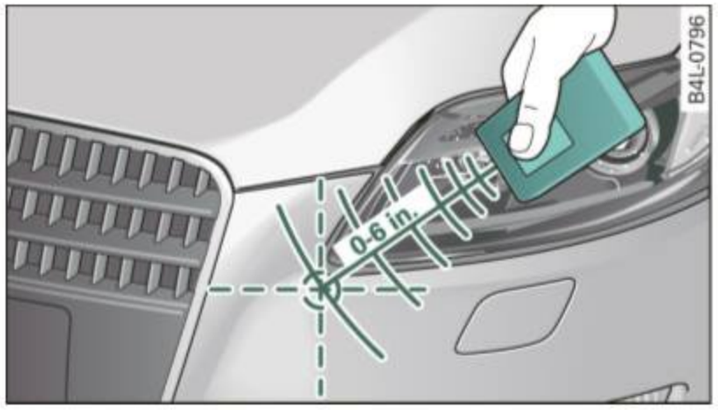



**Fig. 233 Front bumper, driver side: location of transmitter unit**

### Phase 1: programming the overhead keypad

1. Make sure your vehicle is within operating range of the remote controlled garage door opener.
2. Set the parking brake ⇒ ⚠ in "General information" on *page 214*.
3. Turn the ignition on. Do not start the engine!
4. Press and hold the two outside HomeLink® buttons (I) and (III) for approximately 20 seconds until indicator light (A) ⇒ fig. 232 begins to flash. Then release both buttons. Do not hold the buttons for longer than 30 seconds.

– This procedure only needs to be performed **once**. It erases the factory-set default codes and does not have to be repeated to program additional remote controls.

5. Press and hold the HomeLink® button (I), (II) or (III) until the indicator light (A) starts flashing *slowly*. Release the button.

– *The system will remain in programming mode for 5 minutes. Go to the front of the vehicle and proceed with phase 2.*

### Phase 2: programming the bumper mounted transmitter

6. Hold the *original remote control* at a distance between 0–6 in. (0–15 cm) from the bumper below the appropriate headlight for your vehicle⇒ fig. 233 (use the shortest distance possible).
7. Aim the remote control just below the **driver side** headlight.
8. Press and hold the activation button on the remote control.

– May be different in Canada. If so, press and re-press (cycle) the activation button on your remote control every two seconds. ▶

9. The emergency flashers will flash **three times** (after about 15–60 seconds) when the programming is successful. Release the button on the remote control.

– *To program more devices, repeat steps 4 to 9.*

10. Press and hold the trained HomeLink® button and observe the indicator light (A) ⇒ *page 215,* fig. 232.

– If the indicator light is solid/continuous, programming is complete and your device should activate when you press and release the trained HomeLink® button.

– If the indicator light blinks rapidly for 2 seconds and is then a solid/continuous light, proceed with phase 3 to program a rolling code device.

### Phase 3: rolling code programming

– A second person on a ladder who can safely reach the garage door opener motor is recommended.

11. Locate the "learn" button on the garage door opener motor (refer to the operating instructions for the opener, as the location of this button may vary by manufacturer).

12. Press and release the learn button on the garage door opener motor.

– **Note:** once the button is pressed, there are **30 seconds** in which to initiate the next step.

13. On the HomeLink® keypad inside the vehicle, firmly press and hold the HomeLink® button previously programmed in phases 1 and 2 for two seconds and release. Repeat this sequence **twice**.

– Some vehicles may require the press/hold/release sequence up to three times to complete the training process.

– *HomeLink® should now activate your rolling code equipped device.*

If the 5 minute time limit is exceeded, the **emergency flashers will flash one time** to indicate that the process has been terminated. In this case, repeat steps 4 through 9.

If the emergency flashers do not flash *three* times (after about 15–60 seconds), programming was not successful. In this case, repeat steps 4 through 9.

Remote control units for garage door openers in Canada are set to stop transmitting radio frequency signals after two seconds. This time may not be sufficient for the HomeLink® system to learn the radio frequency signal. Perform all other steps as described above. ■

Applies to vehicles: with HomeLink® universal remote control

## Operating the HomeLink® transmitter

*The HomeLink® transmitter works in the same manner as the original handheld remote control that came with the system.*

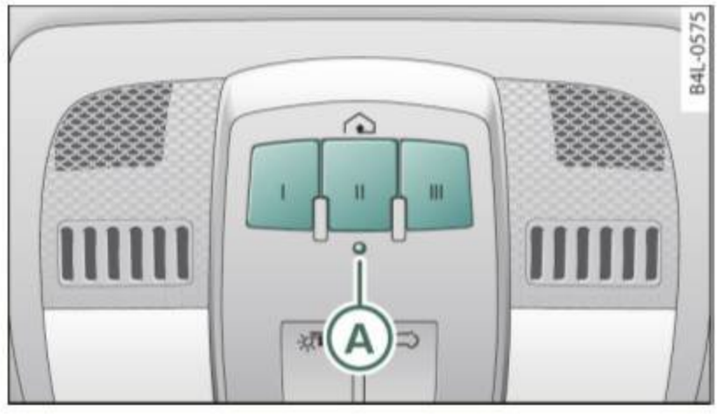



**Fig. 234 Close-up: HomeLink® keypad**

– Press the appropriate programmed button (I), (II) or (III) to activate the desired remote control function ⇒ ⚠ in "General information" on *page 214*. ■

Applies to vehicles: with HomeLink® universal remote control

## Reprogramming a single button

*A HomeLink® button can be reprogrammed individually without affecting the other button allocations.*

### Programming the overhead keypad

– Press the appropriate HomeLink® button until the indicator light begins flashing slowly.

### Programming the bumper mounted transmitter

1. Hold the *original remote control* at a distance between 0–5 in. (0–13 cm) from the bumper below the appropriate headlight for your vehicle (use the shortest distance possible).
2. Aim the remote control just below the **driver side** headlight.
3. Press and hold the activation button on the remote control.
4. The emergency flashers will flash **three times** (after about 15–60 seconds) when the programming is successful. Now release the button on the remote control.

– If the device utilizes a rolling code, please follow phase 3 of ⇒ *page 215,* "Programming the HomeLink® transmitter" for rolling code programming.

**This procedure will cause the existing programming on the HomeLink® button to be erased!** ■

Applies to vehicles: with HomeLink® universal remote control

## Erasing the programming of the HomeLink® transmitter

*When you erase the programming, the programming on all three of the transmitter channels with be lost!*

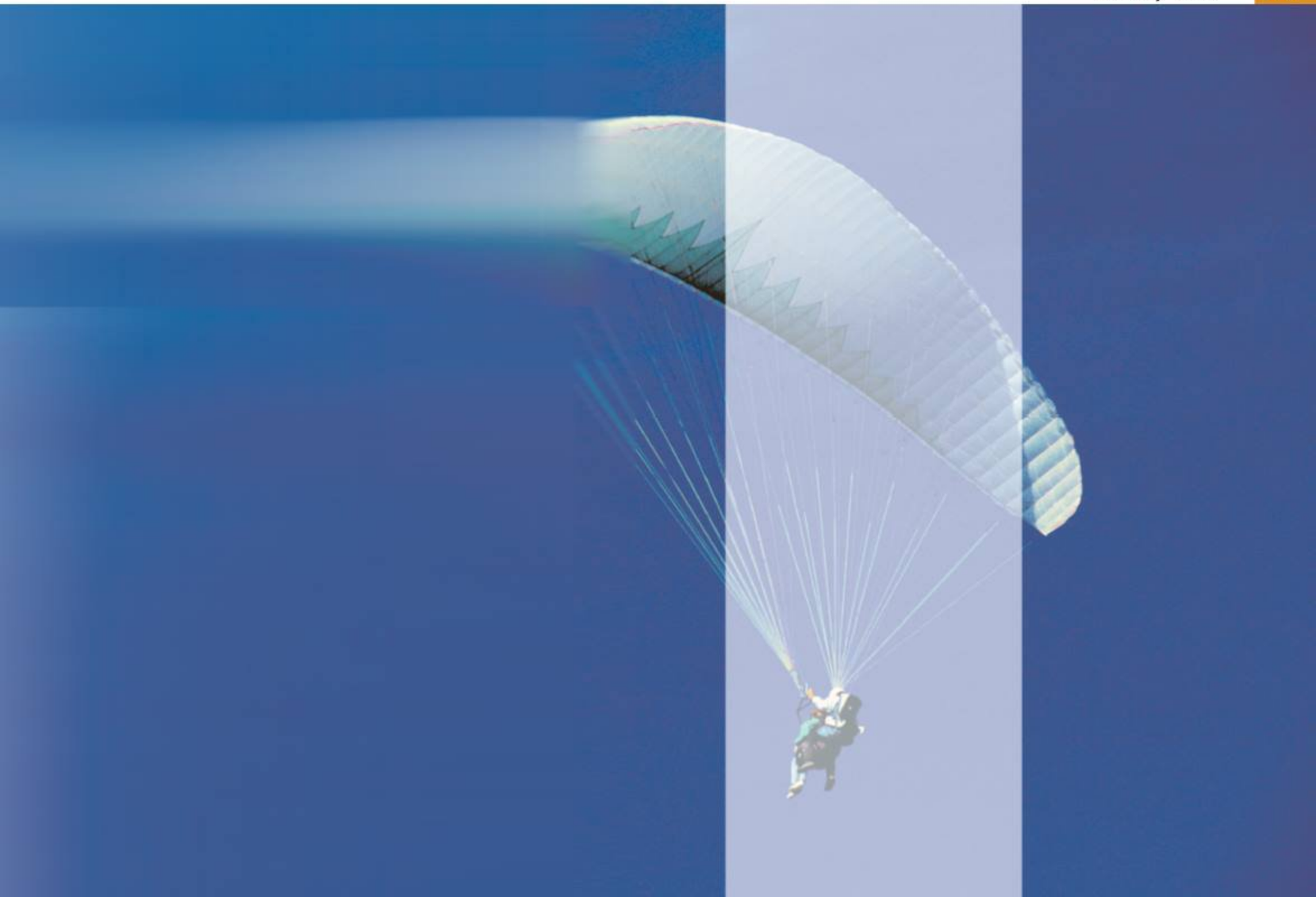
– Perform steps 1 to 4 as described on ⇒ *page 215,* "Phase 1: programming the overhead keypad".

When completed, the HomeLink® system will be in the programming mode and is then ready to learn the codes for remote controlled devices.

### Tips

- Programmed buttons cannot be erased individually.
- For security reasons you are advised to erase the programming of the HomeLink® system before you sell your vehicle. ■





# Driving Safely

## General notes

### Safe driving habits

*Please remember - safety first!*

This chapter contains important information, tips, instructions and warnings that you need to read and observe for your own safety, the safety of your passengers and others. We have summarized here what you need to know about safety belts, airbags, child restraints as well as child safety. Your safety is for us *priority number 1*. Always observe the information and warnings in this section - for your own safety as well as that of your passengers.

The information in this section applies to all model versions of your vehicle. Some of the features described in this sections may be standard equipment on some models, or may be optional equipment on others. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Audi dealer.

**WARNING**

- **Always make sure that you follow the instructions and heed the WARNINGS in this Manual. It is in your interest and in the interest of your passengers.**
- **Always keep the complete Owner's Literature in your Audi when you lend or sell your vehicle so that this important information will always be available to the driver and passengers.**
- **Always keep the Owner's literature handy so that you can find it easily if you have questions.** ■

### Safety equipment

*The safety features are part of the occupant restraint system and work together to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide variety of accident situations.*

Your safety and the safety of your passengers should not be left to chance. Advances in technology have made a variety of features available to help reduce the risk of injury in an accident. The following is a list of just a few of the safety features in your Audi:

- sophisticated safety belts for driver and all passenger seating positions,
- belt force limiters on the front seats and the outer seating positions in the second row seating,
- belt tensioners for the front seats and the outer seating positions in the second row seating,
- belt height adjustment for the front seats and the outer seating positions in the second row seating,
- head restraints for each seating position,
- optimized protection against thoracic vertebrae injuries in all seats,
- front airbags,
- side airbags in the front seats and the outer seating positions in the second row seating*,
- side curtain airbags,
- special LATCH anchorages for child restraints,
- adjustable steering column.

These individual safety features, can work together as a system to help protect you and your passengers in a wide range of accidents. These features cannot work as a system if they are not always correctly adjusted and correctly used.

**Safety is everybody's responsibility!** ■

## Important things to do before driving

*Safety is everybody's job! Vehicle and occupant safety always depends on the informed and careful driver.*

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, **before driving always:**

- Make sure that all lights and signals are operating correctly.
- Make sure that the tire pressure is correct.
- Make sure that all windows are clean and afford good visibility to the outside.
- Secure all luggage and other items carefully ⇒ *page 119*.
- Make sure that nothing can interfere with the pedals.
- Adjust front seat, head restraint and mirrors correctly for your height.
- Instruct passengers to adjust the head restraints according to their height.
- Make sure to use the right child restraint correctly to protect children ⇒ *page 263,* "Child Safety".
- Sit properly in your seat and make sure that your passengers do the same ⇒ *page 92,* "General recommendations".
- Fasten your safety belt and wear it properly. Also instruct your passengers to fasten their safety belts properly ⇒ *page 231*. ■

## What impairs driving safety?

*Safe driving is directly related to the condition of the vehicle, the driver as well as the driver's ability to concentrate on the road without being distracted.*

The driver is responsible for the safety of the vehicle and all of its occupants. If your ability to drive is impaired, safety risks for everybody in the vehicle increase and you also become a hazard to everyone else on the road ⇒ ⚠. Therefore:

- Do not let yourself be distracted by passengers or by using a cellular telephone.
- NEVER drive when your driving ability is impaired (by medications, alcohol, drugs, etc.).
- Observe all traffic laws, rules of the road and speed limits and plain common sense.
- ALWAYS adjust your speed to road, traffic and weather conditions.
- Take frequent breaks on long trips. Do not drive for more than two hours at a stretch.
- Do NOT drive when you are tired, under pressure or when you are stressed.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Impaired driving safety increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.** ■

# Proper occupant seating positions

## Proper seating position for the driver

*The proper driver seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.*

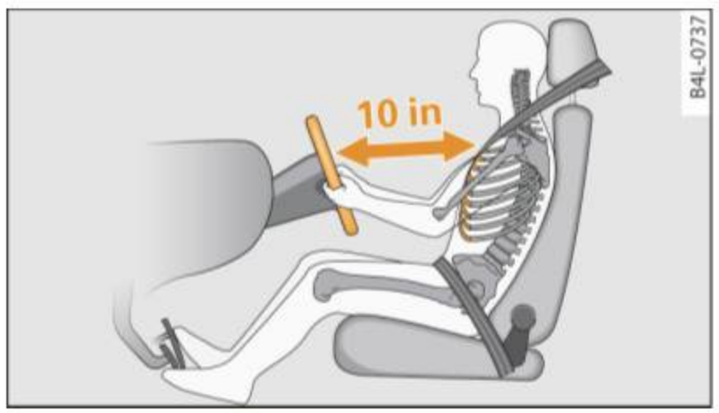



**Fig. 235 The correct distance between driver and steering wheel**

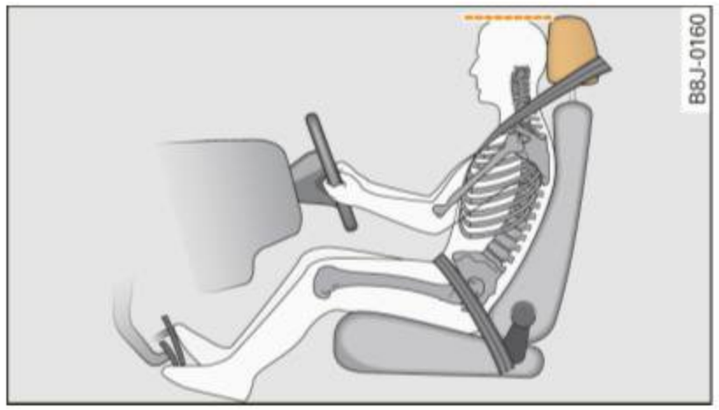



**Fig. 236 Correct head restraint position for driver**

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the driver's seat to the following position:

– Adjust the driver's seat so that you can easily push the pedals all the way to the floor while keeping your knee(s) slightly bent ⇒ ⚠.

– Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position so that your back comes in full contact with it when you drive.

– Adjust the steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the steering wheel and your breast bone ⇒ fig. 235. If not possible, see your authorized Audi dealer about adaptive equipment.

– Adjust the steering wheel so that the steering wheel and airbag cover points at your chest and not at your face.

– Grasp the top of the steering wheel with your elbow(s) slightly bent.

– Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge is as even with the top of your head as possible but no lower than eye level and so that it is as close to the back of your head as possible ⇒ fig. 236.

– Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇒ *page 235*.

– Always keep both feet in the footwell so that you are in control of the vehicle at all times.

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver's seat, see ⇒ *page 93*.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Drivers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:**

- **Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your breastbone and the steering wheel.**
- **Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

**to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.**

- **Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag deploys.**
- **Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the supplemental driver's airbag to protect you in a collision.**
- **Always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of your body too close to the area where the airbags are located.**
- **Before driving, always adjust the front seats and head restraints properly and make sure that all passengers are properly restrained.**
- **Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle.**
- **Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.**
- **Children must always ride in child safety seats ⇒ *page 263*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇒ *page 241*. ■**

## Proper seating position for the front passenger

*The proper front passenger seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.*

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the seat for the front passenger to the following position:

– Move the front passenger seat back as far as possible. There must be a minimum of 10 inches (25 cm) between the breastbone and the instrument panel ⇒ ⚠.

– Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position and your back comes in full contact with it whenever the vehicle is moving.

– Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge is as even with the top of your head as possible but not lower than eye level and so that it is as close to the back of your head as possible ⇒ *page 225*.

– Keep both feet flat on the floor in front of the front passenger seat.

– Fasten and wear safety belts correctly⇒ *page 235*.

For detailed information on how to adjust the front passenger's seat, see ⇒ *page 92*.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Front seat passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured or killed by the airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Passengers must always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.**
- **Passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye.**
- **Always make sure that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the front passenger's breastbone and the instrument panel.**
- **Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.**
- **Before driving, always adjust the front passenger seat and head restraint properly.**
- **Always keep your feet on the floor in front of the seat. Never rest them on the seat, instrument panel, out of the window, etc. The airbag system and safety belt will not be able to protect you properly and can even increase the risk of injury in a crash.**
- **Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.**
- **Children must always ride in child safety seats ⇒ *page 263*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇒ *page 241*. ■**

## Proper seating positions for passengers in rear seats

*Rear seat passengers must sit upright with both feet on the floor consistent with their physical size and be properly restrained whenever the vehicle is in use.*

To reduce the risk of injury caused by an incorrect seating position in the event of a sudden braking maneuver or an accident, your passengers on the rear bench seat must always observe the following:

– Make sure that the seatback is securely latched in the upright position ⇒ *page 104*.
– Keep both feet flat in the footwell in front of the rear seat.
– Fasten and wear safety belts properly ⇒ *page 235*.
– Make sure that children are always properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their size and age ⇒ *page 263*.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Passengers who are improperly seated on the rear seat can be seriously injured in a crash.**

- **Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.**
- **Safety belts only offer maximum protection when the seatback is securely latched in the upright position and the safety belts are properly positioned on the body. By not sitting upright, a rear seat passenger increases the risk of personal injury from improperly positioned safety belts!**
- **Always adjust the head restraint properly so that it can give maximum protection. ■**

## Proper adjustment of head restraints

*Correctly adjusted head restraints are an important part of your vehicle's occupant restraint system and can help to reduce the risk of injuries in accident situations.*

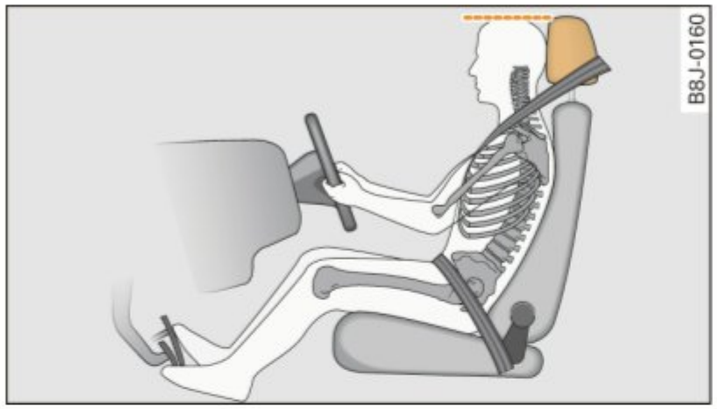



**Fig. 237 Correctly adjusted head restraint viewed from the side**

The head restraints must be correctly adjusted to achieve the best protection.

– Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge of the restraint is level with the top of your head, but no lower than eye level and so it is as close to the back of your head as possible ⇒ *page 225,* fig. 237.

Adjusting head restraints ⇒ *page 101.*

**⚠ WARNING**

**Driving without head restraints or with improperly adjusted head restraints increases the risk of serious injuries in a collision. To help reduce the risk of injury:**

- **Always drive with the head restraints in place and properly adjusted.**
- **Every person in the vehicle must have a properly adjusted head restraint.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Always make sure each person in the vehicle properly adjusts their head restraint. Each head restraint must be adjusted according to occupants' size so that the upper edge is as even with the top of the person's head, but no lower than eye level and so it is as close to the back of to the head as possible.**
- **Never attempt to adjust head restraint while driving. If you have driven off and must adjust the driver headrest for any reason, first stop the vehicle safely before attempting to adjust the head restraint.**
- **Children must always be properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their age and size ⇒ *page 263.* ■**

## Examples of improper seating positions

*The occupant restraint system can only reduce the risk of injury if vehicle occupants are properly seated.*

Improper seating positions can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are properly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the proper seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

– Never allow anyone to assume an incorrect seating position when the vehicle is being used ⇒ ⚠.

The following bulletins list only some sample positions that will increase the risk of serious injury and death. Our hope is that these ▶

examples will make you more aware of seating positions that are dangerous.

**Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:**

- never stand up in the vehicle
- never stand on the seats
- never kneel on the seats
- never ride with the seatback reclined
- never lie down on the rear seat
- never lean up against the instrument panel
- never sit on the edge of the seat
- never sit sideways
- never lean out the window
- never put your feet out the window
- never put your feet on the instrument panel
- never rest your feet on the seat cushion or back of the seat
- never ride in the footwell
- never ride in the cargo area

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.**

- **Always make sure that all vehicle occupants stay in a proper seating position and are properly restrained whenever the vehicle is being used.** ■

# Pedal area

## Pedals

*The pedals must always be free to move and must never be interfered with by a floor mat or any other object.*

Make sure that all pedals move freely without interference and that nothing prevents them from returning to their original positions.

Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area free and can be secured with floor mat fasteners.

If a brake circuit fails, increased brake pedal travel is required to bring the vehicle to a full stop.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious injury.**

- **Never place any objects in the driver's footwell. An object could get into the pedal area and interfere with pedal function. In case of sudden braking or an accident, you would not be able to brake or accelerate!**
- **Always make sure that nothing can fall or move into the driver's footwell.** ■

## Floor mats on the driver side

*Always use floor mats that can be securely attached to the floor mat fasteners and do not interfere with the free movement of the pedals.*

– Make sure that the floor mats are properly secured and cannot move and interfere with the pedals ⇒ ⚠.

Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed and that are firmly secured so that they cannot slip out of position. You can obtain suitable floor mats from your authorized Audi dealer.

Floor mat fasteners are installed in your Audi.

Floor mats used in your vehicle must be attached to these fasteners. Properly securing the floor mats will prevent them from sliding into positions that could interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Pedals that cannot move freely can result in a loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.**

- **Always make sure that floor mats are properly secured.**
- **Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings in the vehicle that cannot be properly secured in place to prevent them from slipping and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.**
- **Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings on top of already installed floor mats. Additional floor mats and other coverings will reduce the size of the pedal area and interfere with the pedals.**
- **Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been taken out for cleaning.**
- **Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving. Objects can become trapped under the brake pedal and accelerator pedal causing a loss of vehicle control.** ■

# Stowing luggage

## Loading the luggage compartment

*All luggage and other objects must be properly stowed and secured in the luggage compartment.*

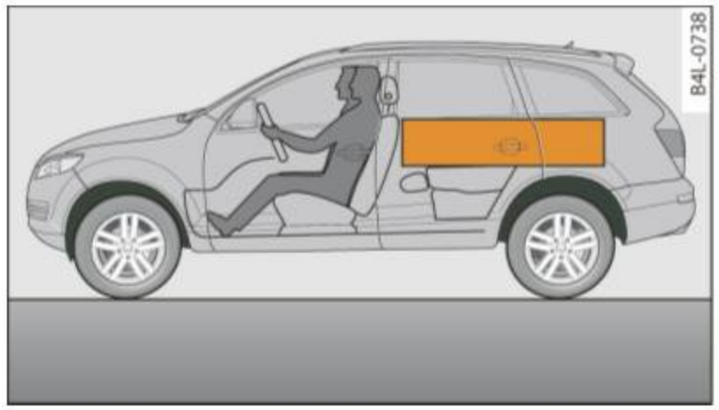



**Fig. 238 Safe load positioning: place heavy objects as low and as far forward as possible.**

Loose items in the luggage compartment can shift suddenly, changing vehicle handling characteristics. Loose items can also increase the risk of serious personal injury in a sudden vehicle maneuver or in a collision.

– Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.

– Always place and properly secure heavy items in the luggage compartment as low and as far forward as possible ⇒ fig. 238.

– Secure luggage using the tie-downs provided ⇒ *page 105*.

– Make sure that the rear seat back is securely latched in place. ▶

**WARNING**

Improperly stored luggage or other items can fly through the vehicle causing serious personal injury in the event of hard braking or an accident. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Always put objects, for example, luggage or other heavy items in the luggage compartment.
- Always secure objects in the luggage compartment using the tie-down eyelets and suitable straps.

**WARNING**

Heavy loads will influence the way your vehicle handles. To help reduce the risk of a loss of control leading to serious personal injury:

- Always keep in mind when transporting heavy objects, that a change in the center of gravity can also cause changes in vehicle handling:
  - Always distribute the load as evenly as possible.
  - Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
- Never exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating specified on the safety compliance sticker on the left door jamb. Exceeding permissible weight standards can cause the vehicle to slide and handle differently.
- Please observe information on safe driving ⇒ *page 220*.

**WARNING**

To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving.

- Never transport objects larger than those fitting completely into the luggage area because the rear lid cannot be fully closed.

**WARNING (continued)**

- If you absolutely must drive with the rear lid open, observe the following notes to reduce the risk of poisoning:
  - Close all windows,
  - Close the Panoramic sliding sunroof*,
  - Open all air outlets in the instrument panel,
  - Switch off the air recirculation,
  - Set the fresh air fan to the highest speed.

**WARNING**

Always make sure that the doors, all windows, the Panoramic sliding sunroof* and the rear lid are securely closed and locked to reduce the risk of injury when the vehicle is not being used.

- After closing the rear lid, always make sure that it is properly closed and locked.
- Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle through the luggage compartment and close the rear lid becoming trapped and unable to get out. Being trapped in a vehicle can lead to serious personal injury.
- Never let children play in or around the vehicle.
- Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. Vehicle occupants must always be properly restrained in one of the vehicle's seating positions.

**Tips**

- Air circulation helps to reduce window fogging. Stale air escapes to the outside through vents in the trim panel. Be sure to keep these slots free and open.
- The tire pressure must correspond to the load. The tire pressure is shown on the tire pressure label. On USA vehicles, the tire pres- ▶

sure label is located on the driver's side B-pillar. On Canada vehicles, the tire pressure label is located either on the driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap. The tire pressure label lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the vehicle at its maximum capacity weight and the tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. For recommended tire pressures for normal load conditions, please see chapter ⇒ *page 351*. ■

## Tie-downs

*The luggage compartment is equipped with four tie-downs to secure luggage and other items.*

Use the tie-downs to secure your cargo properly ⇒ *page 227*, "Loading the luggage compartment".

In a collision, the laws of physics mean that even smaller items that are loose in the vehicle will become heavy missiles that can cause serious injury. Items in the vehicle possess energy which vary with vehicle speed and the weight of the item. Vehicle speed is the most significant factor.

For example, in a frontal collision at a speed of 30 mph (48 km/h), the forces acting on a 10-lb (4.5 kg) object are about 20 times the normal weight of the item. This means that the weight of the item would suddenly be about 200 lbs. (90 kg). You can imagine the injuries that a 200 lbs. (90 kg) item flying freely through the passenger compartment could cause in a collision like this.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Weak, damaged or improper straps used to secure items to tie-downs can fail during hard braking or in a collision and cause serious personal injury.**

- **Always use suitable mounting straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from shifting or flying forward as dangerous missiles.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **When the rear seat backrest is folded down, always use suitable mounting straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from flying forward as dangerous missiles into the passenger compartment.**
- **Never attach a child safety seat tether strap to a tie-down.** ■

## Reporting Safety Defects

### Applicable to U.S.A.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Audi of America, Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defects exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Audi of America, Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at:

Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153) ▶

or write to:

Administrator
NHTSA
1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from:

http://www.safercar.gov

## Applicable to Canada

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may telephone the toll free hotline:

Tel.: 1-800-333-0371

or contact Transport Canada by mail at:

Road Safety and Motor Vehicle Regulation
Directorate
Transport Canada
Tower C, Place de Ville,
330 Sparks Street
Ottawa, ON K1A 0N5

For additional road safety information, please visit the Road Safety website at:

http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety/menu.htm ■

# Safety belts

## General notes

### Always wear safety belts!

*Wearing safety belts correctly saves lives!*

This chapter explains why safety belts are necessary, how they work and how to adjust and wear them correctly.

– Read all the information that follows and heed all of the instructions and WARNINGS.

**WARNING**

**Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.**

- **Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.**
- **Pregnant women, injured, or physically impaired persons must also use safety belts. Like all vehicle occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts. The best way to protect a fetus is to protect the mother - throughout the entire pregnancy.** ■

### Number of seats

**Vehicles with five seats:** Your vehicle has two front seats and three rear seats. Each seating position has a safety belt.

**Vehicles with six seats:*** Your vehicle has two front seats, two seats in the second row and two seats in the third row. Each seating position has a safety belt.

**Vehicles with seven seats:*** Your vehicles has two front seats, three seats in the second row and two seats in the third row. Each seating position has a safety belt.

**WARNING**

**Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.**

- **Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt. It is especially dangerous to place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.**
- **Never let more people ride in the vehicle than there are safety belts available.**
- **Be sure everyone riding in the vehicle is properly restrained with a separate safety belt or child restraint.** ■

### Safety belt warning light

*Your vehicle has a warning system for the driver and front seat passenger (on USA models only) to remind you about the importance of buckling-up.*




**Fig. 239 Safety belt warning light in the instrument cluster - enlarged**

**Before driving off, always:**

- Fasten your safety belt and make sure you are wearing it properly.
- Make sure that your passengers also buckle up and properly wear their safety belts.
- Protect children with a child restraint system appropriate for the size and age.

The warning light in the instrument cluster lights up when the ignition is switched on as a reminder to fasten the safety belts. In addition, you will hear a warning tone.

After the ignition is switched on, the warning light in the instrument cluster will always come on for about 6 seconds and if the driver has not fastened the safety belt, a warning tone will also sound for about 6 seconds. As soon as the driver has fastened the safety belt, the warning tone will stop and the warning light will go out.

If the driver or front seat passenger have not buckled-up within about 10 seconds after the warning tone has stopped and the vehicle is moving faster than about 15 mph, the warning tone will sound again for about 6 seconds and then stop for 24 seconds and then repeat this reminder sequence for a maximum of 2 minutes. At speeds below 5 mph, the warning tone will not sound.

**Fasten your safety belt and make sure that your passengers also properly put on their safety belts.**

**WARNING**

- **Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.**
- **Failure to pay attention to the warning light that come on, could lead to personal injury.** ■

# Why safety belts?

## Frontal collisions and the law of physics

*Frontal crashes create very strong forces for people riding in vehicles.*

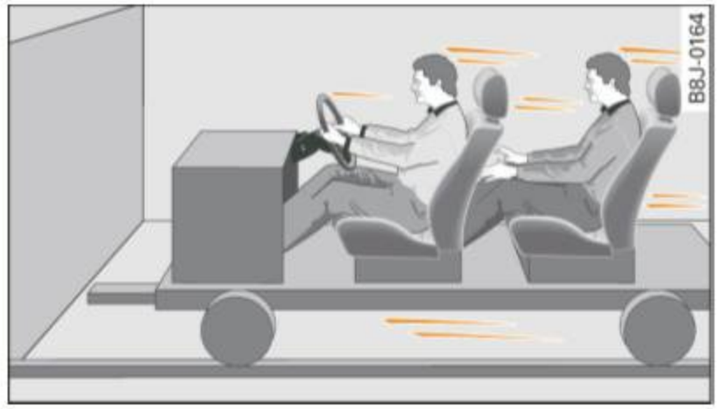



**Fig. 240 Unbelted occupants in a vehicle heading for a wall**




**Fig. 241 The vehicle crashes into the wall**

The physical principles are simple. Both the vehicle and the passengers possess energy which varies with vehicle speed and body weight. Engineers call this energy “kinetic energy.”

The higher the speed of the vehicle and the greater the vehicle's weight, the more energy that has to be “absorbed” in the crash.

Vehicle speed is the most significant factor. If the speed doubles from 15 to 30 mph (25 to 50 km/h), the energy increases 4 times! ▶

Because the passengers of this vehicle are not using safety belts ⇒ *page 232,* fig. 240, they will keep moving at the same speed the vehicle was moving just before the crash, until something stops them - here, the wall ⇒ *page 232,* fig. 241.

The same principles apply to people sitting in a vehicle that is involved in a frontal collision. Even at city speeds of 20 to 30 mph (30 to 50 km/h), the forces acting on the body can reach one ton (2,000 lbs. or 1,000 kg) or more. At greater speeds, these forces are even higher.

People who do not use safety belts are also not attached to their vehicle. In a frontal collision they will also keep moving forward at the speed their vehicle was travelling just before the crash. Of course, the laws of physics don't just apply to frontal collisions, they determine what happens in all kinds of accidents and collisions. ■

## What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?

*In crashes unbelted occupants cannot stop themselves from flying forward and being injured or killed. Always wear your safety belts!*




**Fig. 242 A driver not wearing a safety belt is violently thrown forward**




**Fig. 243 A rear passenger not wearing a safety belt will fly forward and strike the driver**

Unbelted occupants are not able to resist the tremendous forces of impact by holding tight or bracing themselves. Without the benefit of safety restraint systems, the unrestrained occupant will slam violently into the steering wheel, instrument panel, windshield, or whatever else is in the way ⇒ fig. 242. This impact with the vehicle interior has all the energy they had just before the crash.

Never rely on airbags alone for protection. Even when they deploy, airbags provide only additional protection. Airbags are not supposed to deploy in all kinds of accidents. Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, must wear safety belts correctly in order to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in a crash.

Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and that your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed. Unbelted occupants can also be thrown out of the vehicle where even more severe or fatal injuries can occur.

It is also important for the rear passengers to wear safety belts correctly. Unbelted passengers in the rear seats endanger not only themselves but also the driver and other passengers ⇒ fig. 243. In a frontal collision they will be thrown forward violently, where they can hit and injure the driver and/or front seat passenger. ■

## Safety belts protect

*People think it's possible to use the hands to brace the body in a minor collision. It's simply not true!*




**Fig. 244 Driver is correctly restrained in a sudden braking maneuver**

Safety belts used properly can make a big difference. Safety belts help to keep passengers in their seats, gradually reduce energy levels applied to the body in an accident, and help prevent the uncontrolled movement that can cause serious injuries. In addition, safety belts reduce the danger of being thrown out of the vehicle.

Safety belts attach passengers to the car and give them the benefit of being slowed down more gently or “softly” through the “give” in the safety belts, crush zones and other safety features engineered into today's vehicles. By “absorbing” the kinetic energy over a longer period of time, the safety belts make the forces on the body more “tolerable” and less likely to cause injury.

Although these examples are based on a frontal collision, safety belts can also substantially reduce the risk of injury in other kinds of crashes. So, whether you're on a long trip or just going to the corner store, always buckle up and make sure others do, too. Accident statistics show that vehicle occupants properly wearing safety belts have a lower risk of being injured and a much better chance of surviving an accident. Properly using safety belts also greatly increases the ability of the supplemental airbags to do their job in a collision. For this reason, wearing a safety belt is legally required in most countries including much of the United States and Canada.

Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, you still have to wear the safety belts provided. Front airbags, for example, are activated only in some frontal collisions. The front airbags are not activated in all frontal collisions, in side and rear collisions, in roll overs or in cases where there is not enough deceleration through impact to the front of the vehicle. The same goes for the other airbag systems in your Audi. So, always wear your safety belt and make sure everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained! ■

## Important safety instructions about safety belts

*Safety belts must always be correctly positioned across the strongest bones of your body.*

– Always wear safety belts as illustrated and described in this chapter.
– Make sure that your safety belts are always ready for use and are not damaged.

**WARNING**

**Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death. Safety belts can work only when used correctly.**

- **Always fasten your safety belts correctly before driving off and make sure all passengers are correctly restrained.**
- **For maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned properly on the body.**
- **Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt.**
- **Never place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.**
- **Always keep feet in the footwell in front of the seat while the vehicle is being driven.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Never let any person ride with their feet on the instrument panel or sticking out the window or on the seat.**
- **Never remove a safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.**
- **Never wear belts twisted.**
- **Never wear belts over rigid or breakable objects in or on your clothing, such as eye glasses, pens, keys, etc., as these may cause injury.**
- **Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware.**
- **Do not wear the shoulder part of the belt under your arm or otherwise out of position.**
- **Several layers of heavy clothing may interfere with correct positioning of belts and reduce the overall effectiveness of the system.**
- **Always keep belt buckles free of anything that may prevent the buckle from latching securely.**
- **Never use comfort clips or devices that create slack in the shoulder belt. However, special clips may be required for the proper use of some child restraint systems.**
- **Torn or frayed safety belts can tear, and damaged belt hardware can break in an accident. Inspect belts regularly. If webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors are damaged, have belts replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.**
- **Safety belts that have been worn and loaded in an accident must be replaced with the correct replacement safety belt by an authorized Audi dealer. Replacement may be necessary even if damage cannot be clearly seen. Anchorages that were loaded must also be inspected.**
- **Never remove, modify, disassemble, or try to repair the safety belts yourself.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Always keep the belts clean. Dirty belts may not work properly and can impair the function of the inertia reel ⇒ *page 323,* "Safety belts".** ■

# Safety belts

## Fastening safety belts

*Seat first - everybody buckle up!*




**Fig. 245 Belt buckle and tongue on the driver's seat**

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body.

– Adjust the front seat and head restraint properly ⇒ *page 92,* "General recommendations".

– Make sure the seat back of the rear seat bench is in an upright position and securely latched in place before using the belt ⇒ ⚠.

– Hold the belt by the tongue and pull it evenly across the chest and pelvis ⇒ ⚠.

– Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely ⇒ fig. 245.

– Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

### Automatic safety belt retractors

Every safety belt is equipped with an automatic belt retractor on the shoulder belt. This feature locks the belt when the belt is pulled out fast, during hard braking and in an accident. The belt may also lock when you drive up or down a steep hill or through a sharp curve. During normal driving the belt lets you move freely.

### Safety belt pretensioners

The safety belts are equipped with a belt pretensioner that helps to tighten the safety belt and remove slack when the pretensioner is activated. The function of the pretensioner is monitored by a warning light ⇒ *page 19*.

### Switchable locking feature

Every safety belt except the one on the driver seat is equipped with a switchable locking feature that **must** be used when the safety belt is used to attach a child safety seat. Be sure to read the important information about this feature ⇒ *page 273*.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious injury in an accident ⇒ *page 236*, "Safety belt position".**

- **Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seat back is upright and belts are properly positioned on the body.**
- **Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used. If the backrest is not securely latched, the passenger will move forward with the backrest during sudden braking, in a sudden maneuver and especially in a crash.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Never attach the safety belt to the buckle for another seat. Attaching the belt to the wrong buckle will reduce safety belt effectiveness and can cause serious personal injury.**
- **A passenger who is not properly restrained can be seriously injured by the safety belt itself when it moves from the stronger parts of the body into critical areas like the abdomen.**
- **Always lock the convertible locking retractor when you are securing a child safety seat in the vehicle ⇒ *page 275*. ■**

## Safety belt position

*Correct belt position is the key to getting maximum protection from safety belts.*

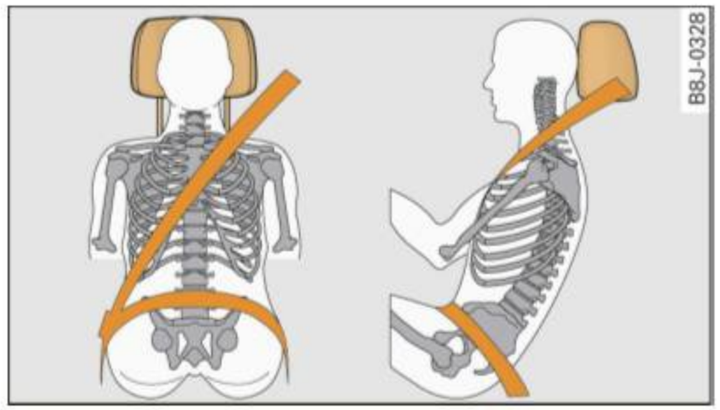



**Fig. 246 Head restraint and safety belt position as seen from the side**

Standard features on your vehicle help you adjust the position of the safety belt to match your body size.

- belt height adjustment for the front seats and the outer seating positions in the second row seating,
- height-adjustable front seats.

**WARNING**

**Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.**

- **The shoulder belt portion of the safety belt must be positioned over the middle of the occupant's shoulder and never across the neck or throat.**
- **The safety belt must lie flat and snug on the occupant's upper body ⇒ *page 236,* fig. 246. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.**
- **The lap belt portion of the safety belt must be positioned as low as possible across pelvis and never over the abdomen. Make sure the belt lies flat and snug ⇒ *page 236,* fig. 246. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.**
- **A loose-fitting safety belt can cause serious injuries by shifting its position on your body from the strong bones to more vulnerable, soft tissue and cause serious injury.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇒ *page 234.* ■**

## Pregnant women must also be correctly restrained

*The best way to protect the fetus is to make sure that expectant mothers always wear safety belts correctly - throughout the pregnancy.*




**Fig. 247 Safety belt position during pregnancy**

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body ⇒ *page 236.*

- Adjust the front seat and head restraint correctly ⇒ *page 92,* "General recommendations".
- Make sure the seat back of the rear seat bench is in an upright position and securely latched in place before using the belt.
- Hold the belt by the tongue and pull it evenly across the chest and pelvis ⇒ fig. 247, ⇒ ⚠.
- Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely ⇒ *page 235,* fig. 245.
- Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.**

- **Expectant mothers must always wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low as possible across the pelvis and below the rounding of the abdomen.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇒ ⚠ in "Fastening safety belts" on *page 235*. ■**

## Unfastening safety belts

*Unbuckle the safety belt with the red release button only after the vehicle has stopped.*




**Fig. 248 Releasing the tongue from the buckle**

– Push the red release button on the buckle ⇒ fig. 248. The belt tongue will spring out of the buckle ⇒ ⚠.

– Let the belt wind up on the retractor as you guide the belt tongue to its stowed position.

On vehicles with **third row seat***: an unfastened safety belt can be secured in the retaining clip in the luggage compartment side trim. In this way, the luggage compartment cover can be removed without obstruction. Also, the belt tongue height can be adjusted so that luggage compartment can be loaded without obstruction with the backrest folded forward.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never unfasten safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed. ■**

## Adjusting safety belt height

*With the aid of the safety belt height adjustment, the three point safety belt strap routing can be fitted to the shoulder area, according to body size.*




**Fig. 249 Safety belt height adjustment – loop-around fittings**

– *Push* the loop-around fittings **up** ⇒ fig. 249 (2), or

– *squeeze* together the (1) button, and *push* the loop-around fittings **down** (2).

– Pull the belt to make sure that the upper attachment is properly engaged.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇒ *page 234*.**

### Tips

- The shoulder belt part should route approximately over the middle of your shoulder – under no circumstances should it route over your neck and throat area ⇒ ⚠ in “Safety belt position” on *page 236*.
- With the front seats, the height adjustment of the seat can also be used to adjust the position of the safety belts. ■

## Improperly worn safety belts

*Incorrectly positioned safety belts can cause severe injuries.*

Wearing safety belts improperly can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are correctly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the correct seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

– Never permit anyone to assume an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle while traveling ⇒ ⚠.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improperly worn safety belts increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.**

- **Always make sure that all vehicle occupants are correctly restrained and stay in a correct seating position whenever the vehicle is being used.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇒ *page 234*.** ■

# Safety belt pretensioners

## How safety belt pretensioners work

*In front, side and rear-end collisions above a particular severity and in a rollover, safety belts are tensioned automatically.*

The safety belts are equipped with safety belt pretensioners. The system is activated by sensors in front, side and rear-end collisions of great severity and in a rollover. This tightens the belt and takes up belt slack ⇒ ⚠ in “Service and disposal of safety belt pretensioner” on *page 240*. Taking up the slack helps to reduce forward occupant movement during a collision.

### Note

Never let the belt remain over a rear seat back that has been folded forward.

### Tips

The safety belt pretensioner can only be activated once.

- In minor frontal and side collisions, in rear-end collisions and in accidents involving very little impact force, the safety belt pretensioner are not activated.
- When the safety belt pretensioners are activated, a fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle.
- The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. An authorized ▶

Audi dealer or qualified workshop is familiar with these regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you.

- Be sure to observe all safety, environmental and other regulations if the vehicle or individual parts of the system, particularly the safety belt or airbag, are to be disposed. We recommend you have your authorized Audi dealer perform this service for you. ■

## Service and disposal of safety belt pretensioner

The safety belt pretensioners are parts of the safety belts on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing of belt pretensioners can damage the safety belt system and prevent it from working correctly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing a safety belt pretensioner from activating when needed or activating it unexpectedly:**

- **The belt pretensioner system can be activated only once. If belt pretensioners have been activated, the system must be replaced.**
- **Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the safety belt system.**
- **Safety belt systems including safety belt pretensioners cannot be repaired. Special procedures are required for removal, installation and disposal of this system.**
- **For any work on the safety belt system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified technician who has an Audi approved repair manual, training and special equipment necessary.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

**cian who has an Audi approved repair manual, training and special equipment necessary.**

### For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you. ■

# Airbag system

## Important things to know

### Importance of wearing safety belts and sitting properly

*Airbags are only supplemental restraints. For airbags to do their job, occupants must always properly wear their safety belts and be in a proper seating position.*

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, before driving off, always:

- Adjust the driver's seat and steering wheel properly ⇒ *page 222*,
- Adjust the front passenger's seat properly ⇒ *page 93*,
- Wear safety belts properly ⇒ *page 234*,
- Always properly use the proper child restraint to protect children ⇒ *page 263*.

In a collision, airbags must inflate within the blink of an eye and with considerable force. The supplemental airbags can cause injuries if the driver or the front seat passenger is not seated properly. Therefore in order to help the airbag to do its job, it is important, both as a driver and as a passenger to sit properly at all times.

By keeping room between your body and the steering wheel and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions ⇒ *page 222*, "Proper occupant seating positions". For details on the operation of the seat adjustment controls ⇒ *page 93*.

It's especially important that children are properly restrained ⇒ *page 263*.

There is a lot that the driver and the passengers can and must do to help the individual safety features installed in your Audi work together as a system.

Proper seating position is important so that the front airbag on the driver side can do its job. If you have a physical impairment or condition that prevents you from sitting properly on the driver seat with the safety belt properly fastened and reaching the pedals, or if you have concerns with regard to the function or operation of the Advanced Airbag System, please contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop, or call Audi Customer CARE at 1-800-822-2834 for possible modifications to your vehicle.

When the airbag system deploys, a gas generator will fill the airbags, break open the padded covers, and inflate between the steering wheel and the driver and between the instrument panel and the front passenger. The airbags will deflate immediately after deployment so that the front occupants can see through the windshield again without interruption.

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and nothing should be in their way when they deploy. Front airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement. Together they help to prevent the driver and front seat passenger from hitting parts of the inside of the vehicle while reducing the forces acting on the occupant during the crash. In this way they help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and upper body in the crash. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body.

Both front airbags will not inflate in all frontal collisions. The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the electronic control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. Vehicle damage, ▶

repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not necessarily an indication of whether an airbag should inflate or not.

Since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another, it is not possible to define a range of vehicle speeds that will cover every possible kind and angle of impact that will always trigger the airbags. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. The front airbags will also not inflate in side or rear collisions, or in roll-overs.

**Always remember:** Airbags will deploy only once, and only in certain kinds of collisions. Your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those situations in which airbags are not supposed to deploy, or when they have already deployed; for example, when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another vehicle after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is a supplementary restraint and is not a substitute for a safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always properly wear your safety belts ⇒ *page 231*.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Sitting too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel will decrease the effectiveness of the airbags and will increase the risk of personal injury in a collision.**

- **Never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) to the steering wheel or instrument panel.**
- **If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.**
- **If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.**
- **You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly ⇒ *page 235*, "Safety belts".**
- **Always make certain that children age 12 or younger always ride in the rear seat. If children are not properly restrained, they may be severely injured or killed when an airbag inflates.**
- **Never let children ride unrestrained or improperly restrained in the vehicle. Adjust the front seats properly.**
- **Never ride with the backrest reclined.**
- **Always sit as far as possible from the steering wheel or the instrument panel ⇒ *page 222*.**
- **Always sit upright with your back against the backrest of your seat.**
- **Never place your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat to help prevent serious injuries to the legs and hips if the airbag inflates.**
- **Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury when an airbag inflates.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced.**

- **Use only original equipment airbags approved by Audi and installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.**
- **Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.** ■

## Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know

– Be sure to read the important information and heed the WARNINGS for important details about children and Advanced Airbags ⇒ *page 263*.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially those 12 years and younger, always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a child in a rearward-facing seat.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to comply with the requirements of United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Standard requires the front airbag on the passenger side to be turned off ("suppressed") if a child up to about one year of age restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified has been installed on the front passenger seat. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇒ *page 265*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the instrument panel tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit.

Each time you turn on the ignition, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on for a few seconds and:

- will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied
- will stay on if there is a small child or child restraint on the front passenger seat
- will go off if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the weight-sensing mat ⇒ *page 252*, "Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System".

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when the control unit detects a total weight on the front passenger seat that requires the front airbag to be turned off.

If the total weight on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old child but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side can deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on). If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the electronic control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

**For example, the airbag may deploy if:**

- a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child safety seats listed ⇒ *page 265*), or
- a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on in the instrument cluster and stays on.

The front airbag on the passenger side may *not* deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not illuminate and stay lit) even if a small adult or teenager, or a passenger who is not sitting upright with their back against a non-reclined backrest with their feet on the vehicle floor in front of the seat is on the front passenger seat ⇒ *page 222*, "Proper seating position for the driver".

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the "low risk" deployment criteria to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. "Low risk" deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations ▶

as defined in the electronic control unit ⇒ *page 253,* “PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light”.

Always remember, a child safety seat or infant carrier installed on the front seat may be struck and knocked out of position by the rapidly inflating passenger's airbag in a frontal collision. The airbag could greatly reduce the effectiveness of the child restraint and even seriously injure the child during inflation.

For this reason, and because the back seat is the safest place for children - when properly restrained according to their age and size - we strongly recommend that children always sit in the back seat ⇒ *page 263,* “Child Safety”.

**⚠ WARNING**

**A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.**

- **The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.**
- **Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.**
- **If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.**
- **Forward-facing child safety seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.**
- **Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.**
- **Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.**
- **Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will be displayed whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.**

- **If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on, perform the checks described ⇒ *page 252,* “Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System”.**
- **Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on.**
- **Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.**
- **Always carefully follow instructions from child restraint manufacturers when installing child restraints.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.**
- **An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System.**
- **Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.**
- **Never place additional items on the seat that can increase the total weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and can cause injury in a crash.** ■

# Front airbags

## Description of front airbags

*The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.*




**Fig. 250 Location of driver airbag: in steering wheel**




**Fig. 251 Location of front passenger's airbag: in the instrument panel**

Your vehicle is equipped with an "Advanced Airbag System" in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. The safety belts for the seats have "pretensioners" that help to take slack out of the belt system. The pretensioners are also activated by the electronic control unit for the airbag system.

The front safety belts also have load limiters to help reduce the forces applied to the body in a crash.

The airbag for the driver is in the steering wheel hub ⇒ fig. 250 and the airbag for the front passenger is in the instrument panel ⇒ fig. 251. The general location of the airbags is marked "AIRBAG".

There is a lot you need to know about the airbags in your vehicle. We urge you to read the detailed information about airbags, safety belts and child safety in this and the other chapters that make up the owner's literature. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never rely on airbags alone for protection.**

- **Even when they deploy, airbags provide only supplemental protection.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **Airbag work most effectively when used with properly worn safety belts.**
- **Therefore, always wear your safety belts and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained.**

**WARNING**

**A person on the front passenger seat, especially infants and small children, will receive serious injuries and can even be killed by being too close to the airbag when it inflates.**

- **Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front passenger airbag if an infant or a small child is on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment under these special conditions is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.**
- **The Advanced Airbag System can deploy in accordance with the "low risk" option under the U.S. Federal Standard if a child that is heavier than the typical one-year old child is on the front passenger seat and the other conditions for airbag deployment are met.**
- **Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position.**
- **For their own safety, all children, especially 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back properly restrained for their age and size.** ■

## Advanced front airbag system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front Advanced Airbag System in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The front Advanced Airbag System supplements the safety belts to provide additional protection for the driver's and front passenger's heads and upper bodies in frontal crashes. The airbags inflate only in frontal impacts when the vehicle deceleration is high enough.

The front Advanced Airbag System for the front seat occupants is not a substitute for your safety belts. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you, if you are sitting upright, wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you and your passengers must always be properly restrained, not just because the law requires you to be.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to meet the "low risk" requirements for 3 and 6 year-old children on the passenger side and very small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the front airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates.

In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the "suppression" requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants 12 months old and younger who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard ⇒ *page 265,* "Child restraints and Advanced Airbags".

"Suppression" requires the front airbag on the passenger side to be turned off if:

- a child up to about one year of age is restrained on the front passenger seat in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇒ *page 265,*
- weight less than a threshold level stored in the control unit is detected on the front passenger seat.

When a person is detected on the front passenger seat, weighing more than the total weight of a child that is about 1 year old restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints (listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified), the front airbag on the passenger side may or may not deploy.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when the electronic control unit detects a total weight on the front passenger seat that requires the front airbag to be turned off. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

If the total weight on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old, but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side may deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on).

**For example, the airbag may deploy if:**

- a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child safety seats listed ⇒ *page 265*),
- a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the center of the instrument panel will come on and stay on.

The front airbag on the passenger side may *not* deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not illuminate and stay lit) if:

- a small adult or teenager is on the front passenger seat
- a passenger who is not sitting upright with their back against a non-reclined backrest with their feet on the vehicle floor in front of the seat is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the "low risk" deployment criteria to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. "Low risk" deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit. ⇒ *page 252*

**Always remember:** Even though your vehicle is equipped with Advanced Airbags, the safest place for children is properly restrained on the back seat. Please be sure to read the important information in the sections that follow and be sure to heed all of the WARNINGS.

**WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.**

- **If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.**
- **You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇒ *page 241*.**

**WARNING**

**A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.**

- **Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front airbag when a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.**
- **The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door, or roof.**
- **Always install rearward-facing child restraints on the rear seat.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:**

- **Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.**
- **Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.**
- **Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.**
- **Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.** ■

## Advanced Airbag System components

The front passenger seat in your vehicle has a lot of very important parts of the Advanced Airbag System in it. These parts include the weight-sensing mat, sensors, wiring, brackets, and more. The function of the system in the front passenger seat is checked by the electronic control unit when the ignition is on. The control unit monitors the Advanced Airbag System and turns the airbag indicator light on when a malfunction in the system components is detected. The function of the airbag indicator light is described in greater detail below. Because the front passenger seat contains important parts of the Advanced Airbag System, you must take care to prevent it from being damaged. Damage to the seat may prevent the Advanced Airbag for the front passenger seat from doing its job in a crash.

### The front Advanced Airbag System consists of the following:

- Crash sensors in the front of the vehicle that measure vehicle acceleration/deceleration to provide information to the Advanced Airbag System about the severity of the crash.
- An electronic control unit, with integrated crash sensors for front and side impacts. The control unit “decides” whether to fire the front airbags based on the information received from the crash sensors. The control unit also “decides” whether the safety belt pretensioners should be activated.
- An Advanced Airbag with gas generator for the driver inside the steering wheel hub.
- An Advanced Airbag with gas generator inside the instrument panel for the front passenger.
- A weight-sensing mat under the upholstery padding of the front passenger seat cushion that measures the total weight on the seat. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side.
- An airbag monitoring system and indicator light in the instrument cluster ⇒ *page 252*.
- The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on in the center of the instrument panel ⇒ *page 253,* fig. 253 and tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off.
- A sensor below the safety belt latch for the front seat passenger to measure the tension on the safety belt. The tension on the safety belt and the weight registered by the weight-sensing mat help the control unit “decide” whether the front airbag for the front ▶

passenger seat should be turned off or not ⇒ *page 243,* "Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know".

- A sensor in the safety belt latch for the driver and for the front seat passenger that senses whether that safety belt is latched or not and transmits this information to the electronic control unit.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Damage to the front passenger seat can prevent the front airbag from working properly.**

- **Improper repair or disassembly of the front passenger and driver seat will prevent the Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly.**
- **Repairs to the front passenger seat must be performed by qualified and properly trained workshop personnel.**
- **Never remove the front passenger or driver seat from the vehicle.**
- **Never remove the upholstery from the front passenger seat.**
- **Never disassemble or remove parts from the seat or disconnect wires from it.**
- **Never carry sharp objects in your pockets or place them on the seat. If the weight-sensing mat in the passenger seat is punctured it cannot work properly.**
- **Never carry things on your lap or carry objects on the passenger seat. Such items can increase the weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and send the wrong information to the airbag control unit.**
- **Never store items under the front passenger seat. Parts of the Advanced Airbag System under the passenger seat could be damaged, preventing them and the airbag system from working properly.**
- **Never place seat covers or replacement upholstery that have not been specifically approved by Audi on the front seats.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Seat covers can prevent the Advanced Airbag System from recognizing child restraints or occupants on the front passenger seat and prevent the side airbag in the seat backrest from deploying properly.**
- **Never use cushions, pillows, blankets or similar items on the front passenger seat. The additional padding will prevent the weight-sensing mat in the seat from accurately registering the child restraint or person on the seat and prevent the Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly.**
- **If you must use a child restraint on the front passenger seat and the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the use of a towel, foam cushion or something else to properly position the child restraint, make certain that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on whenever the child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat.**
- **If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install child restraint in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer. ■**

## How the Advanced Airbag System components work together

The front Advanced Airbag System and the side airbags supplement the protection offered by the front three-point safety belts with pretensioners and load limiters and the adjustable head restraints to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide range of accident and crash situations. Be sure to read the important information about safety and heed the WARNINGS in this chapter.

Deployment of the Advanced Airbag System and the activation of the safety belt pretensioners depend on the deceleration measured by the crash sensors and registered by the electronic control unit. ▶

Crash severity depends on speed and deceleration as well as the mass and stiffness of the vehicle or object involved in the crash.

When the electronic control unit registers a low severity crash and the safety belt is being used, the airbag will not deploy. If the safety belt is not being used, the first stage deploys, followed by the second stage after a much later time in the crash sequence.

If the electronic control unit registers a crash of medium severity, the first stage of the airbag deploys followed by the second stage at a much later time in the crash sequence - regardless of whether the safety belt is being used or not. In higher severity crashes as registered by the electronic control unit, both the first and second stages deploy almost at the same time.

On the passenger side, regardless of safety belt use, the airbag will be turned off if the weight on the passenger seat is less than the amount programmed in the electronic control unit. The front airbag on the passenger side will also be turned off if one of the child safety seats that has been certified under Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 has been recognized on the seat. The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off ⇒ *page 243,* "Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know".

**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.**

- **If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.**
- **You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇒ *page 241*.** ■

## More important things to know about front airbags




**Fig. 252 Inflated front airbags**

Safety belts are important to help keep front seat occupants in the proper seated position so that airbags can unfold properly and provide supplemental protection in a frontal collision.

The front airbags are designed to provide additional protection for the chest and face of the driver and the front seat passenger when:

- safety belts are worn properly
- the seats have been positioned so that the occupant is properly seated as far as possible from the airbag
- and the head restraints have been properly adjusted

Because airbags inflate in the blink of an eye with great force, things you have on your lap or have placed on the seat could become dangerous projectiles, and be pushed into you if the airbag inflates.

When an airbag deploys, fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle. This dust is made up mostly of a powder used to lubricate the airbags as they deploy. It could irritate skin.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example swelling, bruising and minor abrasions, can also happen when airbags inflate. Airbags do not protect the arms ▶

or the lower parts of the body. Front airbags supplement the three-point safety belts only in some frontal collisions in which the vehicle deceleration is high enough to deploy the airbags.

### Front airbags will not deploy:

- if the ignition is switched off when a crash occurs
- in side collisions
- in rear-end collisions
- in rollovers
- when the crash deceleration measured by the airbag system is less than the minimum threshold needed for airbag deployment as registered by the electronic control unit

### The front passenger airbag also will not deploy:

- when the front passenger seat is not occupied
- when the weight on the front passenger seat as sensed by the Advanced Airbag System indicates that the front airbag on the passenger side has to be turned off by the electronic control unit (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on)

**WARNING**

**Sitting in the wrong position can increase the risk of serious injury in crashes.**

- **To reduce the risk of injury when the airbags inflate, the driver and passengers must always sit in an upright position, must not lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.**
- **Occupants who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye ⇒ *page 243*.**

**WARNING**

**A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.**

- **The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.**
- **Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.**
- **If you must install a rearward-facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.**

**WARNING**

**Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.**

- **Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.**
- **Never transport items on or in the area of the front passenger seat. Objects could move into the area of the front airbags during braking or other sudden maneuvers and become dangerous projectiles that can cause serious personal injury if the airbags inflate.**
- **Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cupholders, telephone brackets, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked “AIRBAG” on the steering wheel, instrument panel, seat backrests or between those areas and yourself. These objects could cause injury in a crash, especially when the airbags inflate.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined.**
- **Never tilt the front passenger seat backrest forward when the vehicle is moving. An inflating airbag will force the backrest backward and can injure rear seat occupants.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing conditions.**

- **To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.**
- **If you are in a collision in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.**
- **Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes, or into any cuts or scratches.**
- **If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.** ■

# Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

## Airbag monitoring indicator light AIR BAG

*Two separate indicators monitor the function of the Advanced Airbag System: the airbag monitoring indicator light and the* **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** *light.*

The Advanced Airbag System (including the electronic control unit, sensor circuits and system wiring) is monitored continuously to make sure that it is functioning properly whenever the ignition is on. Each time you turn on the ignition, the airbag monitoring indicator light AIR BAG will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

**The system must be inspected when the indicator light AIR BAG:**

- does not come on when the ignition is switched on
- does not go out a few seconds after you have switched on the ignition, or
- comes on while driving

If an airbag system malfunction is detected, the indicator light will first start flashing to catch the driver's attention and then stay on continuously to serve as a constant reminder to have the system inspected immediately.

If a malfunction occurs that turns the front airbag on the passenger side off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on.

**⚠ WARNING**

**An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.**

- **If the airbag indicator light comes on, it means that there may be something wrong with the Advanced Airbag System. It is**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

**possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.**

- **Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. ■**

## PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light

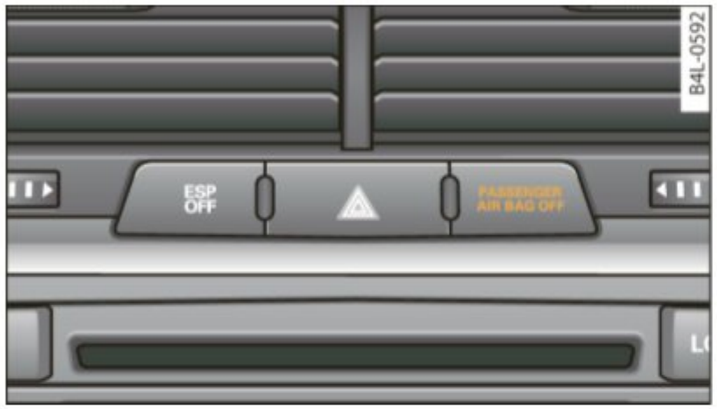



**Fig. 253 Section from the instrument panel: PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light**

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light is located in the center of the instrument panel ⇒ fig. 253.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit. Each time you turn on the ignition, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will flash for a few seconds and:

- will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied
- will stay on if there is a small child or child restraint on the front passenger seat
- will go out if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the weight-sensing mat

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light must come on and stay on** if the ignition is on and

- a car bed has been installed on the front seat, or
- a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
- a forward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
- the weight registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined weight of a typical 1 year-old restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the front airbag will not deploy, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will stay on. Never install a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, the safest place for a child in any kind of child restraint is at one of the seating positions on the rear seat ⇒ *page 243,* "Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know" and ⇒ *page 263,* "Child Safety".

**If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on** when one of the conditions listed above is met, be sure to check the light regularly to make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light stays on continuously whenever the ignition is on. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear on and does not stay on all the time, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and

- reactivate the system by turning the ignition off and then turning it on again;
- remove and reinstall the child restraint. Make sure that the child restraint is properly installed and that the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been correctly routed through the child restraint as described in the child restraint manufacturer's instructions;
- make sure that the convertible locking feature on the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been activated and that the safety belt has been pulled tight. The belt must not be loose or have loops of slack so that the sensor below the safety belt latch on the seat can do its job ⇒ *page 273.*

- make sure that things that may increase the weight of the child and child safety seat are not being transported on the front passenger seat;
- make sure that the safety belt tension sensor is not blocked. Shake the safety belt latch on the front passenger seat back and forth;
- If a strap or tether is being used to tie the child safety seat to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.

**If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light still does not come on** and does not stay on continuously (when the ignition is switched on),

- take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions. Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.
- move the child to a rear seat position and make sure that the child is properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for its size and age.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light should NOT come on when the ignition is on and an adult is sitting in a proper seating position on the front passenger seat. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on or flashes for about 5 seconds while driving, under these circumstances, make sure that:

- the adult on the front passenger seat is properly seated on the center of the seat cushion with his or her back up against the backrest and the backrest is not reclined ⇒ *page 222,* "Proper occupant seating positions",
- the adult is not taking weight off the seat by holding on to the passenger assist handle above the front passenger door or supporting their weight on the armrest,
- the safety belt is being properly worn and that there is not a lot of slack in the safety belt webbing,
- accessory seat covers or cushions or other things that may cause an incorrect reading or impression on the weight-sensing mat under the upholstery of the seat have been removed from the front passenger seat,
- a safety belt extender has not been left in the safety belt latch for the front passenger seat.

In addition to the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the center of the instrument panel, the message **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** or **PASSENGER AIR BAG ON** will briefly appear in the instrument cluster display. This is to inform the driver of the current front passenger airbag status. ■

## Important safety instructions on monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

**WARNING**

**An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.**

- **If the airbag indicator light comes on, it means that there may be something wrong with the Advanced Airbag System. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.**
- **Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer.**

**WARNING**

**If the front airbag inflates, a child without a child restraint, or in a rearward-facing child safety seat, or in a forward-facing child restraint that has not been properly installed will be seriously injured and can be killed.**

- **Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially 12 years and younger, always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **Always install forward or rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat – even with an Advanced Airbag System.**
- **If you must install a rearward-facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not appear and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.**
- **A tight tether or other strap on a rearward-facing child restraint attached to the front passenger seat can put too much pressure on the weight-sensing mat in the seat and register more weight than is actually on the seat. The heavier weight registered can make the system work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.**
- **If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, always move the seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position. Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.**

**WARNING**

- **If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not go out when an adult is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, make sure the adult is properly seated and restrained at one of the rear seating positions.**
- **Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat.**

**Tips**

If the weight-sensing mat in the front passenger seat detects an empty seat, the front airbag on the passenger side will be turned off, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will stay on. ■

## Repair, care and disposal of the airbags

Parts of the airbag system are installed at many different places on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing a part in an area of the vehicle can damage a part of an airbag system and prevent that system from working properly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

**WARNING**

**Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing an airbag from deploying when needed or deploying an airbag unexpectedly:**

- **Never cover, obstruct, or change the steering wheel horn pad or airbag cover or the instrument panel or modify them in any way.**
- **Never attach any objects such as cupholders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.**
- **For cleaning the horn pad or instrument panel, use only a soft, dry cloth or one moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could damage the airbag cover or change the stiffness or strength of the material so that the airbag cannot deploy and protect properly.**
- **Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the airbag system.**
- **All work on the steering wheel, instrument panel, front seats or electrical system (including the installation of audio equipment,** ▶

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

**cellular telephones and CB radios, etc.) must be performed by a qualified technician who has the training and special equipment necessary.**

- **For any work on the airbag system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.**
- **Never modify the front bumper or parts of the vehicle body.**
- **Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference:**
  - **Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi.**
  - **Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags inflate.**
  - **Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.**
- **The airbag system can be activated only once. After an airbag has inflated, it must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified technician who has the technical information, training and special equipment necessary.**
- **The airbag system can be deployed only once. After an airbag has been deployed, it must be replaced with new replacement parts designed and approved especially for your Audi model version. Replacement of complete airbag systems or airbag components must be performed by qualified workshops only. Make sure that any airbag service action is entered in your Audi Warranty & Maintenance booklet under *AIRBAG REPLACEMENT RECORD*.**
- **For safety reasons in severe accidents, the alternator and starter are separated from the vehicle battery with a pyrotechnic circuit interrupter.**
  - **Work on the pyrotechnic circuit interrupter must only be performed by a qualified dealer - risk of an accident!**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **If the vehicle or the circuit interrupter is scrapped, all applicable safety precautions must be followed.**

### For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material - special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you. ■

## Other things that can affect Advanced Airbag performance

Changing the vehicle's suspension system can change the way that the Advanced Airbag System performs in a crash. For example, using tire-rim combinations not approved by Audi, lowering the vehicle, changing the stiffness of the suspension, including the springs, suspension struts, shock absorbers etc. can change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit. Some suspension changes can, for example, increase the force levels measured by the sensors and make the airbag system deploy in crashes in which it would not deploy if the changes had not been made. Other kinds of changes may reduce the force levels measured by the sensors and prevent the airbag from deploying when it should.

The sensors in the safety belt buckle for the driver and front passenger seat tell the electronic control module if the safety belt is latched or not. If the safety belt is being used, the front airbag will deploy at a slightly higher rate of vehicle deceleration than if the safety belt is not being used. Therefore, in a particular collision, it is ▶

possible that an airbag will not deploy at a seating position where the safety belt is being used but will inflate at the position where the safety belt is not being used. It is important that nothing interfere with the safety belt buckles so that the sensors can send the correct information about safety belt use to the electronic control unit.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Changing the vehicle's suspension including use of unapproved tire-rim combinations can change Advanced Airbag performance and increase the risk of serious personal injury in a crash.**

- **Never install suspension components that do not have the same performance characteristics as the components originally installed on your vehicle.**
- **Never use tire-rim combinations that have not been approved by Audi.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Items stored between the safety belt buckle and the center console can cause the sensors in the buckle to send the wrong information to the electronic control module and prevent the Advanced Airbag System from working properly.**

- **Always make sure that nothing can interfere with the safety belt buckles and that they are not obstructed.**

### For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material - special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you. ■

# Side airbags

## Description of side airbags

*The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained occupants.*




**Fig. 254 Side airbag location in the driver's seat**

The side airbags are located in the sides of the front seat backrests ⇒ fig. 254 and the rear backrest* facing the doors. They are identified by the word “AIRBAG”.

**The side airbag system basically consists of:**

- the electronic control module and external side impact sensors
- the two side airbags located in the sides of the front backrests
- two rear side airbags (as an ordered *option*)
- the airbag warning light in the instrument cluster.

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain that it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The side airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury to the driver's , front and rear* passenger's upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The airbag deploys only in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high ▶

enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇒ *page 259,* "Important safety instructions on the side airbag system".

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a side collision so that the side airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is *not* a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the side airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇒ *page 231,* "General notes".

It is important to remember that while the supplemental side airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, and minor abrasions can also be associated with deployed side airbags. Remember too, side airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage are not necessarily an indication of over-sensitive or failed airbag activation. In some collisions, both front and side airbags may inflate. Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of collisions – your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

### The side airbag system will not deploy:

- when the ignition is turned off
- in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low
- in front-end collisions
- in rear-end collisions
- in rollovers.

In some types of accidents the front airbags, side curtain airbags and side airbags may be triggered together.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇒ *page 259*.**
- **If the airbag indicator light comes on when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. The airbag may not work properly when the vehicle acceleration in a side collision is high enough to activate the airbag.** ■

## How supplemental side airbags work

*Side airbags deploy instantly and can help reduce the risk of upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.*




**Fig. 255 Inflated side airbags on left side of vehicle, rear side airbag optional equipment**

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam in the seat surface area marked "AIRBAG". It expands between the side trim panel and the passenger. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side airbag must inflate within a fraction of a second at very high speed and with great force. The supplemental side airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side airbag expands. This applies especially to children ⇒ *page 263,* "Child Safety". Supplemental side airbags inflate between the occupant and the door panel on the side of the vehicle that is struck in certain side collision ⇒ *page 258,* fig. 255.

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle. ■

## Important safety instructions on the side airbag system

*Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.*

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and act accordingly to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

**⚠ WARNING**

**An inflating side airbag can cause serious or fatal injury. Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **In order to reduce the risk of injury when the supplemental side airbag inflates:**
  - **Always sit in an upright position and never lean against the area where the supplemental side airbag is located.**
  - **Never let a child or anyone else rest their head against the side trim panel in the area where the supplemental side airbag inflates.**
  - **Always make sure that safety belts are worn correctly,**
  - **Do not let anyone sitting in the front seat put their hand or any other parts of their body out of the window.**
- **Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference.**
  - **Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seat backs that have not been specifically approved by Audi.**
  - **Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags deploy.**
  - **Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.**
- **Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.**
  - **Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cupholders, telephone brackets, or even large, bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked "AIRBAG" on the seat backrests.**
  - **Such objects and accessories can become dangerous projectiles and cause injury when the supplemental side airbag deploys.**

**WARNING (continued)**

**– Never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position.**

- **Always use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with side airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in an accident.**
- **Always prevent the side airbags from being damaged by heavy objects knocking against or hitting the sides of the seatbacks.**
- **The airbag system can only be triggered once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealership.**
- **Damage (cracks, deep scratches etc.) to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.**
- **If children are seated improperly, their risk of injury increases in the case of an accident ⇒ *page 263,* "Child Safety".**
- **Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.**
- **In a side collision, side airbags will not function properly if sensors cannot correctly measure increasing air pressure inside the doors when air escapes through larger, unclosed openings in the door panel.**

**– Never drive with interior door trim panels removed.**

**– Never drive when parts have been removed from the inside door panel and the openings they leave have not been properly closed.**

**– Never drive when loudspeakers in the doors have been removed unless the speaker holes have been properly closed.**

**– Always make certain that openings are covered or filled if additional speakers or other equipment is installed in the inside door panels.**

**WARNING (continued)**

**– Always have work on the doors done by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop. ■**

# Side curtain airbags

## Description of side curtain airbags

*The side curtain airbags can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained occupants.*

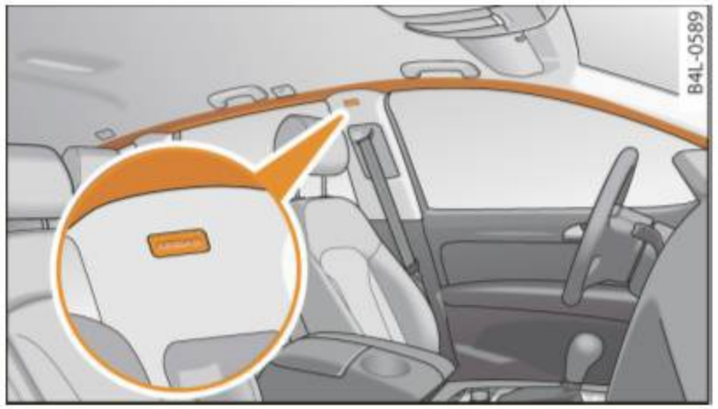



**Fig. 256 Side curtain airbags, driver's side: location**

The side curtain airbags are located on both sides of the interior above the front and rear side windows ⇒ fig. 256. They are identified by the word "AIRBAG" on the windshield frame and the center roof pillar.

The side curtain airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury for occupants' heads and upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The side curtain airbag inflates only in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible

angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇒ *page 261,* "How side curtain airbags work".

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a collision so that the side curtain airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇒ *page 231,* "General notes".

It is important to remember that while the side curtain airbag system is designed to help reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, and minor abrasions can also be associated with these airbags upon deployment. Remember too, these airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

**The side curtain airbag system basically consists of:**

- The electronic control module and external side impact sensors
- The side curtain airbags above the front and rear side windows
- The airbag indicator light in the instrument panel

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

**The side curtain airbag is not activated:**

- if the ignition is turned off
- in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low
- in front-end collisions
- in rear-end collisions.

**WARNING**

- **Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇒ *page 92,* "General recommendations".**
- **If the airbag indicator light comes on when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. The side curtain airbag may not work properly even when the vehicle acceleration in a side collision is high enough to activate the airbag.** ■

## How side curtain airbags work

*Side curtain airbags can work together with side airbags to help reduce the risk of head and upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.*




**Fig. 257 Illustration of principle: Inflated side curtain airbags on the left side**

The side curtain airbags inflate between the occupant and the windows on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision ⇒ fig. 257.

When the system is triggered, the side curtain airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam above the front and rear side windows identified by the AIRBAG label. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side curtain airbag must inflate within the blink of an eye at very high speed and with great force. The side curtain airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side curtain airbag inflates. This applies especially to children ⇒ *page 263*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, side curtain airbags can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle. ■

## Important safety instructions on the side curtain airbag system

*Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.*

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.**

- **Never let occupants place any parts of their bodies in the area from which the side curtain airbags inflate.**
- **Always make sure that the side curtain airbags can inflate without interference. Unsuitable accessories fitted inside the expansion range of a side curtain airbag can dangerously interfere with its function. A deploying head airbag develops enough force to catapult any piece of add-on component out of its path of inflation and into the passenger compartment. An occupant hit by such a projectile can suffer serious injury or death ⇒ *page 404*, "Technical Modifications".**
- **Do not swivel the sun visors to the side if you have any objects clipped onto them (for example pens). If the airbag should deploy, you could be injured by these objects.**
- **Use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in an accident.**
- **Never use hangers to hang clothing from the hooks.**
- **Only use factory-installed sun shades or, in the case of shades installed after the vehicle leaves the factory, only Audi roll-up sunscreens may be used ⇒ *page 403*, "Additional accessories and parts replacement".**
- **Always sit in proper seating position and wear safety belts while traveling so that the side curtain airbags can help provide protection.**
- **The airbag system can only be triggered once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.**
- **Always have work involving the side curtain airbag system, removal and installation of the airbag components, or other repairs performed by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop. Otherwise the airbag system may not work correctly.**
- **Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.** ■

# Child Safety

## Important things to know

### Introduction

*The rear seat is generally the safest place in a collision.*

The physical principles of what happens when your vehicle is in a crash apply also to children ⇒ *page 233,* “What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?”. But unlike adults and teenagers, their muscles and bones are not fully developed. In many respects children are at greater risk of serious injury in crashes than adults.

Because children's bodies are not fully developed, they require restraint systems especially designed for their size, weight, and body structure. Many countries and all states of the United States and provinces of Canada have laws requiring the use of approved child restraint systems for infants and small children.

In a frontal crash at a speed of 20-35 mph (30-56 km/h) the forces acting on a 13-pound (6 kg) infant will be more than 20 times the weight of the child. This means the weight of the child would suddenly be more than 260 pounds (120 kg). Under these conditions, only an appropriate child restraint properly used can reduce the risk of serious injury. Child restraints, like adult safety belts, must be used properly to be effective. Used improperly, they can increase the risk of serious injury in an accident.

Consult the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions to be sure the seat is right for your child's size ⇒ *page 266,* “Important safety instructions for using child safety seats”. Please be sure to read and heed all of the important information and WARNINGS about child safety, Advanced Airbags, and the installation of child restraints in this chapter.

There is a lot you need to know about the Advanced Airbags in your vehicle and how they work when infants and children in child restraints are on the front passenger seat. Because of the large amount of important information, we cannot repeat it all here. We urge you to read the detailed information in this owner's manual about airbags and the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle and the very important information about transporting children on the front passenger seat. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

**WARNING**

- **Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position. Always restrain any child age 12 and under in the rear.**
- **All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.**
- **A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.**

**WARNING**

**Children on the front seat of any car even with Advanced Airbags can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.**

- **The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, or door.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.**
- **If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer.**

**WARNING**

**If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:**

- **Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.**
- **Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.**
- **Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.**
- **Always make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.** ■

## Advanced front airbag system and children

Your vehicle is equipped with an “Advanced Airbag System” in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Advanced Airbag system in your vehicle has been certified to meet the “low-risk” requirements for 3 and 6 year-old children on the passenger side and small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates. In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the “suppression” requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants up to 12 months who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat. ■

## Advanced Airbags and the weight-sensing mat in the front seat

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle detects the presence of an infant or child in a child restraint on the front passenger seat using the weight-sensing mat in the seat cushion and the sensor below the safety belt latch on the front passenger seat that measures the tension on the safety belt.

The weight-sensing mat measures total weight of the child and the child safety seat and a child blanket on the front passenger seat. The weight on the front passenger seat is related to the design of the child restraint and its “footprint”, the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint as it sits on the seat. The weight of a child restraint and its “footprint” vary for different kinds of child

restraints and for the different models of the same kind of child restraint offered by child restraint manufacturers.

The weight ranges for the individual types, makes and models of child restraints that the NHTSA has specified in the Safety Standard together with the weight ranges of typical infants and typical 1 year-old child have been stored in the control unit of the Advanced Airbag System. When a child restraint is being used on the front passenger seat with a typical 1 year-old child, the Advanced Airbag System compares the weight measured by the weight sensing mat with the information stored in the electronic control unit.

The electronic control unit also registers the tension on the front passenger safety belt. The tension on the safety belt for the front passenger seat will be different for an adult who is properly using the safety belt as compared to the tension on the belt when it is used to attach a child restraint to the seat. The sensor below the latch for the safety belt for the front seat passenger measures the tension on the belt. The input from this sensor is then used with the weight to "decide", whether there is a child restraint with a typical 1 year-old child on the front passenger seat and whether or not the airbag must be turned off. ■

## Child restraints and Advanced Airbags

Regardless of the child restraint that you use, make sure that it has been certified to meet United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards and has been certified by its manufacturer for use with an airbag. Always be sure that the child restraint is properly installed at one of the rear seating positions. If in exceptional circumstances you must use it on the front passenger seat, carefully read all of the information on child safety and Advanced Airbags and heed all of the applicable WARNINGS. Make certain that the child restraint is correctly recognized by the weight-sensing mat inside the front passenger seat, that the front passenger airbag is turned off and that the airbag status is always correctly signaled by the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light.

Many types and models of child restraints have been available over the years, new models are introduced regularly incorporating new and improved designs and older models are taken out of production. Child restraints are not standardized. Child restraints of the same type typically have different weights and sizes and different 'footprints,' the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint that sits on the seat, when they are installed on a vehicle seat. These differences make it virtually impossible to certify compliance with the requirements for advanced airbags with each and every child restraint that has ever been sold in the past or will be sold over the course of the useful life of your vehicle.

For this reason, the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration has published a list of specific type, makes and models of child restraints that must be used to certify compliance of the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle with the suppression requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. These child restraints are:

**A. Car beds, manufactured on or after September 1, 2004:**

- Cosco Dream Ride 02-719

**B. Rear facing child restraint systems, manufactured on or after September 1, 2004:**

(When the restraint system comes equipped with a removable base, compliance has to be certified with or without the base).

- Britax Handle with Care 191
- Century Assura 4553
- Century Smart Fit 4543
- Cosco Arriva 02727
- Evenflo Discovery Adjust Right 212
- Evenflo First Choice 204
- Graco Infant 8457

**C. Forward-facing convertible child restraint systems, manufactured on or after September 1, 2004:**

- Britax Roundabout 161
- Britax Expressway
- Century Encore 4612
- Century STE 1000 4416
- Cosco Olympian 02803
- Cosco Touriva 02519
- Evenflo Horizon V 425
- Evenflo Medallion 254
- Safety First Comfort Ride 22-400

**WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.**

- **Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on.**
- **Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.**

**Tips**

The child seats listed in categories A to C have been tested by Audi only for the Advanced Airbag function. ■

## Important safety instructions for using child safety seats

*Correct use of child safety seats substantially reduces the risk of injury in an accident!*

As the driver, you are responsible for the safety of everybody in the vehicle, especially children:

– Always use the right child safety seat for each child and always use it properly ⇒ *page 268*.

– Always carefully follow the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions on how to route the safety belt properly through the child safety seat.

– When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇒ *page 273*.

– Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).

– If a strap or tether is being used to tie the child safety seat to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. ▶

**WARNING**

**Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.**

- **All vehicle occupants and especially children must always be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle.**
  - **An unrestrained or improperly restrained child can be injured or killed by being thrown against the inside of the vehicle or by being ejected from it during a sudden maneuver or impact.**
  - **An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is at much greater risk of injury or death by being struck by an inflating airbag.**
- **Commercially available child safety seats are required to comply with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 213 (in Canada CMVSS 213).**
  - **When buying a child restraint, select one that fits your child and the vehicle.**
  - **Only use child restraint systems that fully contact the flat portion of the seat cushion. The child restraint must not tip or lean to either side. Audi does not recommend using child safety seats that rest on legs or tube-like frames. They do not provide adequate contact with the seat.**
  - **Always heed all legal requirements pertaining to the installation and use of child safety seats and carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the seat you are using.**
- **Never allow children under 57 inches (1.5 meters) to wear a normal safety belt. They must always be restrained by a proper child restraint system. Otherwise, they could sustain injuries to the abdomen and neck areas during sudden braking maneuvers or accidents.**
- **Never let more than one child occupy a child safety seat.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **Never let babies or older children ride in a vehicle while sitting on the lap of another passenger.**
  - **Holding a child in your arms is never a substitute for a child restraint system.**
  - **The strongest person could not hold the child with the forces that exist in an accident. The child will strike the interior of the vehicle and can also be struck by the passenger.**
  - **The child and the passenger can also injure each another in an accident.**
- **Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.**
- **The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.**
- **Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.**
- **Forward-facing child safety seats installed on the front passenger's seat can interfere with the airbag when it inflates and cause serious injury to the child. Always install forward-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.**
- **If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:**
  - **Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.**
  - **Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

**– Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position of the passenger seat's fore and aft adjustment range, and as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint.**

**– Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.**

**– Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.**

**• Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.**

**• Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒ *page 231*, "Safety belts", ⇒ *page 241*, "Airbag system" and ⇒ *page 263*, "Child Safety".**

**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.**

**• Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on.**

**• Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately. ■**

# Child safety seats

## Infant seats

*Babies and infants up to about one year old and 22 lbs or 10 kg need special rearward-facing child restraints that support the back, neck and head in a crash.*

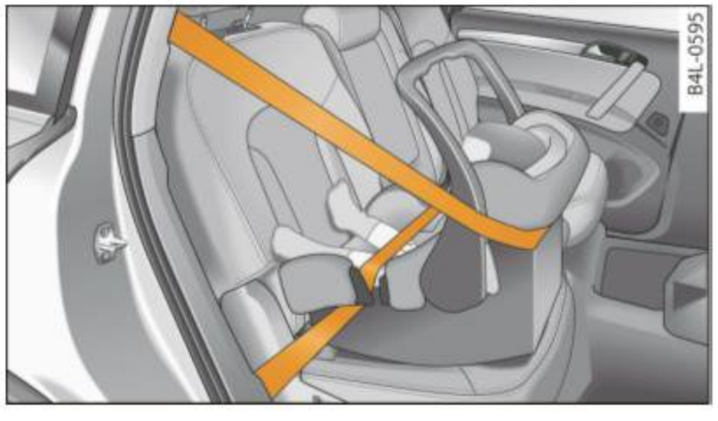



**Fig. 258 Rearward-facing infant seat, properly installed on the rear seat**

– When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇒ *page 273* or install the seat using the LATCH attachments.

– Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).

Infants up to about one year (22 lbs. or 10 kg) are best protected in special infant carriers and child safety seats designed for their age group. Many experts believe that infants and small children should ride only in special restraints in which the child faces the back of the vehicle. These infant seats support the baby's back, neck and head in a crash. These child safety seats must never be used in the front seat because of the risk of serious injury or death should the airbag deploy in a crash ⇒ fig. 258.

**WARNING**

**Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a crash.**

- **Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat - even with an Advanced Airbag System. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the inflating airbag hits the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and smashes the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, or door ⇒ *page 243,* "Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know".**
- **Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.**
- **Never install a rear-facing child restraint in the forward-facing direction. Such restraints are designed for the special needs of infants and very small children and cannot protect them properly if the seat is forward-facing.**
- **If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒ *page 231,* "Safety belts", ⇒ *page 241,* "Airbag system" and ⇒ *page 263,* "Important things to know".** ■

## Convertible child safety seats

*Properly used convertible child safety seats can help protect toddlers and children over age one who weigh between 20 and 40 lbs. (10 and 20 kg) in a crash.*




**Fig. 259 Rear seat: smaller child in a properly installed forward-facing convertible child safety seat**

– When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking feature on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇒ *page 273* or install the seat using the LATCH attachment.
– Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm) ⇒ *page 273.*
– If the child safety seat is equipped with a tether strap, attach it to the tether anchors ⇒ *page 282.*

A toddler or child is usually too large for an infant restraint if it is more than one year old and weighs more than 22 lbs. (10 kg).

Toddlers and children who are older than one year up to about 4 years old and weigh more than 22 lbs (10 kg) up to 40 lbs. (18 kg) should be properly restrained in a child safety seat certified for their size and weight ⇒ fig. 259.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

**WARNING**

**Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation.**

- **Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.**
- **The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, or door.**
- **Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.**
- **If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒ *page 231,* "Safety belts", ⇒ *page 241,* "Airbag system" and ⇒ *page 263,* "Important things to know".**

**WARNING**

**If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:**

- **Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.**
- **Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.**
- **Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position of the passenger seat's fore and aft adjustment range, and as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint.**
- **Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.**
- **Always make sure the backrest is in an upright position.**
- **Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.**
- **If the light does not stay on, perform the checks ⇒ *page 252,* "Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System".**
- **Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.** ■

## Booster seats

*Properly used booster seats can help protect children weighing between about 40 lbs. and 80 lbs. (18 kg and 36 kg) who are less than 4 ft. 9 in. tall.*




**Fig. 260 Rear seat: child properly restrained in a booster seat**

The vehicle's safety belts alone will not fit most children until they are at least 4 ft. 9 in. tall and weigh about 80 lbs. (36 kg). Booster seats raise these children up so that the safety belt will pass properly over the stronger parts of their bodies and the safety belt can help protect them in a crash.

- Do not use the convertible locking retractor when using the vehicle's safety belt to restrain a child on a booster seat.
- Always position the shoulder portion of the safety belt midway over the child's shoulder.
- Always make sure that the shoulder portion of the safety belt never rests against or across the child's neck.
- Always make sure that the child can properly wear the lap portion of the belt low across the thighs or pelvis and *never* over the stomach or abdomen.

Children up to about 40 lbs (18 kg) are best protected in child safety seats designed for their age and weight. Experts say that the skeletal structure, particularly the pelvis, of these children is not fully developed, and they should not use the vehicle safety belts ⇒ *page 271,* fig. 260.

Children who weigh more than 40 lbs. (18 kg) may generally use the available three point combination lap and shoulder belts when they sit on an appropriate booster seat. Be sure the booster seat meets all applicable safety standards.

Booster seats raise the seating position of the child and reposition both the lap and shoulder parts of the safety belt so that they pass across the child's body in the right places. The routing of the belt over the child's body is very important for the child's protection. This applies whenever a child uses the vehicle's safety belts, even when the child is big enough to use them without a booster seat. Children age 12 and under should *always* ride in the rear seat.

Children should not ride in the front seat unless no other seating position is available because crash statistics show that children are better protected in the rear seat.

In a crash, airbags must inflate within a blink of an eye and with considerable force. In order to do its job, the airbag needs room to inflate so that it will be there to protect the occupant as the occupant moves forward into the airbag.

A vehicle occupant including a child who is out of position and too close to the airbag gets in the way of an inflating airbag. When an occupant is too close, he or she will be struck violently and will receive serious or possibly even fatal injury.

In order for the airbag to offer protection, it is important that all vehicle occupants, especially any children, who must be in the front seat in exceptional circumstances, be properly restrained and as far away from the airbag as possible. By keeping room between the child's or other occupant's body and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal crashes.

**WARNING**

**Not using a booster seat, using the booster seat improperly, incorrectly installing a booster seat or using the vehicle safety belt improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury and/or death:**

- **Always make sure to position the shoulder portion of the three-point belt over the middle of child's shoulder.**
- **Never let the shoulder portion of the belt rest against or across the neck, face, chin, or throat of the child.**
- **Always make sure the lap belt portion of the three-point belt is worn snug and passes as low as possible across the child's pelvis. Never let the belt pass over the soft abdomen.**
- **Failure to properly route safety belts over a child's body will cause severe injuries in an accident or other emergency situation ⇒ *page 231*.**
- **Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.**
- **Never let a child stand or kneel on any seat, for example the front seat.**
- **Never let a child ride in the cargo area of your vehicle.**
- **Always remember that a child leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way during an accident can be struck by a deploying airbag. This will result in serious personal injury or death.**
- **If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light must come on and stay on, whenever the ignition is switched on.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇒ *page 252*, "Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System".**
- **Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒ *page 231*, "Safety belts", ⇒ *page 241*, "Airbag system" and ⇒ *page 263*, "Important things to know". ■**

## Safety belts and older children

*Properly worn three point lap and shoulder belt can help protect children weighing more than 80 lbs. (36 kg) and who are at least 4 ft. 9 in. tall.*




**Fig. 261 Child taller than 4 ft. 9 in. properly restrained on the rear seat**

Children who weigh more than about 80 lbs (36 kg) and are at least 4 ft. 9 in. tall can generally use the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. Children should use a lap belt only in very exceptional situations and only if no child restraint system for the child's size and weight or safer alternative means of transportation of the ▶

child is available. In these exceptional situations, the use of a lap belt is better than permitting the child to remain totally unrestrained. But remember: a lap belt cannot provide the same level of protection as a proper child restraint or a three-point lap and shoulder belt if the child is big enough. Also, using a lap belt for younger children, who should be using a child restraint, may violate laws in your state or Province.

Never use a lap belt alone to restrain a child that weighs less than about 80 lbs (36 kg) and who is less than 4'9? tall. Always remember that children do not have the pronounced pelvic structure required for the proper function of lap belts. If a lap belt is only restraint system available, then the child's safety absolutely requires that the lap belt be fastened snugly and as low as possible around the pelvis let a lap belt pass over the child's stomach or abdomen.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Using wrong child restraints or improperly installed child restraints can cause serious personal injury or death in a crash.**

- **Failure to properly route safety belts over a child's body will cause severe injuries in a crash. The lap belt portion of the three point belt as well as any lap belt alone must always pass as low as possible across the pelvis, never over the stomach or abdomen.**
- **An improperly worn safety belt will not provide the best protection in a crash and may cause serious personal injury. Always make sure that children and other vehicle occupants properly wear available restraint systems. Carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturers of child restraints. ■**

# Installing a child safety seat

## Securing a child safety seat using a safety belt

*Safety belts for the rear seats and the front passenger can be locked with the convertible locking retractor to properly secure child safety seats.*

The safety belts emergency locking retractors for the rear seats safety belts and for the front passenger's seat safety belt have a convertible locking retractor for child restraints. The safety belt must be locked so that belt webbing cannot unreel. The retractor can be activated to lock the safety belt and prevent the safety belt webbing from loosening up during normal driving. A child safety seat can only be properly installed when the safety belt is locked so that the child and child safety seat will stay in place.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.**

- **Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.**
- **Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision**
- **Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used to secure a child restraint. ▶**

**WARNING (continued)**

- If the backrest is not securely latched, the child and the child restraint will be thrown forward together with the backrest and will strike parts of the vehicle interior. The child can be seriously injured or killed.
- Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Forward-facing child safety seats or infant carriers installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious injury to the child.
- It is safer to install a forward-facing child safety seat on the rear seat.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒ *page 263*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇒ *page 243*, "Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know".

**WARNING**

Always take special precautions if you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat in exceptional situations:

- Whenever a forward or rearward-facing child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light must come on and stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.

**WARNING (continued)**

- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇒ *page 252*, "Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System".
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.
- An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child.
- Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
- Never place additional items on the seat that can increase the total weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and can cause injury in a crash.

**WARNING**

Forward-facing child restraints:

- Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Never put the forward-facing child restraint up, against or very near the instrument panel.
- Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
- Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

**WARNING**

**Rearward-facing child restraints:**

- **A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.**
- **The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.**
- **Always be especially careful if you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.**
- **A tight tether strap on a rearward-facing child restraint attached to the front passenger seat can put too much pressure on the weight-mat in the seat and register a heavier weight in the Advanced Airbag System. The heavier weight registered can make the system work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.**
- **Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.**
- **If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.** ■

## Activating the convertible locking retractor

*Use the convertible locking retractor to secure a child restraint.*

Always heed the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint in your vehicle. To activate the convertible locking retractor:

- Place the child restraint on a seat, preferably on the rear seat.
- Slowly pull the belt **all the way out**.
- Route it around or through the child restraint belt path ⇒ ⚠.
- Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight.
- Insert the belt tongue into the buckle for that seating position.
- Guide the safety belt back into the retractor until the belt lies flat and snug on the child safety seat.
- You should hear a “clicking” noise as the belt winds back into the inertia reel. Test the convertible locking retractor by pulling on the belt. You should no longer be able to pull the belt out of the retractor. The convertible locking retractor is now activated.
- Make sure that the red release button is facing away from the child restraint so that it can be unbuckled quickly.
- Pull on the belt to make sure the safety belt is properly tight and fastened so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).

**WARNING**

**Using the wrong child restraint or an improperly installed child restraint can cause serious personal injury or death in a crash.**

- **Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a crash.**
- **Always make sure the seat backrest to which the child restraint is installed is in an upright position and securely latched into place and cannot fold forward. Otherwise, the seat back with the child safety seat attached to it could fly forward in the event of an accident or other emergency situation.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒ *page 263*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇒ *page 243*, "Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know". ■**

## Deactivating the convertible locking retractor

*The convertible locking retractor for child restraints will be deactivated automatically when the belt is wound all the way back into the retractor.*

– Press the red button on the safety belt buckle. The belt tongue will pop out of the buckle.

– Guide the belt all the way back into its stowed position.

Always let the safety belt retract completely into its stowed position. The safety belt can now be used as an ordinary safety belt without the convertible locking retractor for child restraints.

If the convertible locking retractor should be activated inadvertently, the safety belt must be unfastened and guided completely back into its stowed position to deactivate this feature. If the convertible locking retractor is not deactivated, the safety belt will gradually become tighter and uncomfortable to wear.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.**

- **Never unfasten the safety belt to deactivate the convertible locking retractor for child restraints while the vehicle is moving. You would not be restrained and could be seriously injured in an accident.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒ *page 263*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇒ *page 243*, "Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know". ■**

# Additional Information

## What types of child restraint anchors are available and how are they related to child safety?

For years, child restraints have been installed using the safety belts already present in every vehicle.

Since September 1, 1999, child restraint manufacturers have been providing tether straps that attach the top of the child restraint to the vehicles structure, on most of their forward-facing systems in order to comply with U.S. Federal regulations for child restraint performance in a crash. Vehicle manufacturers are required to phase-in tether anchorages for attachment of the tether strap in their U.S. vehicles beginning September 1, 1999.

The combination of the tether anchorages and the lower anchorages is now generally called the **LATCH** system for "**L**ower **A**nchor and **T**ether for **Ch**ildren".

(The term "ISOFIX" regarding lower anchorages had been used by Audi and other manufacturers in the past, but LATCH is now the standard name for the new child restraint anchorage system.)

Some child restraint system manufacturers have been providing tether straps on certain models of their child restraint systems, either as standard equipment or as a retrofit, for several years. Check with the manufacturer of the child restraint system for tether strap availability.

To provide a simpler and more practicable way to attach the child restraint system on the vehicle seat, U.S. Federal regulations require the phase-in of lower anchorages in vehicles and devices on new child restraint systems to attach to the vehicle anchorages.

Child restraint system manufacturers will probably offer two kinds of lower anchorages on their child safety seats

They could come with:

- hooks or other latches attached to adjustable straps or
- rigid latches on bars that extend out the back of the child restraint and are released with release buttons at the bottom of the child restraint.

In addition to the LATCH lower anchorages, both of these child restraint systems use tether straps to help keep the child restraint system firmly in place. ■

## Where can I get additional information about child restraint application and usage?

There are a number of sources of additional information about child restraint selection, installation and usage:

NHTSA advises that the best child safety seat is the one that fits your child and fits in your vehicle, and that you will use correctly and consistently.

Try before you buy!

**National Highway Traffic Safety Administration**
Tel.: (888) DASH-2-DOT
www.nhtsa.dot.gov

**National SAFE KIDS Campaign**
Tel.: (202) 662-0600
www.safekids.org

**Safety BeltSafe U.S.A**
Tel.: (800) 745-SAFE (English)
Tel.: (800) 747-SANO (Spanish)
www.carseat.org

**Transport Canada**
Tel.: (800) 333-0371
www.tc.gc.ca

**Audi Client Relations**
Tel.: (800) 822-2834 ■

# Lower anchorages and tether for children (LATCH)

## Location

*LATCH is the acronym for Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children and designates a special child safety seat restraint system. In Canada, the terms "top tether" with "lower universal anchorages" (or "lower universal anchorage bars") are used to describe the system.*

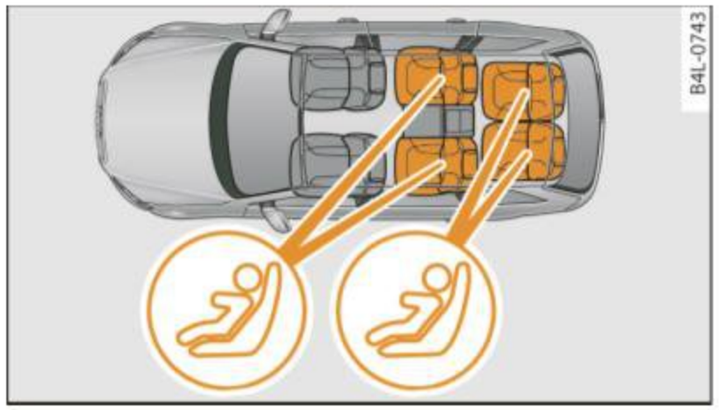



**Fig. 262 Schematic overview: LATCH anchorage point locations**

The illustration ⇒ fig. 262 shows the seating locations in your vehicle which are equipped with the lower universal anchorages system. ■

## Description

*The lower anchorage positions are marked for quick locating.*




**Fig. 263 Second row of seats: lower anchorage bracket locations**

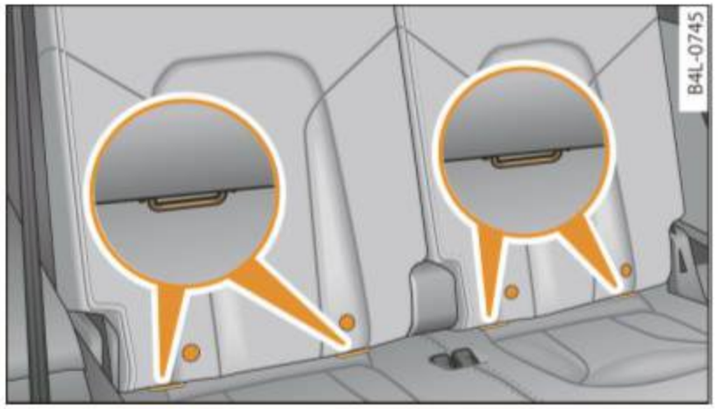



**Fig. 264 Third row of seats: locator buttons for lower anchorages**

### Attachment locator markers for lower anchorages

The lower anchorage locations in the second row of seats are indicated by the attachment locator markers of the lower anchorage brackets ⇒ fig. 263. Circular locator buttons on the third row of seats* indicate the lower anchorage locations on the third row of seats ⇒ fig. 264.

### Lower anchorages

The lower anchorage attachment points are located between the rear seatback and rear seat cushion ⇒ *page 278,* fig. 263 or ⇒ *page 278,* fig. 264.

Lower anchorages secure the child restraint in the seat without using the vehicle's safety belts. Anchorages provide a secure and easy-to-use attachment and minimize the possibility of improper child restraint installation.

All child restraints manufactured after September 1, 2002, must have lower anchorage attachments for the *LATCH* system.

Please remember that the lower anchorage points are only intended for installation and attachment of child restraints specifically certified for use with *LATCH* lower anchorages. Child restraints that are not equipped with the lower anchorage attachments can still be installed in compliance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions on using vehicle safety belts.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in a crash.**

- **Always carefully follow the child restraints manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint and proper use of the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.**
- **Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the *LATCH* lower anchorages.**
- **Always read and heed the important information about child restraints in this chapter and WARNINGS ⇒ *page 263,* "Child Safety".** ■

Applies to vehicles: with third row seating

## Guidance fixtures for lower anchorages

*Special guidance fixtures increase the convenience of the lower anchorages and are available from your authorized Audi dealer.*

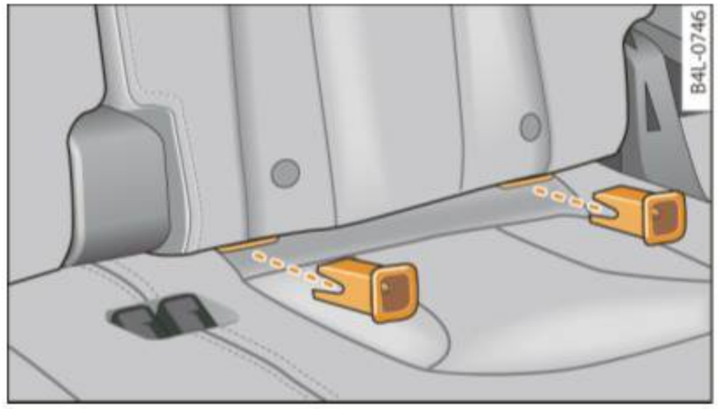



**Fig. 265 Third row of seats: installing the guidance fixtures**

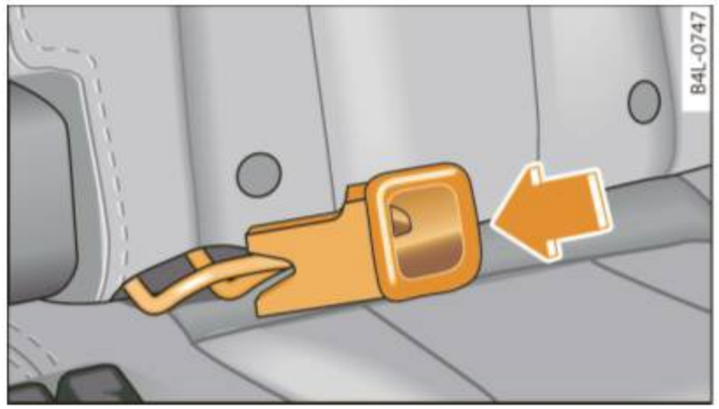



**Fig. 266 Close-up: fitting the guidance fixture over the lower anchorage bracket**

The lower anchorage attachment points are located on the third row of seats between the seatback and the seat cushion. Special guidance fixtures increase the convenience of the lower anchorages and help protect the seat material from possible damage when installing child restraints that have rigid lower anchorages and not straps with hooks. ▶

### Installing the guidance fixtures

– Push down on the seat cushion so that the lower anchorages are visible.

– Hold the guidance fixture with the part number facing downward and push it in the direction of the arrow onto the anchorage ⇒ *page 279,* fig. 266.

– Make sure that each of the two guidance fixtures per seat snaps into place.

### Removing the guidance fixtures

– Remove the child restraint according the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

– Push down on the seat cushion so that the lower anchorages are visible.

– Pull off the guidance fixtures from the lower anchorages.

– Always remove the guidance fixtures and keep them in a safe place when not in use.

You may find it easier to install child restraints equipped with hooks attached to straps without the guidance fixtures in place. If this is the case, remove the guidance fixtures by pulling them off the anchorages. However, the guidance fixtures can help you to locate the *LATCH* anchorages.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improper use of tether anchorages or lower anchorages can cause serious personal injury in a crash.**

- **Always carefully follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for proper installation and use of child restraint systems.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Never use the *LATCH* or tether anchorages to attach safety belts or other kinds of occupant restraints.**
- **Child restraint tether attachments and lower attachments are only designed to secure a child restraint that has been equipped to use these anchorages.**
- **Tether anchorages and lower anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances can they be used safely for adult or child safety belts or harnesses.**
- **Never mount more than one child restraint to a single tether or to a lower anchorage point. Attaching two child restraints to a single anchorage point can cause the anchorage to fail and cause serious personal injury in a crash.**

**Note**

- Remove the guidance fixtures before folding the rear seatback to prevent damaging the seat cushion.
- If you leave the guidance fixtures installed for several days, they could leave a mark on the upholstery on the seat cushion and backrest in the area that the guidance fixtures were installed. The upholstery would also be permanently stretched around the guidance fixtures. This applies especially to leather seats.

**Tips**

- Always remove the guidance fixtures when not in use.
- Please keep the guidance fixtures in a safe place with the vehicle when not in use. ■

## Installing a child restraint using the lower anchorages of the LATCH system

*Child safety seats equipped with the LATCH system can quickly and easily be secured to the rear seats.*




**Fig. 267 LATCH-type seat with both latch bars extended**




**Fig. 268 Installation of child safety seat with rigid latches on bars**

Whenever you install a child restraint always refer to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

– Make sure the seat back of the rear seat bench is in the upright position and securely latched in place.

– Install the guidance fixtures (only with third row of seats*) ⇒ *page 279*.

– Insert the latches onto the lower anchorages ⇒ fig. 268.

– Make sure you hear the child restraint click securely into place. This indicates that the seat is securely mounted on the anchors.

– Pull on the child restraint once you have mounted it to make sure it is secure.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improper use of the LATCH system can increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in an accident.**

- **These anchors were developed solely for child safety seats using the "LATCH" system.**
- **Never attach other child safety seats, belts or other objects to these anchors.**
- **Always make sure that you hear a click when latching the seat in place. If you do not hear a click the seat is not secure and could fly forward and hit the interior of the vehicle, or be ejected from the vehicle.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in an accident.**

- **Always follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint system and proper use of tether straps as well as the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.**
- **Always read and heed the important information and WARNINGS about child safety and the installation of child restraint systems⇒ *page 263,* "Child Safety". ■**

## Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook

*If you use a child restraint system with hooks or other latches attached to adjustable straps.*

### Mounting

– Press the anchorage hook with the spring catch release onto the lower anchorage so that the anchorage hook locks into place.

– Pull on the anchorage hook to make sure that it has securely engaged the lower anchorage.

– Tighten the strap following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

### Releasing

– Loosen the tension on the strap following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

– Depress the spring catch on the hook.

– Hold the spring catch in depressed position.

– Move the hook in the direction of the vehicle floor so that there is enough space to release the anchorage hook from the lower anchorage.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injuries in a crash.**
- **Always refer to the child restraints manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint and proper use of the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.** ■

## Tether anchors

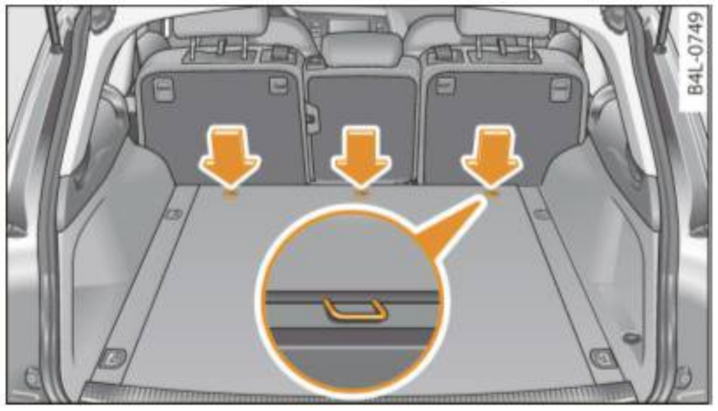



**Fig. 269 Tether anchors for second row of seats: attachment hook locations**




**Fig. 270 Tether anchors for third row of seats: attachment hook locations**

Beginning with model year 2000, the rear seating positions are equipped with three tether anchors. For vehicles with third row seats*, two tether anchors are present.

The tether anchors for the three rear seating positions in the second row of seats are located underneath the seats in the back ⇒ fig. 269. For vehicles with third row seating*, the tether anchors for the two seating positions in the third row of seats are stored underneath a plastic cover cap in the floor ⇒ fig. 270. ▶

**WARNING**

**Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.**

- **Improper use of child restraint anchors (tether anchors) could lead to injury in a collision. The anchors are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.**
- **Never mount two child restraint systems on one LATCH lower anchor point.**
- **Never attach two child restraint systems to one tether strap or tether anchorage.**
- **Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you intend to install in your Audi.**
- **Never use child restraint tether anchorages to secure safety belts or other kinds of occupant restraints.**
- **Never attach a tether strap to a tie-down hook in the luggage compartment.**
- **Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the LATCH lower anchorages or to the tether anchors.**
- **If a tether or other strap is used to attach a child restraint to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight, that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.**
- **The heavier weight registered can make the system work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.** ■

## Tether strap

*A tether is a straight or V-shaped strap that attaches the top part of a child restraint to special anchorage points in the vehicle.*

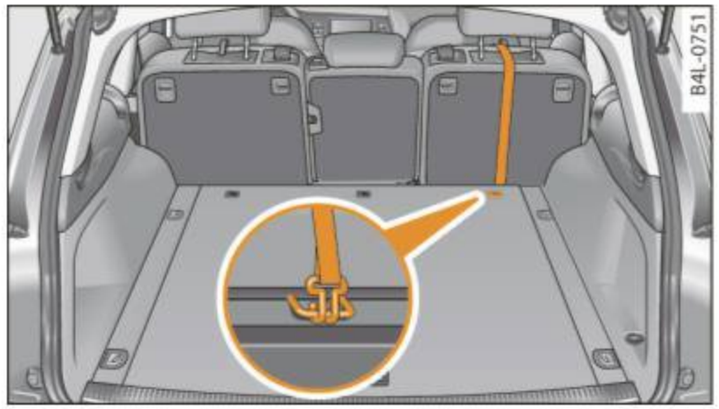



**Fig. 271 Tether strap for second row seats: proper routing and mounting**

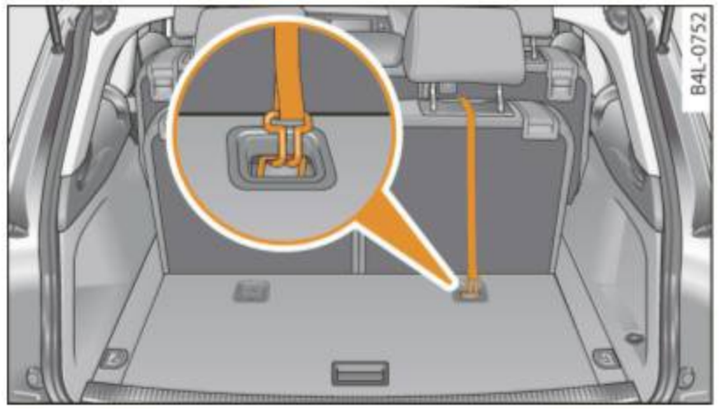



**Fig. 272 Tether strap for third row seats: proper routing and mounting**

The purpose of the tether is to reduce the forward movement of the child restraint in a crash, in order to help reduce the risk of head injury that could be caused by striking the vehicle interior.

Forward facing child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with child head movement performance requirements. These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child safety seats.

**WARNING**

**Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in a crash.**

- **Never attach a child safety seat tether strap to a tie-down hook in the luggage compartment.**
- **Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the LATCH lower anchorages or to the tether.**
- **If a tether or other strap is used to attach a child restraint to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight, that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.**
- **The heavier weight registered can make the system work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.** ■

## Using tethers on rear-facing child restraint systems

Currently, few rear-facing child restraint systems come with a tether. Please read and heed the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions carefully to determine how to properly install the tether.

**WARNING**

**A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.**

- **The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, or door.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **A tight tether or other strap on a rearward-facing child restraint attached to the front passenger seat can put too much pressure on the weight-mat in the seat and register a heavier weight in the Advanced Airbag System. The heavier weight registered can make the system work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.**
- **If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.** ■

## Securing the upper tether strap to the anchor bracket

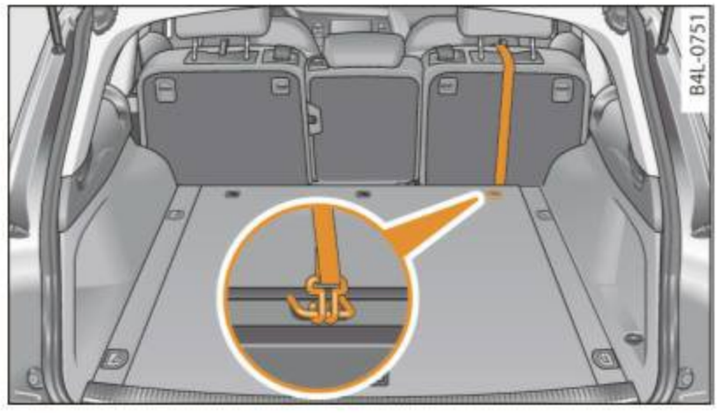



**Fig. 273 Tether strap for second row seats: proper routing and mounting**

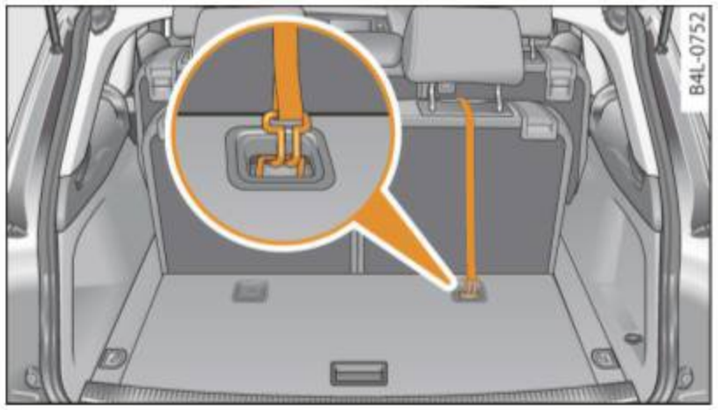



**Fig. 274 Tether strap for third row seats: proper routing and mounting**

## Securing the child restraint tether strap to the tether anchor

– Release or deploy the tether strap on the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's usage instructions.

– Guide the upper tether strap **under** the rear head restraint and into the rear cargo area (flip the head restraint up and remove the cargo area cover, if necessary).

– **For the second row of seats:** Pull the flooring back, in order to reach the tether anchors ⇒ *page 284,* fig. 273.

– **For the third row of seats:*** Remove the plastic cover cap with a screw driver, in order to reach the tether anchors ⇒ fig. 274.

– Slide the tether strap hook over the anchor bracket.

– Pull on the tether strap hook so that the spring catch of the hook engages.

– Tighten the tether strap firmly following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

– **For the second row of seats:** Push the flooring forward into place again.

## Releasing the tether strap

– Loosen the tension following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

– Depress the spring catch on the hook and release it from the tether anchor.

– **For the second row of seats:** Push the flooring forward into place again.

– **For the third row of seats:*** Replace the plastic cover cap.

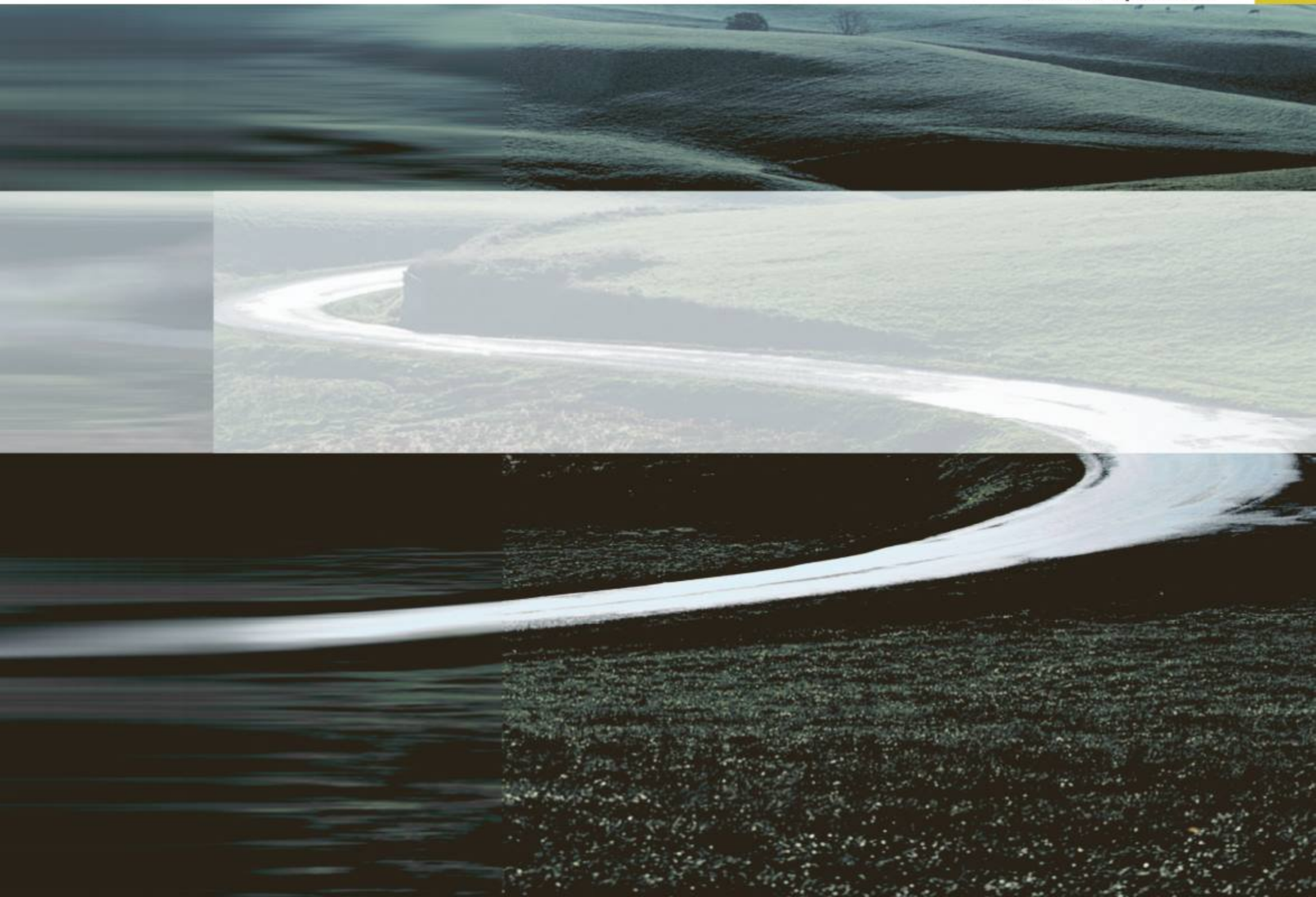
**⚠ WARNING**

**Always read and heed all WARNINGS.**

**Note**

If you leave the child restraint with the tether strap firmly installed for several days, this could leave a mark on the upholstery on the seat cushion and backrest in the area where the tether strap was installed. The upholstery would also be permanently stretched around the tether strap. This applies especially to leather seats. ■





# Intelligent technology

## Notice about data recorded by vehicle control modules

Your vehicle is not equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR), installed by some manufacturers for the express purpose of capturing data for retrieval after an accident or crash event. EDR's are sometimes called "crash recorders".

Some state laws restrict the retrieval or downloading of data stored by EDR's that were installed in a vehicle for the express purpose of retrieving data after an accident or crash event without the owner's consent.

Although your vehicle is not equipped with an EDR, it is equipped with a number of electronic control modules for various vehicle systems such as, for example, engine function, emission control, as well as for the airbags and safety belts.

These electronic control modules also record vehicle-related data during normal vehicle operation for diagnostic and repair purposes. The recording capacity of the electronic control modules is limited to data (no sound is recorded) and only a small amount of data is actually recorded over a very limited period of time and stored when a system fault or other condition is sensed by a control unit. Some of the data then stored may relate to vehicle speed, direction, braking as well as restraint system use and performance in the event of a crash or other condition. Stored data can only be read and downloaded with special equipment. ■

## Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP)

### General information

*The ESP improves the vehicle stability.*

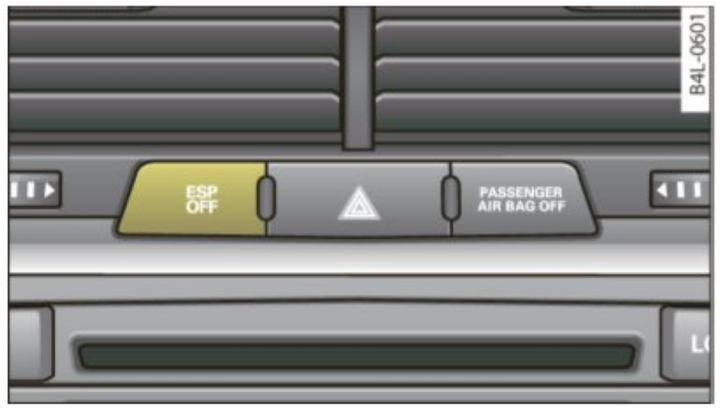



**Fig. 275 Center console with ESP switch**

ESP is designed to help you maintain vehicle control in situations where the car approaches the limits of "grip", especially when accelerating and cornering. ESP reduces the risk of skidding and improves stability under all road conditions.

The system operates across the entire speed range in combination with the ABS system. If the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) malfunctions, the ESP will also shut down.

#### How the system works

The Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) and the Anti-Slip Regulation System (ASR) are integrated in the electronic stabilization program. In addition to the data provided by these functions, the ESP control unit requires additional measurement data provided by high performance sensors. The rotational speed of the vehicle about its vertical axis, vehicle acceleration in the fore-and-aft and lateral directions, the brake pressure and the steering angle are all measured. ▶

The direction in which the driver wishes to travel is determined with the aid of the steering angle and vehicle speed and is continually compared with the actual behavior of the vehicle. If the two do not match, for example, when the vehicle starts hydroplaning on a wet road, ESP will automatically brake the appropriate wheel to correct the problem.

The vehicle is then stabilized by the forces acting on the wheel during braking. If the vehicle is *oversteering* (rear tends to skid out of the turn), the brakes are mainly applied on the wheel that is on the outside of the curve. In the case of a vehicle that is *understeering* (tendency to slide out of the curve), the brakes are applied as needed on the wheel that is on the inside of the curve or additionally on the other wheels. An acoustic signal indicates when ESP brake application cuts in ⇒ ⚠.

The system operates across the entire speed range in combination with the ABS system ⇒ *page 292*. If the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) malfunctions, the ESP will be out of action as well.

### Activating

When you turn on the engine, ESP will automatically be activated and will perform a self-test. As soon as the test is completed, the system is in normal operating mode.

### Offroad mode

ESP should normally be operated in normal mode because this ensures maximum vehicle stability. If necessary, you can activate the ESP offroad mode by pressing the button ⇒ *page 288*, fig. 275 to obtain maximum traction and braking ability when driving off paved roads at low speeds. In ESP offroad mode, the ESP indicator light ⇒ *page 19* illuminates and the message **ESP Offroad** appears briefly in the display.

The ESP offroad mode can be useful in the following exceptional situations when slip or a highly effective differential locking function is desirable. Examples:

- when driving with tire chains,
- when driving in deep snow or on loose ground,
- when driving on uneven surfaces with the wheels severely unloaded (articulation), and
- when rocking the vehicle loose after it has become stuck.

When the unusual situation is past, you should shift back to the normal ESP operating mode by pushing the button again. The message **ESP/ASR on** then appears briefly in the display.

### Hill descent control

The hill descent control is switched on in ESP offroad mode. When slowly descending steep gradients on loose ground or when the axles are articulated, hill descent control provides assistance by automatically applying the brakes to keep vehicle speed constant. The vehicle is also rendered easier to steer by selective distribution of braking force. Hill descent control intervenes when:

- the accelerator pedal is not pressed,
- the vehicle is travelling less than 12 mph (20 km/h),
- a steep gradient is detected,
- wheel behavior indicates loose ground or conditions with poor adhesion (e.g. also axle articulation).

Hill descent control operates both driving forward and in reverse. Active hill descent control is deactivated by pressing the accelerator pedal until the conditions for activation already listed are met again.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The Electronic Stabilization Program is nevertheless subject to the laws of physics. It is particularly important to pay attention to this fact on wet and slippery roads. It is therefore important that you always adapt your driving to the condition of the road and traffic conditions. Do not allow the increased safety provided by the Electronic Stabilization Program system to lull you into accepting additional safety risks.**
- **Please be aware that in ESP offroad mode, particularly on a smooth and slippery road, the wheels may have an increased**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

**tendency to spin and the vehicle may break away - danger of skidding!**

- **Stability is limited in the ESP offroad mode.** ■

## Electronic differential lock (EDL)

*The electronic differential lock monitors the rotational speed of the drive wheels.*

### General notes

The electronic differential lock (EDL) helps the car to start moving, accelerate and climb a gradient on surfaces providing poor or almost no grip. Without EDL, this would be difficult, if not impossible.

### How the system works

The EDL operates automatically. It monitors the rotational speed of wheels with the help of the ABS sensors ⇒ *page 292*. If a noticeable *slip* is detected at the wheels (e.g. on slippery ground *on one side*), the spinning wheels are braked and power is transferred to the other wheels. This is done up to a speed of about 60 mph (100 km/h). Noises from the brake system signal that wheel spin is being controlled.

### Driving off

When driving off, always be sure to keep road conditions in mind as you accelerate. If one drive wheel spins because it is on a surface with less grip, apply *plenty of* throttle until the car starts to move.

### Overheating of brakes

To prevent the disc brake of the braked wheel from overheating if subjected to excessive loads on this wheel, the EDL cuts out temporarily. The vehicle remains operational and behaves in the same way as a vehicle without EDL.

As soon as the brake has cooled down, EDL switches on again automatically.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **When accelerating on slippery surfaces, such as on ice or snow, always be careful when depressing the accelerator pedal. Even with the EDL working, the drive wheels can spin and reduce your ability to control your car. Risk of crash!**
- **The increased safety afforded by EDL does not mean that you can take safety risks. Always adapt your driving style to the road conditions and traffic situation.**

**Tips**

If a fault occurs in the ABS, the EDL is also not functioning. This is indicated by the ABS warning light ⇒ *page 22*. ■

## Anti-Slip Regulation System (ASR)

*The Anti-Slip Regulation System prevents the driven wheels from spinning when the car is accelerating.*

### General notes

The Anti-Slip Regulation System (ASR) is integrated in the electronic stabilization program (ESP). When the vehicle starts up and accelerates, the wheels are prevented from spinning by adjusting the engine power to match the amount of grip available from the road surface.

### How the system works

ASR performs automatically, i.e. without the driver's intervention. With the aid of the ABS sensors ⇒ *page 292*, ASR monitors the speed of the driven wheels. If the wheels start to spin, engine torque is reduced automatically until the tires find enough grip to lock onto the road surface. The system is active across the entire speed range. ▶

The ASR works in conjunction with the ABS. If a malfunction should occur in the ABS, the ASR will also be out of action.

**WARNING**

**The increased safety afforded by ASR does not mean that you can take safety risks. Always adapt your driving style to the road conditions and traffic situation.**

**Tips**

To ensure that the ASR works properly, all four wheels must be fitted with identical tires. Any differences in rolling radius of the tires can cause the system to reduce engine power when this is not desired. See also ⇒ *page 359,* “New tires and replacing tires and wheels”. ■

# Braking

## General information

### *What affects braking efficiency?*

#### Operating conditions and driving habits

The brakes on today’s automobiles are still subject to wear, depending largely on operating conditions and driving habits ⇒ ⚠. On vehicles that are either driven mostly in stop-and-go city traffic or are driven hard, the brake pads should be checked by your authorized Audi dealer more often than specified in the **Warranty & Maintenance booklet**. Failure to have your brake pads inspected can result in reduced brake performance.

On steep slopes, you should use the braking effect of the engine. This way, you prevent unnecessary wear on the brake system. If you must use your brakes, do not hold the brakes down continuously. Pump the brakes at intervals.

#### Moisture or road salt

If you are driving faster than 31 mph (50 km/h) and the windshield wipers are on, the brake pads will briefly touch the brake discs in regular intervals so as to improve reaction time when braking on wet surfaces. You, the driver, will not notice anything.

Under certain conditions, for example, when driving through water or very heavy rain, or even after washing your vehicle, the braking effect can be reduced due to moisture (or in freezing conditions ice) on the brake pads. A few careful brake applications should dry off the brake pads or remove any ice coatings.

The effectiveness of the brakes can be reduced when the vehicle is driven on a salt-covered road and the brakes are not used. Here too, you should clean off accumulated salt coating from brake discs and pads with a few careful applications of the brake ⇒ ⚠.

#### Corrosion

There may be a tendency for dirt to build up on the brake pads and corrosion to form on the discs if the car is not driven regularly or only for short trips with little use of the brakes.

If the brakes are not used frequently, or if corrosion has formed on the discs, it is advisable to clean off the pads and discs by braking firmly a few times from a moderately high speed ⇒ ⚠.

#### Faults in the brake system

If you should notice a *sudden* increase in brake pedal travel, then one of the two brake circuits may have failed ⇒ ⚠.

#### Low brake fluid level

Malfunctions can occur in the brake system if the brake fluid level is too low. The brake fluid level is monitored electronically.

#### Brake lining wear status

Brake lining wear may be checked by visual inspection of the condition of the brake pads through the openings in the wheel. If necessary, the wheel may be removed for this inspection ⇒ *page 373,* “Changing a wheel”. ▶

**WARNING**

- **You should perform braking maneuvers for the purpose of cleaning the brake system only if road conditions permit. Other road users must not be put at risk - you may cause an accident!**
- **Before descending a steep grade, reduce speed and shift transmission into a lower gear or lower driving range. Do not ride the brakes or hold the pedal down too long or too often. This could cause the brakes to get hot and diminish braking efficiency.**
- **Do not "ride the brakes" by resting your foot on the pedal when you do not intend to brake. This may cause the brakes to overheat, premature wear and increased stopping distance.**
- **Under certain climatic and operating conditions such as passing through water, driving in heavy rain or after washing the vehicle, the effectiveness of the brakes can be reduced. In winter, ice can accumulate on the brake pads, linings, discs and drums. Carefully apply brakes for a test. Brakes will dry and ice coatings will be cleaned off after a few careful brake applications.**
- **Driving for an extended period of time on salt-covered roads without using your brakes can also affect braking efficiency. Clean off accumulated salt coating from brake discs and pads with a few careful brake applications.**
- **If you damage the front spoiler, or if you install a different spoiler, be sure the air flow to the front brakes is not obstructed. Otherwise the brake system could overheat reducing the effectiveness of the entire brake system.**
- **Failure of one brake circuit will impair the braking capability resulting in an increased stopping distance. Avoid driving the vehicle and have it towed to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.** ■

## Brake booster

*The brake booster adds extra braking power.*

The brake booster works with vacuum pressure which is created only when the engine is running ⇒ ⚠.

**WARNING**

- **Never let the vehicle roll to a stop with the engine shut off.**
- **If the brake booster is not working, for example when towing your vehicle, or because the brake booster has somehow been damaged, the brake pedal must be pressed considerably harder to make up for the lack of booster assistance.** ■

## Functioning of Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS)

*ABS prevents the wheels from locking up under braking.*

The ABS contributes effectively to vehicle control since it prevents the wheels from *locking* when the brakes are applied. This means that the vehicle remains steerable and is less likely to skid.

**With ABS you do not need to *pump* the brake. Just hold the brake pedal down.**

However, do not expect the ABS to shorten braking distance under *all* circumstances. When driving on gravel or on newly fallen snow on top of icy surfaces, braking distance may be even longer, therefore, under these circumstances, it is especially important that you drive slowly and with great care.

### How the ABS system works

An automatic check is made when a speed of about 12 mph (20 km/h) is reached. When this happens, a pumping noise can be heard.

If an individual wheel begins to rotate too slowly in relation to vehicle speed and tends to lock, the ABS automatically reduces brake pressure to prevent that wheel from locking.

This automatic adjustment process will cause a **slight vibration** of the brake pedal and some noises to alert you that vehicle speed must be adapted to existing road and traffic conditions.

**WARNING**

**Although the ABS is very effective, always remember that braking capability is limited by tire traction. Always adjust your driving speed according to the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety afforded by the ABS tempt you into taking extra risks. The ABS cannot overcome the laws of physics.**

**Tips**

- If ABS is not functioning properly, a warning light will come on. See ⇒ *page 22*.
- If a fault occurs in the ABS, the EDL is also not functioning. This is indicated by the ABS warning light. ■

## Brake assistant

*The brake assistant is designed to achieve the optimum braking effect.*

The brake assistant helps to increase the *effective* braking power and thus to achieve a shorter stopping distance. If the driver presses the brake pedal very quickly, the brake assistant automatically boosts the braking force to the maximum level, up to the point where the anti-lock brake function (ABS) intervenes to stop the wheels from locking. You should then keep the brake pedal pressed until the vehicle has braked to the required speed. The brake assistant switches itself off as soon as you release the brake pedal.

### Automatic full braking assist

This function allows full braking in spite of high brake pedal forces (e.g. when the brakes are severely stressed because the vehicle is fully loaded). The driver notices this function through a reduction of pedal force and increased pedal travel. When the brake pedal is released, full braking assist switches off again automatically.

If there is an ABS failure, the brake assistant and automatic full braking assist are not available.

The brake assistant will not be operative if there is a malfunction in the ABS.

**WARNING**

**Please remember that the accident risk always increases if you drive too fast, especially in corners or on a slippery road, or if you follow the vehicle ahead of you too closely. Increased risk of an accident cannot be compensated for even by the brake assistant, so always maintain a safe speed.** ■

## Servotronic® - advanced power steering system

*The power steering systems uses the power of the running engine to allow precise steering with little effort.*

The advanced *Servotronic*® power steering system senses the road speed and electronically adjusts power assistance to provide comfortable and safe steering response exactly matched to the vehicle speed.

Power steering will not work if the engine is off. As a result, the steering wheel will be hard to turn.

The power steering fluid level is checked during the scheduled maintenance services.

### Note

If there is an electronic malfunction, *servotronic* will still function like a conventional power steering system, providing a constant steering support force that is no longer proportionate to the vehicle speed. This is most noticeable when turning the steering wheel at low speeds (for example when parking), - more effort will be required than usual.

- Be aware of the different than usual steering response and adjust your steering force accordingly.
- Have the problem checked and set right by an Audi dealer as soon as possible.

### Tips

- When the engine is running, never hold the steering wheel turned all the way to the right or to the left for longer than 15 seconds. The power steering pump will overheat the hydraulic fluid if you keep holding the steering wheel turned all the way. This is likely to damage the power steering system.
- If the power steering system should fail entirely, or if the engine is not running (for example, while being towed), you will still be able to steer the vehicle. However, *considerably* more effort will be required to do so.
- If the power steering system should have a leak, or is not functioning properly, contact your authorized Audi dealer immediately.
- The power steering system requires a specially formulated hydraulic fluid. The power steering reservoir is the one located farthest to the rear on the left side of the engine compartment ⇒ *page 332*. The correct fluid level in the reservoir is important for proper functioning of the power steering. ■

## Driving with your quattro®

*With All Wheel Drive, all four wheels are driven.*

### General information

With All Wheel Drive, power is distributed to all four wheels. This happens automatically depending on your driving style and the road conditions at the time. See also ⇒ *page 290,* “Electronic differential lock (EDL)”.

### Winter tires

When driving in the winter, your vehicle with All Wheel Drive has an advantage, even with regular tires. In winter road conditions it may be advisable to mount winter tires (or all-season tires) for improved driveability and braking: these tires must be mounted on **all four wheels**. See also ⇒ *page 363,* “Winter tires”.

### Tire chains

Where tire chains are mandatory on certain roads, this normally also applies to vehicles with All Wheel Drive ⇒ *page 364,* “Snow chains”.

### Replacing wheels/tires

Vehicles with All Wheel Drive must always have tires of the same size. Also avoid tires with different tread depths. For details see page ⇒ *page 359,* “New tires and replacing tires and wheels”.

### WARNING

**Always adjust your driving to road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety afforded by All Wheel Drive tempt you into taking extra risks.**

- **Although the All Wheel Drive is very effective, always remember that braking capacity is limited by tire traction. You should therefore not drive at excessive speeds on icy or slippery road surfaces.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **On wet road surfaces, be careful not to drive too fast because the front wheels could begin to slide on top of the water (aquaplaning). If this should occur, you will have no warning from a sudden increase in engine speed as with a front-wheel drive vehicle. Always drive at speeds which are suited to the road conditions – risk of crash.** ■

# Energy management

## Starting ability is optimized

*Energy management controls the distribution of electrical energy and thus optimizes the availability of electrical energy for starting the engine.*

If a vehicle with a conventional energy system is not driven for a long period of time, the battery is discharged by idling current consumers (e.g. immobilizer). In certain circumstances it can result in there being insufficient energy available to start the engine.

Intelligent energy management in your vehicle handles the distribution of electrical energy. Starting ability is markedly improved and the life of the battery is extended.

Basically, energy management consists of **battery diagnosis**, **idling current management** and **dynamic energy management**.

### Battery diagnosis

Battery diagnosis continuously determines the state of the battery. Sensors determine battery voltage, battery current and battery temperature. This determines the current state of charge and the power of the battery.

### Idling current management

Idling current management reduces energy consumption while the vehicle is standing. With the ignition switched off, it controls the energy supply to the various electrical components. Data from battery diagnosis is considered.

Depending on the battery's state of charge, individual consumers are gradually turned off to prevent excessive discharge of the battery and thus maintain starting capability.

### Dynamic energy management

While the vehicle is being driven, dynamic energy management distributes the energy generated according to the needs of the individual components. It regulates consumption, so that more electrical energy is not being used than is being generated and ensures an optimal state of charge for the battery.

### Tips

- But even energy management cannot negate the limits of physics. Consider that the power and life of a battery are limited.
- If starting ability is threatened, you are informed by a warning ⇒ *page 296,* "Driver notification in the instrument cluster display". ■

## What you should know

*The highest priority is given to maintaining starting capability.*

The battery is severely taxed in short-distance driving, in city traffic and during the cold time of year. Abundant electrical energy is required, but only a little is generated. It is also critical if the engine is not running and electrical components are turned on. In this instance energy is being consumed but none is being generated.

It is in precisely these situations that you will notice energy management actively regulating the distribution of energy. ▶

### Vehicle stands for an extended period

If you do not drive your vehicle over a period of several days or weeks, electrical components are gradually cut back or switched off. This reduces energy consumption and maintains starting capability over a longer period.

Take into consideration that when you unlock your vehicle, some convenience functions, such as the remote key or power seat adjustment, may not be available. The convenience functions will be available again when you turn on the ignition and start the engine.

### With the engine turned off

If you listen to the radio, for example, with the engine turned off or use other MMI functions, the battery is being discharged.

If starting capability is jeopardized due to energy consumption, the following warning appears in the MMI display:

**Please start engine, otherwise system will switch off in 3 minutes.**

The warning indicates that the system will be turned off automatically after 3 minutes. If you wish to continue using the functions, you have to start the engine.

### With the engine running

Although electrical energy is generated when the vehicle is being driven, the battery can become discharged. This happens mostly when little energy is being generated and a great deal consumed and the battery's state of charge is not optimal.

To bring the energy balance back into equilibrium, consumers which require especially large amounts of energy are temporarily cut back or switched off. Heating systems in particular require a great deal of energy. If you notice, for example, that the heated seats* or the heated rear window are not heating, they have been temporarily cut back or switched off. These systems will be available again as soon as the energy balance has been restored.

You will also notice that engine idle speed has been increased slightly. This is normal and not a cause for concern. By increasing engine idle speed the additional energy required is generated and the battery is charged. ■

## Driver notification in the instrument cluster display

If battery power drops into the range where it can limit the ability of the engine to start, this is shown in the instrument cluster display with the following driver message:

**Low battery charge: battery will be charged while driving**

This notification reminds you that the starting capability of the engine may be limited. As soon as you start driving again, the battery will be recharged and the notification will go out.

### Driver notification appears and goes out again

If this driver notification appears after the ignition is turned on or while driving and it goes out again after a while, the battery has been adequately recharged.

### Driver notification appears and does not go out again

If this driver notification appears after the ignition is turned on or while driving and does not go out again, the battery's state of charge is not in the optimal range. Starting ability is restricted. Have the battery checked as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop. ■

# Driving and environment

## The first 1,000 miles (1,500 km) and afterwards

### New engine

*The engine needs to be run-in during the first 1,000 miles (1,500 km).*

**For the first 600 miles (1,000 kilometers):**

- Do not use full throttle.
- Do not drive faster than 3/4 of the top speed marked on the speedometer.
- Avoid high engine speeds.

**From 600 to 1,000 miles (1,000 to 1,500 kilometers):**

- Speeds can *gradually* be increased to the maximum permissible road or engine speed.

**During and after break-in period**

- Do not rev the engine up to high speeds when it is cold. This applies whether the transmission is in N (Neutral) or in gear.

**After the break-in period**

- Do not exceed maximum engine speed under any circumstances.
- Upshift into the next higher gear *before* reaching the red area at the end of the tachometer scale ⇒ *page 13*.

During the first few hours of driving, the engine's internal friction is higher than later when all the moving parts have been broken in. How well this break-in process is done depends to a considerable extent on the way the vehicle is driven during the first 1,000 miles (1,500 kilometers).

**Note**

Extremely high engine speeds are automatically reduced. However, these rpm limits are programmed for an engine well run-in, not a new engine.

**For the sake of the environment**

Do not drive with unnecessarily high engine speeds - upshifting early saves fuel, reduces noise and protects the environment. ■

### New tires

If your vehicle is running on new tires, drive particularly careful for the first 350 miles (500 kilometers) after fitting.

**WARNING**

**New tires tend to be slippery and must also be "broken-in". Be sure to remember this during the first 350 miles (500 kilometers). Brake gently. Avoid following closely behind other vehicles or other situations that might require sudden, hard braking. ■**

## New brake pads

Remember that new brake pads do not have a full braking effect during the first 250 miles (400 kilometers) after they are installed.

New brake pads have to be "burnished in" before they have optimal grab ⇒ ⚠.

During the break-in period, you should avoid putting severe loads on the brakes. Severe loads include, for example, sudden hard braking, in particular at very high speeds or, for example, on mountain passes.

**⚠ WARNING**

**New brake pads don't have the best stopping power and must be "broken-in" during the initial 100 to 150 miles (150 to 200 kilometers) of normal city driving. You can compensate for this by pressing the brake pedal more firmly. This also applies later when new pads are installed. ■**

## Catalytic converter

*It is very important that your emission control system (catalytic converter) is functioning properly to ensure that your vehicle is running in an environmentally sound manner.*

– Always use lead-free gasoline ⇒ *page 325,* "Fuel supply".

– Never run the tank down all the way to empty.

– Never put too much motor oil in your engine ⇒ *page 336,* "Adding engine oil".

– Never try to push- or tow-start your vehicle.

The catalytic converter is an efficient "clean-up" device built into the exhaust system of the vehicle. The catalytic converter burns many of the pollutants in the exhaust gas before they are released into the atmosphere.

The exclusive use of unleaded fuel is critically important for the life of the catalytic converter and proper functioning of the engine.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where the hot exhaust system may come in contact with dry grass, brush, fuel spill or other material which can cause a fire.**
- **Do not apply additional undercoating or rustproofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or heat shields. During driving, the substance used for undercoating could overheat and cause a fire.**

**Note**

- Be aware that just one tank filling with **leaded** fuel will already seriously degrade the performance of the catalytic converter.
- Do not exceed the correct engine oil level ⇒ *page 336.*
- Do not drive until the fuel tank becomes completely empty. The engine could misfire. Unburned fuel could also get into the exhaust system and this could cause the catalytic converter to overheat.
- Do not turn off the ignition while the vehicle is moving.
- Do not continue to operate your vehicle under these conditions, as otherwise fuel can reach the catalytic converter. This could result in overheating of the converter, requiring its replacement.
- To assure efficient operation of the Emission Control System:
  – Have your vehicle maintained properly and in accordance with the service recommendations in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

– Lack of proper maintenance as well as improper use of the vehicle will impair the function of the emission control system and could lead to damage.

### For the sake of the environment

Even when the Emission Control System is operating properly, the exhaust gas can have a sulfur-like exhaust gas smell under some operating states. This depends on the sulfur content of the fuel being used. Using a different brand of fuel may help, or filling the tank with lead-free super grade gasoline. ■

## Avoid damaging the vehicle

When you are driving on poor roads, or over curbs, steep ramps, etc., make certain that low-lying parts such as spoilers and exhaust system parts do not bottom out and get damaged.

This is especially true for vehicles with low-slung chassis (sports chassis)* and fully loaded vehicles. ■

## Operate your vehicle economically and minimize pollution

### General

*Your personal style of driving will determine the economy of your vehicle, as well as exhaust and noise levels.*

Fuel economy, environmental impact, and wear on your engine, brakes and tires largely depend on three factors:

- your personal driving style
- operating conditions
- technical limitations

If you anticipate what you need to do next and drive economically, you can easily cut your fuel consumption by 10-15 percent. This section will give you some tips on how you can help the environment and your pocketbook.

### Tips

The consumption estimates as published by ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA) and Transport Canada may not correspond to your actual consumption on the road, which will vary depending upon vehicle load and speed, road and weather conditions, trip length, etc. ■

### Drive smoothly and keep a lookout ahead

*Vehicles use the most fuel when they are accelerating.*

– Avoid unnecessary accelerating and braking.

Vehicles use the most fuel when they are accelerating. If you anticipate what is going to happen next, you will need to brake less and, thus, accelerate less. Let the vehicle coast whenever possible - for example when you see that the next traffic light is red. ■

### Avoid full throttle

*Driving at moderate speeds saves fuel and improves your mileage.*

– Try and keep well below your car's maximum speed.

Accelerating gently reduces fuel consumption, engine wear, and does not disturb the environment.

Fuel consumption, exhaust emissions and engine noise increase disproportionately at high speeds. If you drive at approximately three quarters of top speed, fuel consumption will be reduced by ▶

one half. Never drive faster than the posted speed limit and weather conditions permit. ■

## Reducing unnecessary idling

*Even when your car is just idling it burns up fuel.*

– Shut the engine off when you are not driving the vehicle.

– Do not warm up the vehicle by letting the engine run at idle.

It makes sense to shut off the engine in traffic jams, when waiting for trains to pass at railroad crossings, or at traffic lights that have long waits on red. Turning the engine off for just 30-40 seconds saves more fuel than is burned starting the engine again.

It takes a long time for the engine to warm up fully when it is running at idle. However, wear and noxious emissions are especially high when the engine is warming up. So you should drive away as soon as you start the engine and avoid running at high rpms while the engine is still warming up.

**Note**

Do not leave engine idling unattended after starting. If warning lights should come on to indicate improper operation, they would go unheeded. Extended idling also produces heat, which could result in overheating or other damage to the vehicle or other property. ■

## Regular maintenance

*A badly tuned engine unnecessarily wastes a lot of fuel.*

– Have your vehicle serviced at regular intervals.

By having your vehicle regularly serviced by an authorized Audi dealer helps to ensure that it runs properly and economically. The condition of your vehicle not only affects its safety and ability to hold its value, it also affects **fuel consumption**.

**Check your oil each time you fill your tank.**

The amount of oil used is related to engine load and speed.

It is normal for the oil consumption of a new engine to reach its lowest value after a certain mileage has been driven.

You must drive your vehicle about 3,000 miles (5,000 kilometers) before you can properly assess oil consumption.

This also applies to fuel consumption and engine output.

**Note**

- Have your vehicle maintained properly and in accordance with the service recommendations in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet. Lack of proper maintenance as well as improper use of the vehicle will impair the function of the emission control system and could lead to damage.
- Do not alter or remove any component of the Emission Control System unless approved by the manufacturer.
- Do not alter or remove any device, such as heat shields, switches, ignition wires, valves, which are designed to protect your vehicle's Emission Control System and other important vehicle components. ■

## Fewer short trips

*Fuel consumption will always be relatively high on short trips.*

– Try to avoid driving short distances with a cold engine. ▶

The engine and catalytic converter have to reach their optimal **operating temperature** to reduce fuel consumption and noxious emissions effectively.

Just after starting, a cold engine in a mid-size car only achieves a fuel economy of 6-8 miles per gallon (30-40 l/100km). After about a half a mile, fuel economy climbs to 12 mpg (20 l/100 km). After about *2.5* miles (4 km), the engine is at its proper operating temperature and fuel economy has reached a normal level. So you can see that you should avoid short trips whenever possible.

The **outside temperature** is also critical in this regard. Your car consumes more fuel in the winter than in the summer. ■

# Driving off road

## Driving in difficult road conditions and offroad

### General information

The operation of the Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) is expanded for operation away from paved roads. In situations where slip or a differential locking function is required, the ESP offroad mode can be activated ⇒ *page 288*. Hill descent control is also available in the ESP offroad mode, which automatically brakes the vehicle and thereby keeps speed constant when different wheel speeds are detected when descending a hill ⇒ *page 289*. Your Audi also has permanent all-wheel drive in addition.

However, your Audi is not a pure offroad vehicle. It was not built for driving under extreme conditions, e.g. for trips that are in the nature of an expedition.

**Drive only on roads and offroad sections which match the design of your vehicle and your abilities as a driver. Never take risks!**

#### Before driving offroad

- Check the engine oil level, tire pressure, coolant level, and the fluid level in the windshield washer reservoir.
- Stow luggage items and other objects in the luggage compartment, and secure them against sliding around.

#### After driving offroad

- After trips offroad, remove any twigs and other foreign objects from the grill, the underbody and the wheels. Pay special attention to foreign objects (stones) which have become lodged in the tire tread.
- Clean the body and the vehicle underside, and inspect the vehicle for possible damage.
- Clean dirty windows, headlamp lenses, rear lights, and license plates.
- Perform a brake check (particularly after travelling through water).

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Drive especially attentively and plan ahead in difficult road conditions and when offroad. Excessive speed or incorrect maneuvers can cause injuries and damage to the vehicle.**
- **Always adapt your speed and driving style to road, offroad, traffic, and weather conditions. Drive especially slowly offroad when your view is restricted.**
- **Please be aware that in ESP offroad mode, particularly on a smooth and slippery road, the wheels may have an increased tendency to spin and the vehicle may break away - danger of skidding!**
- **Stability is limited in the ESP offroad mode.**

**For the sake of the environment**

Avoid damage to the environment and respect nature.

**Tips**

Only drive where it is permitted and stay on marked roads and paths. ■

### Explanation of some technical terms

The following data refer to ideal conditions. Depending on vehicle load and ground conditions and the environment, the numbers may ▶

vary. It is the driver's responsibility to decide whether a vehicle can overcome a specific situation ⇒ ⚠.

### Fording depth

Distance between the point touched by the tires (surface of ground) and the engine air intake or induction system. Maximum fording depth in standing water.

- **Vehicles without air springs:** 19.7 in (500 mm)
- **Vehicles with adaptive air suspension*:** 18.7 in (475 mm) at normal level, 21.1 in (535 mm) at high level 2

### Gradient angle

The number of meters in altitude gained over a distance of 109.4 yards or 100 meters (grade) are given as a percentage or degrees. Information about the gradient the vehicle can climb under its own power (depends in part on the road surface and engine power). Maximum permitted grade: 31°

### Lateral angle (slope of vehicle)

Indicates the angle up to which the vehicle can be driven diagonally or across the fall line on a slope without the vehicle tipping over sideways (depends on center of gravity). Maximum permitted lateral angle: 35°

### Breakover angle

Indicates the angle up to which the vehicle can drive over a ramp at low speed without the underside of the vehicle hitting the edge of the ramp.

- **Vehicles without air springs:** maximum breakover angle: 21,1°
- **Vehicles with adaptive air suspension*:** maximum breakover angle: 19.1° (at normal level), 23.8° (at high level 2)

### Approach/departure angle

Transition from the horizontal plane to a gradient or from a grade back to level ground. Indicates the angle up to which the vehicle can drive onto or off a slope at low speed without striking the bumper or the underbody.

- **Vehicles without air springs:** maximum approach/departure angle: 21.9° (front), 23.4° (rear)
- **Vehicles with adaptive air suspension*:** maximum approach/departure angle at normal level 20° (front), 21.9° (rear). Maximum approach/departure angle at high level 2 (front) 24°, (rear) 25.4°

### Ground clearance

The distance between the road surface and the lowest point of the vehicle underbody.

- **Vehicles without air springs:** Ground clearance 8.1 in (204.8 mm)
- **Vehicles with adaptive air suspension*:** minimum ground clearance 7.1 in (179.8 mm) at normal level, maximum ground clearance 9.4 in (239.8 mm) at high level 2

**⚠ WARNING**

**Exceeding the stated maximum figures can result in severe injuries or vehicle damage.**

- **All the information was gathered on level, firm and non-slippery road surfaces, and under dry weather conditions.**
- **Ideal conditions do not prevail offroad. Never utilize the maximum readings to their fullest, always leave a safety reserve.** ■

## Driving tips

*On poor road and offroad, there is always only one motto: Plan ahead and drive slowly!*

Please observe the following when driving away from paved roads: ▶

- Drive only on roads and offroad sections which match the design of your vehicle and your abilities as a driver. Never take risks!
- Drive slowly and plan ahead!
- Take into consideration the **ground clearance** of your vehicle.
- Activate the **ESP offroad mode** ⇒ *page 288* as needed.
- Use the **hill descent control** ⇒ *page 289* when driving down steep sections on hills.

### Unpaved roads and offroad

Drive slowly on unfamiliar roads and unknown offroad sections, and look out for unexpected obstacles (e.g. potholes, rocks, tree stumps, etc.).

To prevent the vehicle from bottoming and avoid damage to the underbody, you should drive straight across severe bumps in the ground with only one side of the vehicle so that only two of your wheels cross the bumps.

Drive briskly through sandy or marshy offroad sections and do not stop, if at all possible.

### Driving through water

Your vehicle can drive through standing water if the ground is firm enough. The **maximum fording depth** is 19.7 in or 500 mm (vehicles without air springs) or 21.1 in or 535 mm (vehicles with adaptive air suspension*, at high level 2).

Check the depth of the water before driving through water.

Cross water only at walking speed, do not stop and do not turn the engine off.

If you drive fast through the water, you will create a bow wave in front of the vehicle. This bow wave can get into the engine air intake and severely damage the engine.

Avoid driving through salt water (corrosion).

### Driving on a slope

If you ever find yourself **not** able to climb a slope, do not try to turn around, drive back down in **reverse**. Otherwise, you run the risk of tipping over.

**If the vehicle threatens to tip over when driving across a slope, you must immediately steer downhill in the direction of the slope.**

Do **not** park your vehicle on steep slopes or grades.

To reduce the risk of tipping over, drive on slopes in the direction of the downward slope (fall line) - **not crosswise**.

### Driving on snow-covered ground

The standard tires fitted to your vehicle are not snow tires. So you should mount wheels with snow tires in good time where winter road conditions prevail. Before driving on unploughed stretches of deep snow, install tire chains. For technical reasons, tire chains may only be installed on the rear wheels - never on the front wheels.

**WARNING**

**After driving through water, mud, slush, etc. the brakes may be slow to take effect because of wet brake rotors and pads. The brakes must first be carefully dried by braking so that full braking effect is restored.** ■

# Trailer towing

## Driving with a trailer

### General information

*Your Audi was designed primarily for passenger transportation.*

If you plan to tow a trailer, please remember that the additional load will affect durability, economy and performance.

Trailer towing not only places more stress on the vehicle, it also calls for more concentration from the driver.

For this reason, always follow the operating and driving instructions provided and use common sense.

**Note**

If you are going to tow a trailer, you must activate the trailer operation mode ⇒ *page 211,* "Towing a trailer". ■

### Technical requirements

#### Trailer hitch

Use a weight-carrying hitch conforming to the gross trailer weight. The hitch must be suitable for your vehicle and trailer and must be mounted securely on the vehicle's chassis at a *technically sound* location. Use only a trailer hitch with a removable ball mount. Always check with the trailer hitch manufacturer to make sure that you are using the correct hitch.

**Do not use a bumper hitch.**

The hitch must be installed in such a way that it does not interfere with the impact-absorbing bumper system. No modifications should be made to the vehicle exhaust and brake systems. From time to time, check that all hitch mounting bolts remain securely fastened.

When you are not towing a trailer, remove the trailer hitch ball mount. This prevents the hitch from causing damage should your vehicle be struck from behind ⇒ ⚠.

#### Trailer brakes

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, check to be sure that it conforms to all regulations.

The trailer hydraulic brake system must not be directly connected to the vehicle's hydraulic brake system ⇒ ⚠.

#### Safety chains

Always use safety chains between your vehicle and the trailer.

#### Trailer lights

Trailer lights must meet all regulations. Be sure to check with your authorized Audi dealer for correct wiring, switches, and relays.

#### Mirrors

If you are unable to see the traffic behind you using the regular outside mirrors, then you *must* install extended mirrors. It is important that you *always* have clear vision to the rear.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **If a trailer has electrical brakes please note that these brakes are not activated by the factory-fitted control unit - risk of accident!**
- **After removing the trailer hitch, do not store it in your vehicle. In case of sudden braking, the hitch could fly forward and injure you or your passengers.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating for your Audi Q7 vehicle, found on the safety compliance label on the driver's side B-pillar, must never be exceeded under any circumstances. Exceeding the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating of your vehicle is likely to damage your vehicle, and such damage will not be covered by your Limited New Vehicle Warranty. Exceeding the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating will also change the performance and handling characteristics of your vehicle, which could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.**
- **The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating for your Audi Q7 would be exceeded if your vehicle is simultaneously equipped with Panoramic sliding sunroof; third-row seating; trailer towing equipment (factory or dealer-installed), and running boards (dealer-installed). UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES MAY ALL SUCH ITEMS BE INSTALLED ON THE SAME VEHICLE.** ■

## Operating instructions

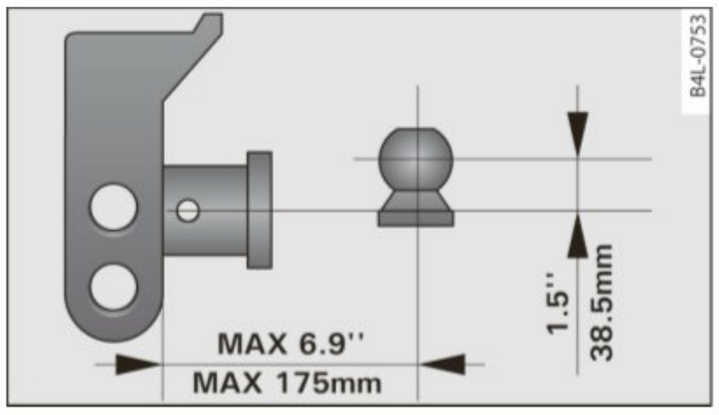



**Fig. 276 Permitted ball position of the trailer hitch**

### Trailer towing weights

With a **factory-installed** trailer hitch, the maximum permissible trailer weight is 6,615 lbs (3,000 kg). The maximum permissible unbraked trailer weight is 1,650 lbs (750 kg). With an **aftermarket** trailer hitch, the maximum permissible trailer weight is 5,512 lbs (2,500 kg). These specifications apply when driving on roads having an incline of less than 12%.

### Permissible tongue load

For best vehicle handling under these changed conditions, adjust the trailer load so that the tongue load is at the maximum allowable or slightly lower. You can get an approximation of the tongue load with a bathroom scale or you can measure the load at a trucking company or weighing station.

Wtih a **factory-installed** trailer hitch, the maximum permissible load on the ball hitch may not exceed 662 lbs (300 kg). With an **aftermarket** trailer hitch, the maximum permissible load on the ball hitch may not exceed 551 lbs (250 kg). It is recommended to use the maximum permissible load.

### Trailer load distribution

Be sure the load in the trailer is held securely in place to prevent it from shifting forward, backward or sideways.

**Never allow a passenger to ride in a trailer** ⇒ ⚠ in “Driving instructions” on *page 307*.

### Ball mount

The trailer hitch may only be used with suitable ball mount and ball ⇒ fig. 276. Installation of the hitch ball must be carried out in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. At the height dimension of 1.5 in (38.5 mm) a tolerance of +/- 0.5 in (12.7 mm) is permissible .

### Engine cooling system

Towing a trailer makes the engine work harder. It is important that the cooling system's performance is up to the additional load. Make sure that the cooling system has enough fluid.

### Tire pressure

When towing a trailer, inflate the tires of your vehicle to the cold tire pressure listed under “Full load” on the tire pressure label. On USA vehicles, the tire pressure label is located on the driver's side B-

pillar. On Canada vehicles, the tire pressure label is located either on the driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap. Inflate trailer tires to trailer and tire manufacturers' specifications.

### Lights

The headlight settings should be checked with the trailer attached before driving off. Check to make sure both vehicle and trailer lights are working properly.

### Safety chains

Be sure trailer safety chains are properly connected from the trailer to the hitch on the vehicle. Leave enough slack in the chains to permit turning corners. When you install safety chains, make sure they will not drag on the road when you are driving.

The chains should cross under the trailer tongue to prevent it from dropping in case of separation from the hitch.

**Note**

If you are going to tow a trailer, you must activate the trailer operation mode ⇒ *page 211*, "Towing a trailer". ■

## Driving instructions

*Driving with a trailer always requires extra care and consideration.*

To obtain the best possible handling of vehicle and trailer, please note the following:

- Do not tow a loaded trailer when your car itself is not loaded.
- Be especially careful when passing other vehicles.
- Observe speed limits.
- Do not drive at the maximum permissible speed.
- Always apply brakes early.
- Monitor the temperature gauge.

### Weight distribution

Towing a loaded trailer with an empty car results in a highly unstable distribution of weight. If this cannot be avoided, drive at very low speeds only to avoid the risk of losing steering control.

A "balanced" rig is easier to operate and control. This means that the tow vehicle should be loaded to the extent possible and permissible, while keeping the trailer as light as possible under the circumstances. Whenever possible, transfer some cargo to the luggage compartment of the tow vehicle while observing tongue load requirements and vehicle loading considerations.

### Speed

The higher the speed, the more difficult it becomes for the driver to control the rig. Do not drive at the maximum permissible speed. Reduce your speed even more if load, weather or wind conditions are unfavorable - particularly when going downhill.

Reduce vehicle speed **immediately** if the trailer shows the slightest sign of swaying. **Do not try to stop the swaying by accelerating.**

Observe speed limits. In some areas, speeds for vehicles towing trailers are lower than for regular vehicles.

Always apply brakes early. When driving downhill, shift into a lower gear to use the engine braking effect to slow the vehicle. Use of the brakes alone can cause them to overheat and fail.

### Coolant temperature

The coolant temperature gauge ⇒ *page 13* must be observed carefully. If the needle moves close to the upper end of the scale, reduce speed immediately and/or turn off the air conditioner.

If the coolant temperature warning light in the instrument cluster starts flashing, pull off the road, stop and let the engine *idle* for about two minutes to prevent heat build-up.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Anyone not properly restrained in a moving vehicle is at a much greater risk in an accident. Never let anyone ride in your car who is not properly wearing the restraints provided by Audi.** ■

# Trailer towing tips

## Important to know

Your vehicle handles differently when towing a trailer because of the additional weight and different weight distribution. Safety, performance and economy will greatly depend on how carefully you load your trailer and operate your rig.

Before you actually tow your trailer, practice turning, stopping and backing up in an area away from traffic. Keep practicing until you have become completely familiar with the way your vehicle-trailer combination behaves and responds.

Backing up is difficult and requires practice. Backing up with a trailer generally requires steering action opposite to that when backing up your vehicle without a trailer.

Maintain a greater distance between your vehicle and the one in front of you. You will need more room to stop. To compensate for the trailer, you will need a larger than normal turning radius.

When passing, remember that you cannot accelerate as fast as you normally would because of the added load. Make sure you have enough room to pass. After passing, allow plenty of room for your trailer before changing lanes again.

Avoid jerky starts, sharp turns or rapid lane changes.

**Tips**

- Do not tow a trailer during the break-in period of your vehicle.
- If you tow a trailer, your Audi may require more frequent maintenance due to the extra load ⇒ *page 401*. ■

## Parking on a slope

*Do not park on a slope with a trailer. If it cannot be avoided, do so only after doing the following:*

**When parking:**

– Apply the foot brake.

– Have someone place chocks under both the vehicle and the trailer wheels.

– With chocks in place, slowly release the brakes until the wheel chocks absorb the load.

– Turn the wheels towards the curb.

– Apply the parking brake.

– Move the selector lever to **P**.

**When restarting after parking:**

– Apply the foot brake.

– Start the engine.

– Move the selector lever to **D**.

– Release the parking brake and slowly pull out and away from the wheel chocks.

– Stop and have someone retrieve the wheel chocks.

**Tips**

If you move the selector lever of the automatic transmission to **P** before applying the parking brake and before blocking the wheels, ▶

you may have to use more force later to move the lever out of the **P** position. ■





# Cleaning and protection

## General information

*Regular care preserves vehicle value.*

Any automobile is exposed to industrial fumes, corrosive road salt, muddy dog feet, etc. A well cared for Audi can look like new many years after purchase. Regular and correct care will contribute to maintaining the beauty and value of your Audi.

**Furthermore, good care may be a condition for substantiating a warranty claim should corrosion damage or paint defects occur.**

Your authorized Audi dealer has a variety of **dedicated vehicle-care products** and can advise which ones to use for cleaning the exterior and interior of your vehicle.

Whether you use products recommended by Audi or other commercially available cleaning agents, please make sure you apply them correctly.

**WARNING**

- **Cleaning agents may be poisonous. Keep them out of the reach of children.**
- **Heed all caution labels.**
- **Always read directions on the container before using any product. Follow the directions carefully.**
- **Most chemical cleaners are concentrated and have to be diluted.**
- **Use spot removing fluids only in well ventilated areas.**
- **Do not use gasoline, kerosene, diesel fuel, nail polish remover or other volatile fluids. They may be toxic, flammable or hazardous in other ways. Do not wash, wax or dry the vehicle with the ignition on or the engine running.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **Do not clean the undersides of chassis, fenders, wheel covers, etc. without protecting your hands and arms. You may cut yourself on sharp-edged metal parts.**
- **Moisture and ice on brakes may impair braking efficiency ⇒ *page 291*, "General information". Test the brakes carefully each time you wash the vehicle.**

**For the sake of the environment**

Select only environmentally friendly cleaning products. Leftover cleaning products should not disposed of in the household waste. ■

## Care of exterior

### Washing

*Frequent washing protects the vehicle.*

The best protection against environmental influences is *frequent* washing and waxing. How often this is required depends on:

- How much the vehicle is used
- Where the vehicle is parked (garage, in the open under trees, etc.)
- The seasonal and weather conditions
- Environmental influences

The longer bird droppings, insects, tree resin, road and industrial grime, tar, soot, road salt and other materials remain on the vehicle body, the more lasting their destructive effects will be. High temperatures caused by exposure to intense sunlight intensify the corrosive effect, particularly when humidity is high as well. ▶

Under certain circumstances, **weekly** washing may be necessary. Under other conditions, a monthly washing and waxing may be adequate.

After the winter, the **underside** of the vehicle should be thoroughly washed, preferably in a professional car wash.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇒ *page 312*. ■**

## Automatic car wash

*The vehicle can be washed in almost any modern automatic car wash.*

The vehicle paint is so durable that the vehicle can normally be washed without problems in an automatic car wash. However, the effect on the paint depends to a large extent on the design of the facility, the filtering of the wash water, the type of wash and care material, etc. If the paint has a dull appearance after going through the car wash or is scratched, bring this to the attention of the operator immediately. If necessary, use a different car wash.

Before going through a car wash, be sure to take the usual precautions such as closing the windows and the Panoramic sliding sunroof. Factory installed antennas must not be removed.

If you have installed additional accessories on the vehicle - such as spoilers, roof rack, etc. - it is best to ask the car wash operator if these should be removed.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Please take note of the following points before going through an automatic car wash with your vehicle, so that you can avoid damage to your vehicle.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Compare the track of your vehicle with the distance between the guide rails of the facility - there is a risk of damage to the wheels and tires.**
- **Compare the height and width of your vehicle with the height and width of the tunnel at the facility.**
- **Fold the exterior mirrors flat - there is a risk of damaging the exterior mirrors. Power folding exterior mirrors* must not be folded in or out by hand. Use the power function!**
- **Do not allow the wiper blade to fall onto the windshield after the vehicle is dried - there is a risk of damaging the paint on the hood.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇒ *page 312*. ■**

## Washing the vehicle by hand

*A lot of water is needed when washing a vehicle by hand.*

– Before you start washing, make sure you have read and understood the WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ in "General information" on *page 312*.

– First soak all dried dirt until it is soft, then rinse it off.

– As you clean your vehicle, start with the roof and work your way down to the bottom, using a sponge, a sponge glove or a clean brush.

– Rinse the sponge or the sponge glove often, flushing it clean each time.

– Use special car shampoo only for very persistent dirt.

– Rinse the car thoroughly with water.

– Use a chamois leather to gently wipe the exterior dry. ▶

Use a separate sponge for cleaning the wheels, door sills and other regions exposed to road dirt. In this way, you will not scratch the paint with coarse particles imbedded in the sponge the next time you wash the car.

**WARNING**

- **Do not clean the underside of the chassis, fenders, wheel covers, or other hard to reach parts without protecting your hands and arms. You may cut yourself on sharp-edged metal parts.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇒ *page 312*.**

**Note**

- Never try to remove dirt, mud or dust if the surface of the vehicle is dry. Never use a dry cloth or sponge, since this could scratch your vehicle's paint or windows.
- Never wash your car in bright sunlight. Drops of water act as magnifying lenses and may damage your paint.
- When you wash your car in the winter: if you rinse your vehicle with a hose, be careful not to aim the stream of water directly at locks, or at door or hatch openings - they can freeze shut.
- Never use sponges designed to remove insects, or any kitchen scouring sponges or similar products. They can damage your paint finish.
- Never use a dry cloth or sponge to clean the headlights. Only use wet cloths or sponges to prevent scratches. It is best to use soapy water.

**For the sake of the environment**

In the interest of the environment, the vehicle should only be washed in special wash bays. ■

## Washing your vehicle with a power washer

*Cleaning the exterior of your car with a high-pressure power washer is safe as long as you observe a few simple rules.*

- Before using the power washer, make sure you have read and understood the WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ in "General information" on *page 312*.
- Always follow the operating instructions for the power washer.
- Make sure that the jet on the spray hose produces a "fan shaped spray".
- Do *not* hold the spray nozzle *too close* to soft materials.

When cleaning the vehicle with a power washer *always* follow the operating instructions. This applies particularly to the **operating pressure** and the **spraying distance**. Maintain a sufficient distance to soft materials such as rubber hoses and sound/vibration deadening materials (particularly on the underside of the engine hood). Do not use a jet which sprays water in a **direct stream** or one that has a **rotating** jet.

Water temperature should not exceed 140 °F (60 °C).

**WARNING**

**Never wash tires with a jet that sprays water in a direct stream. This could cause invisible damage to the tires and weaken them, even if the spray is from a relatively long distance and for a short time. Damaged and weakened tires can fail and cause accidents and personal injury.**

**Note**

To avoid damaging your vehicle, always make sure that there is sufficient distance between the spray head and soft materials like rubber hoses, plastic parts and sound-deadening materials. Never aim the spray head at the same point for a long time. This also applies to cleaning headlights and painted bumpers. Remember: the closer the nozzle is to the surface of the material, the greater the stress on the material. ■

## Waxing

*Wax protects the vehicle's paint.*

– Use a manually applied car wax occasionally to protect the paint.

A good wax coating protects the vehicle paint to a large extent against the environmental factors listed under ⇒ *page 312,* “Washing” and even against slight scratches.

You can use a liquid car wax to protect your paint as soon as one week after your vehicle has been delivered.

Even if you regularly use a **waxing** process in automatic car washes, we recommend that you manually apply a coat of wax to give the paint extra protection, particularly if water no longer beads on the clean paint.

Protect plastic body parts with car wax in the same way as the vehicle body.

During warm weather dead insects tend to collect on the front bumper and on the forward area of the hood. They are much easier to remove from paint that is waxed *often*.

**WARNING**

**Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇒ *page 312*.**

**Note**

Do not use car wax on

- matte or anodized metal trim
- rubber or rubber-like trim. ■

## Polishing

*Polishing restores the gloss to the paint.*

Polish your vehicle only if the paint has lost its shine and the gloss cannot be brought back with wax.

If the polish used does not contain preservative compounds, the paint must be waxed afterwards ⇒ *page 315,* “Waxing”.

**WARNING**

**Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇒ *page 312*.**

**Note**

Do not treat matte anodized metal trim, plastic or rubber parts with polish or wax. ■

## Trim strips

*Metal trim needs special care.*

For environmental reasons, Audi fabricates the bright trim strips and trim pieces from pure chromium-free aluminum. ▶

Dirt and marks on the trim strips should be removed with a **pH-balanced** cleaning agent (do not use a chrome cleaner). Authorized Audi dealers carry cleaning products which have been tested for use on your vehicle and are not harmful to the environment.

To avoid corrosion on the exterior trim strips, only a pH-balanced solution should be used for the windshield washer.

**WARNING**

**Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information** ⇒ *page 312.* ■

## Plastic and vinyl

*Plastic needs special care.*

Use a clean, damp cloth or sponge to remove dust and light surface dirt. For other soil, use a lukewarm all-purpose cleaning solution or a mild saddle soap for vinyl trim. Remove water spots and traces of soap with a clean, damp cloth or sponge. Use a clean, soft cloth to rub dry.

Grease, tar or oil stains can be removed with a clean cloth or sponge soaked with all-purpose cleaner or with a solvent designed especially to clean vinyl.

Occasionally apply a colorless vinyl or leather preservative to retain the material's luster and pliability.

**WARNING**

**Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information** ⇒ *page 312.* ■

## Aluminum trim

Use only **neutral-pH** products to remove spots and deposits from aluminum surfaces. Chrome care products and alkaline cleaners will attack aluminum surfaces and can damage them over time.

**WARNING**

**Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information** ⇒ *page 312.* ■

## Touch-up paint

*Minor paint damages should be touched up immediately.*

– Use either a touch-up paint stick or spray paint to cover minor scratches and nicks.

Your authorized Audi dealer has touch-up paint for minor scratches and stone chips. Scratches should be touched up soon after they occur to prevent corrosion.

If a spot starts to rust, however, a simple touch-up job will not be enough. The affected surface must be sanded smooth and coated with an anti-rust primer before the painted finish can be restored.

The number for the original vehicle paint can be found on the vehicle identification label ⇒ *page 396.*

**WARNING**

**Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information** ⇒ *page 312.* ■

## Windows

*Clear vision to all sides.*

Clean all windows regularly to remove road film and carwash wax buildup.

– Remove snow from windows using a brush.

– Use a plastic ice scraper to remove ice from windows and mirrors.

– Remove other residue on the windows with a spray-on glass cleaner.

– Wipe the windows dry with a clean piece of cloth or kitchen paper towel.

The best way to remove snow from windows and mirrors is to use a brush. Use a non-abrasive **plastic ice scraper** - better still, a spray deicer - to remove **ice** from windows and mirrors.

The windows must not be cleaned with insect remover or wax since these can interfere with the function of the windshield wiper blades (chatter).

Oil, grease, or silicone residue can be removed with **glass cleaner** or **silicone remover**. However, wax residue requires the use of a specially formulated solvent. Please contact your authorized Audi dealer for advice on safe products for wax removal.

Windows should also be cleaned on the inside at regular intervals.

Never dry windows with the same chamois that you use to dry painted surfaces. Wax residue on the chamois can impair vision through the windows.

**WARNING**

- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information** ⇒ *page 312*.

**WARNING (continued)**

- **The windshield must not be treated with water-repellent materials. They can increase glare under poor visibility conditions such as wetness, darkness, or when the sun is low on the horizon. In addition, they can cause the windshield wipers to chatter.**

**Note**

- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. This could cause the glass to crack.
- To prevent damage to the wires of the rear defogger, do not place any adhesive stickers on the inside of the rear window over the wires.
- To help prevent dirt from scratching the window, always scrape in a forward direction - pushing the scraper away from you - never back and forth. ■

## Weatherstrips

*Complete car care includes the weatherstrips as well.*

– Apply a suitable rubber conditioner to the weatherstrips from time to time.

To be able seal properly, the weatherstrips around the hood, doors, rear lid, etc. must remain pliable. Spray the weatherstrips with silicone or coat them with talcum powder or glycerine to retain the flexibility of the rubber and to protect them against freezing in the winter.

**WARNING**

**Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information** ⇒ *page 312*.

**Tips**

Keep silicone sprays off the windshield to avoid wiper smear in rain. ■

## Cast (light) alloy wheels

*Cast (light) alloy wheels require special care.*

– Wash the wheels with a sponge or hose brush every other week.

– For deep cleaning afterwards, use only a dedicated **acid-free** cast alloy wheel cleaner.

– Rub a coat of **liquid wax** onto the rims every three month. Be sure to reach and treat all parts of the rim.

To preserve the decorative appearance of the cast alloy wheels, some special care is necessary. In addition to road dirt and salt, brake dust is also corrosive. If left on for too long, brake dust can cause pitting.

Use only special *acid-free* cleaners formulated for alloy rims. Safe products are available at your authorized Audi dealer. Never leave the cleaner on the rims longer than specified on the label. If not rinsed off promptly, the acid contained in some cleaners can attack the threads on the wheel bolts.

Never use abrasive or metal polishing cleaning agents. If the protective coating has been chipped, e.g. by kicked up road dirt, touch it up as soon as possible.

**WARNING**

- **Moisture and ice on brakes may affect braking efficiency ⇒ *page 291*, "General information". Test the brakes carefully each time you wash the vehicle.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇒ *page 312*.** ■

## Body cavity sealing

*The body cavity sealing does not need to be checked.*

All body cavities which could be affected by corrosion have been thoroughly protected at the factory.

This sealing does not require any inspection or additional treatment. If any wax should seep out of the cavity when the ambient temperature is high, it can be removed with a plastic scraper and a suitable solvent.

**WARNING**

**Solvents can be dangerous.**

- **Benzine is flammable and toxic. If you use benzine for removing the wax, keep sparks, flame and lighted cigarettes away. Never dump benzine on the ground, into open streams or down sewage drains.**

- **Be sure to observe all safety and environmental regulations. Follow all instructions on the container.**

- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇒ *page 312*.** ■

## Chassis

*Have the undercoating checked for damage from time to time.*

The lower body shell of your Audi is also thoroughly protected against corrosion. ▶

Any damage to the undercoating caused by road hazards should be repaired promptly.

**WARNING**

**Too much undercoating in the wrong places can cause a fire.**

- **Do not apply additional undercoating or rustproofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or heat shields. While driving, the substance used for undercoating could overheat and cause a fire.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information** ⇒ *page 312.* ■

# Care of interior

## MMI display

– Clean the MMI display with a soft clean cloth and an LCD cleaner.

The MMI display can be cleaned with a professionally available "LCD cleaner". The cloth should be slightly dampened with the cleaning fluid to clean the display.

**Note**

To avoid scratching the MMI display, you should never clean it dry. ■

## MMI terminal

– First clean the MMI terminal with a brush to remove dust from the housing.
– Then wipe the MMI terminal with a clean, soft, slightly damp cloth.

The MMI terminal should be cleaned with a brush first so that no dirt is trapped between the buttons and the housing. We recommend giving the MMI terminal a final wipe with a cloth moistened with water and dish washing detergent.

**Note**

To prevent damage, make sure that no fluid ever gets into the MMI terminal. ■

## Aluminum trim

Use only **neutral-pH** products to remove spots and deposits from aluminum surfaces. Chrome care products and alkaline cleaners will attack aluminum surfaces and can damage them over time.

**WARNING**

**Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information** ⇒ *page 312.* ■

## Fabrics and fabric coverings

Fabrics and fabric coverings (e.g. seats, door trim panels, etc.) should be cleaned at regular intervals with a vacuum cleaner. This removes surface dirt particles which could become embedded in the fabric through use. Steam cleaners should not be used, because the steam tends to push the dirt deeper into the fabric and lock it there. ▶

### Normal cleaning

Generally, we recommend using a soft sponge or a lint-free microfiber cloth to the clean fabric. Brushes should only be used for carpets and floor mats, since other fabric surfaces could be harmed by brushes.

Normal surface stains can be cleaned using a commercially available foam cleaner. Spread the foam on the surface of the fabric with a soft sponge and work it in gently. Do not saturate the fabric. Then pat the foam dry using absorbent, dry cloths (e.g. microfiber cloth) and vacuum it after it has dried completely.

### Cleaning stains

Stains caused by beverages (e.g. coffee, fruit juice, etc.) can be treated with a mild detergent solution. Apply the detergent solution with a sponge. In the case of stubborn stains, a detergent paste can be applied directly to the stain and worked into the fabric. Afterwards, use copious amounts of clean water to remove the remaining detergent. Apply the water with a damp cloth or sponge and pat the fabric dry with an absorbent, dry cloth.

Stains from chocolate or makeup should have detergent paste (e.g. ox-gall soap) rubbed into them. Afterwards, remove the soap with water (damp sponge).

Alcohol can be used to treat stains from grease, oil, lipstick or a ballpoint pen. Melted grease or dye must be patted off using absorbent material. It may be necessary to retreat the areas with detergent paste and water.

In the case of general soiling of the upholstery and cover material, we recommend hiring a specialist that has the equipment to clean the seat covers and other fabric surfaces by shampooing and spray extraction.

**WARNING**

**Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information**
⇒ *page 312*.

**Tips**

Open Velcro fasteners on your clothing can damage the seat cover. Please make sure that Velcro fasteners are closed. ■

## Plastic parts and instrument panel

Always use a clean cloth moistened in clear water to clean these areas. For persistent dirt use an Audi approved **solvent-free** plastic cleaner/protectant.

**WARNING**

**Solvents can change the properties of some plastics and make it harder for the airbag to deploy.**

- **Never clean the instrument panel or the surface of airbag modules with cleaning products that contain solvents.**
- **Products containing solvents will make the surface of this part porous.**
- **Serious injuries can result if plastic parts come loose when the airbag is deployed.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information**

⇒ *page 312*.

**Note**

Cleaning agents containing solvents will attack the material and can change the way it behaves. ■

Applies to vehicles: with natural leather

# Natural leather

*Audi makes great efforts to maintain the properties, natural look and feel of interior leather.*

## General

We offer many different types of leather on our vehicles. Most are different types of nappa leather, which has a smooth surface and comes in various colors.

The intensity of the color determines the visual characteristics and appearance. If the surface of the leather has a typical natural look, then the leather is a nappa leather that has been left in a relatively natural condition. This leather offers particularly good comfort and breathes well. Fine veins, closed grains, insect bites, skin folds, and subtle variations in color remain visible. These characteristics demonstrate that the material is natural.

Natural nappa leather is not covered by a color finish. It is therefore more sensitive to soiling and wear, which is something you need to consider if children, animals or other factors might prove to be particularly hard on the leather.

By contrast, leather types that are covered by a colored finish layer are more durable. This has a positive effect on the leather's resistance to wear and soiling in daily use. On the other hand, the typical characteristics of natural leather are barely or not apparent. However, this does not mean that the leather itself is of inferior quality.

## Care and handling

Because of the exclusive nature of the types of leather that Audi uses and their unique properties (such as sensitivity to oils, grease, soiling, etc.), you will need to be somewhat careful with these leathers, and a certain type of care is required. For example, dark clothing materials can discolor leather seats (especially if such clothing is damp and was not dyed correctly). Dust and dirt particles in pores, folds, and seams can have an abrasive effect and can damage the leather surface as well as weaken seams.

The leather should be cleaned regularly as needed. After having been used for a relatively long time, your leather seats will acquire a rich aged finish. This is a characteristic of natural leather and a sign of true quality.

In order to maintain the value of this natural product over the life of your vehicle, you should follow the recommendations below:

### Note

- To keep your leather from bleaching out, do not allow it to be exposed to bright sunlight for long periods of time. If you have to leave the vehicle parked outside for long periods, cover the leather to protect it from direct exposure to sunlight.
- Sharp objects on clothing, such as zippers, rivets or sharp pieces on belts can leave permanent scratches or scrape marks on the surface of the leather.

### Tips

- After each time you clean the leather and at regular intervals, use a leather preservative creme that contains UV-blockers and that works into the leather. This creme will nourish and moisturize the leather, helping it to breathe and stay supple. It also helps to build up a protective coating on the surface.
- Clean the leather every 2 - 3 months, and clean any areas that get soiled.
- Remove fresh marks made by ballpoint pens, ink, lipstick, shoe polish, etc. as soon as possible.
- Preserve the color of the leather as needed by using a special colored leather care creme to touch up areas of uneven color. ■

Applies to vehicles: with natural leather

## Cleaning and caring for leather upholstery and trim

*Natural leather requires special care and attention.*

### Normal cleaning

– Clean soiled areas with a slightly moistened cotton or woolen cloth.

### More stubborn dirt

– More stubborn dirt can be removed using a cloth saturated with a mild soap solution (2 tablespoons mild liquid soap).

– Never allow the soap solution to saturate the leather, and make certain that no water soaks into the seams.

– Wipe off the soap solution with a soft, dry cloth.

### Cleaning spots

– Remove fresh **water-based** spots (such as coffee, tea, juices, blood) with an absorbent cloth or paper towel.

– Remove fresh **grease or oil-based spots** (such as butter, mayonnaise, chocolate) with an absorbent cloth or paper towel, or use the cleaner from the leather care kit if the spot has not yet penetrated into the surface of the leather.

– Use an oil/grease dissolving spray, if **oil/grease spots have dried on**.

– Remove specific kinds of spots (ballpoint pen, felt marker, fingernail polish, water-based paint, shoe polish, etc.) with a spot remover specifically formulated for leather.

### Leather care

– Every half year use an approved leather care product (available from your authorized Audi dealer) to care for the leather.

– Apply the product very sparingly.

– Wipe it off with a damp cloth.

If you have any questions about cleaning and caring for the leather in your vehicle, it is best to contact your authorized Audi dealer, who will be glad to help you and tell you about our full range of leather care products, such as:

- Leather cleaning and care kit
- Creams to care for colored leather
- Spot removers for ballpoint pens, shoe polish, etc.
- Oil/grease dissolving spray
- New and upcoming products.

**WARNING**

**Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information** ⇒ ***page 312***.

**Note**

- Never use chemical solvents (e.g. lighter fluid, turpentine), waxes, shoe polish or similar products on the leather surfaces in your Audi.
- To avoid damage, have stubborn stains removed by a commercial cleaning specialist. ■

Applies to vehicles: with Alcantara upholstery

## Cleaning Alcantara® (synthetic suede)

### Removing dust and dirt

– Moisten a cloth, *squeeze out excess water* and wipe down the seat surfaces.

### Removing stains

– Moisten a cloth with lukewarm water or with diluted **ethyl (rubbing) alcohol**.

– Dab at the stain. Start at the outside and work inwards.

– Once the stain is no longer visible, use a soft dry cloth or tissue to soak up the moisture.

Do not use leather cleaning products on Alcantara.

You may use a suitable shampoo for removing dust and dirt.

Dust and grit in the pores and seams can scratch and damage the surface. If the car is left standing in the sun for long periods, the Alcantara should be protected against direct sunlight to prevent it from fading. Slight color variations will develop in normal use and are not an indication of material deterioration.

### Note

- Never use chemical solvents (e.g. lighter fluid, turpentine), waxes, shoe polish or similar products on Alcantara® surfaces.
- To avoid damage, have stubborn stains removed by a commercial cleaning specialist.
- Do not use brushes, stiff sponges or similarly abrasive cleaning aids. ■

## Safety belts

*Only well-maintained safety belts work reliably when needed.*

– Keep belts clean.

– For cleaning, use a mild soap and water solution. Let belts dry thoroughly and away from direct sunlight.

– Do not allow inertia reel safety belts to retract before they are completely dry.

– Check the condition of your safety belts *regularly*.

Heavily soiled safety belts may not retract properly.

### WARNING

**Damaged safety belts can break in a crash.**

- **Anything that might damage your safety belts could mean that you and your passengers would not be adequately protected in an accident.**
- **Safety belt performance depends on correct installation. Never remove belts from the vehicle to clean them.**
- **Do not use chemical cleaning agents, bleach or dyes. They have corrosive properties which weaken the webbing.**
- **When cleaning your safety belts, inspect them for damage. If you discover damage, see your authorized Audi dealer.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information** ⇒ *page 312*. ■

## Engine compartment

*Be especially careful when cleaning the engine compartment.*

**Always switch off the ignition before cleaning the engine ⇒ ⚠.**

### Plenum panel

Remove leaves from the plenum panel in front of the windshield under the engine hood. This prevents the water drain holes from becoming blocked, and it prevents debris from entering the vehicle interior through the heating and ventilation ducts.

### Corrosion protection

The engine compartment and transmission have been corrosion-protected at the factory.

Good anti-corrosion treatment is very important, particularly in the winter. If the vehicle is frequently driven on salt treated roads, the entire engine compartment and plenum panel should be thoroughly cleaned at the end of winter and retreated to prevent salt damage. At the same time, the underside of the vehicle should be washed as well.

If the engine compartment is cleaned at any time with grease removing solutions[3)], or if you have the engine washed, the anti-corrosion treatment is almost always removed as well. It is therefore essential to have a long-lasting corrosion protection reapplied to all surfaces, seams, joints and components in the engine compartment.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Be aware: The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area.**

- **Before working in the engine compartment, be sure to read the information ⇒ *page 324*.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Before reaching into the front plenum panel, always remove the ignition key. Otherwise, the windshield wiper system could unintentionally be switched on, possibly causing personal injury from the moving wiper linkage.**
- **Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. The auxiliary fan is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly - even when the ignition is off.**
- **Do not wash, wax or dry the engine with the engine running. Moving or hot parts could injure you.**
- **Do not clean the underside of the chassis, fenders, wheel covers, or other hard to reach parts without protecting your hands and arms. You may cut yourself on sharp-edged metal parts.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇒ *page 312*.** ■

3) Use only the correct cleaning solutions. Never use gasoline or diesel fuel.

# Fuel supply and filling your fuel tank

## Gasoline

### Fuel supply

*Using the right fuel helps keep the environment clean and prevents engine damage.*

#### Fuel recommendation

The fuel recommended for your vehicle is **unleaded premium** grade gasoline. See also ⇒ *page 399,* "Data". Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline with a minimum octane rating of 91 AKI (95 RON). For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official website (www.toptiergas.com).

The recommended gasoline octane rating for your engine can also be found on a label located on the inside of the fuel filler flap. This rating may be specified as AKI or RON.

Your vehicle may also be operated using unleaded regular gasoline with a minimum octane rating of 87 AKI/91 RON. However, using 87 AKI/91 RON octane fuel will slightly reduce engine performance.

**Use unleaded gasoline only.** Unleaded gasoline is available throughout the USA, Canada, and in most European countries. We recommend that you do not take your vehicle to areas or countries where unleaded gasoline may not be available.

For more information on refueling your vehicle, see ⇒ *page 326*.

#### Octane rating

Octane rating indicates a gasoline's ability to resist engine damaging "knock" caused by premature ignition and detonation. Therefore, buying the correct grade of gasoline is very important to help prevent possible engine damage and a loss of engine performance.

Gasoline most commonly used in the United States and Canada has the following octane ratings that can usually be found on the filler pump:

- Premium Grade: 91 - 96 AKI
- Regular Grade: 87 - 90 AKI

Explanation of the abbreviations:

AKI = **A**nti **K**nock **I**ndex = (R+M)/2 = (RON+MON)/2

RON = **R**esearch **O**ctane **N**umber

MON = **M**otor **O**ctane **N**umber.

**Note**

- Do not use any fuel with octane ratings lower than 87 AKI or 91 RON otherwise expensive engine damage will occur.
- Do **not** use leaded gasoline. The use of leaded gasoline will severely damage your vehicle's catalytic converter and its ability to control exhaust emissions. ■

### Blended gasoline

#### Use of gasoline containing alcohol or MTBE (methyl tertiary butyl ether)

You may use unleaded gasoline blended with alcohol or MTBE (commonly referred to as oxygenates) if the blended mixture meets the following criteria:

**Blend of gasoline methanol (wood alcohol or methyl alcohol)**

- Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
- Blend must contain no more than 3% methanol.
- Blend must contain more than 2% co-solvents.

**Blend of gasoline and ethanol (grain alcohol or ethyl alcohol)**

- Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
- Blend must not contain more than 10% ethanol.

**Blend of gasoline and MTBE**

- Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
- Blend must contain not more than 15% MTBE.

**Seasonally adjusted gasoline**

Many gasoline grades are blended to perform especially well for winter or summer driving. During seasonal change-over, we suggest that you fill up at busy gas stations where the seasonal adjustment is more likely to be made in time.

**Note**

- Methanol fuels which do not meet these requirements may cause corrosion and damage to plastic and rubber components in the fuel system.
- Do not use fuels that fail to meet the specified criteria in this chapter.
- If you are unable to determine whether or not a particular fuel blend meets the specifications, ask your service station or its fuel supplier.
- Do not use fuel for which the contents cannot be identified.
- Fuel system damage and performance problems resulting from the use of fuels different from those specified are not the responsibility of Audi and are not covered under the New Vehicle or the Emission Control System Warranties.
- If you experience a loss of fuel economy or driveability and performance problems due to the use of one of these fuel blends, we recommend that you switch to unblended fuel. ■

## Gasoline additives

A major concern among many auto manufacturers is carbon deposit build-up caused by the type of gasoline you use.

Although gasoline grades differ from one manufacturer to another, they have certain things in common. All gasoline grades contain substances that can cause deposits to collect on vital engine parts, such as fuel injectors and intake valves. Although most gasoline brands include additives to keep engine and fuel systems clean, they are not equally effective.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official website (www.toptiergas.com).

After an extended period of using inadequate fuels, carbon deposit build-ups can rob your engine of peak performance.

**Note**

Damage or malfunction due to poor fuel quality is not covered by the Audi New Vehicle Limited Warranty. ■

# Fuel tank

## Fuel filler neck

The fuel filler neck is located on the right rear side panel behind the fuel filler flap.

If the power locking system should fail, you can still open the flap manually - for detailed instructions see ⇒ *page 329*.

You can find the fuel tank capacity of your vehicle in **Technical Data** ⇒ *page 399*.

The label on the inside of the fuel filler flap tells you the correct fuel for your vehicle. For more information about fuel specifications, see ⇒ *page 325*.

Your vehicle fuel tank has an on-board refuelling vapor recovery system. This feature helps to prevent fuel vapors from escaping from the tank and polluting the environment while you refuel your vehicle. In order to fill the tank properly while protecting the environment, please follow this refueling procedure carefully.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Under normal operating conditions, never carry additional fuel containers in your car. Gas canisters and other containers used to transport fuel can be dangerous. Such containers, full or empty, may leak and could cause a fire in a collision. If you must transport fuel to use for your lawn mower, snow blower, etc., be very careful and always observe local and state laws regarding the use, transportation and storage of such fuel containers. Make certain the container meets industry standards (ANSI/ASTM F852 - 86).**

**Note**

Never drive your vehicle until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. Gasoline could enter the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter. ■

## Refuelling




**Fig. 277 Driver's door: Unlocking fuel filler flap**




**Fig. 278 Right rear vehicle side: Opening the fuel filler flap**

When adding fuel, the ignition and any cellular phones in the vehicle must be switched *off*.

### Taking the fuel cap off

- Vehicles **with a button** in the driver's door: To open the fuel filler flap, press the button ⇒ fig. 277.
- Vehicles **without a button** in the driver's door: To open the fuel filler flap, press on the left side of the flap ⇒ fig. 278 -arrow-.
- Unscrew fuel filler cap counter-clockwise and hang it on the fuel filler flap.

## Refuelling procedure

– Insert the fuel nozzle from the gasoline pump into the fuel filler neck as far as it will go.

– Select a medium refuelling rate so that the nozzle switches off automatically when the tank is full.

## Putting the fuel cap back on

– After filling your tank, twist the fuel filler cap clockwise as far as it will go.

– Close the fuel filler flap.

To avoid fuel spilling or evaporating from the fuel tank always close fuel filler cap properly and completely. An improperly closed fuel filler cap may also cause the MIL lamp ⇒ *page 29* to come on.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improper refueling or handling of fuel can cause fire, explosion and severe burns.**

- **Fuel is highly flammable and can cause severe burns and other injuries.**
- **Failure to shut the engine off while refueling and/or to insert the pump nozzle fully into the fuel filler neck could cause fuel to spray out of filler neck or to overflow. Fuel spray and overflowing fuel can cause a fire.**
- **Never use a cellular telephone while refueling. The electromagnetic radiation can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors and cause a fire.**
- **Never get back into your vehicle while refueling. If in exceptional circumstances you must get back in your vehicle while refueling, make certain that you close the door and touch metal to discharge static electricity before touching the filler nozzle again. Static electricity can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors released during refueling.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Never smoke or have an open flame anywhere in or near your vehicle when refueling or filling a portable fuel container.**
- **For your safety, we strongly recommend that you do not travel with a portable fuel container in your vehicle. The container, full or empty may leak and could cause a fire, especially in a crash.**
- **If, under exceptional circumstances, you must transport a portable fuel container, please observe the following:**
  - **Never fill a portable fuel container while it is anywhere in or on the vehicle (for example, in the luggage compartment, or on the trunk). Static electricity can build up while filling and can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire.**
  - **Always place a portable fuel container on the ground before filling.**
  - **Always keep the filler nozzle completely inside the portable container before and during filling.**
  - **If filling a portable container made of metal, the filler nozzle must always be in contact with the container. This will help prevent static electricity from discharging and cause a fire.**
  - **Never spill fuel inside the vehicle or luggage compartment. Fuel vapors are highly flammable.**
  - **Always observe local and state/provincial laws regarding the use, storage and transportation of fuel containers.**
  - **Make certain the fuel container meets industry standards (ANSI / ASTM F852–86).**

**Note**

If any fuel has spilled onto the car, it should be removed immediately to prevent damage to the paint.

### For the sake of the environment

As soon as the correctly operated nozzle switches off automatically for the first time, the tank is full. Do not try to add more fuel because fuel may spill out. In addition, the expansion space in the fuel tank will be filled - causing the fuel to overflow when it becomes warm and pollute the environment.

### Tips

- Running your engine while refuelling may cause vapors to escape or even cause fuel to spill out of the tank. This would then shut off the fuel nozzle before the tank is full.
- Do not refuel your vehicle with the ignition turned on. The fuel gauge may otherwise not indicate the correct fuel level after refuelling. ■

## Unlocking the fuel filler flap by hand

*You can open the fuel filler flap by hand if the power locking system should fail.*

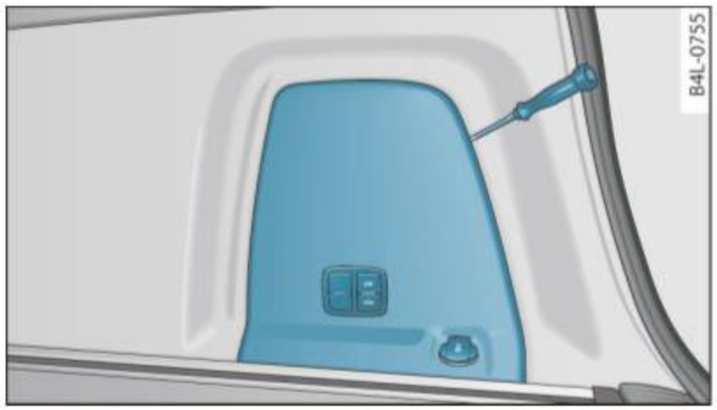



**Fig. 279 Luggage compartment: Prying cover open**

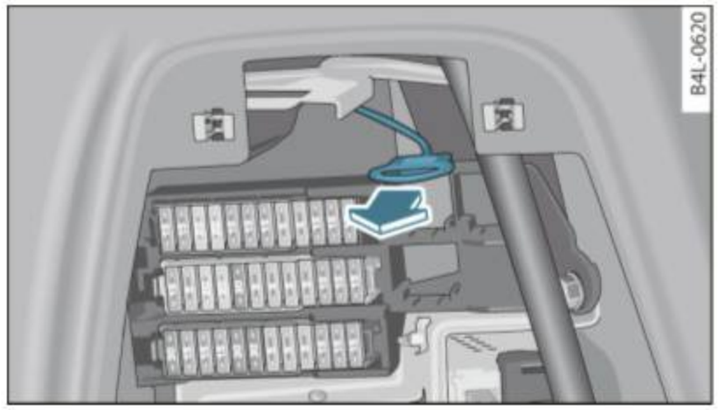



**Fig. 280 Luggage compartment: Emergency opening of fuel filler flap**

– Remove the right-side trim panel with the aid of a screwdriver ⇒ fig. 279.

– Pull the loop down in the direction of the arrow to unlock the fuel filler flap ⇒ fig. 280. ■

# Checking and filling

## Engine hood

### Releasing the engine hood

*The engine hood is released from inside the vehicle.*

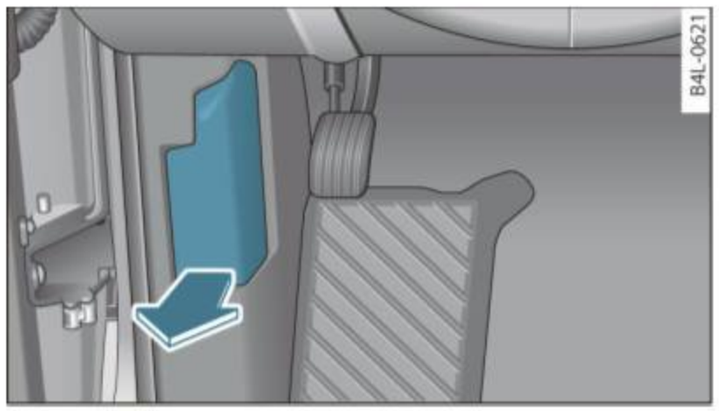



**Fig. 281 Driver's side footwell: engine hood release lever**

- Open the driver's door.
- Pull the release lever on the left under the instrument panel ⇒ fig. 281 in the direction of the arrow.

The hood pops up slightly under spring pressure. ■

### Opening the engine hood

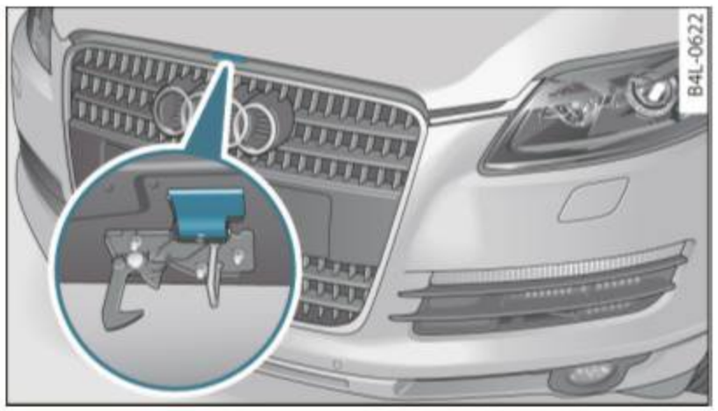



**Fig. 282 Release lever under the engine hood**

*Before* opening the engine hood, make sure that the windshield wipers are flat against the windshield. Otherwise, they could damage the paint on the hood.

- Lift the hood slightly ⇒ ⚠.
- Pull up on the release under the hood ⇒ fig. 282. This releases the catch.
- Open the hood all the way.

The hood is kept in the open position by two gas struts.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Hot engine coolant can burn you.**

- **To reduce the risk of being burned, never open the hood if you see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen or heard before carefully opening the hood.** ■

## Closing the engine hood

– Pull the hood down until the pressure from the struts is reduced.

– Let the hood *drop down* and latch in place. *Do not try to push it shut*; it may fail to engage ⇒ ⚠.

**⚠ WARNING**

**A hood that is not completely latched could fly up and block your view while driving.**

- **When you close the engine hood, check it to make sure the safety catch has properly engaged. The hood should be flush with the surrounding vehicle body parts.**
- **If you notice while driving that the hood is not secured properly, stop at once and close it. ■**

## Working in the engine compartment

*Be especially careful whenever you work in the engine compartment.*

**Whenever you must perform any work in the engine compartment, for example checking and filling different fluids, there is a risk of injury, burns and accidents. To prevent personal injury always observe the following WARNINGS. The engine compartment of any vehicle is a hazardous area ⇒ ⚠.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**To help avoid injury, before you check anything under the hood:**

- **Turn off the engine.**
- **Remove the ignition key.**
- **Apply the parking brake.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Move selector lever to "P" (Park).**
- **Always let the engine cool down. Hot components will burn skin on contact.**
- **To reduce the risk of being burned, never open the hood if you see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen or heard before carefully opening the hood.**
- **Keep children away from the engine compartment.**
- **Never spill fluids on hot engine components. They can cause a fire.**
- **Never touch the radiator fan. The auxiliary electric fan is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly.**
- **Never open the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is still warm. The coolant system is pressurized and hot coolant could spray out.**
- **Protect your face, hands and arm from steam or hot engine coolant by placing a thick rag over the cap when you open the coolant reservoir.**
- **If work on the fuel system or the electrical system is necessary:**
  - **Always disconnect the battery.**
  - **Never smoke or work near heaters or open flames. Fluids in the engine compartment could start a fire.**
  - **Keep an approved fire extinguisher immediately available.**
- **To avoid electrical shock and personal injury while the engine is running or being started, never touch:**
  - **Ignition cables**
  - **Other components of the high voltage electronic ignition system.**
- **If you must perform a check or repair with the engine running:**
  - **First, fully apply the parking brake, move selector lever to "P" (Park).**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

– **Always use extreme caution to prevent clothing, jewelry, or long hair from getting caught in the radiator fan, V-belts or other moving parts, or from contacting hot parts. Tie back hair before starting, and do not wear clothing that will hang or droop into the engine.**

- **Minimize exposure to emission and chemical hazards ⇒ ⚠.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**California Proposition 65 Warning:**

- **Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.**
- **Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harms. Wash hands after handling.**

### Note

When adding fluids, always make sure that they are poured into the proper container or filler opening, otherwise serious damage to vehicle systems will occur.

### For the sake of the environment

To detect leaks in time, inspect the vehicle floor pan from underneath regularly. If you see spots from oil or other vehicle fluids, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Audi dealer. ■

## Engine compartment

*These are the most important items that you can check.*

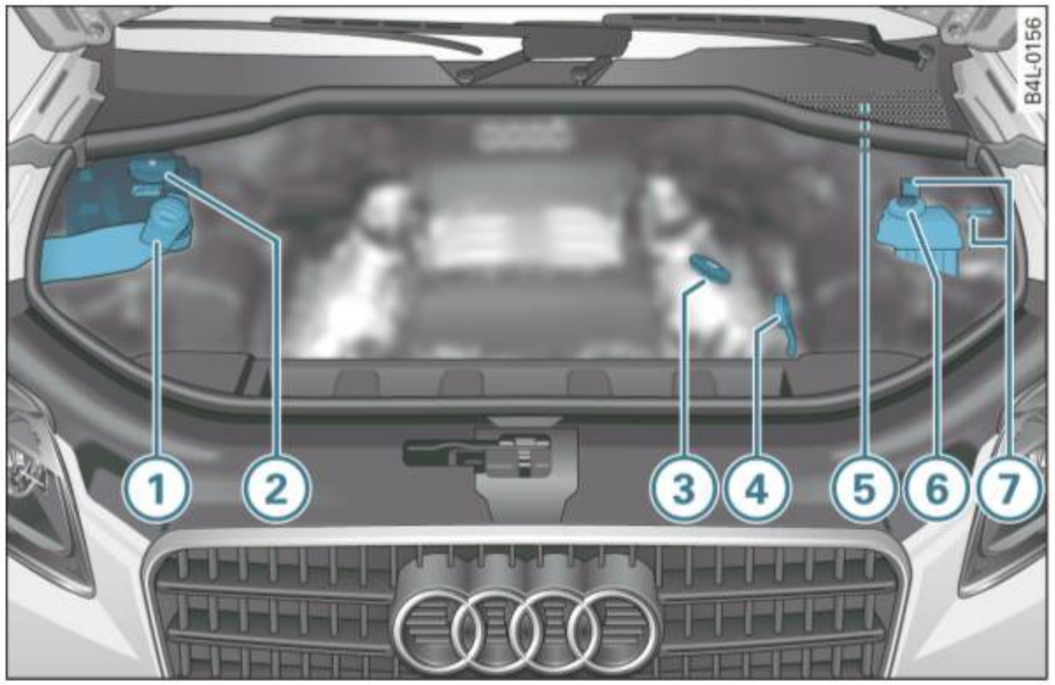



**Fig. 283 Typical layout for containers, engine oil dipstick and engine oil filler cap**


(1) Windshield/headlight washer container ( ) ..... 346
(2) Coolant expansion tank ( ) ..... 338
(3) Engine oil filler cap ( ) ..... 336
(4) Engine oil dipstick (orange) ..... 335
(5) Brake fluid reservoir ( ) ..... 341
(6) Power steering reservoir ..... 293
(7) Jump start connector (+) under a cover, (-) with hex head screw ..... 344, 387


The position of the engine oil filling hole and the engine oil dipstick ⇒ fig. 283 (position (3) and (4)) can vary according to the type of engine. ▶

**WARNING**

**Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ in "Working in the engine compartment" on *page 331*. ■**

# Engine oil

## Engine oil specifications

*The engine oil used in your Audi needs the right kind of oil.*

The engine in your Audi is a sophisticated powerplant that was built to exacting specifications. This engine needs the right kind of engine oil that meets specifications regarding quality and viscosity so that it can run smoothly and reliably. Choosing the right oil and changing oil within the time and mileage intervals printed in your vehicle's Warranty & Maintenance booklet matters a lot more today than it did years ago. Audi has developed a special quality standard for engine oil that will help assure that your vehicle's engine will get the lubrication it needs for proper operation.

Modern engine lubrication has taken a quantum leap in the last few years. Many synthetic oils available today provide better engine lubrication that can outlast traditional petroleum-based oils, making them a smart choice for use throughout the life of your Audi.

Whether you use synthetic or petroleum-based engine oil, the oil that you use must conform to Audi's oil quality standard VW 502 00 to help keep your vehicle's engine running smoothly and help prevent the formation of harmful deposits, sometimes called "sludge," that over time can lead to expensive repairs.

At the time of printing, engine oils available in the U.S. and Canada that meet the exacting specifications of Audi oil standard VW 502 00 are synthetic engine oils. This does not mean, however, that every synthetic engine oil will meet Audi oil standard VW 502 00. So always be sure that you use an approved oil.

To help prevent the formation of harmful deposits use only oil with the following specifications printed on the oil container:

**Audi oil standard VW 502 00**

Oil container labels may carry the specification singly or in combination with other designations and oil quality standards.

**Viscosity**

Engine oils are graded according to their viscosity. The proper viscosity grade oil for your engine depends on climactic or seasonal conditions where you drive. You can use oil with a viscosity grade of SAE 5W40 across all temperature ranges for normal driving conditions.

However, if engine oil viscosity grade SAE 5W40 is not available, you can also use viscosity grade SAE 5W-30 or SAE 0W-40 as long as it meets Audi oil quality standard VW 502 00 specifications.

Because engine oil that meets the Audi oil standard may not be available everywhere when you need it, we strongly recommend that you always carry with you an extra quart (liter) of oil that expressly conforms to the VW 502 00 specification, in case you have to top off the oil while on the road.

Only if the level of the oil is at or below the minimum mark on the oil dipstick - and no oil that expressly conforms to Audi oil standard VW 502 00 specifications is available - may you top off with a high quality engine oil, preferably synthetic-based, that meets ACEA A3, ACEA A5 or ACEA B5, API SL or ILSAC GF-3 specifications, but even then, only in viscosity grades SAE 5W-40, SAE 5W-30, or SAE 0W-40. However, during the entire time between oil change intervals, never top off with more than a total of 0.5 qt/liter engine oil that does not conform to Audi oil specification VW 502 00.

For more information about engine oil that has been approved for your vehicle, please contact either your authorized Audi dealer or Audi Customer Relations at 1 (800) 822-2834 or visit our web site at www.audiusa.com or www.audicanada.ca. Here you will also find a ▶

current list of oils (manufacturers, brand names etc.) that conform to Audi oil standard VW 502 00.

**Changing the engine oil**

The engine oil and oil filter must be changed according to the mileage (kilometers) and time intervals specified in your vehicle's Warranty & Maintenance booklet. Do not exceed these intervals – harmful deposits from old engine oil can reduce engine performance and can lead to expensive engine repairs.

Changing the oil at the recommended intervals is so very important because the lubricating properties of oil decrease gradually during normal vehicle use. If you are not sure when you have your oil changed, ask your authorized Audi Service Advisor.

Under some circumstances the engine oil should even be changed more frequently. Change oil more often if you drive mostly short distances, operate the vehicle in dusty areas or mostly under stop-and-go traffic conditions, or when you use your vehicle where temperatures stay below freezing point for long periods.

Detergent additives in the oil will make fresh oil look dark after the engine has been running for a short time. This is normal and is not a reason to change the oil more often than recommended.

**Damage or malfunctions due to lack of maintenance**

It is essential that you change your oil at the recommended intervals using only engine oil that complies with Audi oil standard VW 502 00. Your Limited New Vehicle Warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions due to failure to follow recommended maintenance and use requirements as set forth in the Audi Owner's Manual and Warranty & Maintenance booklet. Your dealer will have to deny warranty coverage unless you present to the dealer proof in the form of Service or Repair Orders that all scheduled maintenance was performed in a timely manner. ■

## Engine oil consumption

*The engine in your vehicle depends on an adequate amount of oil to lubricate and cool all of its moving parts.*

In order to provide effective lubrication and cooling of internal engine components, all internal combustion engines consume a certain amount of oil. Oil consumption varies from engine to engine and may change significantly over the life of the engine. Typically, engines with a specified break-in period (see ⇒ *page 297*) consume more oil during the break-in period than they consume after oil consumption has stabilized.

Under normal conditions, the rate of oil consumption depends on the quality and viscosity of the oil, the RPM (revolutions per minute) at which the engine is operated, the ambient temperature and road conditions. Further factors are the amount of oil dilution from water condensation or fuel residue and the oxidation level of the oil. As any engine is subject to wear as mileage builds up, the oil consumption may increase over time until replacement of worn components may become necessary.

With all these variables coming into play, no standard rate of oil consumption can be established or specified. There is no alternative to regular and frequent checking of the oil level, see **Note**.

If the yellow engine oil level warning symbol in the instrument cluster lights up, you should check the oil level as soon as possible *with the oil dipstick* ⇒ *page 335*. Top off the oil at your earliest convenience ⇒ *page 336*.

**WARNING**

**Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ in "Working in the engine compartment" on *page 331*.**

### Note

Driving with an insufficient oil level is likely to cause severe damage to the engine.

### Tips

- **The oil pressure warning display is not an indicator of the oil level. Do not rely on it. Instead, check the oil level in your engine at regular intervals, preferably each time you refuel, and always before going on a long trip.**
- If you have the impression your engine consumes excessive amounts of oil, we recommend that you consult your Audi dealer to have the cause of your concern properly diagnosed. Keep in mind that the accurate measurement of oil consumption requires great care and may take some time. Your Audi dealer has instructions about how to measure oil consumption accurately. ■

## Checking the engine oil level

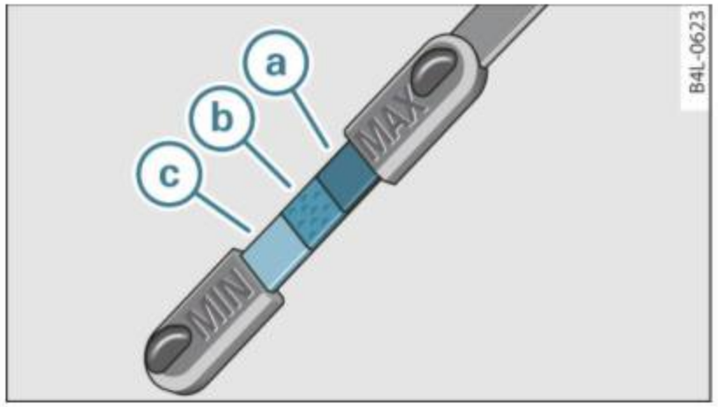



**Fig. 284 Illustration of principle 1: Markers on oil dipstick**

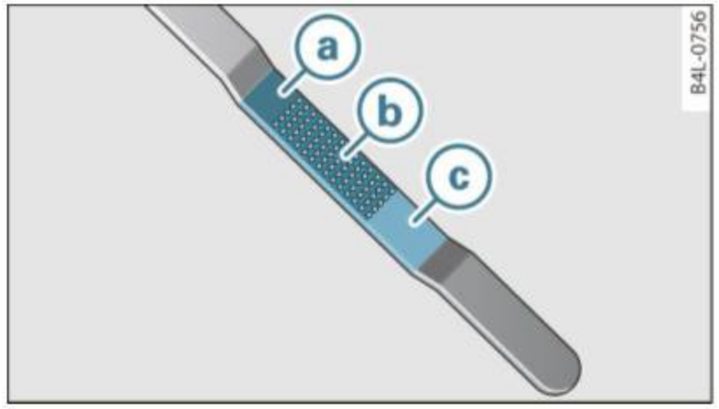



**Fig. 285 Illustration of principle 2: Markers on oil dipstick**

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇒ ⚠ in "Working in the engine compartment" on *page 331*.

### Determining oil level

– Park your vehicle so that it is horizontally level.
– While at operating state temperature, briefly let the engine run at idle and then shut it off.
– Wait approx. two minutes.
– Pull out the oil dipstick. Wipe off the oil dipstick with a clean cloth, and slide it back in as far as it will go.
– Pull it back out and read off the oil level ⇒ fig. 284 or ⇒ fig. 285. Top off the engine oil, if applicable ⇒ *page 336*.

### Oil level within range (a)

– Do *not* add oil.

### Oil level within range (b)

– You *can* add oil. *Afterwards*, the oil level should be within range (a).

### Oil level within range ⓒ

– You *must* add oil. *Afterwards*, the oil level should be within range ⓐ.

The oil level needs to be checked at regular intervals. The best times to do this are whenever you refuel and prior to long trips.

Depending on the way the vehicle is driven and the operating conditions, oil consumption can be up to 1 quart per 1.200 miles (1 liter per 2.000 km). Consumption may be higher within the first 3.000 miles (5.000 km). ■

## Adding engine oil

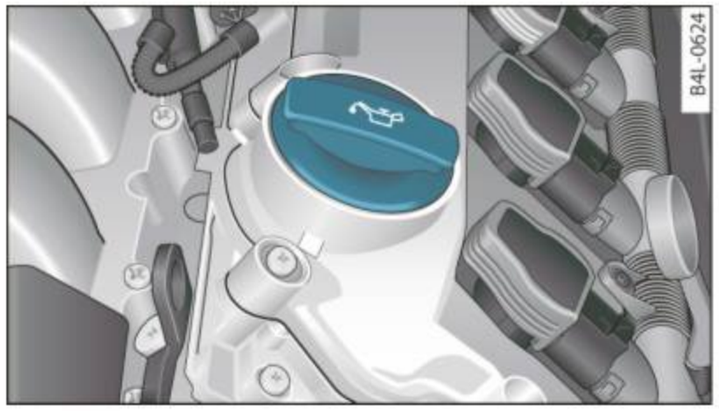



**Fig. 286 Engine compartment: Oil filler cap location**

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇒ ⚠ in "Working in the engine compartment" on *page 331*.

– Unscrew the cap to the engine oil filling hole ⇒ fig. 286.

– Carefully top off with the appropriate oil in 0.5 liter doses.

– Check the oil level again after two minutes ⇒ *page 335*.

– Top off the oil again, if necessary.

– Screw the cap back on the filling hole and slide the oil dipstick in as far as it will go.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **While topping off, the oil must not come in contact with hot engine parts - fire hazard!**
- **The oil filler cap must be properly secured to prevent oil from being sprayed on the hot engine and exhaust system when the engine is running - fire hazard!**
- **If your skin has come in contact with the engine oil, you must subsequently cleanse it thoroughly.**

**Note**

- The oil level must not be above range ⓐ - danger of converter or engine damage! Contact an authorized dealership to draw off oil, if necessary.
- **Audi does not recommend the use of oil additives. They may damage the engine and adversely affect your New Vehicle Warranty.**

**For the sake of the environment**

- Under no circumstances can the oil come in contact with the sewage network or the soil.
- Observe and follow legal regulations when disposing of empty oil containers. ■

## Changing the engine oil

*We recommend that have your oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station.*

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇒ ⚠ in "Working in the engine compartment" on *page 331*.

The engine oil must be changed according to the intervals specified in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet. This is very important because the lubricating properties of oil diminish gradually during normal vehicle use.

Under some circumstances the engine oil should be changed more frequently. Change oil more often if you drive mostly short distances, operate the vehicle in dusty areas or under predominantly stop-and-go traffic conditions, or have your vehicle where temperatures remain below freezing for extended periods.

Detergent additives in the oil will make fresh oil look dark after the engine has been running for a short time. This is normal and is not a reason to change the oil more often than recommended.

Because of the problem of proper disposal, along with the special tools and necessary expertise required, we strongly recommend that you have your oil changed by an authorized **Audi dealer** or a qualified service station.

**If you choose to change your oil yourself**, please note the following important information:

**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of personal injury if you must change the engine oil in your vehicle yourself:**

- **Wear eye protection.**
- **To reduce the risk of burns from hot engine oil, let the engine cool down to the touch.**
- **When removing the oil drain plug with your fingers, stay as far away as possible. Always keep your forearm parallel to the ground to help prevent hot oil from running down your arm.**
- **Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose, one large enough to hold at least the total amount of oil in your engine.**
- **Engine oil is poisonous. Keep it well out of the reach of children.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Continuous contact with used engine oil is harmful to your skin. Always protect your skin by washing oil off thoroughly with soap and water.**

### Note

Never mix oil additives with your engine oil. These additives can damage your engine and adversely affect your Audi Limited New Vehicle Warranty.

### For the sake of the environment

- Before changing your oil, first make sure you know where you can properly dispose of the used oil.
- Always dispose of used engine oil properly. Do not dump it on garden soil, wooded areas, into open streams or down sewage drains.
- Recycle used engine oil by taking it to a used engine oil collection facility in your area, or contact a service station. ■

## Engine cooling system

### Coolant

*The engine coolant performs two functions: it keeps the engine from overheating and it protects the engine from freezing in the winter.*

The cooling system is sealed and generally requires little attention.

The cooling system has been filled at the factory with a permanent coolant which does not need to be changed. The coolant consists of a mixture of water and the manufacturer's glycol-basedcoolant additive G12++ antifreeze with anticorrosion additives (50% for USA ▶

models; 60% for Canadian models). This mixture both assures the necessary frost protection and protects metal components in the engine's cooling system from corrosion and scaling. It also raises the boiling point of the coolant.

Do not reduce the concentration of the coolant in the summer by adding plain water. **The proportion of coolant additive must be at least 50% but not more than 60%** to maintain antifreeze protection and cooling efficiency. If the coolant frost protection is too low, the coolant could freeze and damage the vehicle heating and engine cooling system.

For year-round driving, antifreeze is added at the factory for temperatures down to:

- - 31 °F ( - 35 °C) USA
- - 40 °F ( - 40 °C) Canada.

You can mix the G12++ coolant additive with other additives (G12+ or G12). Always check with your authorized Audi dealer.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ in "Working in the engine compartment" on *page 331*.**

**Note**

- Before winter sets in, have the coolant checked to see if the coolant additive in your vehicle is sufficient to meet the climate conditions. This is especially important if you live in a region where the winter is extremely cold. If necessary, increase the proportion of coolant additive to 60%.
- When adding coolant additive to your cooling system, remember:
  - We recommend using only coolant additive G12++ (check the label) for your vehicle. This coolant additive is available at authorized Audi dealers. Other types of antifreeze can significantly reduce corrosion protection. The resulting corrosion can cause a loss of coolant and serious engine damage.
- Do not add any type of radiator leak sealant to your vehicle's engine coolant. Adding radiator repair fluid may adversely affect the function and performance of your cooling system and could result in damage not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty. ■

## Checking the engine coolant level

*The engine coolant level can be checked with a quick glance.*

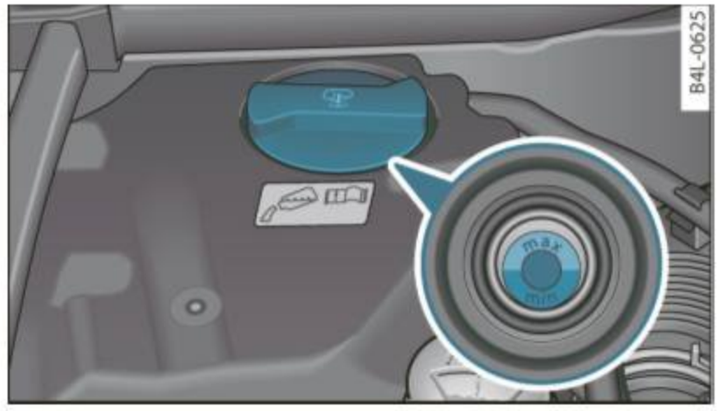



**Fig. 287 Engine compartment: Coolant expansion tank**

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇒ ⚠ in "Working in the engine compartment" on *page 331*.

- Turn off the ignition.
- Let the engine cool down.
- Place a thick rag over the coolant expansion tank ⇒ fig. 287 and **carefully** twist the cap counter-clockwise ⇒ ⚠.

– Read the engine coolant level in the open coolant expansion tank ⇒ *page 338,* fig. 287. With a cold engine, the coolant level should be between the “min” and “max” markings. When the engine is warm, the level may be slightly above the “max” marking.

The location of the coolant expansion tank can be seen in the engine compartment illustration ⇒ *page 332*.

To obtain an accurate reading, the engine must be switched off.

The expansion tank in your vehicle is equipped with an electric coolant level sensor.

When the coolant level is too low, the warning light in the Auto-Check System ⇒ *page 33* will blink until you add coolant and the level has been restored to normal. Even though there is an electric coolant level sensor, we still recommend you check the coolant level from time to time.

### Coolant loss

Coolant loss may indicate a **leak** in the cooling system. In the event of coolant loss, the cooling system should be inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is not enough merely to add coolant.

In a **sealed** system, losses can occur only if the boiling point of the coolant is exceeded as a result of overheating.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The cooling system is under pressure and can get very hot. Reduce the risk of scalding from hot coolant by following these steps.**

- **Turn off the engine and allow it to cool down.**
- **Protect your face, hands and arms from escaping fluid and steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Turn the cap slowly and very carefully in a counter-clockwise direction while applying light, downward pressure on the top of the cap.**
- **To avoid being burned, do not spill antifreeze or coolant on the exhaust system or hot engine parts. Under certain conditions, the ethylene glycol in engine coolant can catch fire.**

**Note**

Do not add any type of radiator leak sealant to your vehicle's engine coolant. Adding radiator repair fluid may adversely affect the function and performance of your cooling system and could result in damage not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty. ■

## Adding coolant

*Be very careful when adding engine coolant.*

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇒ ⚠ in “Working in the engine compartment” on *page 331*.

– Turn off the engine.

– Let the engine cool down.

– Place a thick rag over the coolant expansion tank ⇒ *page 338,* fig. 287 and **carefully** twist the cap counter-clockwise ⇒ ⚠.

– Add coolant.

– Twist the cap on again *tightly*.

Replacement engine coolant must conform to exact specifications ⇒ *page 337,* “Coolant”. Even in an emergency, if coolant additive ▶

G12++, G12+ or G12 is not available, do **not** use a different additive. Use plain water instead until you can get the correct additive and can restore the correct ratio. This should be done as soon as possible.

If you have lost a considerable amount of coolant, then you should add cold antifreeze and cold water only when the engine is cold.

Always use *new* engine coolant when refilling.

Do not fill coolant above the "MAX" mark. Excess coolant will be forced out through the pressure relief valve in the cap when the engine becomes hot.

**WARNING**

- **The cooling system is under pressure and can get very hot. Reduce the risk of scalding from hot coolant by following these steps.**
  - **Turn off the engine and allow it to cool down.**
  - **Protect your face, hands and arms from escaping fluid and steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.**
  - **Turn the cap slowly and very carefully in a counter-clockwise direction while applying light, downward pressure on the top of the cap.**
  - **To avoid being burned, do not spill antifreeze or coolant on the exhaust system or hot engine parts. Under certain conditions, the ethylene glycol in engine coolant can catch fire.**
- **Antifreeze is poisonous. Always store antifreeze in its original container and well out of the reach of children.**
- **If you drain the coolant, it must be caught and safely stored in a proper container clearly marked "poison".**

**Note**

- Coolant pollutes the environment and could cause an engine fire. Excess coolant will be forced out through the pressure relief valve in the cap when the engine becomes hot.
- If, in an emergency, only water can be added, the correct ratio between water and antifreeze ⇒ *page 337* must be restored as soon as possible.

**For the sake of the environment**

Drained coolant should not be reused. Always dispose of used coolant while observing all environmental regulations. ■

## Radiator fan

*The radiator fan switches on automatically by itself.*

The radiator fan is driven by the engine via the V-belt. The viscous clutch regulates the speed of the fan according to the temperature of the coolant.

An auxiliary electric radiator fan* switches on and off depending on coolant temperature and other vehicle operating conditions.

After you switch the engine off, the auxiliary fan can continue running for up to 10 minutes - even with the ignition off. It can even switch on again later by itself ⇒ ⚠, if

- the temperature of the engine coolant rises due to the heat build-up from the engine in the engine compartment, or
- the engine compartment heats up because the vehicle is parked in intense sunlight.

**WARNING**

- **To reduce the risk of personal injury never touch the radiator fan.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **The auxiliary electric fan is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly even when the engine is not running.**
- **The auxiliary radiator fan switches on automatically when the engine coolant reaches a certain temperature and will continue to run until the coolant temperature drops.** ■

# Brake fluid

## Checking brake fluid level

*The brake fluid level can be checked with a quick glance.*

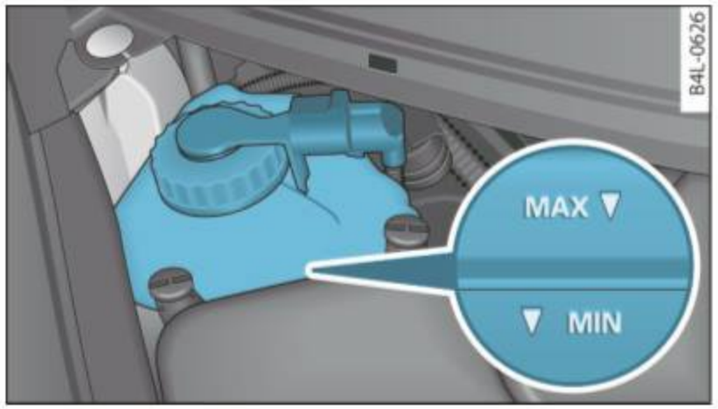



**Fig. 288 Engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir**

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇒ ⚠ in "Working in the engine compartment" on *page 331*.

– Read the brake fluid level from the brake fluid reservoir ⇒ fig. 288. The brake fluid level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

The brake fluid reservoir is located at the rear partition of the engine compartment on the left side ⇒ *page 332*.

The fluid level may drop *slightly* after some time due to the automatic adjustment of the brake pads. This is not cause for alarm.

If the brake fluid level falls *considerably* below the "MIN" mark, the brake warning/indicator light (U.S. models: **BRAKE**, Canadian models: (!)) will come on ⇒ *page 23* and ⇒ *page 32*. Do not continue to operate the vehicle. The complete brake system should be thoroughly checked by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop and the cause corrected. If the brake fluid level is too low, the brake warning/indicator light will illuminate. Contact an authorized Audi dealer **immediately**.

**Tips**

The brake fluid reservoir is located underneath the cover. ■

## Changing brake fluid

*Have the brake fluid changed by an experienced technician.*

Brake fluid absorbs moisture from the air. If the water content in the brake fluid is too high, corrosion in the brake system may result after a period of time. The boiling point of the brake fluid will also decrease considerably and decrease braking performance.

Therefore, the brake fluid must be changed **every two years**. Always use new brake fluid which conforms to Federal Motor Vehicle Standard "FMVSS 116 DOT 4".

The brake fluid reservoir can be difficult to reach, therefore, we recommend that you have the brake fluid changed by your authorized **Audi dealer**. Your dealer has the correct tools, the right brake fluid and the know-how to do this for you.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Brake fluid is poisonous. It must be stored only in the closed original container out of the reach of children!**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Brake failure can result from old or inappropriate brake fluid.**

**Observe these precautions:**

– **Use only brake fluid that meets SAE specification J 1703 and conforms to Federal Motor Vehicle Standard 116. Always check with your authorized Audi dealer to make sure you are using the correct brake fluid. The correct type of brake fluid is also indicated on the brake fluid reservoir.**

– **The brake fluid must be new. Heavy use of the brakes can cause a vapor lock if the brake fluid is left in the system too long. This can seriously affect the efficiency of the brakes as well as your safety. This could result in an accident.**

**Note**

Brake fluid will damage the paint of your vehicle.

**For the sake of the environment**

Because of the problem of proper disposal of brake fluid as well as the special tools required and the necessary expertise, we recommend that you have the brake fluid changed by your authorized Audi dealer. ■

# Battery

## General information

Under **normal** operating conditions, the battery in your Audi does not need any maintenance. With *high* outside temperatures or long daily drives we recommend that you have the electrolyte level checked by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop. The electrolyte level should also be checked each time the battery is charged ⇒ *page 344*.

Have the battery checked when you take your vehicle in for service. You are well advised to replace a battery that is older than 5 years.

With certain types of airbag deployment, the battery is disconnected from the vehicle electrical system for safety reasons ⇒ ⚠ in "Repair, care and disposal of the airbags" on *page 255*.

### Disconnecting the battery terminals

Some vehicle functions (power window regulators, for example) are lost if the battery terminals are disconnected. These functions have to be relearned after the battery terminals are connected again. To prevent this, the battery should only be disconnected from the vehicle electrical system when absolutely necessary for repairs.

### Vehicles not driven for long periods

If you do not drive your vehicle over a period of several days or weeks, electrical components are gradually cut back or switched off. This reduces energy consumption and maintains starting capability over a longer period ⇒ *page 295*.

Take into consideration that when you unlock your vehicle, some convenience functions, such as the master key remote function or power seat adjustment, may not be available. The convenience functions will be available again when you turn on the ignition and start the engine.

### Winter operation

During the winter months, battery capacity tends to decrease as temperatures drop. This is because more power is also consumed while starting, and the headlights, rear window defogger, etc., are used more often.

Avoid unnecessary power consumption, particularly in city traffic or when traveling only short distances. Let your authorized Audi dealer check the capacity of the vehicle battery before winter sets in ⇒ *page 344*. A well charged battery will not only prevent starting problems when the weather is cold, but will also last longer. ▶

### Tips

If your vehicle is left standing for several weeks at extremely low temperatures, the vehicle battery should be removed and stored where it will not freeze. This will prevent it from being damaged and having to be replaced. ■

## Working on the battery

*Be especially careful when working on or near the battery.*

The battery is located under the driver's seat. Before you check anything under the driver's seat, **read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇒ ⚠.

Always heed the **safety warnings**, when working on the vehicle battery or the vehicle electrical system to prevent injury.

**The following WARNINGS are very important when working on the battery:**

| Always heed the following WARNING SYMBOLS and safety precautions when working on the battery. | |
|---|---|
|  | **Always wear eye protection.** |
|  | **Battery acid contains sulfuric acid. Always wear gloves and eye protection.** |
|  | **No<br>- sparks<br>- flames<br>- smoking.** |
|  | **When a battery is charged, it produces hydrogen gas which is explosive and could cause personal injury.** |
|  | **Always keep the battery well out of reach of children.** |

**⚠ WARNING**

**Whenever working on the battery or on the electrical system, there is the risk of injury, accident and even fire. Read and heed the following WARNINGS:**

- **Always wear eye protection. Do not let battery acid or any lead particles get on your skin or clothing. Shield your eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness or other injury.**
- **Battery acid contains sulfuric acid. Sulfuric acid can cause blindness and severe burns.**
  - **Always wear gloves and eye protection. Do not tilt the battery because acid could leak out of the ventilation openings.**
  - **If you get battery acid in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and get medical attention.**
  - **If you should ingest any battery acid, seek medical attention immediately.**
- **Do not expose the battery to an open flame, electric sparks or an open light.**
- **Do not smoke.**
- **Do not interchange the positive and negative cables.**
- **When working on the battery, be sure not to short-circuit the terminals with tools or other metal objects. This would cause the**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

**battery to heat up very quickly, which could lead to damage or explosion and personal injury.**

- **When a battery is charged, it produces hydrogen gas which is explosive and could cause personal injury.**
- **Always keep the battery well out of the reach of children.**
- **Before work is done on the electrical system, disconnect the negative ground cable.**
- **Before performing any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine and ignition as well as any electrical equipment. The negative cable on the battery must be disconnected. If you are just going to replace a light bulb, then it is enough to switch off the lights.**
- **Before disconnecting the battery, switch off the anti-theft alarm system! Otherwise you will set off the alarm.**
- **When disconnecting the battery, first disconnect the negative cable and then the positive cable.**
- **Before reconnecting the battery, make sure all electrical consumers are switched off. Reconnect the positive cable first and then the negative cable. Never interchange the cables - this could start a fire!**
- **Never charge a frozen or a thawed-out battery. It could explode! If a battery has frozen, then it must be replaced. A discharged battery can freeze over at 32 °F (0 °C).**
- **Make sure the vent hose is always attached to the opening on the side of the battery.**
- **Never use batteries which are damaged. There is the danger of an explosion! Always replace a damaged battery.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**California Proposition 65 Warning:**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive problems. Wash hands after handling.**

**Note**

- Do not disconnect the vehicle battery when the ignition is switched on or when the engine is running, otherwise, you will damage electronic components in the electrical system.
- If your vehicle is going to stand for a long period of time without being driven, protect the battery from "freezing", otherwise it will be damaged and will then have to be replaced. ■

## Battery charging

*Starting the engine requires a well charged battery.*

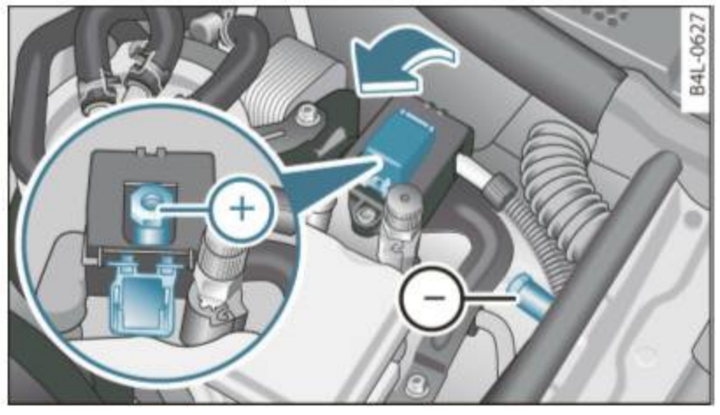



**Fig. 289 Engine compartment: Connectors for charger and jumper cables**

**Always read and heed all WARNINGS** below ⇒ ⚠ and ⇒ ⚠ in "Working on the battery" on *page 343*.

– Turn off the ignition and all electrical consumers. ▶

– Make sure the area is well ventilated when you charge the battery.
– Open the hood ⇒ *page 330*.
– Open the red cover on the positive pole ⇒ fig. 289.
– Connect the charger connectors according to the instructions to the **jump start bolts**. (Bolts under the red cover = "positive", Bolts with hex head = "negative").
– Only now plug the mains lead for the charging equipment into the wall outlet and turn it on ⇒ ⚠.
– **Make sure the charging rate is not over 30 amps/14.8 Volt.**
– When the battery is fully charged: Turn the charging equipment off and remove the mains lead from the wall outlet.
– Now remove the clamps for the charging equipment.
– Close the red cover on the positive pole.
– Close the hood ⇒ *page 331*.

A discharged battery can **freeze** at temperatures of only 0 °C. Allow a frozen battery to thaw completely before attempting to charge it ⇒ ⚠. However, we recommend not using a thawed battery again because the battery casing can be cracked due to ice formation and can leak battery acid.

### Battery charging (Maximum charging rate of 30 amps/14.8 Volt)

When charging at *low* voltages (e.g. with a **trickle charger**), the battery cables do not have to be disconnected first. The battery caps should *not* be opened when charging a battery.

It is not necessary to remove the battery from the luggage compartment.

### Fast charging the battery (charging rate above 14.8 Volts)

For technical reasons do not use a battery charger that uses voltage greater than 14.8 Volts to charge your vehicle's battery.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Charging a battery can be dangerous.**

- **Always follow the operating instructions provided by the battery charger manufacturer when charging your battery.**
- **Never charge a frozen battery. It may explode because of gas trapped in the ice. Allow a frozen battery to thaw out first.**
- **Do not reuse batteries which were frozen. The battery housing may have cracked and weakened when the battery froze.**
- **Charge the battery in a well ventilated area. Keep away from open flame or electrical spark. Do not smoke. Hydrogen gas generated by the battery is explosive.**
- **To reduce the danger of explosion, never connect or disconnect charger cables while the charger is operating.**
- **Fast charging a battery is dangerous and should only be attempted by a competent technician with the proper equipment.**
- **Battery acid that may spill during charging should be washed off with a solution of warm water and baking soda to neutralize the acid.**

**Note**

Never use a fast charger as a booster to start the engine. This will seriously damage sensitive electronic components, such as control units, relays, radio, etc., as well as the battery charger. ■

## Battery replacement

*The new battery must have the same specifications and dimensions as the original equipment battery.*

Intelligent energy management in your vehicle is responsible for distributing the electrical energy throughout your vehicle ⇒ *page 295*. The intelligent energy management system will keep the engine battery charged better then vehicles without this system. To make sure the additional electrical energy is available once again after you have changed the battery, we recommend that you install batteries of the same type and manufacture only (the same as those installed at the time your vehicle was delivered). Specifications are listed on the battery housing. Your authorized Audi dealer will then code the battery management control unit.

If it is not possible to use a battery of this type, the new battery must have the same capacity, voltage (12 volts), amperage, construction and plug sealing.

When installing the battery, make sure the ignition and all electrical consumers are turned off.

**Note**

Make sure the ventilation hose on the side of the battery is connected, otherwise fumes or battery acid can leak out.

**For the sake of the environment**

Because of the problem of proper disposal of a battery, we recommend your authorized Audi dealer change the battery for you. Batteries contain sulfuric acid and lead and must always be disposed of properly in compliance with all environmental regulations. Disposing of vehicle batteries improperly is very dangerous to the environment. ■

## Windshield/headlight washer container

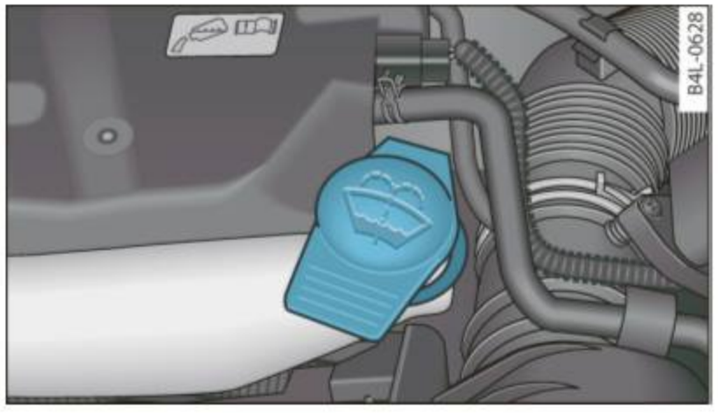



**Fig. 290 Engine compartment: Windshield and headlight* washer fluid container**

The washer fluid container is marked with the symbol on its cap.

- Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇒ ⚠ in "Working in the engine compartment" on *page 331*.
- Lift the filler cap tongue to add washer fluid. You can fill the container to the top.
- Press the cap back onto the filler neck after filling the container.

You can find the reservoir **capacity** in the table in ⇒ *page 399*.

To prevent lime residue from building up on the spray jets, use distilled water when refilling. Always add a glass cleaner solution (with frost protection in the winter).

**Note**

Do not mix engine coolant antifreeze or any other additives to fill up the windshield washer reservoir. ■

# Tires and wheels

## Tires

### General notes

*Tires may be the least appreciated and most abused parts of a motor vehicle.*

Tires may be the least appreciated and most abused parts of a motor vehicle. Tires are, however, one of the most important parts of a vehicle, particularly considering the comparatively small patch of rubber on each tire that assures that all-important contact between you, your vehicle and the road.

Maintaining the correct tire pressure, making sure that your vehicle and its tires do not have to carry more weight than they can safely handle, avoiding damage from road hazards and regularly inspecting tires for damage including cuts, slashes irregular wear and overall condition are the most important things that you can do to help avoid sudden tire failure including tread separation and blowouts.

#### Avoiding damage

If you have to drive over a curb or similar obstacle, drive very slowly and as close as possible at a right angle to the curb.

Always keep chemicals including grease, oil, gasoline and brake fluid off the tires.

Inspect the tires regularly for damage (cuts, cracks or blisters, etc.). Remove any foreign bodies embedded in the treads.

#### Storing tires

Mark tires when you remove them to indicate the direction of rotation. This ensures you to be able to mount them correctly when you reinstall them.

When removed, the wheels or tires should be stored in a cool, dry and preferably dark place.

Store tires in a vertical position if they are not mounted on rims, in a horizontal position if they are mounted on rims.

#### New tires

New tires have to be broken in ⇒ ⚠.

The tread depth of new tires may vary, according to the type and make of tire and the tread pattern.

#### Hidden damage

Damage to tires and rims is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual vibration or the vehicle pulls to one side, this may indicate that one of the tires has been damaged. The tires must be checked immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

#### Unidirectional tires

A unidirectional tire can be identified by arrows on the sidewall, that point in the direction the tire is designed to rotate. You must follow the specified direction of rotation. This is necessary so that these tires can develop their optimum characteristics regarding grip, road noise, wear and hydroplaning resistance. For more information ⇒ *page 379*.

**⚠ WARNING**

**New tires or tires that are old, worn or damaged cannot provide maximum control and braking ability.**

- **New tires tend to be slippery and must be broken in. To reduce the risk of losing control, a collision and serious personal injuries, drive with special care for the first 350 miles (560 km).**
- **Driving with worn or damaged tires can lead to loss of control, sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation,**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

**crashes and serious personal injuries. Have worn or damaged tires replaced immediately.**

- **Tires age even if they are not being used and can fail suddenly, especially at high speeds. Tires that are more than 6 years old can only be used in an emergency and then with special care and at low speed.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Never mount used tires on your vehicle if you are not sure of their "previous history." Old used tires may have been damaged even though the damage cannot be seen that can lead to sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.**
- **If you notice unusual vibration or if the vehicle pulls to one side when driving, always stop as soon as it is safe to do so and check the wheels and tires for damage. ■**

## Glossary of tire and loading terminology

### Accessory weight

means the combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

### Aspect ratio

means the ratio of the height to the width of the tire in percent. Numbers of 55 or lower indicate a low sidewall for improved steering response and better overall handling on dry pavement.

### Bead

means the part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim.

### Bead separation

means a breakdown of the bond between components in the bead.

### Cord

means the strands forming the plies in the tire.

### Cold tire inflation pressure

means the tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a designated size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the three hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

### Curb weight

means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, air conditioning and additional weight of optional equipment.

### Extra load tire

means a tire design to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Extra load tires may be identified as "XL", "xl", "EXTRA LOAD", or "RF" on the sidewall.

### Gross Axle Weight Rating ("GAWR")

means the load-carrying capacity of a single axle system, measured at the tire-ground interfaces.

### Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ("GVWR")

means the maximum total loaded weight of the vehicle.

### Groove

means the space between two adjacent tread ribs.

### Load rating (code)

means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

### Maximum load rating

means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

### Maximum loaded vehicle weight

means the sum of:

(a) Curb weight
(b) Accessory weight
(c) Vehicle capacity weight, and
(d) Production options weight

### Maximum (permissible) inflation pressure

means the maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated. Also called "maximum inflation pressure."

### Normal occupant weight

means 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the number of occupants seated in the vehicle up to the total seating capacity of your vehicle.

### Occupant distribution

means distribution of occupants in a vehicle.

### Outer diameter

means the overall diameter of an inflated new tire.

### Overall width

means the linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs.

### Ply

means a layer of rubber-coated parallel cords.

### Production options weight

means the combined weight of those installed regular production options weighing over 5 lbs. (2.3 kg) in excess of those standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim.

### Radial ply tire

means a pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

### Recommended inflation pressure

see ⇒ *page 348,* "Cold tire inflation pressure".

### Reinforced tire

means a tire design to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Reinforced tires may be identified as "XL", "xl", "EXTRA LOAD", or "RF" on the sidewall.

### Rim

means a metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

### Rim diameter

means nominal diameter of the bead seat. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new rim diameter.

### Rim size designation

means rim diameter and width.

### Rim width

means nominal distance between rim flanges.

### Sidewall

means that portion of a tire between the tread and bead.

### Speed rating (letter code)

means the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 93 mph (150 km/h) to 186 mph (298 km/h) ⇒ *page 360*. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

The speed rating letter code, where applicable, is molded on the tire sidewall and indicates the maximum permissible road speeds ⇒ ⚠ in "Winter tires" on *page 363*.

### Tire pressure monitoring system

means a system that detects when one or more of a vehicle's tires are underinflated and illuminates a low tire pressure warning telltale.

### Tread

means that portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

### Tread separation

means pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass.

### Treadwear indicators (TWI)

means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread. See ⇒ *page 357,* "Tread Wear Indicator (TWI)" for more information on measuring tire wear.

### Uniform Tire Quality Grading

is a tire information system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) that is designed to help buyers make relative comparisons among tires. The UTQG is not a safety rating and not a guarantee that a tire will last for a prescribed number of miles (kilometers) or perform in a certain way. It simply gives tire buyers additional information to combine with other considerations, such as price, brand loyalty and dealer recommendations. Under UTQG, tires are graded by the tire manufacturers in three areas: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. The UTQG information on the tires, molded into the sidewalls.

### U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

This is the tire's "serial number" It begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example,

**DOT ... 2208 ...**

means that the tire was produced in the 22th week of 2008. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

### Vehicle capacity weight

means the rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the vehicle's total seating capacity as listed on the label located either on the driver's side B-pillar or on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

### Vehicle maximum load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight and dividing by two.

### Vehicle normal load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with table below ⇒ *page 351*) and dividing by two.

**Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities**

| Designated seating capacity, number of occupants | Vehicle normal load, number of occupants | Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle |
|---|---|---|
| 5/6*/7* | 3 | 2 in front, 1 in second seat |

## Cold tire inflation pressure

*Tire pressure affects the overall handling, performance and safety of a vehicle.*




**Fig. 291 Tire pressure label: located either on driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap**

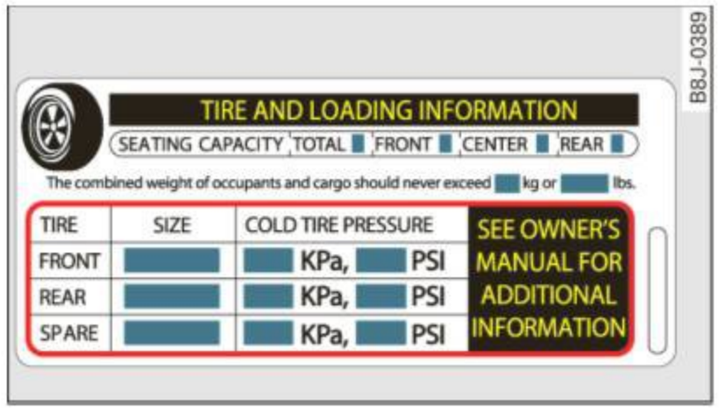



**Fig. 292 Tire pressure label**

Tire pressure generally refers to the amount of air in a tire that it needs it to do its job and safely carry the combined load of the entire vehicle and its contents. Tire pressure is measured in kilopascals (kPa), the international measuring unit and in pounds per square inch (PSI). Tire pressure is based in part on the vehicle's design and load limit – the greatest amount of weight that the vehicle can carry safely and the tire size. The proper tire pressure is frequently referred to as the "recommended cold tire inflation pressure." Air in the tires expands when the tire heats up because of internal friction when it flexes in use. The tire pressure is higher when the tire has warmed up than when it is "cold." It is the inflation pressure in a "cold" tire that counts. Therefore, you should never let air out of a warm tire to match "cold tire inflation pressure" recommendations. The tires would then be underinflated and could fail suddenly.

Maintaining proper tire pressure is one of the most important things you can do to help avoid sudden tire failure. Underinflated tires are a major cause of sudden tire failure. Keeping tires at the right pressure is also important for safe and responsive vehicle handling, traction, braking and load carrying. **Tire pressures are particularly important when the vehicle is being driven at higher speeds, and then especially when heavily loaded even within the permissible load-carrying capacities approved for your vehicle.**

The recommended tire pressures for your Audi depend on the kind of tires on your vehicle and the number of passengers and/or amount of luggage you will be transporting.

On USA vehicles, the tire pressure label is located on the driver's side B-pillar. On Canada vehicles, the tire pressure label is located either on the driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap. The tire pressure label lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures ▶

for the vehicle at its maximum capacity weight and tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured.

**If you wish to improve comfort when operating the vehicle at normal load (up to 3 occupants), you can adjust tire pressures to those specified for normal vehicle load. Before operating the vehicle at maximum load, you must increase the tire pressures to those specified for maximum vehicle load** ⇒ ⚠.

Bear in mind that the tire pressure monitoring system can only monitor the tire pressures you have stored. The system does not recognize the load condition of your vehicle.

The effectiveness of the tire pressure monitoring system will be impaired if you store normal load pressures but then operate the vehicle at its maximum load ⇒ ⚠.

See the illustration ⇒ *page 351,* fig. 291 for the location of the label either on driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap (color of the actual label and exact location on the vehicle will vary slightly).

Note that the following table is accurate at the time of going to press and is subject to change. In the event of discrepancies, the tire pressure label (On USA vehicles, the tire pressure label is located on the driver's side B-pillar. On Canada vehicles, the tire pressure label is located either on the driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap) always takes precedence.

The table below lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the Audi model covered by your Owner's Literature at the vehicle's capacity weight and the tire sizes installed on the respective models as original equipment, or as a factory option.

| Engine (displacement in liter) | Tire designation | Tire pressure front | | | | Tire pressure rear | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | normal load condition (up to 3 occupants) | | full load condition | | normal load condition (up to 3 occupants) | | full load condition | |
| | | PSI | kPA | PSI | kPA | PSI | kPA | PSI | kPA |
| **6-cylinder 3.6 and 8-cylinder 4.2** | **235/60 R18 107H XL All Season** | 35 | 240 | 44 | 300 | 35 | 240 | 49 | 340 |
| | **255/55 R18 109H XL All Season** | 35 | 240 | 44 | 300 | 35 | 240 | 49 | 340 |
| | **265/50 R19 110H XL All Season** | 35 | 240 | 44 | 300 | 35 | 240 | 49 | 340 |
| | **275/45 R20 110H XL All Season** | 35 | 240 | 44 | 300 | 35 | 240 | 49 | 340 |
| | **275/45 R20 110Y XL High Performance** | 35 | 240 | 44 | 300 | 35 | 240 | 49 | 340 |
| | **295/40 R20 110Y XL High Performance** | 36 | 250 | 44 | 300 | 35 | 240 | 49 | 340 |
| | **275/40 R21 107Y XL High Performance** | 36 | 250 | 44 | 300 | 35 | 240 | 49 | 340 |
| | **295/35 R21 107Y XL High Performance** | 36 | 250 | 44 | 300 | 35 | 240 | 49 | 340 |
| **XL = reinforced or extra load tire. It may also appear as xl, EXTRA LOAD, or RF on the tire sidewall.** | | | | | | | | | |

The correct tire pressure for the *spare wheel* is located on a label either on the driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap. ▶

Because technical changes may be made to vehicle equipment during the model year, always compare the tire size designation on the tire pressure label on your vehicle with the tires on your vehicle. Make sure that the tire size information on the vehicle label is the same as the size of the tires on the vehicle. This is especially important if the vehicle belongs to someone else or you bought the vehicle with different rims/tires or you bought the vehicle as a previously owned vehicle.

Remember, your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ("GVWR"). The Gross Axle Weight Rating ("GAWR") is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle's two axles. The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating are listed on the safety compliance sticker label located either on the driver's side B-pillar or on the inside of the fuel filler flap. The tire pressure label on your Audi lists the maximum combined weight of all of the occupants and luggage or other cargo that the vehicle can carry. For the location of the tire pressure label ⇒ *page 351,* fig. 291.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.**

- **Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of a loss of vehicle control.**
- **The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance.**
- **Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly causing loss of control and a crash.**
- **Always make sure that the total load being transported – including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of a loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

**loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation can lead to a serious or fatal accident.**
- **Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation cause increased tire wear and can affect the handling of the vehicle.**
- **Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation can also lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of vehicle control.** ■

## Checking tire pressure

*The correct tire pressure for the tires originally installed on your vehicle is listed on the tire pressure label located either on driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap.*

The recommended tire pressures are on the tire pressure label and in the table ⇒ *page 351,* "Cold tire inflation pressure".This means that the pressure must be checked and adjusted when the tire has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds during the previous three hours. Air in the tires expands when the tire heats up as a result of internal friction as it flexes in use. The tire pressure is higher when the tire has warmed up than when it is "cold."

It is the inflation pressure in a "cold" tire that counts. Therefore, you should never let air out of a warm tire to match "Cold tire inflation pressure" recommendations ⇒ *page 351*. The tires would then be underinflated and could fail suddenly.

The tire pressure label on your Audi lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures at maximum capacity for the new, original equip- ▶

ment tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. For the location of the label ⇒ *page 351,* fig. 291.

Most tires lose air naturally over time. They can also lose some air if you drive over a pothole or hit a curb while parking. It is usually not possible to see whether the radial tires used today are underinflated just by looking at them.

Therefore, be sure to check tire pressures at least once a month and always before going on a long trip. Make sure to take the number of people and the amount of luggage into account when adjusting tire pressure for a trip – even one that you would not consider to be "long." See ⇒ *page 355,* "Tires and vehicle load limits" for more important information.

Always use an accurate tire pressure gauge when checking and adjusting inflation pressures. Check all of the tires and be sure not to forget the spare tire. If the pressure in any tire is too high when the tire is "cold," let air out of the tire slowly with the edge of the tire gauge and keep checking the pressure until you reach the pressure that is correct for the load (passengers and luggage) and kind of driving you plan to do.

If the pressure in any tire is too low, note the difference between the pressure in the cold tire and the pressure you need and add the air that you need to reach the correct pressure for the vehicle load (passengers and luggage) for the tires on your vehicle as listed on the on your vehicle and in this manual and the kind of driving you plan to do.

**Never exceed the maximum inflation pressure listed on the tire sidewall for any reason.**

Remember that the vehicle manufacturer, not the tire manufacturer, determines the correct tire pressure for the tires on your vehicle.

It is important to check the tire pressure when the tires are cold.

- Read the required tire pressure from the tire pressure label. On USA vehicles, the tire pressure label is located on the driver's side B-pillar. On Canada vehicles, the tire pressure label is located either on the driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap. The tire pressure label lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the vehicle at its maximum capacity weight and the tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. For recommended tire pressures for normal load conditions, please see chapter ⇒ *page 351.*
- Turn the valve stem cap counter-clockwise to remove it from the tire valve.
- Place the air pressure gauge on the valve.
- The tire pressures should only be checked and adjusted when the tires are cold. The slightly raised pressures of warm tires must not be reduced.
- Adjust the tire pressure to the load you are carrying.
- Reinstall the valve stem cap on the valve.

### When should I check the tire pressure?

The correct tire pressure is especially important at high speeds. The pressure should therefore be checked at least once a month and always before starting a journey. Do not forget to check the tire pressure for the spare wheel.

### When should I adjust the tire pressures?

Adjust the tire pressure to the load you are carrying. After changing a wheel **or** replacing wheels you have to adjust the tire pressures on all wheels. In addition, you must then initialize the new tire pressures in the tire pressure monitoring system ⇒ *page 42.*

**WARNING**

**Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation can lead sudden tire failure, loss of control, collision, serious personal injury or even death.**

- **When the warning symbol (!) appears in the instrument cluster, stop and inspect the tires.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Incorrect tire pressure and/or underinflation can cause increased tire wear and can affect the handling of the vehicle and stopping ability.**
- **Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation can also lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of vehicle control.**
- **The driver is responsible for the correct tire pressures for all tires on the vehicle. The applicable pressure values are located on a sticker on the driver's side B-pillar or on the inside of the fuel filler flap.**
- **Only when all tires on the vehicle are filled to the correct pressure, the tire pressure monitoring system can work correctly.**
- **The use of incorrect tire pressure values can lead to accidents or other damage. Therefore it is essential that the driver observe the specified tire pressure values for the tires and the correct pressures for the function of the tire pressure monitoring system.**
- **Always inflate tires to the recommended and correct tire pressure before driving off.**
- **Driving with underinflated tires bend more, letting them get too hot resulting in tread separation, sudden tire failure and loss of control.**
- **Excessive speed and/overloading can cause heat build-up, sudden tire failure and loss of control.**
- **If the tire pressure is too low or too high, the tires will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.**
- **If the tire is not flat and you do not have to change a wheel immediately, drive at reduced speed to the nearest service station to check the tire pressure and add air as required.**

**Note**

Driving without valve stem caps can cause damage to the tire valves. To prevent this, always make sure that factory installed valve stem caps on all wheels are securely mounted on the valve.

**For the sake of the environment**

Underinflated tires will also increase the fuel consumption. ■

## Tires and vehicle load limits

There are limits to the amount of load or weight that any vehicle and any tire can carry. A vehicle that is overloaded will not handle well and is more difficult to stop. Overloading can not only lead to loss of vehicle control, but can also damage important parts of the vehicle and can lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation that can cause the vehicle to crash.

Your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** ("GVWR").

The "GVWR" includes the weight of the basic vehicle, all factory installed accessories, a full tank of fuel, oil, coolant and other fluids plus maximum load. The maximum load includes the number of passengers that the vehicle is intended to carry ("seating capacity") with an assumed weight of 150 lbs (68 kg) for each passenger at a designated seating position and the total weight of any luggage in the vehicle. If you tow a trailer, the weight of the trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer must be included as part of the vehicle load.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating** ("GAWR") is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle's two axles. ▶

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating are listed on the safety compliance sticker label located either on the driver's side B-pillar or on the inside of the fuel filler flap. Your Audi has 5 seating positions, 2 in the front and 3 in the rear for total seating capacity of 5. On vehicles with six seats*, your vehicle has two front seats, two seats in the second row seating and two seats in the third row seating. On vehicles with seven seats*, your vehicle has two front seats, three seats in the second row seating and two seats in the third row seating. Each seating position has a seat belt ⇒ *page 231,* "Safety belts".

The fact that there is an upper limit to your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating means that the total weight of whatever is being carried in the vehicle (including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer) is limited. The more passengers in the vehicle or passengers who are heavier than the standard weights assumed mean that less weight can be carried as luggage.

The tire pressure label on your Audi also lists the maximum combined weight of all of the occupants and luggage or other cargo that the vehicle can carry. For the location of the label ⇒ *page 351,* fig. 291.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.**

- **Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.**
- **The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance.**
- **Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of control and a crash.**
- **Always make sure that the total load being transported – including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of a loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.** ■

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

**loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.** ■

## Determining correct load limit

Use the example below to calculate the total weight of the passengers and luggage or other things that you plan to transport so that you can make sure that your vehicle will not be overloaded.

### Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS"on your vehicle's placard (tire inflation pressure label) ⇒ *page 351,* fig. 291.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle. ▶

3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from "XXX" kilograms or "XXX" pounds shown on the sticker ⇒ *page 351,* fig. 291.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lbs. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

– Check the tire sidewall (⇒ *page 359,* fig. 295) to determine the designated load rating for a specific tire. ■

## Tire service life

*The service life of tires depends on a lot of different things including proper installation and balancing, correct tire pressure and driving style.*

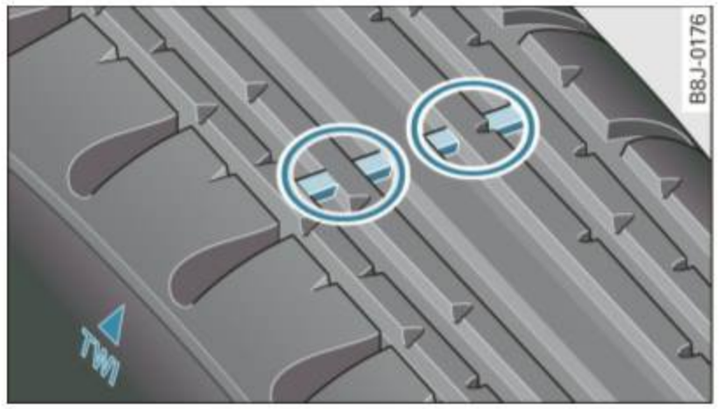



**Fig. 293 Tire tread: tread wear indicators (TWI)**

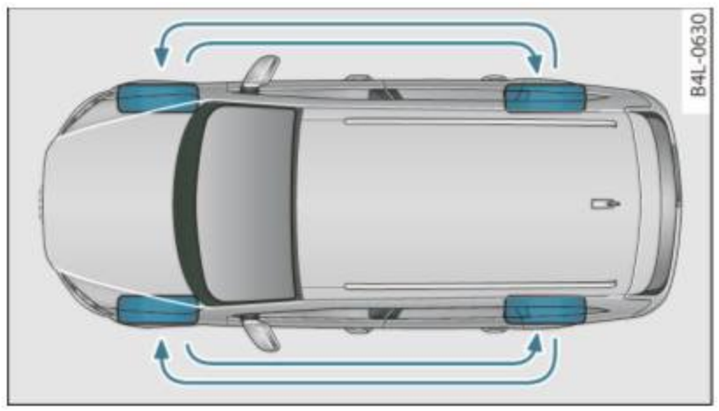



**Fig. 294 Rotating tires for more even wear**

### Tread Wear Indicator (TWI)

The original tires on your vehicle have 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) high "wear indicators" ⇒ fig. 293 running across the tread. Depending on the ▶

make, there will be six to eight of them evenly placed around the tire. Marks on the tire sidewall (for example "TWI" or other symbols) indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators. Worn tires must be replaced. Different figures may apply in other countries ⇒ ⚠.

### Tire pressure

Incorrect tire pressure causes premature wear and can cause sudden tire blow-out. For this reason, tire pressure must be checked at least once a month ⇒ *page 353*.

### Driving style

Driving fast around curves, heavy acceleration and hard braking increase tire wear.

### Rotating tires for more even wear

For all four tires on your vehicle to have the same service life, we recommend that the front and rear tires are rotated according to the tire manufacturer's suggested tire rotation intervals. Please remember the following:

- Tire rotation intervals may differ from the vehicle service intervals outlined in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.
- The longer one tire is used in one location on the vehicle, the more it wears at certain points; therefore, we recommend that you follow the tire manufacturer's suggested tire rotation intervals.
- Vehicles with front-wheel drive experience more tread wear on the front wheels compared to all-wheel drive (quattro®).
- Please rotate tires as shown ⇒ *page 357*, fig. 294.
- Extra care must be taken when rotating direction-specific tires ⇒ *page 379*.

### Wheel balancing

The wheels on new vehicles are balanced. However, various situations during everyday driving can cause them to become unbalanced, resulting in vibrations you can usually feel through the steering wheel.

Unbalanced wheels must be rebalanced to avoid excessive wear on steering, suspension and tires. A wheel must also be rebalanced when a new tire is installed.

### Incorrect wheel alignment

Incorrect wheel alignment can cause excessive tire wear, impairing the safety of the vehicle. If tires show excessive wear, have the wheel alignment checked by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

### All Wheel Drive

Vehicles with quattro® must always have tires of the same size, construction and tread type. For details see ⇒ *page 294*.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Sudden tire failure can lead to loss of control, a crash and serious personal injury!**

- **Never drive a vehicle when the tread on any tire is worn down to the wear indicators.**
- **Worn tires are a safety hazard, they do not grip well on wet roads and increase your risk of "hydroplaning" and loss of control.**
- **Always keep chemicals that can cause tire damage, such as grease, oil, gasoline and brake fluid away from tires.**
- **Tires age even if they are not being used and can fail suddenly, especially at high speeds. Tires that are more than 6 years old can only be used in an emergency and then with special care and at lower speeds.**
- **Never mount used tires on your vehicle if you are not sure of their "previous history." Old used tires may have been damaged even though the damage cannot be seen that can lead to sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.** ■

## New tires and replacing tires and wheels

*New tires and wheels have to be broken in.*

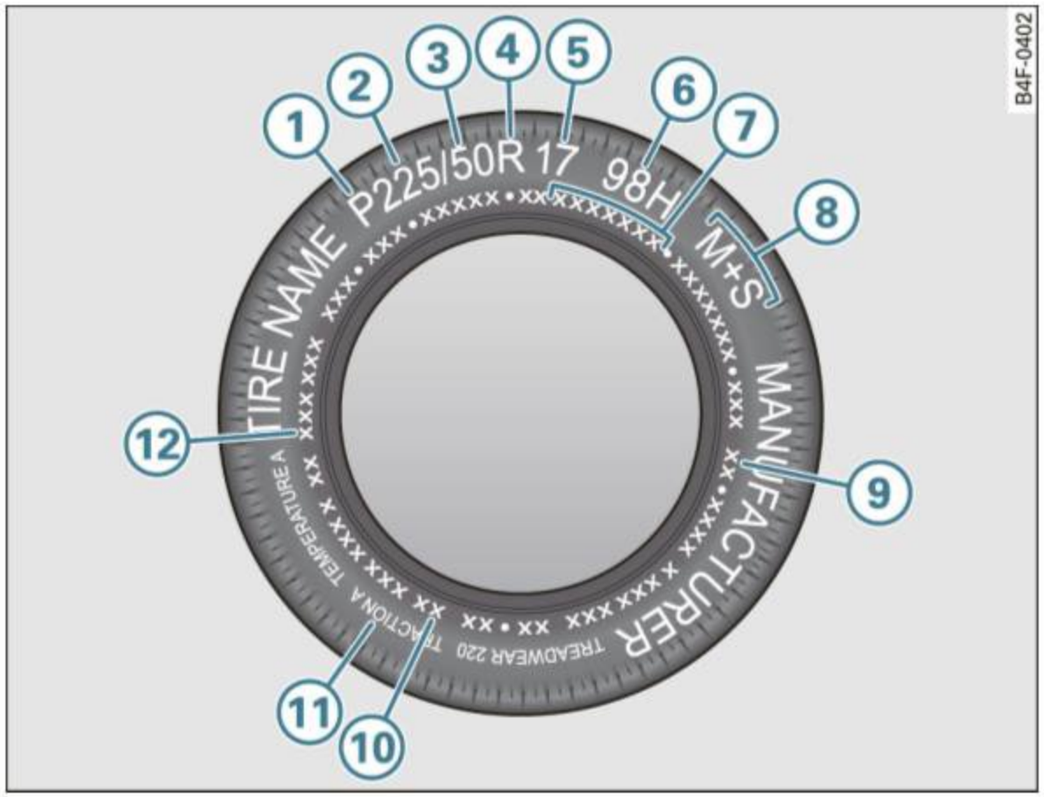



**Fig. 295 Tire specification codes on the sidewall of a tire**

| No. | Description |
|---|---|
| ① | Passenger car tire (where applicable) |
| ② | Nominal width of tire in millimeters |
| ③ | Ratio of height to width (aspect ratio) |
| ④ | Radial |
| ⑤ | Rim diameter code |
| ⑥ | Load index and speed rating |
| ⑦ | U.S. DOT tire identification number |
| ⑧ | Sever snow conditions |
| ⑨ | Tire ply composition and materials used |
| ⑩ | Maximum load rating |
| ⑪ | Treadwear, traction and temperature grades |
| ⑫ | Maximum permissible inflation pressure |

The tires and rims are essential parts of the vehicle's design. The tires and rims approved by Audi are specially matched to the characteristics of the vehicle and can make a major contribution to good road holding and safe handling when in good condition and properly inflated ⇒ ⚠.

We recommend that all work on tires and wheels be performed by an authorized Audi dealer. They are familiar with recommended procedures and have the necessary special tools and spare parts as well as the proper facilities for disposing of the old tires.

Authorized Audi dealers have the necessary information about technical requirements for installing or changing tires and rims.

### Replacing tires and wheels

Tires should be replaced at least in pairs and not individually (for example both front tires or both rear tires together).

Be sure to read and heed the information to the tire pressure monitoring system ⇒ *page 361*.

Always buy replacement radial tires that have the same specifications as the tires approved for your vehicle by Audi. Replacement tires must always have the same load rating specification as the original equipment or approved optional tires listed in the table ⇒ *page 351*.

Audi-approved specification tires are specially matched to your vehicle and its load limits, and can contribute to the important road- ▶

holding, driving characteristics, and safety of the vehicle. The table (⇒ *page 351*) lists specifications of the tires approved for the Audi models covered by your Owner's Literature.

The tire pressure label (On USA vehicles, the tire pressure label is located on the driver's side B-pillar. On Canada vehicles, the tire pressure label is located either on the driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap)(⇒ *page 351,* fig. 292) lists the specifications of the original equipment tires installed on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured.

Federal law requires tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires ⇒ *page 359,* fig. 295. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics, the quality grade of the tire and also provides a tire identification number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

### Tire specifications

Knowledge of tire specifications makes it easier to choose the correct tires. Radial tires have the tire specifications marked on the sidewall, for example:

**P235 / 60 R 18 107 H XL**

This contains the following information:

**P** Indicates the tire is for passenger cars (where applicable)

**235** Nominal tire width in mm of the tire from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire

**60** Height/width ratio in percent (aspect ratio)

**R** Tire construction: **R**adial

**18** Rim diameter code (in inches)

**107** Load rating code

**H** Speed rating letter code

**XL** (or "xl", "EXTRA LOAD", or "RF" Indicates that the tire is a"Reinforced" or an "Extra Load" tire

**M+S** (or "M/S") Indicates that the tire has some mud and snow capability

The tires could also have the information of direction of rotation ⇒ *page 347.*

### Tire manufacturing date

The manufacturing date is also indicated on the tire sidewall (possibly only on the *inner* side of the wheel):

"DOT ... 2208... " means, for example, that the tire was produced in the 22th week of 2008.

### Speed rating (letter code)

The speed rating letter code on the wheels indicates the maximum permissible road speeds ⇒ ⚠ in "Winter tires" on *page 363.*

P up to 93 mph (150 km/h)
Q up to 99 mph (158 km/h)
R up to 106 mph (170 km/h)
S up to 110 mph (180 km/h)
T up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
U up to 124 mph (200 km/h)
H up to 130 mph (210 km/h)
V up to 149 mph (240 km/h)[4)]
Z over 149 mph (240 km/h)[4)]
W up to 168 mph (270 km/h)[4)]
Y up to 186 mph (298 km/h)[4)]

Your vehicle is normally factory equipped with tires, which possess excellent driving characteristics and give your Audi optimum driving comfort. An electronic speed limiter ⇒ *page 29* will normally prevent your vehicle from going faster than the tire speed rating ⇒ ⚠.

4) For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters "ZR."

### U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN) and tire manufacture date

This is the tire's "serial number". It begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example, the numbers 2208 mean that the tire was produced in the 22th week of 2008. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

### Tire ply composition and materials used

The number of plies indicates the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire. In general, the greater the number of plies, the more weight a tire can support. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tire, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

### Maximum Load Rating

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire.

### Tire quality grading for treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance

Tread wear, traction and temperature grades ⇒ *page 363*.

### Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should ever be put in the tire under normal driving conditions.

### Replacing tires or rims on vehicles equipped with tire pressure monitoring system

The wheels on your vehicle are equipped with a sensor which constantly monitors the air pressure inside the tire, and then transmits this information to the tire pressure monitoring system. If you are going to replace the wheel rims on your vehicle, make sure the new rims also have these sensors. The sensors must be compatible with the tire pressure monitoring system on your vehicle.

If you install rims, which do not have the sensors, or have sensors which are not compatible, then the tire pressure monitoring system will not work properly. In this case, the tire pressure monitoring system would not be able to monitor the tire pressure or warn you if it is necessary.

- The battery inside of the tire pressure sensor has a limited service life.
- Always drive with the valve stem caps securely mounted. We recommend using factory installed valve stem caps. Ask your authorized Audi dealer to replace lost valve stem caps.

The installation of replacement tires with steel cord body plies in the tire sidewall may cause malfunction of the tire pressure monitoring system, and is not recommended (cord material information in molded on the tire sidewall).

Always check your tire pressure monitoring system indicator after replacing one or more tires on your vehicle. If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator flashes, or is on, your system is not working properly. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the tire pressure monitoring system may be damaged.

**WARNING**

- **Using incorrect or unmatched tires and / or wheels or improper tire and wheel combinations can lead to loss of control, collision and serious personal injury.**
- **Always use tires, rims and wheel bolts that meet the specifications of original factory-installed tires or other combinations that have been specifically approved by the vehicle manufacturer.**
- **Tires age even if they are not being used and can fail suddenly, especially at high speeds. Tires that are more than 6 years old can only be used in an emergency and then with special care and at lower speeds.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Never mount used tires on your vehicle if you are not sure of their "previous history." Old used tires may have been damaged even though the damage cannot be seen that can lead to sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.**
- **All four wheels must be fitted with radial tires of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern. Driving with different tires reduces vehicle handling and can lead to a loss of control.**
- **If the spare tire is not the same as the tires that are mounted on the vehicle - for example with winter tires - only use the spare tire for a short period of time and drive with extra care. Refit the normal road wheel as soon as safely possible.**
- **Never drive faster than the maximum speed for which the tires on your vehicle are rated because tires that are driven faster than their rated speed can fail suddenly.**
- **Overloading tires cause heat build-up, sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation and loss of control.**
- **Temperature grades apply to tires that are properly inflated and not over or underinflated.**
- **For technical reasons it is not always possible to use wheels from other vehicles – in some cases not even wheels from the same vehicle model.**
- **If you install wheel trim discs on the vehicle wheels, make sure that the air flow to the brakes is not blocked. Reduced airflow to the brakes can them to overheat, increasing stopping distances and causing a collision.**
- **Run flat tires may only be used on vehicles that were equipped with them at the factory. The vehicle must have a chassis designed for run flat tires and a factory-installed tire pressure monitoring system that indicates a loss of tire pressure. Incorrect use of run flat tires can lead to vehicle damage or accidents. Check with an authorized Audi dealer or tire specialist to see if your vehicle can**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

**be equipped with run flat tires. If run flat tires are used, they must be installed on all four wheels. Mixing tire types is not permitted.**

### Note

- For technical reasons, it is not generally possible to use the wheel rims from other vehicles. This can hold true for wheels of the same vehicle type.
- If the spare tire is different from the tires that you have mounted on your vehicle (for example winter tires or wide profile tires), then use the spare tire for a short period of time only and drive with extra care. Replace the flat tire with the tire matching the others on your vehicle as soon as possible.
- If you should put different wheels and tires on your vehicle (e.g. winter wheels and tires), you must be certain that the wheels and tires are compatible with the tire pressure monitoring system. Otherwise the system will register a malfunction and a fault message will be displayed. For more information, contact your authorized Audi dealer.

### Note

- When installing new tires, be careful not to damage the valves or tire pressure monitoring system sensors.
- Never drive without the valve stem cap. The valves could get damaged.
- If the sensors must be replaced, then the valve must also be replaced at the same time.

### For the sake of the environment

Dispose of old tires in accordance with the local requirements. ■

## Uniform tire quality grading

- Tread wear
- Traction AA A B C
- Temperature A B C

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire side wall between tread shoulder and maximum section width ⇒ *page 359,* fig. 295.

**For example:** Tread wear **200**, Traction **AA**, Temperature **A**.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

### Tread wear

The *tread wear* grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### Traction

The *traction* grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance ⇒ ⚠.

### Temperature

The *temperature* grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure ⇒ ⚠.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure. ■**

## Winter tires

*Winter tires can improve vehicle handling on snow and ice. At temperatures below 45 °F (7 °C) we recommend changing to winter tires.*

In some heavy snow areas, local governments may require true winter or "snow" tires, those with very deeply cut tread. These tires should only be used in pairs and be installed on all four wheels. Make sure you purchase snow tires that are the same size and construction type as the other tires on your vehicle.

Your vehicle is equipped with all-wheel drive, this will improve traction during winter driving, even with the standard tires. However, we strongly recommend that you always equip all four wheels on ▶

your vehicle with correctly fitted winter tires or all-season tires, when winter road conditions are expected. This also improves the vehicle's braking performance and reduces stopping distances.

Summer tires provide less grip on ice and snow.

Winter tires (snow tires) must always be fitted on all four wheels.

Compatible tire pressure monitoring sensors must be installed on all four winter tires for the tire pressure monitoring system to function properly ⇒ *page 361*.

Ask your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop for permitted **winter tire sizes**. Use only radial winter tires.

Winter tires lose their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 0.157 inch (4 mm).

Only drive with winter tires under winter conditions. Summer tires handle better when there is no snow or ice on the roads and the temperature is above 45 °F (7 °C).

If you have a flat tire, see notes on spare wheel ⇒ *page 359*.

Please always remember that winter tires may have a lower speed rating than the tires originally installed on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. Please see ⇒ *page 360,* "Speed rating (letter code)" for a listing of the speed rating letter codes and the maximum speed at which the tires can be driven.

The speed rating letter code (⇒ *page 350*) is on the side wall of the tire ⇒ *page 359*.

**WARNING**

**Winter tires have maximum speed limits that may be lower than your vehicle's maximum speed. Always know the maximum speed before driving off. Never drive faster than the speed permitted for your specific winter tires. This will cause damage to the tires leading to an accident and serious personal injury to you and your passengers.**

**WARNING**

**Driving faster than the maximum speed for which the winter tires on your vehicle were designed can cause tire failure including a blowout and sudden deflation, loss of control, crashes and serious personal injuries. Have worn or damaged tires replaced immediately.**

- **Winter tires have maximum speed rating that may be lower than your vehicle's maximum speed.**
- **Never drive faster than the speed for which the winter or other tires installed on your vehicle are rated.**

**WARNING**

**Always adjust your driving to the road and traffic conditions. Never let the good acceleration of the winter tires and all-wheel drive tempt you into taking extra risks. Always remember:**

- **When braking, an all-wheel drive vehicle handles in the same way as a front drive vehicle.**
- **Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy and slippery roads, even winter tires cannot help under black ice conditions.**

### For the sake of the environment

Use summer tires when weather conditions permit. They are quieter, do not wear as quickly and reduce fuel consumption. ■

## Snow chains

Snow chains may be fitted only to the rear wheels, and only to certain tire sizes. Ask your authorized Audi dealer on which tire sizes snow chains can be used.

The snow chains must have low-profile links and must not be thicker than 0.53 inch (13.5 mm), including the lock. ▶

Remove wheel center covers and trim discs before putting snow chains on your vehicle ⇒ (!). For safety reasons cover caps must then be fitted over the wheel bolts. These are available from authorized Audi dealers.

**WARNING**

**Using the wrong snow chains for your vehicle or installing them incorrectly can increase the risk of loss of control leading to serious personal injury.**

- **Snow chains are available in different sizes. Always make sure to follow the instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer.**
- **When driving with snow chains never drive faster than the speed permitted for your specific snow chains.**
- **Always observe local regulations.**

**Note**

- Remove snow chains before driving on roads not covered with snow to avoid damaging tires and wearing the snow chains down unnecessarily.
- Snow chains, which come into direct contact with the wheel rim, can scratch or damage it. Therefore, make sure that the snow chains are suitably covered. Check the position of the snow chains after driving a few yards and correct if necessary. Follow the instructions from the snow chain manufacturer when doing so.
- If the Adaptive Air Suspension* should malfunction, do not mount or use snow chains because the vehicle will be extremely low. If you do drive with snow chains on while the vehicle is at this level, the snow chains might severely damage the wheelhouse and other parts of the vehicle.

**Tips**

Where snow chains are mandatory on certain roads, this normally also applies to vehicles with All Wheel Drive. ■

## Wheel bolts

*Wheel bolts must always be tightened to the correct torque.*

The design of wheel bolts is matched to the factory installed rims. If different rims are fitted, the correct wheel bolts with the right length and correctly shaped bolt heads must be used. This ensures that wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system functions correctly.

In certain circumstances, you may not use wheel bolts from a different vehicle – even if it is the same model ⇒ *page 403*.

**WARNING**

**Improperly tightened or maintained wheel bolts can become loose causing loss of control, a collision and serious personal injury.**

- **Always keep the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hubs clean so the wheel bolts can turn easily and be properly tightened.**
- **Never grease or oil the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hubs. They can become loose while driving if greased or oiled, even if tightened to the specified torque.**
- **Only use wheel bolts that belong to the rim being installed.**
- **Never use different wheels bolts on your vehicle.**
- **Always maintain the correct tightening torque for the wheel bolts to reduce the risk of a wheel loss. If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too low, they can loosen and come out when the vehicle is moving. If the tightening torque is too high, the wheel bolts and threads can be damaged and the wheel can become loose.**

**Note**

The specified torque for the wheel bolts is 120 ft lb (160 Nm) with a tolerance of ± 7,4 ft lb (± 10 Nm). Torque wheel bolts diagonally. After changing a wheel, the torque must be checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench – preferably by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop. ■

## Low aspect ratio tires

Your Audi is factory-equipped with low aspect ratio tires. These tires have been thoroughly tested and been selected specifically for your model for their superb performance, road feel and handling under a variety of driving conditions. Ask your authorized Audi dealer for more details.

The low aspect ratio of these tires is indicated by a numeral of **55 or less** in the tire's size designation. The numeral represents the ratio of the tire's sidewall height in relation to its tread width expressed in percentage. Conventional tires have a height/width ratio of 60 or more.

**The performance of low-aspect-ratio tires is particularly sensitive to improper inflation pressure. It is therefore important that low aspect ratio tires are inflated to the specified pressure and that the inflation pressure is regularly checked and maintained. Tire pressures should be checked at least once a month and always before a long trip** ⇒ *page 353,* "Checking tire pressure".

### What you can do to avoid tire and rim damage

Low aspect ratio tires can be damaged more easily by impact with potholes, curbs, gullies or ridges on the road, particularly if the tire is underinflated.

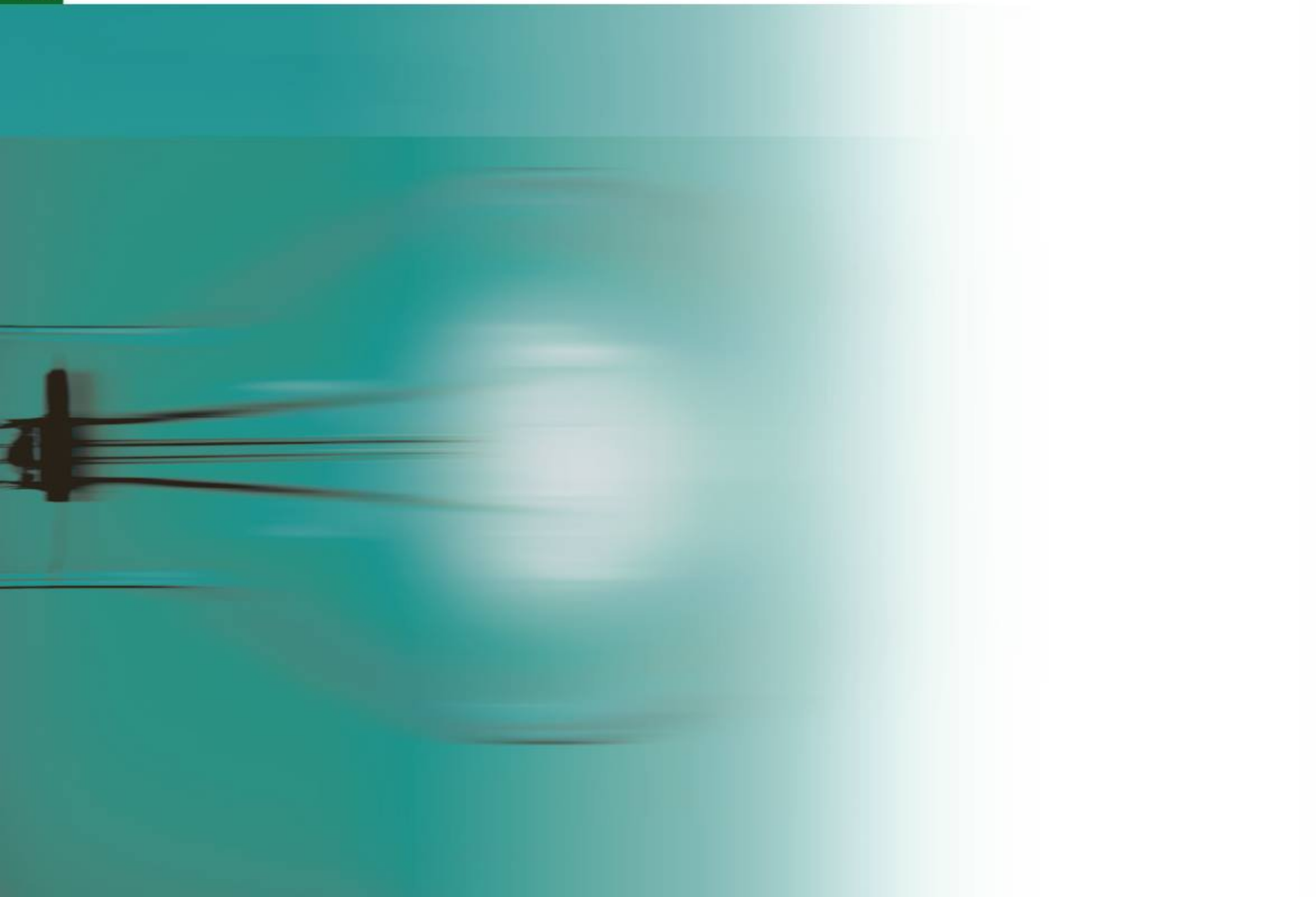
In order to minimize the occurrence of impact damage to the tires of your vehicle, we recommend that you observe the following precautions:

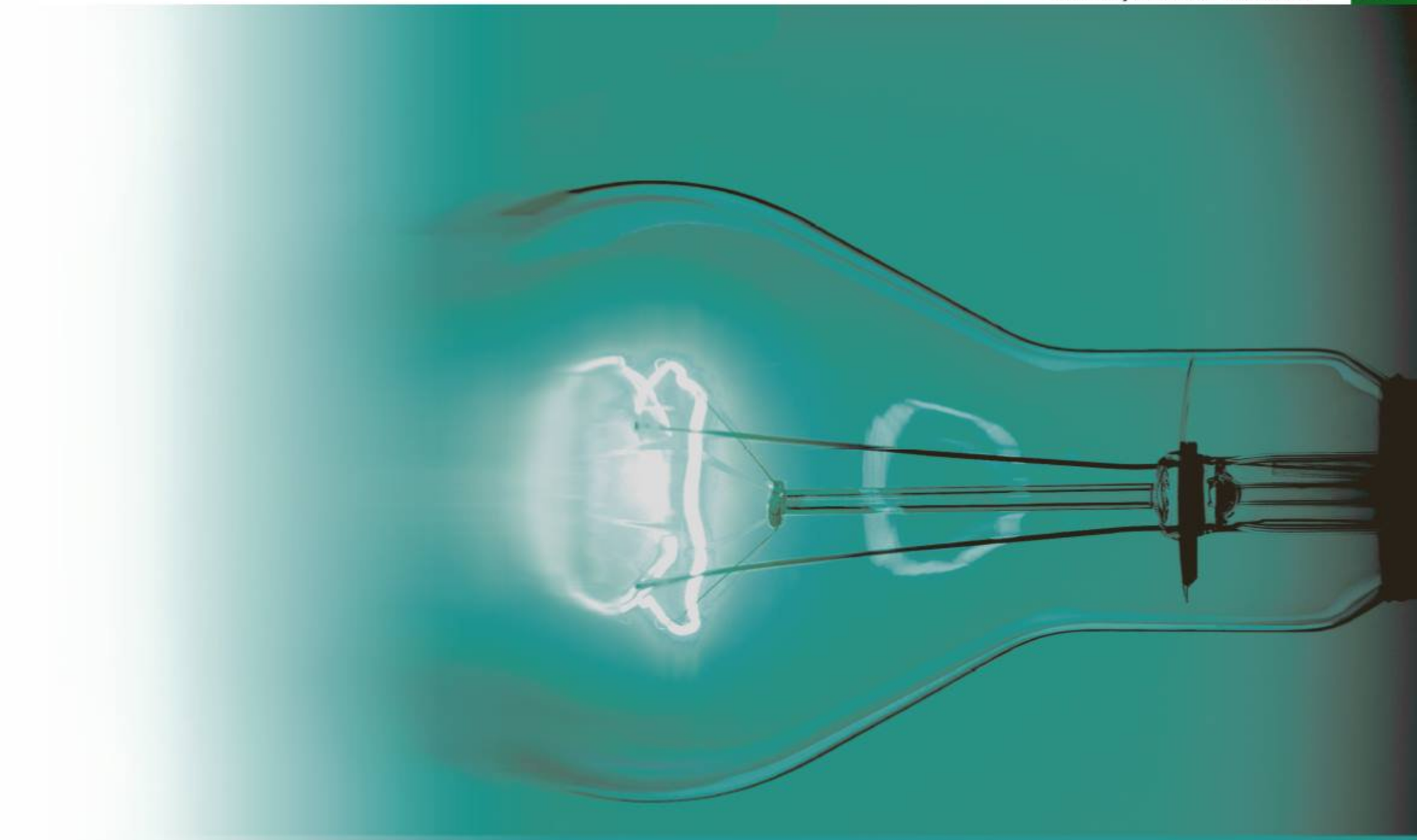
- Always maintain recommended inflation pressures. Check your tire pressure every 2,000 miles (3,000 km) and add air if necessary.
- Drive carefully on roads with potholes, deep gullies or ridges. The impact from driving through or over such obstacles can damage your tires. Impact with a curb may also cause damage to your tires.
- After any impact, immediately inspect your tires or have them inspected by the nearest authorized Audi dealer. Replace a damaged tire as soon as possible.
- Inspect your tires every 2,000 miles (3,000 km) for damage and wear. Damage is not always easy to see. Damage can lead to loss of air and underinflation, which could eventually cause tire failure. If you believe that a tire may have been damaged, replace the tire as soon as possible.
- These tires may wear more quickly than others.
- Please also remember that, while these tires deliver responsive handling, they may ride less comfortably and make more noise than other choices.

### Reduced performance in winter/cold season conditions

All tires are designed for certain purposes. The low aspect ratio, ultra high performance tires originally installed on your vehicle are intended for maximum dry and wet road performance and handling. They are not suitable for cold, snowy or icy weather conditions. If you drive under those circumstances, you should equip your vehicle with all-season or winter tires, which offer better traction under those conditions. We suggest you use the recommended snow or all-season tires specified for your vehicle, or their equivalent.

Refer to ⇒ *page 363* for more detailed information regarding winter tires. ■





# What do I do now?

## Jack, tools and inflatable spare tire

### Jack and folding chocks

*The jack and the folding chocks are located in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover.*

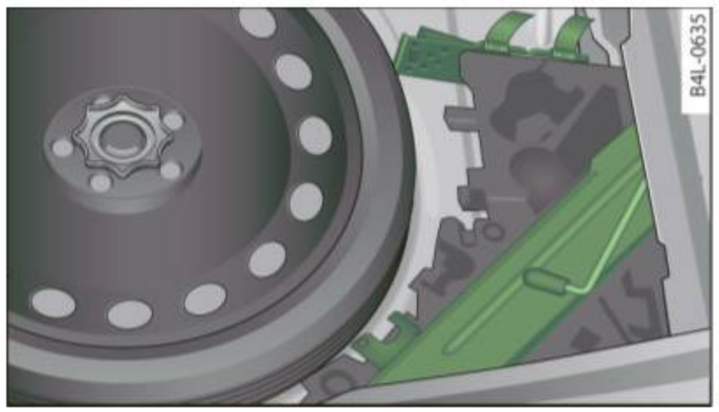



**Fig. 296 Luggage compartment vehicle jack and folding chocks.**

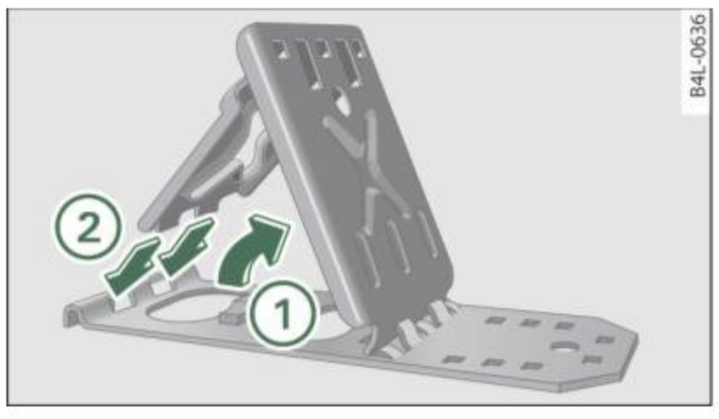



**Fig. 297 Opening folding chocks**

#### Vehicle jack

The jack is located under the tool kit ⇒ fig. 296. Before storing the jack, make sure it is wound back down as far as it will go.

#### Folding chocks

Two unassembled folding chocks are attached to the foam section at the front with the jack ⇒ fig. 296.

Release the two hook-and-loop fasteners, and remove the two chocks. To use the chocks, you first have to raise the support plate ⇒ fig. 297 (1) and then insert the locking plate with the two "tabs" into the elongated holes in the base plate (2) ⇒ ⚠.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The chock cannot fulfil its function and may lose its stability if the "tabs" on the support plate are not inserted correctly into the elongated holes in the base plate. If this happens, the vehicle may start to move while a wheel is being changed.**
- **Never use the folding chocks if they are damaged or if they have not been assembled correctly.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improper use of the vehicle jack can cause serious personal injuries.**

- **Never use the jack supplied with your Audi on another vehicle, particularly on a heavier one. The jack is only suitable for use on the vehicle it came with.**
- **Using a bumper jack to raise the vehicle will damage the bumper system. The jack may slip, causing injury.**
- **Never support your vehicle on cinder blocks, bricks or other objects. These may not be able to support the load and could cause injury when they fail.**
- **Never start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported by the jack.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **If you must work under the vehicle, always use safety stands specifically designed for this purpose.**
- **Always make sure the inflatable spare tire and even a flat tire are secured in place and not loose, otherwise they could fly forward, causing personal injury to passengers in the vehicle in an accident or sudden maneuver. ■**

## Tools

*The tool kit is located in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover.*

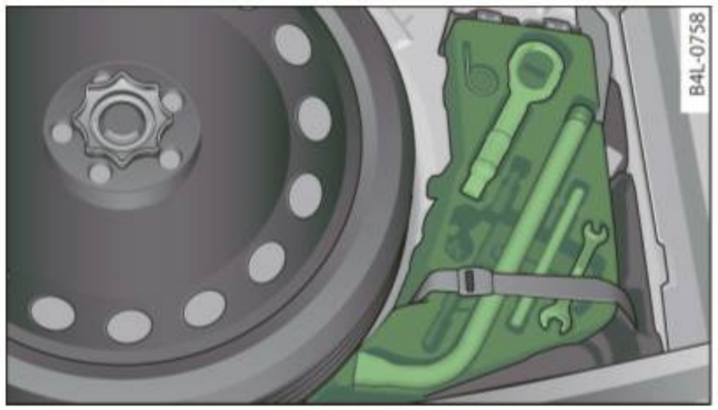



**Fig. 298 Luggage compartment: vehicle tool kit**

The onboard tool kit includes:

- Hook for removing wheel covers*
- Plastic hook to remove wheel bolt covers
- Wheel bolt wrench
- Alignment pin for changing wheels
- Screwdriver with reversible blade
- 10 x 13 open ended wrench
- Towing eye

### Tips

Some of the onboard items listed above are provided on certain models only or are optional extras. ■

Applies to vehicles: with bass box

## Removing bass box

*Before the inflatable spare tire can be taken out, the bass box must be removed.*

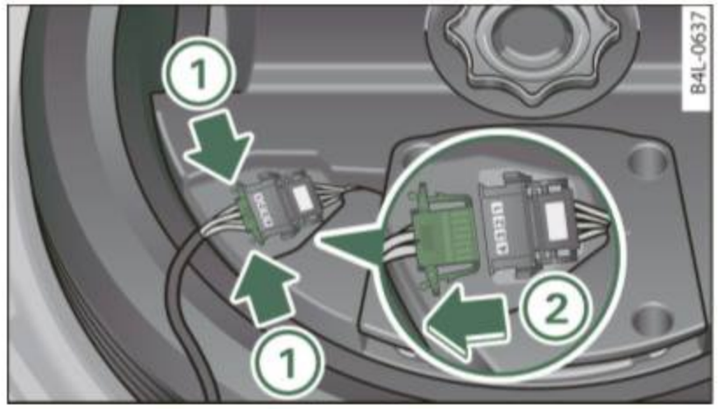



**Fig. 299 Spare wheel well: Bass box**

### Removing bass box

– Squeeze the locking tabs ⇒ fig. 299 (1) of the connector.

– Disconnect the connector (2) and place the lead to one side.

– Turn the large screw counter-clockwise.

– Carefully remove the bass box.

### Installing bass box

– Carefully place the bass box in the wheel. The inscription “FRONT” on the bass box must face forward.

– Reconnect the connector that was removed. ▶

– Secure the bass box with the large screw. ■

## Inflatable spare tire

*The inflatable spare tire expands to its full diameter when it is inflated.*

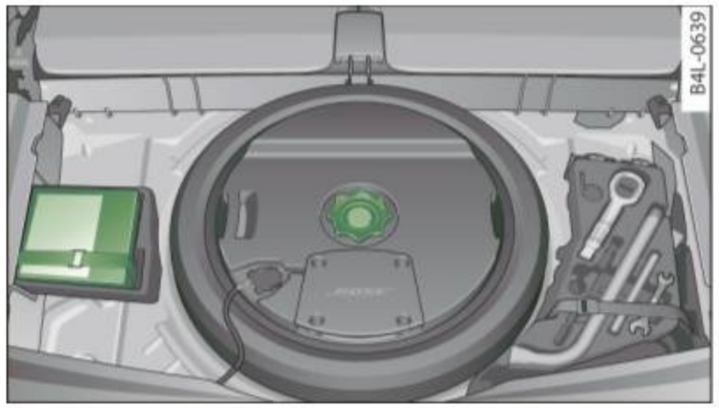



**Fig. 300 Inflatable spare tire with compressor**

### Removing inflatable spare tire

– Lift up the cargo floor using the handle.
– Turn the large screw ⇒ fig. 300 counter-clockwise.
– Remove the bass box as required ⇒ *page 371*.
– Take out the inflatable spare tire.

### Stowing the inflatable spare tire

– Release the air by unscrewing the valve stem.
– Screw the valve stem back in afterwards.
– Wait a few hours before placing the wheel in the spare wheel well ⇒ ⚠.
– Install the bass box as required ⇒ *page 371*.
– Secure the wheel with the large screw.
– Fold the cargo floor back down.

### After using the inflatable spare wheel

The inflatable spare tire can be re-used as long as it is not damaged and is not worn down to the tread wear indicators ⇒ ⚠.

When you let the air out of the inflatable spare tire, it does not assume its folded shape again for several hours. Until then, it cannot be placed back in the spare wheel well and stowed securely.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never use the spare tire if it is damaged or if it is worn down to the tread wear indicators.**
- **If the inflatable spare tire is more than 6 years old, use it only in an emergency and with extreme caution and careful driving.**
- **The inflatable spare tire is intended only for temporary and short-term use. It should be replaced as soon as possible with the normal wheel and tire.**
- **Maximum inflation pressure for the inflatable spare tire is 50 PSI (3.5 bar).**
- **Maximum permissible speed is 50 mph (80 km/h).**
- **Avoid full-throttle acceleration, heavy braking, and fast cornering.**
- **When the air is let out of the inflatable spare wheel, it does not assume its folded shape for several hours. Until then, it cannot be placed back in the spare wheel well and stowed securely.**
- **Never drive with more than one inflatable spare tire.**
- **For technical reasons, the use of tire chains on the inflatable spare tire is not permitted. If it is necessary to drive with tire chains, the inflatable spare wheel must be mounted on the front axle in the event of a flat in a rear tire. The newly available front wheel must then be installed in place of the rear wheel with the flat tire. Installing the tire chain before mounting the wheel and tire is recommended.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Loose items in the passenger compartment can cause serious personal injury during hard braking or in an accident.**
  - **Never store the inflatable spare tire or jack and tools in the passenger compartment.**
  - **Always store all jacking equipment, tools, and the inflatable spare tire in the luggage compartment.**
  - **Tighten the knurled retaining screw for the inflatable spare tire securely.**

**Note**

- The inflatable spare tire has been developed specifically for this vehicle model. It must not be exchanged or used for other vehicle models. Similarly, inflatable tires from other vehicle models must not be used.
- Normal summer or winter tires must not be installed on the inflatable tire rim. ■

# Changing a wheel

## Before changing a wheel

*Observe the following precautions for your own and your passenger's safety when changing a wheel.*

- After you experience a tire failure, pull the car well away from moving traffic and try to reach **level** ground before you stop ⇒ ⚠.
- All passengers should **leave the car** and move to a safe location (for instance, behind the guardrail) ⇒ ⚠.
- Engage the **parking brake** to prevent your vehicle from rolling unintentionally ⇒ ⚠.
- Move **selector lever to position P** ⇒ ⚠.
- If you are towing a trailer: unhitch the trailer from your vehicle.
- Block the diagonally opposite wheel with the folding chocks or other objects.
- Take the **jack** and the **inflatable spare tire** out of the luggage compartment ⇒ *page 370*.

**⚠ WARNING**

**You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow these safety precautions:**

- **If you have a flat tire, move a safe distance off the road. Turn off the engine, turn the emergency flashers on and use other warning devices to alert other motorists.**
- **Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the road and traffic.**
- **To help prevent the vehicle from moving suddenly and possibly slipping off the jack, always fully set the parking brake and block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed with the folding chocks or other objects. When one front wheel is lifted off the ground, placing the Automatic Transmission in "P" (Park) will *not* prevent the vehicle from moving.**
- **Before you change a wheel, be sure the ground is level and firm. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.**
- **After installing the inflatable spare tire, make sure that you replace the flat tire/wheel in its storage area properly and tighten the knurled retaining screw securely.** ■

## Changing a wheel

*When you change a wheel, follow the sequence described below step-by-step and in exactly that order.*

1. Activate the vehicle jack mode (only vehicles with Adaptive Air Suspension) ⇒ *page 210*.
2. Remove the **decorative wheel cover***. For more details see also ⇒ *page 375,* "Decorative wheel covers" or ⇒ *page 375,* "Wheels with wheel bolt caps".
3. Loosen the **wheel bolts** ⇒ *page 376*.
4. Locate the proper mounting point for the jack and align the jack below that point ⇒ *page 376*.
5. **Lift** the car with the jack ⇒ *page 376*.
6. Remove the **wheel with the flat tire** and then install the **inflatable spare tire** ⇒ *page 378*.
7. Tighten all wheel bolts lightly.
8. **Lower** the vehicle with the jack.
9. Use the wheel bolt wrench and **firmly** tighten all wheel bolts ⇒ *page 376*.
10. Replace the decorative **wheel cover***.
11. Deactivate the vehicle jack mode (only vehicles with Adaptive Air Suspension) ⇒ *page 210*.

**WARNING**

**Always read and follow all WARNINGS and information ⇒ ⚠ in "Raising the vehicle" on *page 376* and ⇒ *page 379*. ■**

## After changing a wheel

*A wheel change is not complete without the doing the following.*

- **Store and secure** the wheel you replaced in the spare wheel well.
- Replace the tools and the jack in their proper location.
- As soon as possible, have the **tightening torques** on all wheel bolts checked with a torque wrench. The correct tightening torque is 120 ft lb (160 Nm).
- Have the flat tire **replaced** as soon as possible.

**Tips**

- If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn while changing a tire, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.
- Drive at reduced speed until you have the tightening torques checked. ■

Applies to vehicles: with decorative wheel covers

## Decorative wheel covers

*The decorative wheel covers must be removed first to access the wheel bolts.*

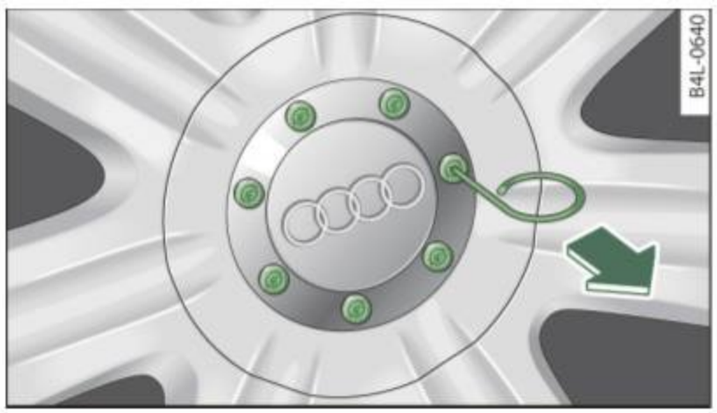



**Fig. 301 Changing a wheel: Removing the wheel cover**

### Removing

– Insert the **hook** provided with the vehicle tool kit in the hole in the hub.

– Pull off the **decorative wheel cover** ⇒ fig. 301. ■

Applies to vehicles: with wheel bolts with caps

## Wheels with wheel bolt caps

*The caps must be removed first from the wheel bolts before the bolts can be unscrewed.*




**Fig. 302 Changing a wheel: removing the wheel bolt caps**

### Removing

– Push the **plastic clip** provided with the vehicle tool kit over the wheel bolt cap until it engages.

– Pull on the **plastic clip** to remove the cap ⇒ fig. 302.

### Refitting

– Place the caps over the wheel bolts and push them back on.

The caps are to protect and keep the wheel bolts clean. ■

## Loosening and tightening the wheel bolts

*The wheel bolts must be loosened before raising the vehicle.*




**Fig. 303 Changing a wheel: loosening the wheel bolts**

### Loosening

– Install the **wheel bolt wrench** over the wheel bolt and push it down as far as it will go.

– Take tight hold of the *end* of the wrench handle and turn the wheel bolts **counter-clockwise** about *one single* turn in the direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 303.

### Tightening

– Install the **wheel bolt wrench** over the wheel bolt and push it down as far as it will go.

– Take tight hold of the *end* of the wrench handle and turn each wheel bolt **clockwise** until it is seated.

**⚠ WARNING**

**• Do not use force or hurry when changing a wheel - you can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack and cause serious personal injuries.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

**• *Do not* loosen the wheel bolts *more than one turn* before you raise the vehicle with the jack. - You risk an injury.**

### Tips

If a wheel bolt is very tight, you may find it easier to loosen by carefully pushing down on the end of the wheel bolt wrench with *one foot only*. As you do so, hold on to the car to keep your balance and take care not to slip. ■

## Raising the vehicle

*The vehicle must be lifted with the jack first before the wheel can be removed.*

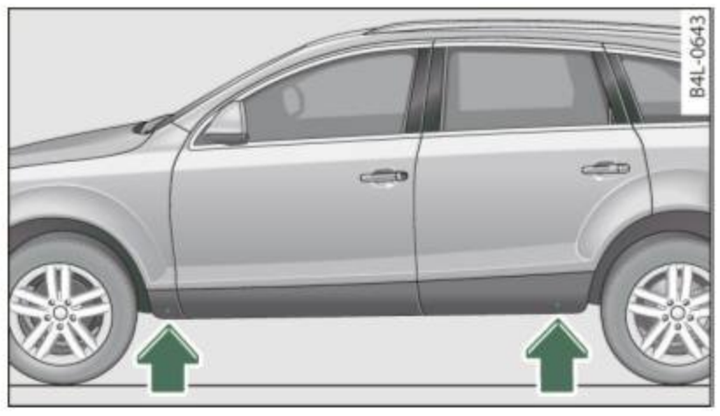



**Fig. 304 Changing a wheel: mounting points for the jack**




Fig. 305 Close-up: proper positioning of jack

– Position the jack below the door sill under the **mounting point** that is closest to the wheel to be changed ⇒ *page 376,* fig. 304.

– Wind the **jack** up under the lifting point until the claw is directly under the vertical rib on the rocker panel ⇒ ⚠.

– Align the jack so the claw (A) grips the rib on the rocker panel and the flexible base plate (B) is flat on the ground ⇒ *page 377,* fig. 305.

– Wind the jack up further until the flat tire comes off the ground ⇒ ⚠.

The jack must be installed **only** at the places indicated ⇒ *page 376,* fig. 304. There is exactly *one* location for each wheel. The jack must not be positioned at any other location ⇒ ⚠.

An **unstable surface** under the jack can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary place a sturdy board or similar support under the jack. On **hard, slippery surfaces** (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping ⇒ ⚠.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow these safety precautions:**
  - **Positioning the jack under the vehicle at any other place than those indicated above may damage the vehicle or may result in personal injuries.**
  - **A soft or unstable surface under the jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.**
  - **On hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping.**
- **To help prevent injury to yourself and your passengers:**
  - **Do not raise the vehicle until you are sure the jack is securely engaged.**
  - **Passengers must not remain in the vehicle when it is jacked up.**
  - **Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the road and traffic.**
  - **Make sure jack position is correct, adjust as necessary and then continue to raise the jack.**

**Tips**

Before changing the wheel, you must activate the jacking mode, so that the automatic controls for the Adaptive Air Suspension* do not make it more difficult to lift the vehicle with the jack ⇒ *page 210.* ■

## Taking the wheel off/installing the inflatable spare tire

*Follow these instructions step-by-step for changing the wheel*




**Fig. 306 Changing a wheel: alignment pin inside the top hole**

After you have loosened all wheel bolts and raised the vehicle off the ground, remove and replace the wheel as follows:

### Removing the wheel

- Remove the topmost wheel bolt completely and set it aside on a *clean* surface.
- Screw the threaded end of the **alignment pin** from the tool kit hand-tight into the empty bolt hole ⇒ *page 378,* fig. 306.
- Then remove the other wheel bolts as described above.
- Take off the wheel leaving the alignment pin in the bolt hole.

### Putting on the inflatable spare tire

- Inflate the inflatable spare tire ⇒ *page 378* and push the wheel over the alignment pin.
- Screw in and tighten all wheel bolts *slightly*.
- Remove the alignment pin and insert and tighten the remaining wheel bolt slightly like the rest.
- Turn the jack handle counter-clockwise to lower the vehicle until the jack is fully released.
- Use the wheel bolt wrench to tighten all wheel bolts firmly ⇒ *page 376*. Tighten them *crosswise*, from one bolt to the (approximately) opposite one, to keep the wheel centered.

### Tips

- When mounting tires with **unidirectional tread design** make sure the tread pattern is pointed the right way ⇒ *page 379*.
- The wheel bolts should be clean and easy to turn. Check for dirt and corrosion on the mating surfaces of both the wheel and the hub. Remove all dirt from these surfaces before remounting the wheel. ■

## Inflating inflatable spare tire

- Remove the compressor from the luggage compartment ⇒ *page 372,* fig. 300.
- Unscrew the valve stem from the spare tire.
- Screw the tire filler hose from the compressor firmly onto the valve of the spare tire.
- Insert the plug from the compressor into a socket of the vehicle ⇒ *page 118*.
- Switch the compressor on. ▶

– Let the compressor run until it has reached 50 PSI (3.5 bar). Switch the compressor off after running for 8 minutes at the most - danger of overheating!

**WARNING**

**The compressor and the tire filler hose can become extremely hot while they are running - danger of burns!**

**Note**

Switch the compressor off after running for 8 minutes at the most - danger of overheating! Allow the compressor to cool down for a few minutes before you use it again.

**Tips**

The compressor must not be connected to the cigarette lighter socket, as this socket does not provide the required power. ■

## Tires with unidirectional tread design

*Tires with unidirectional tread design must be mounted with their tread pattern pointed in the right direction.*

### Using a spare tire with a tread pattern intended for use in a specific direction

When using a spare tire with a tread pattern intended for use in a specific direction, please note the following:

- The direction of rotation is marked by an arrow on the side of the tire.
- If the spare tire has to be installed in the incorrect direction, use the spare tire only temporarily since the tire will not be able to achieve its optimum performance characteristics with regard to aquaplaning, noise and wear.
- We recommend that you pay particular attention to this fact during wet weather and that you adjust your speed to match road conditions.
- Replace the flat tire with a new one and have it installed on your vehicle as soon as possible to restore the handling advantages of a unidirectional tire. ■

## Notes on wheel changing

Please read the information ⇒ *page 359,* "New tires and replacing tires and wheels" if you are going to use a spare tire which is different from the tires on your vehicle.

After you change a tire:

- **Check the tire pressure on the spare immediately after installation.**
- **Have the wheel bolt tightening torque checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop.**
- **With steel and alloy wheel rims, the wheel bolts are correctly tightened at a torque of 120 ft lb (160 Nm).**
- **If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn while changing a tire, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.**
- **Replace the flat tire with a new one and have it installed on your vehicle as soon as possible. Remount the wheel cover.**

**Until then, drive with extra care and at reduced speeds.**

**WARNING**

- **If you are going to equip your vehicle with tires or rims which differ from those which were factory installed, then be sure to read the information ⇒ *page 359,* "New tires and replacing tires and wheels".**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Always make sure the damaged wheel or even a flat tire and the jack and tool kit are properly secured in the luggage compartment and are not loose in the passenger compartment.**
- **In an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, injuring anyone in the vehicle.**
- **Always store damaged wheel, jack and tools securely in the luggage compartment. Otherwise, in an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, causing injury to passengers in the vehicle.**

## Note

Do not use commercially available tire sealants. Otherwise, the electrical components of the tire pressure monitoring system will no longer work properly and the sensor for the tire pressure monitoring system will have to be replaced by a qualified workshop. ■

# Fuses and bulbs

## Fuses

### Replacing a fuse

*A problem in the electrical system may be caused by a blown fuse.*

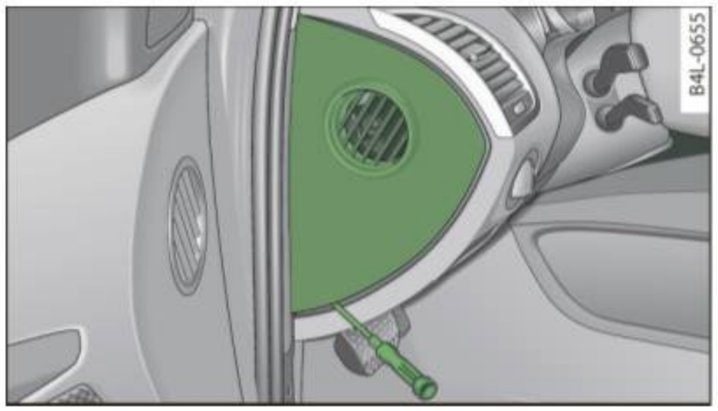



**Fig. 307 Instrument panel left: Face cover**

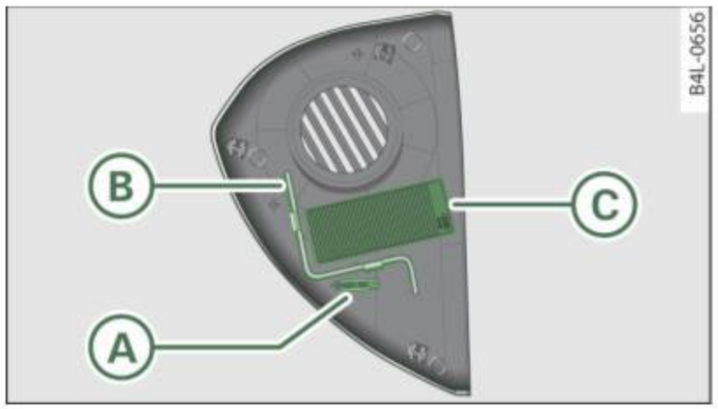



**Fig. 308 Instrument panel left: Content Face cover**

– Locate the fuse which belongs to the component which failed.

– Switch off the ignition and the electrical component affected.

– Carefully pry the face cover off the instrument panel using the ignition key or a screwdriver ⇒ fig. 307.

– Remove the plastic clip (A) from its retainer in the face cover ⇒ fig. 308, place it over the questionable fuse and remove the fuse.

– Replace a blown fuse (recognizable by the melted metal strip inside) with a fuse of the *same* amperage.

The individual circuits are protected by fuses. The fuse panels with the fuses are located on the left and right front faces of the instrument panel behind a cover and in the right storage area in the luggage compartment.

There is a plastic clip (A) in the cover on the left side of the instrument panel, which can be used to remove the fuses. The crank (B) is used for emergency operation of the Panoramic sliding sunroof*. You will also find a label on both covers in the instrument panel with the fuse layout (C) for the corresponding fuse panel.

**WARNING**

**Never replace a fuse with one that has a higher amperage rating.**

- **A fuse with a too high amperage could damage the electrical part and cause a fire.**

**Note**

- On no account should fuses be repaired (e.g. patched up with tin foil or wire) as this may cause serious damage elsewhere in the electrical circuit or cause fire.
- If a fuse blows repeatedly, do not keep replacing it. Instead, have the cause of the repeated short circuit or overload located and fixed. ▶

### Tips

You are well advised to keep a supply of spare fuses in your vehicle. Fuses with the proper ampere ratings are available at your authorized Audi dealer. ■

## Fuse Location, Instrument Panel left




**Fig. 309 Fuse panel layout**

Some of the equipment items listed are optional or only available on certain model configurations.

**Note that the following table is accurate at the time of going to press and is subject to change. In the event of discrepancies, the label on the inside of the cover always takes precedence.**

The power seats are protected by **circuit breakers**, which automatically reset after a few seconds after the overload has been remedied.

| No. | Equipment | Amps |
|---|---|---|
| **Fuse holder (red)** | | |
| 1 | Not used | |
| 2 | Not used | |
| 3 | Not used | |
| 4 | Tire pressure monitoring system | 5 |
| 5 | Not used | |
| 6 | Lumbar support driver's seat | 10 |
| 7 | Window regulators (left side of vehicle) | 35 |
| 8 | Door control module (left side of vehicle) | 15 |
| 9 | Battery energy management | 5 |
| 10 | Electronic ignition lock, power steering column adjustment | 30 |
| 11 | Switch module steering column | 10 |
| 12 | Intelligent power module convenience | 5 |
| **Fuse holder (brown)** | | |
| 1 | Not used | |
| 2 | Not used | |
| 3 | Not used | |
| 4 | Wiper system | 30 |
| 5 | Rain sensor | 5 |
| 6 | Horn | 25 |
| 7 | Intelligent power module driver | 30 |
| 8 | Intelligent power module driver (lights left side of vehicle) | 25 |
| 9 | Intelligent power module driver (lights right side of vehicle) | 25 |
| 10 | Instrument cluster | 10 |
| 11 | Headlight washer system | 30 |
| 12 | Diagnostic connector | 10 |
| **Fuse holder (black)** | | |

| No. | Equipment | Amps |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Headlight electronic system (left side of vehicle) | 10 |
| 2 | Adaptive Cruise Control | 5 |
| 3 | Not used | |
| 4 | Audi lane assist | 10 |
| 5 | Not used | |
| 6 | Terminal 15 (interior) | 5 |
| 7 | Oil level sensor | 5 |
| 8 | Diagnostic connector | 5 |
| 9 | Automatic dipping interior mirror | 5 |
| 10 | HomeLink | 5 |
| 11 | Control module Gateway | 5 |
| 12 | Headlight range adjustment | 5 |

## Fuse Location, Instrument Panel right




**Fig. 310 Fuse panel layout**

Some of the equipment items listed are optional or only available on certain model configurations.

**Note that the following table is accurate at the time of going to press and is subject to change. In the event of discrepancies, the label on the inside of the cover always takes precedence.**

The power seats are protected by **circuit breakers**, which automatically reset after a few seconds after the overload has been remedied.

| No. | Equipment | Amps |
|---|---|---|
| **Fuse holder (black)** | | |
| 1 | Heated rear seats | 20 |
| 2 | Automatic transmission | 5/10 |
| 3 | Heated front seats | 30 |
| 4 | Electronic Stability Program (ESP) | 20 |
| 5 | Door control module (right side of vehicle) | 15 |
| 6 | Rear electrical outlets | 25 |
| 7 | Lumbar support passenger's seat | 10 |
| 8 | Cigarette lighter front | 20 |
| 9 | Front electrical outlets | 25 |
| 10 | A/C controls | 10 |
| 11 | Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP), Brake light switch | 5 |
| 12 | Intelligent power module passenger | 15 |
| **Fuse holder (brown)** | | |
| 1 | Headlight electronic system (right side of vehicle) | 10 |
| 2 | Ride height adjustment | 5 |
| 3 | Telephone package | 5 |
| 4 | Audi side assist | 5 |
| 5 | Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) | 5 |

| No. | Equipment | Amps |
|---|---|---|
| 6 | Automatic transmission | 5/20 |
| 7 | Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) | 5 |
| 8 | Shift gate automatic transmission | 5 |
| 9 | Advanced Parking System | 5 |
| 10 | Airbag | 5 |
| 11 | Heated rear seats | 5 |
| 12 | Air-conditioning | 5 |
| **Fuse holder (red)** | | |
| 1 | Not used | |
| 2 | Not used | |
| 3 | Not used | |
| 4 | MMI Display | 5 |
| 5 | Telephone, telematics, cell phone package | 5 |
| 6 | MMI, antenna amplifier<br>front light unit | 15<br>5/7,5 |
| 7 | Panoramic sliding sunroof segment 1 | 20 |
| 8 | Panoramic sliding sunroof segment 2 | 20 |
| 9 | Panoramic sliding sunroof sunblind | 20 |
| 10 | CD player, DVD drive | 5 |
| 11 | Window regulators (right side of vehicle) | 35 |
| 12 | Rear air-conditioning controls | 10 |

## Fuse Location, Luggage Compartment right

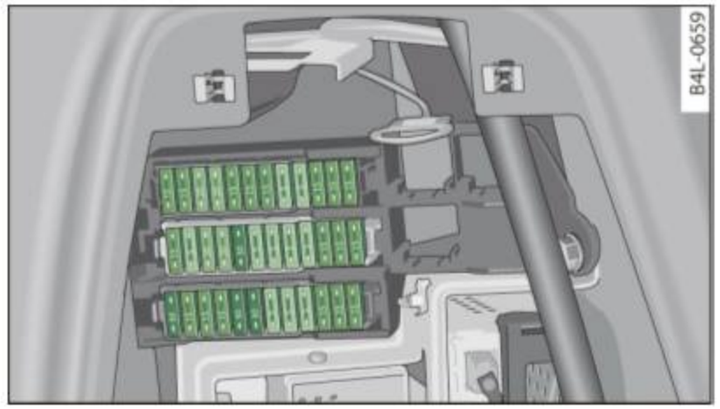



**Fig. 311 Fuse panel layout**

| No. | Equipment | Amps |
|---|---|---|
| **Fuse holder (black)** | | |
| 1 | Not used | |
| 2 | Not used | |
| 3 | Ride height adjustment | 15 |
| 4 | Not used | |
| 5 | Advanced Parking System | 5 |
| 6 | Intelligent power module convenience 2<br>(right side of vehicle) | 15 |
| 7 | Intelligent power module convenience 2<br>(left side of vehicle) | 15 |
| 8 | Not used | |
| 9 | Luggage compartment electrical outlet | 20 |
| 10 | Intelligent power module convenience 1<br>(right side of vehicle) | 20 |
| 11 | Convenience control module | 15 |
| 12 | Intelligent power module convenience 1<br>(left side of vehicle) | 30 |

| No. | Equipment | Amps |
|---|---|---|
| **Fuse holder (brown)** | | |
| 1 | Not used | |
| 2 | Not used | |
| 3 | Not used | |
| 4 | Not used | |
| 5 | K-box (MMI), antenna amplifier | 5 |
| 6 | Not used | |
| 7 | Navigation | 5 |
| 8 | Digital Signal Processing (DSP)/ BOSE amplifier | 30 |
| 9 | Digital Tuner | 5 |
| 10 | Bang & Olufsen amplifier | 30 |
| 11 | Rear view camera | 5 |
| 12 | Not used | |
| **Fuse holder (red)** | | |
| 1 | Not used | |
| 2 | Not used | |
| 3 | Not used | |
| 4 | Not used | |
| 5 | Not used | |
| 6 | Soft close | 20 |
| 7 | Power rear lid | 30 |
| 8 | Power rear lid | 30 |
| 9 | Trailer hitch | 15 |
| 10 | Trailer hitch (left side of vehicle) | 20 |
| 11 | Trailer hitch (right side of vehicle) | 20 |
| 12 | Not used | |

# Bulbs

## Replacing light bulbs

*For your safety, we recommend that you have your authorized Audi dealer replace burned out bulbs for you.*

It is becoming increasingly more and more difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs since in many cases, other parts of the car must first be removed before you are able to get to the bulb. This applies especially to the light bulbs in the front of your car which you can only reach through the engine compartment.

Sheet metal and bulb holders can have sharp edges that can cause serious cuts, and parts must be correctly taken apart and then properly put back together to help prevent breakage of parts and long term damage from water that can enter housings that have not been properly resealed.

For your safety, we recommend that you have your authorized Audi dealer replace any bulbs for you, since your dealer has the proper tools, the correct bulbs and the expertise.

**Gas discharge lamps (Xenon lights)*:**

Due to the high electrical voltage, have the bulbs replaced by a qualified technician. Headlights with Xenon light can be identified by the high voltage sticker.

**WARNING**

**Contact with high-voltage components of the electrical system and improper replacement of gas discharge (Xenon) headlight bulbs can cause serious personal injury and death.**

- **Xenon bulbs are pressurized and can explode when being changed.**
- **Changing Xenon lamps requires the special training, instructions and equipment.**
- **Only an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop should change the bulbs in gas discharge lamps.**

**WARNING**

**There are parts with sharp edges on the openings and on the bulb holders that can cause serious cuts.**

- **If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.**

**Tips**

- If you must replace the light bulbs yourself, always remember that the engine compartment of any vehicle is a hazardous area to work in. Always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ *page 324,* “Engine compartment” ⇒ ⚠.
- It is best to ask your authorized Audi dealer whenever you need to change a bulb. ■

# Emergency situations

## General

**This chapter is intended for trained emergency crews and working personnel who have the necessary tools and equipment to perform these operations. ■**

## Starting by pushing or towing

**Note**

Your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission. Consequently, the engine cannot be started by pushing or towing. ■

## Starting with jumper cables

*If necessary, the engine can be started by connecting it to the battery of another vehicle.*

If the engine should fail to start because of a discharged or weak battery, the battery can be connected to the battery of *another* vehicle, using a **pair of jumper cables** to start the engine.

### Jumper cables

Use *only* jumper cables of sufficiently large**cross section** to carry the starter current safely. Refer to the manufacturer's specifications.

Use only jumper cables with *insulated* terminal clamps which are distinctly marked:

**plus (+) cable** in most cases colored **red**

**minus (-) cable** in most cases colored **black**.

**WARNING**

**Batteries contain electricity, acid, and gas. Any of these can cause very serious or fatal injury. Follow the instructions below for safe handling of your vehicle's battery.**

- **Always shield your eyes and avoid leaning over the battery whenever possible.**
- **A discharged battery can freeze at temperatures just below 32 °F (0 °C). Before connecting a jumper cable, you must thaw the frozen battery completely, otherwise it could explode.**
- **Do not allow battery acid to contact eyes or skin. Flush any contacted area with water immediately.**
- **Improper use of a booster battery to start a vehicle may cause an explosion.**
- **Vehicle batteries generate explosive gases. Keep sparks, flame and lighted cigarettes away from batteries.**
- **Do not try to jump start any vehicle with a low acid level in the battery.**
- **The voltage of the booster battery must also have a 12-Volt rating. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery. Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different "Ah" rating may cause an explosion and personal injury.**
- **Never charge a frozen battery. Gas trapped in the ice may cause an explosion.**
- **Never charge or use a battery that has been frozen. The battery case may have be weakened.**
- **Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different capacity (Ah) rating may cause an explosion and injury. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ *page 324*, "Engine compartment".**

### Note

- Applying a higher voltage booster battery will cause expensive damage to sensitive electronic components, such as control units, relays, radio, etc.
- There must be no electrical contact between the vehicles as otherwise current could already start to flow as soon as the positive (+) terminals are connected.

### Tips

- The discharged battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system. When jump starting or charging the battery, never connect the negative ground cable to the battery negative post because the battery manager system must be able to detect the battery's state of charge. Always connect the negative ground cable to the negative ground post of the battery manager control unit. ■

## Use of jumper cables

*Make sure to connect the jumper cable clamps in exactly the order described below!*

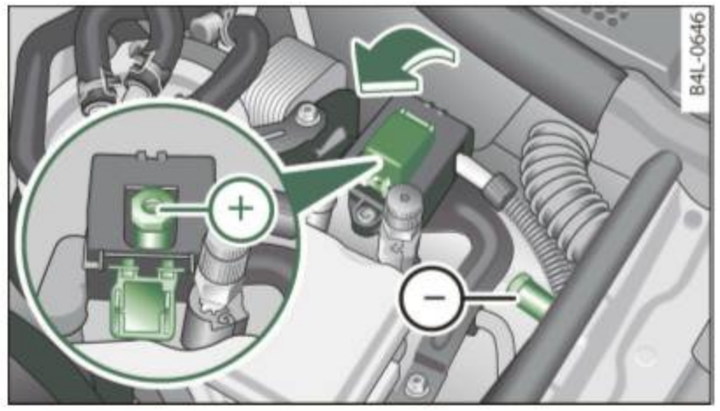



**Fig. 312 Engine compartment: Connectors for jumper cables and charger**

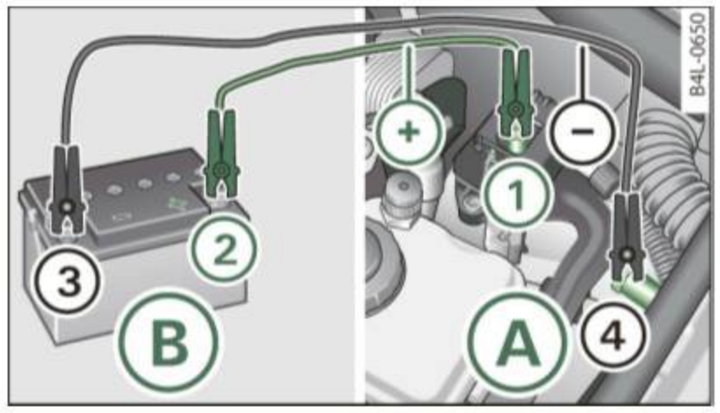



**Fig. 313 Jump starting with the battery of another vehicle: A – discharged vehicle battery, B – booster battery**

The procedure described below for connecting jumper cables is intended to provide a jump start for your vehicle.

### Vehicle with discharged battery:

– Turn off lights and accessories, move lever of automatic transmission to **N** (Neutral) or **P** (Park) and set parking brake. ▶

### Connect POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+) (red)

– Open the red cover on the positive pole ⇒ *page 388,* fig. 312.

1. Connect one end of the positive cable (red) on the **jump start bolt** ⇒ *page 388,* fig. 313 (1) (Bolts under red cover = "positive") of the vehicle to be started (A).
2. Connect the other end to the positive terminal (2) of the booster battery (B).

### Connect NEGATIVE (–) to NEGATIVE (–) (black)

3. Connect one end to the negative terminal (3) of the booster battery (B).
4. Connect the other end of the negative cable (black) to the **jump start bolt** (4) (Bolts with hex head = "negative") of the vehicle to be started (A).

### Starting the engine

– Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery. Run the engine at a moderate speed.

– Start engine with discharged vehicle battery in the usual manner.

– If the engine fails to start: do not keep the starter cranking for longer than 10 seconds. Wait for about 30 seconds and then try again.

– With engine running, remove jumper cables from both vehicles in the exact *reverse* order.

– Close the red cover on the positive pole.

The battery is vented to the outside to prevent gases from entering the vehicle interior. Make sure that the jumper clamps are well connected with their *metal parts in full contact* with the battery terminals.

**WARNING**

**To avoid serious personal injury and damage to the vehicle, heed all warnings and instructions of the jumper cable manufacturer. If in doubt, call for road service.**

- **Jumper cables must be long enough so that the vehicles do not touch.**
- **When connecting jumper cables, make sure that they cannot get caught in any moving parts in the engine compartment.**
- **Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ *page 324,* "Engine compartment".**

**Note**

Improper hook-up of jumper cables can ruin the generator.

- Always connect POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+), and NEGATIVE (–) to NEGATIVE (–) ground post of the battery manager control unit.
- Check that all screw plugs on the battery cells are screwed in firmly. If not, tighten plugs prior to connecting clamp on negative battery terminal.
- Please note that the procedure for connecting a jumper cable as described above applies specifically to the case of your vehicle being jump started. When you are giving a jump start to another vehicle, do *not* connect the negative (–) cable to the negative (–) terminal on the discharged battery (4) ⇒ *page 388,* fig. 313. Instead, securely connect the negative (–) cable to either a solid metal component that is firmly bolted to the engine block or to the engine block itself. If the battery that is being charged does not vent to the outside, escaping battery gas could ignite and explode! ■

# Emergency towing with commercial tow truck

## General hints

*Your Audi requires special handling for towing.*

The following information is to be used by commercial tow truck operators who know how to operate their equipment safely.

- **Never tow your Audi, towing will cause damage to the engine and transmission.**
- **Never wrap the safety chains or winch cables around the brake lines.**
- **To prevent unnecessary damage, your Audi must be transported with a flat bed truck.**
- **To load the vehicle on to the flat bed, use the towing loop found in the vehicle tools and attach to the front or rear anchorage** ⇒ *page 390* and ⇒ *page 391*.

**WARNING**

**A vehicle being towed is not safe for passengers. Never allow anyone to ride in a vehicle being towed, for any reason.** ■

## Front towing loop

*Do not install the front towing loop until it is needed.*




**Fig. 314 Right front bumper: Removing the air intake grill**




**Fig. 315 Right front bumper without grill: Screwing in towing loop**

At the right front under the bumper, there is a threaded opening with a **left-hand thread** into which the towing loop is screwed. The threaded hole is concealed behind an air intake grill.

– Press the upper tab down and the lower tab up ⇒ fig. 314 (1).
– Pull the grill forward and out (2).
– Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit. ▶

– Screw the towing loop tightly into the threaded hole as far as it will go ⇒ *page 390,* fig. 315.

When it is no longer needed, unscrew the towing loop and put it back into the vehicle toolkit. Be sure to have the towing loop stored in the vehicle at all times.

When installing the grill for the air duct, be sure that the tabs on the grill are first inserted into their guides on the vehicle above the foglamp. Then position the opposite side of the grill ⇒ *page 390,* fig. 314 (2) and push it firmly into its guide.

**WARNING**

**If the towing loop is not screwed in as far as it will go, the thread can pull out when the vehicle is towed - potential risk of an accident. ■**

## Rear towing loop

*Do not install the rear towing loop until it is needed.*




**Fig. 316 Rear bumper: Cover**




**Fig. 317 Rear bumper: Screwing in towing loop**

At the right rear behind a cover in the bumper, there is a threaded opening with **a left-hand thread** into which the towing loop is screwed.

– To release the cover from the bumper, press it in by applying short, sharp pressure to the outer part ⇒ fig. 316.
– Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit.
– Screw the towing loop tightly into the threaded hole as far as it will go ⇒ fig. 317.

Unscrew the towing loop again after use and install the cover in the bumper. Return the towing loop to the toolkit. Be sure to have the towing loop stored in the vehicle at all times.

**WARNING**

**If the towing loop is not screwed in as far as it will go, the thread can pull out when the vehicle is towed - potential risk of an accident. ■**

## Loading the vehicle onto a flat bed truck

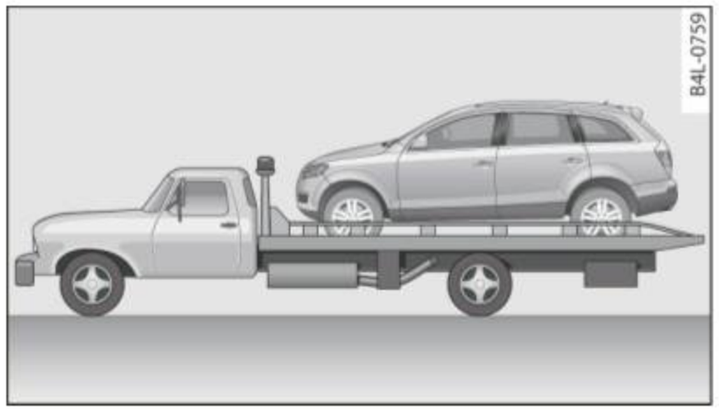



**Fig. 318 Vehicle on flat bed truck**

### Front hook up

– Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.

– Attach the winch hook to the front towline eye previously installed.

### Rear hook up

– Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.

– Attach the winch hook to the rear towline eye previously installed.

### Tips

Check carefully to make sure the hook-up is secure before moving the car up the flatbed truck ramp. ■

# Lifting vehicle

## Lifting with workshop hoist and with floor jack

*The vehicle may only be lifted at the lifting points illustrated.*

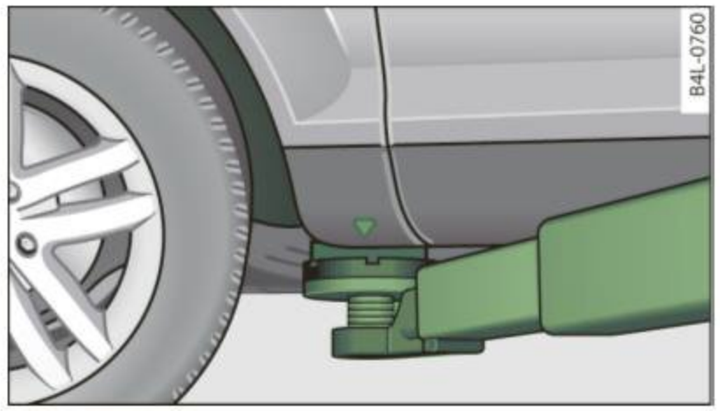



**Fig. 319 Front lifting point**

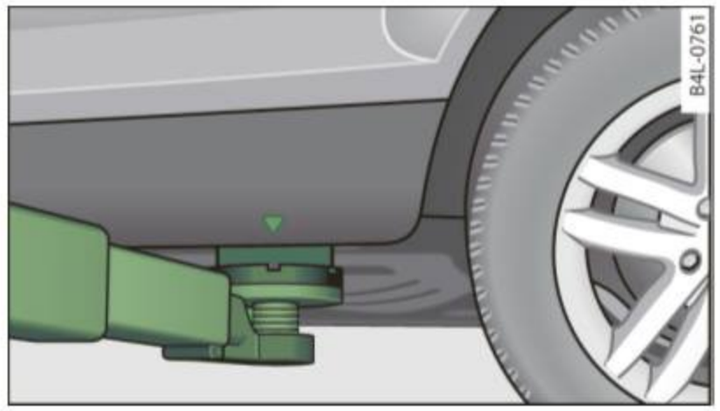



**Fig. 320 Rear lifting point**

– Read and heed WARNING ⇒ ⚠.

– Locate lifting points ⇒ fig. 319 ⇒ fig. 320.

– Adjust lifting arms of workshop hoist or floor jack to match vehicle lifting points. ▶

– Insert a rubber pad between the floor jack/workshop hoist and the lifting points.

**If you must lift your vehicle with a floor jack to work underneath, be sure the vehicle is safely supported on stands intended for this purpose.**

### Front lifting point

The lifting point is located on the floor pan reinforcement about at the same level as the jack mounting point ⇒ *page 392,* fig. 319. **Do not lift the vehicle at the vertical sill reinforcement.**

### Rear lifting point

The lifting point is located on the vertical reinforcement of the lower sill for the onboard jack ⇒ *page 392,* fig. 320.

### Lifting with vehicle jack

Refer to ⇒ *page 376.*

**WARNING**

- **To reduce the risk of serious injury and vehicle damage.**
  - **Always lift the vehicle only at the special workshop hoist and floor jack lift points illustrated ⇒ *page 392,* fig. 319 and ⇒ *page 392,* fig. 320.**
  - **Failure to lift the vehicle at these points could cause the vehicle to tilt or fall from a lift if there is a change in vehicle weight distribution and balance. This might happen, for example, when heavy components such as the engine block or transmission are removed.**
- **When removing heavy components like these, anchor vehicle to hoist or add corresponding weights to maintain the center of gravity. Otherwise, the vehicle might tilt or slip off the hoist, causing serious personal injury.**

**Note**

- Be aware of the following points before lifting the vehicle:
  - **The vehicle should never be lifted or jacked up from underneath the engine oil pan, the transmission housing, the front or rear axle or the body side members. This could lead to serious damage.**
  - **To avoid damage to the underbody or chassis frame, a rubber pad must be inserted between the floor jack and the lift points.**
  - **Before driving over a workshop hoist, check that the vehicle weight does not exceed the permissible lifting capacity of the hoist.**
  - **Before driving over a workshop hoist, ensure that there is sufficient clearance between the hoist and low parts of the vehicle.** ■





# General information

## Explanation of technical data

*Some of the technical data listed in this manual requires further explanation.*

The technical data for your vehicle is listed in the charts starting on ⇒ *page 399*. This section provides general information, notes and restrictions which apply to this data. ■

## Vehicle identification

*The key data is given on the vehicle identification number (VIN) plate and the vehicle data sticker.*

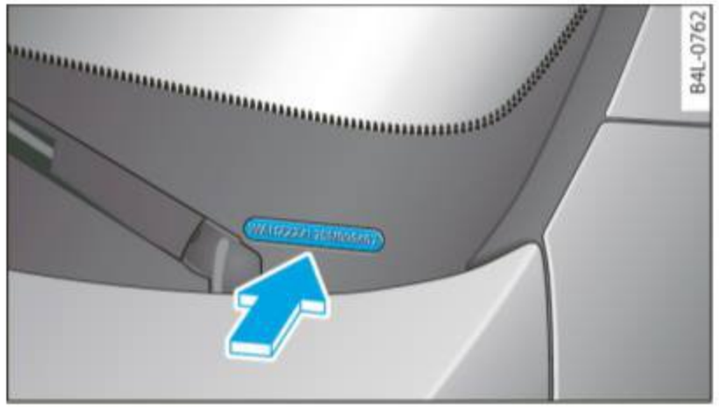



**Fig. 321 Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) plate: location on driver's side dash panel**

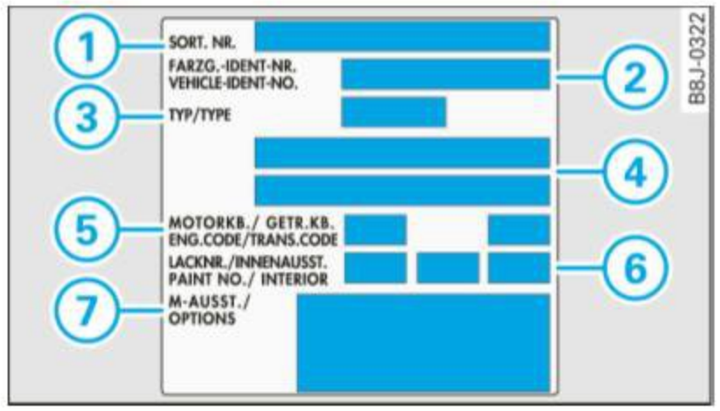



**Fig. 322 The vehicle identification label – inside the luggage compartment**

### The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

is located on the driver's side so that it is visible from the outside through the windshield ⇒ fig. 321.

### The vehicle identification label

is located in the luggage compartment near the battery.

The label ⇒ fig. 322 shows the following vehicle data:

1. Production control No.
2. Vehicle identification No.
3. Type code number
4. Type designation/engine output in Kilowatts
5. Engine and transmission code letter
6. Paint No./Interior
7. Optional equipment No.'s

Vehicle data 2 to 7 are also found in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

### The safety compliance sticker

is your assurance that your new vehicle complies with all applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards which were in effect at the time the vehicle was manufactured. You can find this sticker on the left door jamb. It shows the month and year of production and the ▶

vehicle identification number of your vehicle (perforation) as well as the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR).

**The high voltage warning label**

is located on the lock carrier.

**The spark ignition system complies with the Canadian standard ICES-002.** ■

## Displaying Vehicle Identification Number in the MMI

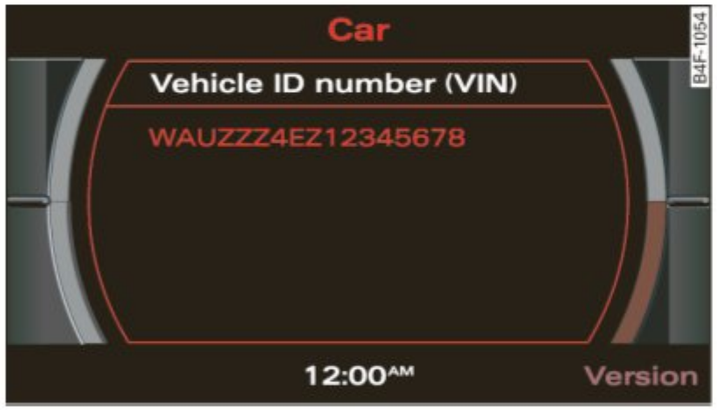



**Fig. 323 MMI display: Vehicle ID number (VIN)**

You can also display the Vehicle Identification Number of your vehicle in the MMI.

– Press the CAR function button.

– Select **Vehicle ID number (VIN)**. The **Vehicle ID number (VIN)** menu appears ⇒ fig. 323. ■

## Weights

### Gross Vehicle Weight Rating

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for front and rear are listed on a sticker on the left door jamb.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating includes the weight of the basic vehicle plus full fuel tank, oil and coolant, plus maximum load, which includes passenger weight (150 lbs/68 kg per designated seating position) and luggage weight ⇒ ⚠.

### Gross Axle Weight Rating

The Gross Axle Weight Rating is the maximum load that can be applied at each axle of the vehicle ⇒ ⚠.

### Vehicle capacity weight

The vehicle capacity weight (max. load) is listed either on the driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap.

### Roof weight

The maximum permissible roof weight is **220 lb (100 kg)**. The roof weight is made up of the weight of the roof rack system and the weight of the object being transported ⇒ *page 113,* “Loading the roof rack”.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating for your Audi Q7 vehicle, found on the safety compliance label on the driver's side B-pillar, must never be exceeded under any circumstances. Exceeding the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating of your vehicle is likely to damage your vehicle, and such damage will not be covered by your Limited New Vehicle Warranty. Exceeding the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating will also change the performance and handling characteristics of your vehicle, which could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating for your Audi Q7 would be exceeded if your vehicle is simultaneously equipped with Panoramic sliding sunroof; third-row seating; trailer towing equipment (factory or dealer-installed), and running boards (dealer-installed). UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES MAY ALL SUCH ITEMS BE INSTALLED ON THE SAME VEHICLE.**
- **The actual Gross Axle Weight Rating at the front and rear axles should not exceed the permissible weights, and their combination must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.**
- **Exceeding permissible weight ratings can result in vehicle damage, accidents and personal injury.**

**Note**

- The vehicle capacity weight figures apply when the load is distributed evenly in the vehicle (passengers and luggage). When transporting a heavy load in the luggage compartment, carry the load as near to the rear axle as possible so that the vehicle's handling is not impaired.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle loads or the maximum gross vehicle weight. Always remember that the vehicle's handling will be affected by the extra load. Therefore, adjust your speed accordingly.
- Always observe local regulations. ■

## Dimensions

The specifications refer to the basic model. Differences may occur depending on the model type and options ordered, for example, tire sizes.

**Note**

When driving up steep ramps, on rough roads, over curbs, etc. it is important to remember that some parts of your vehicle, such as spoilers or exhaust system components, may be close to the ground. Be careful not to damage them. ■

# Data

## 280 hp, 6-cylinder engine, with all wheel drive

### Engine data

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Maximum output SAE net | hp @ rpm | 280 @ 6200 |
| Maximum torque SAE net | lb-ft @ rpm | 266 @ 2750 |
| No. of cylinders | | 6 cylinder |
| Displacement | CID ($cm^3$) | 219.5 (3597) |
| Stroke | in (mm) | 3.65 (96.4) |
| Bore | in (mm) | 3.50 (89) |
| Compression ratio | | 12.0 : 1 |
| Fuel | **Premium unleaded (91 AKI)** Recommended for maximum engine performance. Further details ⇒ *page 325,* "Gasoline" | |

### Dimensions (approx.)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Length (with licence plate bracket) | in (mm) | 200.2 (5086) |
| Width (with outside mirrors folded) | in (mm) | 78.1 (1983) |
| Height (unloaded) | in (mm) | 68.4 (1737) |
| Turning circle diameter (curb to curb) | ft (m) | 36.4 (12) |

### Capacities (approx.)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Fuel tank** | | |
| - Total capacity | gal (liters) | 26.4 (100) |
| - Reserve (of total capacity) | gal (liters) | 2.6-3.2 (10-12) |
| **Windshield and headlight* washer fluid container** | quarts (liters) | 4.8 (4.5) |
| **Engine oil** with filter change | quarts (liters) | 7.3 (6.9) |

## 350 hp, 8-cylinder engine, with all wheel drive

### Engine data

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Maximum output SAE net | hp @ rpm | 350 @ 6800 |
| Maximum torque SAE net | lb-ft @ rpm | 325 @ 3500 |
| No. of cylinders | | 8 cylinder |
| Displacement | CID ($cm^3$) | 254 (4163) |
| Stroke | in (mm) | 3.65 (92.8) |
| Bore | in (mm) | 3.33 (84.5) |
| Compression ratio | | 12.5 : 1 |
| Fuel | **Premium unleaded (91 AKI)** Recommended for maximum engine performance. Further details ⇒ *page 325,* "Gasoline" | |

### Dimensions (approx.)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Length (with licence plate bracket) | in (mm) | 200.2 (5086) |
| Width (with outside mirrors folded) | in (mm) | 78.1 (1983) |
| Height (unloaded) | in (mm) | 68.4 (1737) |
| Turning circle diameter (curb to curb) | ft (m) | 36.4 (12) |

### Capacities (approx.)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Fuel tank** | | |
| - Total capacity | gal (liters) | 26.4 (100) |
| - Reserve (of total capacity) | gal (liters) | 2.6-3.2 (10-12) |
| **Windshield and headlight* washer fluid container** | quarts (liters) | 4.8 (4.5) |
| **Engine oil** with filter change | quarts (liters) | 9.6 (9.1) |

# Consumer Information

## Warranty coverages

**Your Audi is covered by the following warranties:**

- *New Vehicle Limited Warranty*
- *Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation*
- *Emissions Control System Warranty*
- *Emissions Performance Warranty*
- *California Emissions Control Warranty (USA vehicles only)*
- *California Emissions Performance Warranty (USA vehicles only)*

Detailed information regarding your warranties can be found in your **Warranty & Maintenance booklet**. ■

## Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require that automobiles meet specific emission regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada differ from vehicles sold in other countries.

If you plan to take your vehicle outside the continental limits of the United States or Canada, there is the possibility that

- unleaded fuels for vehicles with catalytic converter may not be available;
- fuel may have a considerably lower octane rating. Improper fuel may cause engine damage;
- service may be inadequate due to lack of proper service facilities, tools or testing equipment;
- replacement parts may not be readily available.
- Navigation systems for vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada will not necessarily work in Europe, and may not work in other countries outside North America.

**Note**

Audi cannot be responsible for mechanical damage that could result from inadequate fuel, service or parts availability. ■

## Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature

Audi Official Factory Service Manuals are published as soon as possible after model introduction. Service manuals are available from:

**Audi Technical Literature Ordering Center**

Call toll-free:

Tel.: 1 (800) 544–8021

(from 8:00 AM to 8:00 PM, EST, Monday through Friday)

or access their website **www.audi.ddsltd.com** on the Internet to order repair manuals and other Audi literature. ■

# Maintenance

## General

Your vehicle has been designed to help keep maintenance requirements to a minimum. However, a certain amount of regular maintenance is still necessary to assure your vehicle's safety, economy and ▶

reliability. For detailed vehicle maintenance consult your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

**Under difficult operating conditions,** for example at extremely low outside temperatures, in very dusty regions, when towing a trailer very frequently, etc., some service work should be performed between the intervals specified. This applies particularly to:

- oil changes, and
- cleaning or replacing the air filter.

### For the sake of the environment

By regularly maintaining your vehicle, you help make sure that emission standards are maintained, thus minimizing adverse effects on the environment. ■

## Important considerations for you and your vehicle

The increasing use of electronics, sophisticated fuel injection and emission control systems, and the generally increasing technical complexity of today's automobiles, have steadily reduced the scope of maintenance and repairs which can be carried out by vehicle owners. **Also, safety and environmental** concerns place very strict limits on the nature of repairs and adjustments to engine and transmission parts which an owner can perform.

Maintenance, adjustments and repairs usually require special tools, testing devices and other equipment available to specially trained workshop personnel in order to assure proper performance, reliability and safety of the vehicle and its many systems.

Improper maintenance, adjustments and repairs can impair the operation and reliability of your vehicle and even void your vehicle warranty. Therefore, proof of servicing in accordance with the maintenance schedule may be a condition for upholding a possible warranty claim made within the warranty period.

Above all, operational safety can be adversely affected, creating unnecessary risks for you and your passengers.

If in doubt about any servicing, have it done by your authorized Audi dealer or any other properly equipped and qualified workshop. We strongly urge you to give your authorized Audi dealer the opportunity to perform all scheduled maintenance and necessary repairs. Your dealer has the facilities, original parts and trained specialists to keep your vehicle running properly.

### Performing limited maintenance yourself

The following pages describe a limited number of procedures which can be performed on your vehicle with ordinary tools, should the need arise and trained personnel be unavailable. Before performing any of these procedures, always thoroughly read all of the applicable text and carefully follow the instructions given. Always rigorously observe the **WARNINGS** provided.

**Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ and ⇒ ⚠** in "Working in the engine compartment" on *page 331*.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Serious personal injury may occur as a result of improperly performed maintenance, adjustments or repairs.**
- **Always be extremely careful when working on the vehicle. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices and general common sense. Never risk personal injury.**
- **Do not attempt any of the maintenance, checks or repairs described on the following pages if you are not fully familiar with these or other procedures with respect to the vehicle, or are uncertain how to proceed.**
- **Do not do any work without the proper tools and equipment. Have the necessary work done by your authorized Audi dealer or another properly equipped and qualified workshop.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. It is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly - even when the engine is off and the ignition key has been removed. The radiator fan switches on automatically when the coolant reaches a certain temperature and will continue to run until the coolant temperature drops.**
- **Always remove the ignition key before anyone gets under the vehicle.**
- **Always support your vehicle with safety stands if it is necessary to work underneath the vehicle. The jack supplied with the vehicle is not adequate for this purpose and could collapse causing serious personal injury.**
- **If you must work underneath the vehicle with the wheels on the ground, always make sure the vehicle is on level ground, that the wheels are always securely blocked and that the engine cannot be started.**
- **Always make sure the transmission selector lever (automatic transmission) is in "P" (Park position) and the park brake is firmly applied.**

### For the sake of the environment

- Changing the engine settings will adversely affect emission levels. This is detrimental to the environment and increases fuel consumption.
- Always observe environmental regulations when disposing of old engine oil, used brake fluid, dirty engine coolant, spent batteries or worn out tires.
- Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you. ■

# Additional accessories, modifications and parts replacement

## Additional accessories and parts replacement

*Always consult an authorized Audi dealer before purchasing accessories.*

Your vehicle incorporates the latest safety design features ensuring a high standard of active and passive safety.

This safety could be compromised by non-approved changes to the vehicle. For this reason, if parts have to be replaced, please observe the following points when installing additional accessories:

Approved Audi accessories and genuine Audi parts are available from authorized Audi dealers.

These dealers also have the necessary facilities, tools and trained specialists to install the parts and accessories properly.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Using the wrong spare parts or using non-approved accessories can cause serious personal injury.**

- **Use only accessories expressly approved by Audi and genuine Audi spare parts**
- **These parts and accessories have been specially designed to be used on your vehicle.**
- **Never install accessories such as telephone cradles or beverage holders on airbag covers or within the airbag deploy-** ▶

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

**ment zones. Doing so will increase the risk of injury if airbags are triggered in an accident!**

- **Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ *page 324*.**

**Note**

- If items other than genuine Audi spare parts, add-on equipment and accessory items are used or if repair work is not performed according to specified methods, this can result in severe damage to your vehicle's engine and body (such as corrosion) and adversely affect your vehicle's warranty.
- If emergency repairs must be performed elsewhere, have the vehicle examined by an authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.
- The manufacturer cannot be held liable for damage which occurs due to failure to comply with these stipulations. ■

## Technical Modifications

*Our guidelines must be complied with when technical modifications are made.*

Always consult an authorized Audi dealer **before** starting work on any modifications.

This will help ensure that vehicle function, performance and safety are not impaired ⇒ ⚠.

Attempting to work on electronic components and the software used with them can cause malfunctions. Because of the way electronic components are interconnected with each other, such malfunctions can also have an adverse affect on other systems that are not directly involved. This means that you risk both a substantial reduction in the operational safety of your vehicle and an increased wear of vehicle parts ⇒ ⚠.

Authorized Audi dealers will perform this work in a professional and competent manner or, in special cases, refer you to a professional company that specializes in such modifications.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improper repairs and modifications can change the way vehicle systems work and cause serious personal injury.**

**Note**

If emergency repairs must be performed elsewhere, have the vehicle examined by an authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible. ■

## Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems

*Radio Frequency Devices and Radiocommunication Equipment User Manual Notice.*

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment.

### Devices

The following devices each comply with FCC Part 15.19, FCC Part 15.21 and RSS-Gen Issue 1:

- Adaptive Cruise Control
- Convenience key
- Audi side assist
- Cell phone package
- Electronic immobilizer
- HomeLink® universal remote control

- Remote control key
- Tire pressure monitoring system

### FCC Part 15.19

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### FCC Part 15.21

CAUTION:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

### RSS-Gen Issue 1

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) this device may not cause interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device. ■





# A


Accessories . . . . . 403
Adaptive Air Suspension . . . . . 206
- Cargo mode in the MMI . . . . . 212
- Controls . . . . . 207
- Description . . . . . 206
- High level . . . . . 207
- Highway level . . . . . 207
- Instrument cluster display . . . . . 209
- Jacking mode when changing a flat tire . 210
- Low level . . . . . 207
- Normal level . . . . . 207
- Segment display . . . . . 208
- Setting the driving modes . . . . . 208
- Trailer towing mode . . . . . 211
- Using switch for cargo mode . . . . . 212
- Warning/indicator lights . . . . . 21

Adaptive Cruise Control . . . . . 152
- Changing speed . . . . . 156
- Driver information . . . . . 160
- Driver intervention prompt . . . . . 164
- Driving in traffic . . . . . 154
- Driving program . . . . . 165
- Error messages . . . . . 163
- Open road . . . . . 154
- Override . . . . . 154
- Request for driver to assume control 154
- Save speed . . . . . 156
- Setting distance . . . . . 158
- Setting time interval . . . . . 158
- Settings . . . . . 165
- Special driving situations . . . . . 165
- Status messages . . . . . 163
- Switching on and off . . . . . 155
- System limits . . . . . 165
- Temporarily turning off . . . . . 157
- warning/indicator lights . . . . . 161

Adaptive Light . . . . . 76
- defective . . . . . 37

Adding
- Engine coolant . . . . . 339
- Engine oil . . . . . 336
- Windshield washer fluid . . . . . 346

Additional accessories . . . . . 403
Additives
- Engine oil . . . . . 336

Adjusting
- Instrument cluster illumination . . . . . 17
- Steering column electrically . . . . . 141
- Steering column manually . . . . . 140

Adjusting front seats . . . . . 92
Advanced Parking System with rear view camera
- Adjusting the chimes - option 1 . . . . 201
- Adjusting the chimes - option 2 . . . . 202
- front and back with visual display and rear-view camera . . . . . 191
- General information . . . . . 191
- Notes on distance information . . . . . 200
- Parking next to obstacles . . . . . 199
- Rear-view camera - parking mode 1 . 196
- Rear-view camera - parking mode 2 . 198
- Rear-view camera (Rear View) . . . . . 194
- Rear-view camera coverage area . . . . 195
- Rear-view camera tips . . . . . 204
- Special parking situations . . . . . 199
- Switching the rear-view camera on and off . . . . . 203
- switching the visual display on and off . . 203
- System error message . . . . . 204
- Towing hitch . . . . . 201

Air conditioning
- *See* Climate controls . . . . . 123

Air distribution
- Climate controls . . . . . 127
- Four-zone automatic comfort air conditioning . . . . . 133

Air pollutants filter
- Climate controls . . . . . 123

Airbag
- Warning/indicator lights . . . . . 19

Airbag system . . . . . 241, 258
- Advanced Airbag System . . . . . 245
- Advanced Airbag System components . . . 248
- Care . . . . . 255
- Child restraints . . . . . 265
- Children . . . . . 264
- Components (front airbags) . . . . . 248
- Danger of fitting a child safety seat on the front passenger seat . . . . . 243
- Disposal . . . . . 255
- Front airbags . . . . . 245, 246
- How do the front airbags work? . . . . 250
- How many airbags does my vehicle have? 248
- How the Advanced Airbag System components work together . . . . . 249

Important things to know . . . . . 241
Indicator light . . . . . 252
Monitoring . . . . . 252
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light . . . . . 253
Repairs . . . . . 255
Safety instructions . . . . . 254
Side airbags . . . . . 257
Side curtain airbags . . . . . 260
Weight-sensing mat . . . . . 264
When must the system be inspected? . . 252
All Wheel Drive . . . . . 294
Alloy wheels . . . . . 318
All-wheel drive
Winter tires . . . . . 363
Alternator
Malfunction . . . . . 32
Anti-freeze
*See* Engine coolant system . . . . . 337
Anti-glare inside day-night mirror . . . . 86, 87
Anti-lock brake system
How the ABS system works . . . . . 292
Warning/indicator lights . . . . . 22
Anti-Slip Regulation System (ASR)
How the system works . . . . . 290
Anti-theft systems
Anti-theft alarm system . . . . . 63
Electronic immobilizer . . . . . 51
Approach/departure angle . . . . . 302
Ashtray
Front . . . . . 116
Rear . . . . . 116
ASR
How the Anti-Slip Regulation System works . . . . . 290
Asterisk
What does it mean when something is marked with an asterisk? . . . . . 6
Audi braking guard . . . . . 168
Error messages . . . . . 170
Settings . . . . . 169
Status messages . . . . . 170
Switching on and off . . . . . 169
Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature 401
AUTO mode
AC climate controls . . . . . 126
Auto Safety Hotline . . . . . 229
Auto-Check Control . . . . . 30
Automatic belt retractor . . . . . 235
Automatic car wash
*See* Washing . . . . . 313
Automatic mode
Four-zone automatic comfort air conditioning . . . . . 132
Automatic Shift Lock (ASL) . . . . . 186
Automatic transmission
6-speed automatic transmission . . . . 184
Automatic Shift Lock (ASL) . . . . . 186
Driving . . . . . 184
Dynamic shift program . . . . . 187
Emergency release for selector lever 189
Fail-safe mode . . . . . 189
Ignition key safety lock . . . . . 143
Kick-down . . . . . 187
Manual shift program . . . . . 188
Selector lever . . . . . 185
Shift buttons . . . . . 189
Steering wheel with tiptronic® . . . . . 189
Average speed . . . . . 40
Avoid damaging the vehicle . . . . . 299


## B


Background lighting
Lighting profiles . . . . . 79
Bass box . . . . . 371
Battery . . . . . 342
Battery location . . . . . 343
Charging . . . . . 344
Important warnings when working on the battery . . . . . 343
Jump starting . . . . . 387
Low . . . . . 295
Replacing the battery . . . . . 346
State of charge . . . . . 295
Voltage . . . . . 36
Winter operation . . . . . 342
Working on the battery . . . . . 343
Before driving . . . . . 221
Blended gasoline . . . . . 325
Body cavity sealing . . . . . 318
Booster seats . . . . . 271
How do I properly install a booster seat in my vehicle? . . . . . 271
Safety instructions . . . . . 271
Brake assistant . . . . . 293
Brake booster . . . . . 292

Brake fluid
Changing the brake fluid ..... 341
Checking the brake fluid level ..... 341
Reservoir ..... 341
What is the correct brake fluid level? 341
What should I do if the brake fluid warning light comes on? ..... 341
Brake light
Defective ..... 27
Brake system ..... 341
Anti-lock brake system ..... 22
Brake fluid ..... 341
Brake fluid specifications for refill and replacement ..... 341
Brake pads ..... 298
General information ..... 291
How does moisture or road salt affect the brakes? ..... 291
Malfunction ..... 32
Parking brake ..... 147
Warning/indicator lights ..... 23
Worn brake pads symbol ..... 37
Braking guard
*See* Audi braking guard ..... 168
Break-in period ..... 297
Brake pads ..... 298
Tires ..... 297
Breakover angle ..... 302
Bulbs ..... 385
Bumper cover
Caution when parking near a parking barrier or curb ..... 147


## C


California Proposition 65 Warning ..... 332
Battery specific ..... 344
Capacities ..... 399
Car - Systems
Background lighting ..... 79
Lighting profiles ..... 79
Car care ..... 312
Interior ..... 319
Plastic and vinyl ..... 316
Weatherstrips ..... 317
Care of exterior ..... 312
Cargo area
*See* Loading the luggage compartment .. 227
Cargo floor ..... 109
Cargo net ..... 107
Catalytic converter ..... 298
Center console in rear ..... 103
Central locking
Emergency locking ..... 57
Panoramic sliding sunroof ..... 69
Certification ..... 404
Changing a flat tire ..... 373
Changing a wheel ..... 373
Changing engine oil ..... 336
Chassis
Undercoating ..... 318
*See also* Adaptive Air Suspension ... 206
CHECK button ..... 16
Checking
Engine coolant level ..... 338
Checking tire pressure ..... 353
Child restraints
Danger of using child restraints in the front seat ..... 243
What types of child restraint anchors are available? ..... 276
Where can I get additional information about child restraints? ..... 277
Child safety ..... 263, 268
Additional information ..... 282
Booster seats ..... 271
Convertible child safety seats ..... 269
Convertible locking retractor ..... 273
Guidance fixtures for lower anchorages .. 279
Important safety instructions for using child safety seats ..... 266
Important things to know when driving with children ..... 263
Infant seats ..... 268
Installing a child restraint using the LATCH system ..... 281
Lower anchorages ..... 278
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook ..... 282
Older children and safety belts ..... 272
Safety belts and older children ..... 272
Tether anchors ..... 282
Tether strap ..... 283
Which restraint system should my older child wear? ..... 272

Child safety lock
rear doors (power) . . . . . 61
Child safety seats . . . . . 268
Convertible locking retractor . . . . . 273
Danger of using child restraints in the front seat . . . . . 243
How do I properly install a child safety seat in my vehicle? . . . . . 266
Installing . . . . . 273
LATCH system . . . . . 281
Safety instructions . . . . . 266
Cigarette lighter . . . . . 117
Cleaning
Alcantara (synthetic suede) . . . . . 323
Engine compartment . . . . . 324
Fabrics and fabric coverings . . . . . 319
Instrument panel . . . . . 320
Interior . . . . . 319
Leather . . . . . 322
MMI display . . . . . 319
MMI terminal . . . . . 319
Plastic and vinyl . . . . . 316
Plastic parts . . . . . 320
Safety belts . . . . . 323
Trim strips . . . . . 315
trim strips . . . . . 316
Cleaning and protection . . . . . 312
Climate control . . . . . 123
Synchronizing . . . . . 125
Warm and cold . . . . . 123
Climate controls
Air distribution . . . . . 127
Air outlets . . . . . 130
Air outlets (rear) . . . . . 130
Air recirculation . . . . . 128
AUTO (standard setting) . . . . . 126
Basic settings . . . . . 134
Blower . . . . . 128
Controls . . . . . 125
Defrosting/defogging . . . . . 127
Description . . . . . 123
ECON mode . . . . . 126
ECON operation . . . . . 134
Energy management . . . . . 123
Heated seats, front . . . . . 136
Key coded setting . . . . . 123
Recirculation mode (automatic) . . . . . 134
Recommended settings . . . . . 123
Residual heat . . . . . 126
Setting the temperature . . . . . 127
SETUP . . . . . 134
Synchronization . . . . . 135
Turning on and off . . . . . 126
Using climate control economically . 131
Clock . . . . . 14
Closing
Panoramic sliding sunroof . . . . . 68
Coat hooks . . . . . 121
Cold tire inflation pressure . . . . . 351
Compass mirror . . . . . 89
Compliance . . . . . 404
Consumer Information . . . . . 229, 401
Contacting NHTSA . . . . . 229
Convenience key . . . . . 61
Driver messages . . . . . 146
Locking vehicle . . . . . 63
START button . . . . . 144
Starting engine . . . . . 144
STOP button . . . . . 145
Switching engine off . . . . . 145
Switching on ignition . . . . . 144
Unlocking vehicle . . . . . 62
Convertible child seats
How do I properly install a convertible child seat in my vehicle? . . . . . 269
Safety instructions . . . . . 269
Convertible locking retractor
Activating . . . . . 275
Deactivating . . . . . 276
Using to secure a child safety seat . 273, 275
Coolant system . . . . . 337
Cooling box in glove compartment . . . . . 120
Cooling System
Expansion tank . . . . . 338
Cornering light . . . . . 76
Cruise control
Changing speed . . . . . 150
Presetting your speed . . . . . 150
Switching off . . . . . 150
Switching on . . . . . 149
Warning/indicator lights . . . . . 22
*See also* Adaptive Cruise Control . . . . 152
Cruising range . . . . . 40
Cupholder . . . . . 103, 114, 115


## D


Damping
*See* Adaptive Air Suspension . . . . . 206

Data ..... 399
Data recorder ..... 288
Date display ..... 14
Daytime running lights ..... 73, 74
Declaration of compliance
Adaptive Cruise Control ..... 404
Audi side assist ..... 404
Cell phone package ..... 404
Convenience key ..... 404
Electronic immobilizer ..... 404
HomeLink® universal remote control 404
Remote control key ..... 404
Tire pressure monitoring system ... 404
def
What does this mean when it appears in the trip odometer display? ..... 15
Defective light bulb warning ..... 27
Defrosting/defogging the windows .... 127
Defrosting/defogging windows ..... 130
Determining correct load limit ..... 356
Digital clock ..... 14
Digital compass ..... 89
Digital speedometer ..... 27
Dimensions ..... 398
Dipstick
Reading the dipstick properly ..... 335
Distance control system
*See* Adaptive Cruise Control ..... 152
Doors
Power child safety lock ..... 61
Driver information system ..... 25
Digital speedometer ..... 27
Driver information messages ..... 30
Open door or rear lid warning ..... 27
Outside temperature display ..... 26
Sound system display ..... 26
Driver seat
*See* Seating position ..... 222
Driver's seat ..... 93
Driver's seat memory ..... 97
Activating remote control key ..... 98
Recalling a seat position ..... 97
Storing a seat position ..... 97
Driving messages ..... 30
Driving mode
*See* Adaptive Air Suspension ..... 208
Driving offroad
Driving through water ..... 303
Driving tips ..... 302
Rules of behavior ..... 302
Sand and mud ..... 303
Snow-covered ground ..... 303
Unpaved roads ..... 303
Driving safely ..... 220
Driving through water ..... 303
Driving time ..... 40
Duplicate key ..... 48
Dust filter
Climate controls ..... 123

## E

Easy entry feature ..... 142
ECON mode
Climate controls ..... 126
Electric seat adjustment
*See* Power seat ..... 93
Electronic differential lock (EDL)
How the system works ..... 290
Warning/indicator lights ..... 22
Electronic immobilizer ..... 15, 51
Electronic power control
(EPC) warning/indicator light ..... 19
Electronic speed limiter ..... 29
Electronic stabilization program (ESP)
Hill descent control ..... 288
How the system works ..... 288
Offroad mode ..... 288
Warning/indicator lights ..... 19
Emergency flasher ..... 76
Warning/indicator lights ..... 20
Emergency locking of doors ..... 57
Emergency operation
Panoramic sliding sunroof .... 70, 71, 72
Rear lid ..... 60
Emergency starting ..... 387
Emergency towing ..... 390
Energy management ..... 295
Battery power ..... 296
Driver notification ..... 296
Engine
Compartment ..... 332
Coolant ..... 337
Hood ..... 330
Starting ..... 142, 143

Starting with jumper cables . . . . . 387
Stopping . . . . . 144
Engine compartment
Safety instructions . . . . . 331
Working the engine compartment . . 331
Engine coolant system . . . . . 337
Adding coolant . . . . . 339
Checking coolant level . . . . . 338
Checking the engine coolant level . . . 338
Malfunction . . . . . 33
Radiator fan . . . . . 340
Engine coolant temperature
Temperature gauge . . . . . 13
Engine data . . . . . 399
Engine hood
Closing . . . . . 331
How to release the hood . . . . . 330
Engine oil . . . . . 333
Adding . . . . . 336
Additives . . . . . 336
Changing . . . . . 336
Checking the engine oil level . . . . . 335
Indications and conditions requiring extra checking . . . . . 335
Oil consumption . . . . . 334
Oil grades . . . . . 333
Recommended oil check intervals . . . 335
Specification and viscosity . . . . . 333
Engine oil level . . . . . 37
Engine oil pressure
Malfunction . . . . . 33
Engine oil sensor defective . . . . . 37
Engine speed limitation . . . . . 37
Entry assist
Rear seats . . . . . 99
Environment
Break-in period . . . . . 297
Catalytic converter . . . . . 298
Disposing of your vehicle battery . . . 346
Driving at high speeds . . . . . 299
Driving to minimize pollution and noise . 299
Fuel . . . . . 327
Fuel economy . . . . . 299
Leaks under your vehicle . . . . . 331
Letting the vehicle stand and warm up . . 300
Proper disposal of drained brake fluid . . 341
Proper disposal of drained engine coolant . . . . . 339
Proper disposal of drained engine oil 336
Recycling used engine oil . . . . . 336
Unleaded fuel . . . . . 325
What should I do with an old battery? . . 346
EPC
*See* Electronic power control . . . . . 19
ESP
*See* Electronic stabilization program (ESP) . . . . . 19
Event Data Recorder (EDR) . . . . . 288
Expansion tank . . . . . 338
Explanation of some technical terms . . . 302
Exterior lighting in the mirror housing . . . 76
Eyeglasses compartment . . . . . 121


## F


Fall line . . . . . 302
Fan
Four-zone automatic comfort air conditioning . . . . . 133
Radiator . . . . . 340
Flat tire
Changing . . . . . 373
Floor mats . . . . . 226
Fog lights . . . . . 75
Folding chocks . . . . . 370
Folding master key with remote control . . 48
Foot pedals . . . . . 226
For the sake of the environment
Gasoline fumes and the environment 327
Letting your engine warm up . . . . . 143
Reducing engine noise by early upshifting . . . . . 13
Refueling . . . . . 327
Saving fuel by early upshifting . . . . . 13
Using the rear window defogger . . . . 129
Fording depth . . . . . 302
Four-zone automatic comfort air conditioning . . . . . 131
Automatic mode in rear . . . . . 132
Heated rear seats . . . . . 137
Rear air distribution . . . . . 133
Rear controls . . . . . 131
Rear fan . . . . . 133
Rear operation . . . . . 135
Rear temperature . . . . . 133

Synchronization ..... 135
Turning on/off ..... 132
Front airbags
Description ..... 245
How they work ..... 250
Front arm rest
Cup holder ..... 103
Storage compartment ..... 103
Front ashtray ..... 116
Front fog lights ..... 75
Front seats ..... 92
Adjusting ..... 223
Child restraints in the front seat .... 243
Frontal collisions and the laws of physics ... 232
Fuel
Additives ..... 325
Blended gasoline ..... 325
Consumption ..... 40
Filler neck ..... 326
Fuel gauge ..... 15
Gasoline ..... 325
Gasoline additives ..... 326
Low fuel level ..... 15, 36
Octane rating ..... 325
Recommendation ..... 325
Refuelling ..... 327
Reserve ..... 15
Tank capacity ..... 399
Unlocking the fuel filler flap by hand 329
Fuse arrangement ..... 381


## G


Garage door opener (HomeLink®) ..... 214
Gas discharge lamps ..... 385
Gauges
Engine coolant temperature ..... 13
Fuel gauge ..... 15
Speedometer ..... 15
Tachometer ..... 14
Trip odometer ..... 15
General illustration
Instruments and controls ..... 11
General rules and driving tips ..... 302
Before driving offroad ..... 302
Driving offroad ..... 302
Glossary of tire and loading terminology ... 348
Glove compartment ..... 119
Cooling box ..... 120
Valet key function ..... 51
Glove compartment - emergency unlocking . 120
Gradient angle ..... 302
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) ... 397
Ground clearance ..... 302


## H


Head restraints ..... 225
Adjusting ..... 225
Front seats ..... 101
Rear seats ..... 101, 102
Headlight washer reservoir ..... 346
Headlights ..... 73
Adaptive Light ..... 76
Defective ..... 27
Front fog lights ..... 75
Headlight range control defective .... 37
Switching off ..... 73
Switching on ..... 73
Washer system ..... 83
Xenon headlights ..... 73
Heated outside mirrors ..... 88
Heated seats
Front ..... 136
Rear ..... 137
Rear seats (four-zone automatic comfort air conditioning) ..... 137
Heated steering wheel ..... 138
Heated washer jets
Wiper and washer system ..... 81
Heating
Climate controls ..... 123
Heavy clothing and safety belts ..... 234
High beam ..... 73, 77
Warning/indicator lights ..... 22
High voltage warning label ..... 396
Hill descent control ..... 288
Hill hold assist
Starting on hills ..... 148
HomeLink® universal remote control .. 214
Hood
Opening ..... 330
Release lever ..... 330
Horn ..... 11

How many airbags does my vehicle have? . . 248
How often should I check my tire pressures? 354
How safety belt pretensioners work . . . . 239
Hydroplaning . . . . . 358

## I

Ignition key . . . . . 142
Ignition lock . . . . . 142
Malfunction . . . . . 34, 38
Ignition lock positions . . . . . 142
Immobilizer . . . . . 15
Important things to do before driving . . 221
Improperly worn safety belts . . . . . 239
Indicator lights . . . . . 17
Airbag system . . . . . 252, 253
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF . . . . . 253
Infant seats . . . . . 268
How do I properly install an infant seat in my vehicle? . . . . . 268
Safety instructions . . . . . 268
Inflatable spare tire . . . . . 372
Inflating . . . . . 378
Inside rear view mirror . . . . . 86, 87
Installing child safety seats
Safety belts . . . . . 273
Instrument cluster illumination . . . . . 17
Instruments and controls . . . . . 13
General illustration . . . . . 11
Interior lights . . . . . 78
Rear . . . . . 78, 79
Intermittent wiping
Rain sensor . . . . . 81

## J

Jack . . . . . 370
Jumper cables . . . . . 388
Jump-starting . . . . . 387

## K

Key . . . . . 48
Battery replacement . . . . . 50
Coded settings . . . . . 123
Convenience opening and closing of windows . . . . . 66
Emergency key . . . . . 48
Key replacement . . . . . 48
Master key . . . . . 48
Valet key . . . . . 48
Key coded settings
Climate controls . . . . . 123
Keyless entry remote control . . . . . 49
Kick-down
tiptronic® . . . . . 187

## L

Lane assist
Activating and deactivating . . . . . 171
Description . . . . . 171
Instrument cluster indicator light . . . 171
MMI settings . . . . . 172
Notes on instrument cluster display . 171
LATCH . . . . . 278
Description . . . . . 278
Guidance fixtures for lower anchorages . 279
Installing a child restraint . . . . . 281
Location . . . . . 278
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook . . . . . 282
Lateral angle . . . . . 302
Leather . . . . . 321
Cleaning . . . . . 322
Level adjustment
*See* Adaptive Air Suspension . . . . . 206
Lifting jack . . . . . 376
Lifting vehicle . . . . . 392
Light
Exterior lighting in the mirror housing 76
leaving home . . . . . 76
*See also* Background lighting . . . . . 79
Light sensor defective . . . . . 36
Lighting
*See* Background lighting . . . . . 79
Lighting in the mirror housing . . . . . 76
Lights . . . . . 73
Coming home . . . . . 74
Daytime running lights . . . . . 74
Emergency flashers . . . . . 76
Exterior lights . . . . . 74
Front fog lights . . . . . 75
Headlights . . . . . 73
High beam . . . . . 73, 77
High beam warning/indicator light . . . 22
Leaving home . . . . . 74

Rear fog lights . . . . . 75
Side marker lights . . . . . 73
Turn signals . . . . . 77
Xenon headlights . . . . . 73
Loading the luggage compartment . . . . 227
Loading the roof rack . . . . . 113
Locking
Power locking switch . . . . . 55
Rear lid/trunk lid . . . . . 57
Remote control key . . . . . 53
Using the key . . . . . 54
Lower anchorage locator button . . . . . 278
Lower universal anchorage bars (Canada) . . 278
Lower universal anchorages (Canada) . . 278
Luggage
Stowing . . . . . 227
Luggage compartment . . . . . 104
Cargo net . . . . . 107
Expanding . . . . . 104
Retractable cover . . . . . 108
Ski sack . . . . . 111
Tie-down rings (adjustable) . . . . . 106
*See also* Loading the luggage compartment . . . . . 227
luggage compartment
Tie-down rings . . . . . 105
Lumbar support . . . . . 95


## M


Maintenance . . . . . 401
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) . . . 20, 29
Master key . . . . . 49
Battery replacement . . . . . 50
Check light . . . . . 50
Mileage
Average . . . . . 40
Instantaneous . . . . . 40
Mirrors
Activating the digital compass . . . . . 89
Adjusting the anti-glare . . . . . 86, 87
Automatic dimming for the outside mirrors . . . . . 89
Automatically dimming inside mirror . 87
Inside day-night mirror . . . . . 86
Interior mirror . . . . . 86, 87
Outside mirrors . . . . . 88
Recalling position of outside mirrors . 97
Storing position of outside mirrors . . 97
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . . . 252


## N


Natural leather . . . . . 321
New tires and wheels . . . . . 359
NHTSA
Contacting . . . . . 229
Number of seats . . . . . 231


## O


Occupant seating positions . . . . . 222
Octane rating . . . . . 325
Odometer . . . . . 15
Offroad mode . . . . . 288
Oil
*See* Engine oil . . . . . 333
Older children and safety belts . . . . . 272
On-Board Diagnostic System (OBD)
Data Link Connector (DLC) . . . . . 29
Electronic speed limiter . . . . . 29
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) . . . . 29
Open door or rear lid warning . . . . . 27
open sky system
*See* Panoramic sliding sunroof . . . . . 67
Operate your vehicle economically and minimize pollution . . . . . 299
Optional equipment
Marked with an asterisk . . . . . 6
Outlets . . . . . 118
Outside air pollution
How to prevent from entering the vehicle 128
Outside mirrors . . . . . 88
Outside temperature display . . . . . 26
Owner's manual
How the Owner's Manual is organized . 6


## P


Paint
Touch-up . . . . . 316
Paint No. . . . . 396
Panoramic sliding sunroof . . . . . 67
Closing . . . . . 68
closing . . . . . 68
Convenience closing . . . . . 69
Emergency operation . . . . . 70, 71, 72

sliding open . . . . . 68
Sunshade . . . . . 69
tilting . . . . . 68
Parking . . . . . 147
Automatic transmission . . . . . 184
Caution when parking near a parking barrier or curb . . . . . 147
Low bumper cover, spoilers and suspension . . . . . 147
Parking brake . . . . . 147
Parking . . . . . 147
Warning/indicator lights . . . . . 23
Parking on a decline (downhill) . . . . . 147
Parking on an incline (uphill) . . . . . 147
Parts replacement . . . . . 403
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light . . . . . 253
Passenger's seat . . . . . 93, 96
Passive safety system . . . . . 220
Pedals . . . . . 226
Perimeter lighting . . . . . 76
Physical principles of a frontal collision 232
Polishing . . . . . 315
Pollen filter
Climate controls . . . . . 123
Power locking switch . . . . . 55
Power locking system . . . . . 52
Convenience close/open feature . . . . . 66
Locking and unlocking the vehicle from inside . . . . . 55
Opening and closing the windows . . . 66
Rear lid/trunk lid . . . . . 57
Remote control key . . . . . 49
Selective unlock feature . . . . . 55
Settings . . . . . 55
Unlocking and locking vehicle . . . . . 53
Power outlets . . . . . 118
Power seat
Controls . . . . . 93
Seat adjustment . . . . . 94
Power steering . . . . . 293
Power window switches . . . . . 64
In the driver's door . . . . . 65
In the front passenger's door . . . . . 66
Reactivating the system . . . . . 67
Pregnant women
Special considerations when wearing a safety belt . . . . . 237
Programming the HomeLink® universal remote control . . . . . 214
Proper occupant seating positions . . . . . 222
Proper safety belt position . . . . . 236
Proper seating position
Front passenger . . . . . 223
Occupants . . . . . 222
Rear passengers . . . . . 224
Protective tray . . . . . 109


## Q


Quartz clock . . . . . 14
quattro®
*See* All Wheel Drive . . . . . 294
Question
What happens to unbelted occupants? . 233
Why safety belts? . . . . . 231


## R


Radiator fan . . . . . 340
Rain sensor . . . . . 81
Rain sensor defective . . . . . 36
Reading lights
Front . . . . . 78
Rear . . . . . 79
Rear ashtray . . . . . 116
Rear fog lights . . . . . 75
Rear lid
Automatic operation . . . . . 58
Emergency unlocking . . . . . 60
Opening and closing . . . . . 57
Valet key function . . . . . 51
Rear light
Defective . . . . . 27
Rear operation
Four-zone automatic comfort air conditioning . . . . . 135
Rear seats
Adjusting seat . . . . . 99
Entry assist . . . . . 99
Folding seat back up and down . . . . . 100
Rear view
*See* Rear-view camera . . . . . 191
Rear view mirror
Inside rear view mirror . . . . . 86, 87
Rear window defogger . . . . . 129
Rear-view camera . . . . . 191, 194
Parking mode 1 . . . . . 196
Parking mode 2 . . . . . 198
Red symbols . . . . . 31

Refuelling ..... 327
Release lever for hood ..... 330
Remote control garage door opener (HomeLink®) ..... 214
Remote control key ..... 49
Unlocking and locking ..... 53
Remote rear lid release ..... 57
Repair manuals ..... 401
Repairs
Airbag system ..... 255
Replacing
Wheel rims ..... 361
Replacing a fuse ..... 381
Replacing light bulbs ..... 385
Replacing tires and wheels ..... 359
Reporting Safety Defects ..... 229, 230
Reset button ..... 15
Residual heat ..... 125
Retractor ..... 235
Rims
Cast alloy ..... 318
Replacing ..... 361
Roof rack ..... 112
Loading ..... 113
Mounting locations ..... 113
Roof weight ..... 113
Rule of behavior offroad ..... 302

## S

SAFE ..... 15
Safe driving habits ..... 220
Safety belt height adjustment ..... 238
Safety belt position ..... 236
Safety belt height adjustment ..... 238
Safety belts worn by pregnant women .. 237
Safety belt pretensioner ..... 239
Service and disposal ..... 240
Safety belt warning light ..... 21, 231
Safety belts ..... 235
cleaning ..... 323
Danger to passengers who do not wear a safety belt ..... 233
Fastening ..... 235
Improperly worn ..... 239
Not worn ..... 233
Safety belt position ..... 236
Safety instructions ..... 234
Securing child safety seats ..... 273
Special considerations for pregnant women ..... 237
Unfastening ..... 238
Warning/indicator light ..... 231
Why YOU MUST wear them ..... 231
Worn properly ..... 234
Safety compliance sticker ..... 396
Safety equipment ..... 220
Safety features for occupant restraint and protection ..... 220
Safety guidelines
Seat adjustment ..... 92
Safety instructions
Engine compartment ..... 331
for booster seats ..... 271
for side curtain airbags ..... 262
for using child safety seats ..... 266
for using convertible child seats .... 269
for using infant seats ..... 268
for using safety belts ..... 234
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System 254
Safety lock
Ignition key, automatic transmission 143
Seat adjustment
Adjusting the seat height manually .. 96
Adjusting the seatback ..... 94
Adjusting the seatback manually .... 96
Driver's seat ..... 92
Driver's seat memory ..... 97
Front passenger's seat ..... 93
Front seats ..... 92
Head restraints ..... 101, 225
Lumbar support ..... 95
Manual controls ..... 96
Moving the seat forward or backward manually ..... 96
Seat belts
*See* Safety belts ..... 231
Seat memory ..... 97
Seating capacity ..... 231
Seating position
Driver ..... 222
Front passenger ..... 223
How to adjust the front seats ..... 223
Incorrect seat position ..... 225
Occupants ..... 222
Rear passengers ..... 224

Seats
Number of seats . . . . . 231
Securing attachments . . . . . 110
Selective unlock feature . . . . . 55
Selector lever . . . . . 185
Service and disposal
Safety belt pretensioner . . . . . 240
Service interval display . . . . . 28
Service position
Windshield wipers . . . . . 84
Servotronic
Power steering . . . . . 293
Shift buttons . . . . . 189
Side airbags
Description . . . . . 257
How they work . . . . . 258
Side assist
Activating and deactivating . . . . . 174
Description . . . . . 174
Informational and alert stage signals 176
Messages in instrument cluster display . 181
MMI settings . . . . . 180
Operation . . . . . 176
Safety tips . . . . . 182
Sensor detection area . . . . . 176
Side curtain airbags
Description . . . . . 260
How they work . . . . . 261
Safety instructions . . . . . 262
Side curtain airbags) . . . . . 260
Side marker lights . . . . . 73
Ski sack . . . . . 111
Snow chains . . . . . 364
Sockets . . . . . 117, 118
Sound system display
Driver information display . . . . . 26
Speed control system
*See* Adaptive Cruise Control . . . . . 152
Speed rating letter code . . . . . 360
Speed warning system . . . . . 38
Speedometer . . . . . 15
Starting on hills
Hill hold assist . . . . . 148
Starting the engine . . . . . 142, 143
What should I do if the engine does not start? . . . . . 143
Steering . . . . . 140
Easy entry feature . . . . . 142
Electrically adjusting the steering wheel 141
Locking the steering . . . . . 142
Malfunction . . . . . 34
Manually adjusting the steering wheel . . 140
Steering wheel column
Adjusting electrically . . . . . 141
Adjusting manually . . . . . 140
Steering wheel heating . . . . . 138
Steps for determining correct load limit 356
Stopping the engine . . . . . 144
Storage . . . . . 119
Cupholder . . . . . 114
Cupholder door pockets . . . . . 115
Cupholder in the rear center console 103
Cupholder rear center armrest . . . . . 115
Glove compartment . . . . . 119
Storage compartment
Expanding . . . . . 104
Storage net
Footwell . . . . . 122
Luggage compartment . . . . . 122
Seatbacks . . . . . 122
Sun shade . . . . . 80
Sun visors . . . . . 80
Sunroof
*See* Panoramic sliding sunroof . . . . . 67
Sunshade
Panoramic sliding sunroof . . . . . 69
Suspension
*See* Adaptive Air Suspension . . . . . 206
Switches
Emergency flashers . . . . . 76
Rear window defogger . . . . . 129
Symbols
Red . . . . . 31
Yellow . . . . . 35
Synchronization
Climate controls . . . . . 135
Four-zone automatic comfort air conditioning . . . . . 135
Synchronizing climate control . . . . . 125

## T

Tachometer . . . . . 14
Tank flap
Unlocking the fuel filler flap by hand 329

Technical modifications ..... 404
Temperature
Climate controls ..... 127
Four-zone automatic comfort air conditioning ..... 133
Setting for the driver's and front passenger's side ..... 127
Tether strap ..... 283
Securing the upper tether strap .... 284
The first 1,000 miles (1,500 km) and afterwards ..... 297
Tie-down rings ..... 105
Tie-down rings (adjustable) ..... 106
Tie-downs ..... 229
Tips for the environment
Saving fuel ..... 113
Using the air conditioner only when necessary ..... 131
tiptronic® ..... 184
Automatic Shift Lock (ASL) ..... 186
Driving ..... 184
Dynamic shift program ..... 187
Fail-safe mode ..... 189
Kick-down ..... 187
Manual shift program ..... 188
Selector lever ..... 185
Tire pressure ..... 353
Tire pressure monitoring system ..... 43
Changing wheels ..... 46
Learning process ..... 45
Loss of air pressure ..... 20, 44
Malfunctions ..... 46
Sensors ..... 361
Storing tire pressures ..... 45
Tires and wheels ..... 361
Valves ..... 361
Tire service life ..... 357
Tires ..... 347
Replacing ..... 361
Service life ..... 357
speed rating letter code ..... 360
Tire manufacturing date ..... 360
Tire specifications ..... 360
Tread depth ..... 357
Uniform tire quality grading ..... 363
Winter tires ..... 363
Tires and vehicle load limits ..... 355
Tires and wheels
Checking tire pressure ..... 353
Cold tire inflation pressure ..... 351
Dimensions ..... 359
General notes ..... 347
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . 348
New tires and wheels ..... 359
Replacing ..... 359
Snow chains ..... 364
Tire pressure monitoring system ... 361
Tires and vehicle load limits ..... 355
Wheel bolts ..... 365
Winter tires ..... 363
Tires/Wheels
Low aspect ratio tires ..... 366
Tire pressure monitoring system . 20, 43
Tools ..... 371
Torn or frayed safety belts ..... 234
Touch-up paint ..... 316
Towing
Front eyelet ..... 390
Rear eyelet ..... 391
Tow truck procedures ..... 390
Towing hitch
Audi parking system ..... 201
Trailer towing ..... 305
Operating instructions ..... 306
Technical requirements ..... 305, 307
Tongue load ..... 306
Trailer towing tips ..... 308
Trailer turn signal assembly
Warning/indicator lights ..... 20
Transmission
tiptronic® ..... 184
Transport Canada ..... 230
Tread Wear Indicator (TWI) ..... 357
Trip computer
Fuel consumption ..... 40
Mileage ..... 40
Single-trip memory ..... 41
Total-trip memory ..... 41
Trip odometer ..... 15
What does it mean when dEF appears in the trip odometer display? ..... 15
Trunk
*See* Rear lid ..... 57, 58
Turn signals ..... 77
Warning/indicator lights ..... 20
Turning rear air conditioning on/off
Four-zone automatic comfort air conditioning ..... 132

## U


Undercoating . . . . . 318
Unfastening safety belts . . . . . 238
Unidirectional tires . . . . . 347
Uniform tire quality grading . . . . . 363
Unlocking
  Power locking switch . . . . . 55
  Rear lid/trunk lid . . . . . 57
  Remote control key . . . . . 53
  Using the key . . . . . 54


## V


Valet key function
  Activating and deactivating . . . . . 51
Vanity mirror . . . . . 80
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) . . . . 396
Vehicle jack . . . . . 370, 376
Vehicle literature . . . . . 5
Vehicle-care products . . . . . 312
Ventilation
  Climate controls . . . . . 123


## W


Warning lights . . . . . 17
Warning/indicator lights . . . . . 13
  Adaptive Air Suspension . . . . . 21
  Adaptive Cruise Control . . . . . 161
  Airbag system . . . . . 19
  Anti-lock brake system (ABS) . . . . . 22
  Brake system . . . . . 23
  Cruise control . . . . . 22
  Electronic power control . . . . . 19
  Electronic stabilization program (ESP) 19
  High beam . . . . . 22
  Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) . . . . 20
  Parking brake . . . . . 23
  Safety belt . . . . . 21
  Tire pressure monitoring system . . . . . 20
  Trailer turn signal assembly . . . . . 20
  Turn signals . . . . . 20
Warranty coverages . . . . . 401
Washer reservoir . . . . . 346
Washing . . . . . 312
  Automatic car wash . . . . . 313
  by hand . . . . . 313
  General information . . . . . 312
  with a power washer . . . . . 314
Waxing . . . . . 315
Wear indicator . . . . . 357
Weatherstrips . . . . . 317
Weights . . . . . 397
What happens if you wear your safety belt too loose? . . . . . 236
What happens to unbelted occupants? . 233
What impairs driving safety? . . . . . 221
What should I do after changing a wheel? . . 354
What should I do after replacing wheels? . . 354
Wheel bolts
  Torque . . . . . 365
Wheels . . . . . 347
  Cast alloy . . . . . 318
  Checking tire pressure . . . . . 353
  Cold tire inflation pressure . . . . . 351
  General notes . . . . . 347
  Glossary of tire and loading terminology 348
  New tires and wheels . . . . . 359
  Tires and vehicle load limits . . . . . 355
When must a safety belt be replaced? . . 234
When must the airbag system be inspected? 252
When should I adjust the tire pressures? . . . 354
When should I check the tire pressures? 354
Where can I find the tire pressures for my car? . . . . . 353
Why safety belts? . . . . . 231, 232
Windows
  Cleaning . . . . . 317
  Convenience close/open feature . . . . . 66
  Defogging . . . . . 127
  Defrosting . . . . . 127
  Rapid defrosting/defogging . . . . . 130
Windshield washer fluid
  Low level . . . . . 36
Windshield wipers
  Changing the rear wiper blade . . . . . 86
  Faulty . . . . . 38
  Intermittent wiping . . . . . 81
  One-tap wiping . . . . . 81
  Rain sensor . . . . . 81
  Rear window wiper . . . . . 83

Service position . . . . . 84
Washer reservoir . . . . . 346
Winter operation
Battery . . . . . 342
Coolant system . . . . . 337
Heated rear seats . . . . . 137
Heated rear seats (four-zone automatic comfort air conditioning) . . . . . 137
Steering wheel heating . . . . . 138
Tires . . . . . 294
Windows . . . . . 317
Winter tires . . . . . 363
All-wheel drive . . . . . 363
Wiper blades
Installing new wiper blades . . . . . 84
*See also* Windshield wipers . . . . . 84, 86


## X


Xenon-Lights . . . . . 385


## Y


Yellow symbols . . . . . 35

It has always been Audi's policy to continuously improve its products. Audi, therefore, reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements in its products, without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured.

Text, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the most up-to-date information available at the time of printing.

All rights reserved. May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without the written consent of AUDI AG. Specifications are subject to change without notice.

"Audi", "quattro" and the four rings emblem are registered trademarks of AUDI AG. "Q7" is trademark of AUDI AG.

**Editorial deadline: 4/4/2008**

**For the sake of the environment**

Printed on environmentally friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable).

Printed in Germany

© 2008 AUDI AG

www.audi.com

**2009 Audi Q7**
**Owner's Manual**
**Englisch USA 5.08**
**291.561.4L0.23**